THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

Volume 5

PAHLAVI TEXTS

Part I

The Bundahis, Bahman Yast, And Shâyast Lâ-Shâyast

Edited by

F. MAX MÜLLER

Translated by

E.W. WEST

THE
SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

Translated by
VARIOUS ORIENTAL SCHOLARS

Edited by
F. MAX MÜLLER

Vol. 5

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

(50 VOLUMES)

Series Editor : *F. Max-Müller*

ISBN" 978-81-208-0101-1 (Set) ₹ 37,500 (Each Vol. ₹ 750)

These volumes of the Sacred Books of the East series include translations of all the most important works of the seven non-Christian religions that have exercised a profound influence on the civilisations of the continent of Asia. The Vedic Brahmanic system claims 21 volumes, Buddhism 10, and Jainism 2; 8 volumes comprise Sacred Books of the Parsis; 2 volumes represent Islam; and 6 the two main indigenous systems of China. Translated by twenty leading authorities in their respective fields, the volumes have been edited by the late F. Max Müller. The inception, publication and the compilation of these books cover almost 34 years.

I. BUDDHISM

Vol. 49: Buddhist Mahayana Texts (2 Parts)
Vol. 11: Buddhist Suttas
Vol. 10: The Dhammapada and Sutta Nipata
Vols. 35 & 36: The Questions of King Milinda (2 Parts)
Vol. 21: The Saddharma Pundarika or the Lotus of the True Law
Vols. 13, 17 & 20: Vinaya Texts (3 Parts)

II. CHINESE

Vols. 3, 16, 27, 28, 39 & 40: The Sacred Books of China (6 Parts)
Vol. 19: The Fo-Sho-Hing-Tsan-King

III. ISLAM

Vols. 6 & 9: The Qur'an (2 Parts)

IV. JAINISM

Vols. 22 & 45: The Jaina Sutras (2 Parts)

V. PARSIS

Vols. 5, 18, 24, 37 & 47: Pahlavi Texts (5 Parts)
Vols. 4, 23 & 31: The Zend-Avesta (3 Parts)
Vol. 50: A General Index to the Names and Subject-matter of the Sacred Books of the East

VI. VEDIC-BRAHMANIC SYSTEM

Vol. 8: The Bhagavadgita with the Sanatsujatiya and the Anugita
Vols. 29 & 30: The Grihya-Sutras: Rules of Vedic Domestic Ceremonies (2Parts)
Vol. 42: Hymns of the Atharva Veda together with Extracts from the Ritual Books and the Commentaries
Vol. 7: The Institutes of Vishnu
Vol. 25: The Laws of Manu
Vol. 33: The Minor Law Books
Vols. 2 & 14: The Sacred Laws of the Aryas as Taught in the Schools of Apastamba, Gautama, Vasishtha and Baudhayana (2 Parts)
Vols. 12, 26, 41, 43 & 44: The Satapatha Brahmana According to the Text of the Madhyandina School (5 Parts)
Vols. 1 & 15: The Upanishads (2 Parts)
Vols. 34 & 38: The Vedanta Sutras (2 Parts)
Vol. 48: The Vedanta-Sutras (with the commentary by Ramanuja)
Vols. 32 & 46: Vedic Hymns (2 Parts)

PAHLAVI TEXTS

THE BUNDAHIS, BAHMAN YAST, AND SHÂYAST LÂ-SHÂYAST

Translated by
E.W. WEST

PART I

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS
PRIVATE LIMITED • DELHI

Reprint: Delhi, 1970, 1977, 1987, 1993, 2003, 2010
First Indian Edition: Delhi, 1965
First Published in 1880 by Oxford University Press.

© MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS PRIVATE LTD.
All rights reserved

ISBN: 978-81-208-0106-6

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS
41 U.A. Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi 110 007
8 Mahalaxmi Chamber, 22 Bhulabhai Desai Road, Mumbai 400 026
203 Royapettah High Road, Mylapore, Chennai 600 004
236, 9th Main III Block, Jayanagar, Bangalore 560 011
Sanas Plaza, 1302 Baji Rao Road, Pune 411 002
8 Camac Street, Kolkata 700 017
Ashok Rajpath, Patna 800 004
Chowk, Varanasi 221 001

UNESCO COLECTION OF REPRESENTATIVE WORKS— Indian Series
This book has been accepted in the Indian Translation Series of the UNESCO Collection of Representative Works, jointly sponsored by the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) and the Government of India

Printed in India

By Jainendra Prakash Jain at Shri Jainendra Press,
A-45 Naraina, Phase-I, New Delhi 110 028
and Published by Narendra Prakash Jain for
Motilal Banarsidass Publishers Private Limited,
Bungalow Road, Delhi 110 007

RASHTRAPATI BHAVAN,
NEW DELHI-4
June 10, 1962

I am very glad to know that the Sacred Books of the East, published years ago by the Clarendon Press, Oxford, which have been out-of-print for a number of years, will now be available to all students of religion and philosophy. The enterprise of the publishers is commendable and I hope the books will be widely read.

S. RADHAKRISHNAN

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

First, the man distinguished between eternal and perishable. Later he discovered within himself the germ of the Eternal. This discovery was an epoch in the history of the human mind and the *East was the first to discover it.*

To watch in the Sacred Books of the East the dawn of this religious consciousness of man, must always remain one of the most inspiring and hallowing sights in the whole history of the world. In order to have a solid foundation for a comparative study of the Religions of the East, we must have before all things, complete and thoroughly faithful translation of their Sacred Books in which some of the ancient sayings were preserved because they were so true and so striking that they could not be forgotten. They contained eternal truths, expressed for the first time in human language.

With profoundest reverence for Dr. S. Radhakrishnan, President of India, who inspired us for the task; our deep sense of gratitude for Dr. C. D. Deshmukh & Dr. D. S. Kothari, for encouraging assistance; esteemed appreciation of UNESCO for the warm endorsement of the cause ; and finally with indebtedness to Dr. H. Rau, Director, Max Müller Bhawan, New Delhi, in procuring us the texts of the Series for reprint, we humbly conclude.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION.

		Page
1.	The Parsî Scriptures	ix
2.	The Pahlavi Language and Literature	xi
3.	The Bundahis	xxii
4.	The Selections of Zâd-sparam	xlvi
5.	The Bahman Yast	l
6.	The Shâyast lâ-shâyast	lix
7.	Concluding Remarks	lxvii

TRANSLATIONS.

Bundahis	1
Selections of Zâd-sparam	153
Bahman Yast	189
Shâyast lâ-shâyast	237
Index	407
Errata	434

Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East 435

INTRODUCTION

TO

PAHLAVI TEXTS.

1. The Parsi Scriptures.

Though we must look to the Avesta for information regarding the main outlines of the Parsi religion, it is to Pahlavi writings we must refer for most of the details relating to the traditions, ceremonies, and customs of this ancient faith, which styles itself emphatically 'the good religion of the Mazdayasnians,' and calls its laity bahdinân, or 'those of the good religion.' In the fragments of the Avesta which still exist, we may trace the solid foundations of the religion, laid by philosophic bards and lawgivers of old, with many a mouldering column and massive fragment of the superstructure erected upon them by the ancient priesthood. These are the last remnants of the faith held by Cyrus, the anointed of the Lord (Isaiah xlv. 1), the righteous one (Is. xli. 2), or eagle (Is. xlvi. 11), whom He called from the east, and the shepherd who performed His pleasure (Is. xliv. 28); scattered fragments of the creed professed by Darius in his inscriptions, when he attributes his successes to 'the will of Aûramazdâ;' and mouldering ruins of the comparatively pure religion of oriental 'barbarism,' which Alexander and his civilising Greek successors were unable wholly to destroy, and replace by their own idolatrous superstitions. While in the Pahlavi texts we find much of the mediæval edifice built by later Persian priestcraft upon the old foundations, with a strange mixture of old and new materials, and exhibiting the usual symptom of declining powers, a strong insistence upon complex forms and minute details, with little of the freedom of treatment and simplicity of outline characteristic of the ancient bards.

To understand the relationship between these two classes of Parsi sacred writings, it must be observed that the Avesta and Pahlavi of the same scripture, taken together, form its Avesta and Zand, terms which are nearly synonymous with 'revelation and commentary.' Both words are derived from verbal roots implying 'knowledge;' Avesta being the Pahlavi avistâk, which may most probably be traced to the past participle of â, 'to,' + vid, 'to know,' with the meaning of 'what is announced' or 'declaration;' and Zand, being the Pahlavi form of Av. zainti (traceable in the word âzaintis), must be referred to the root zan, 'to know,' with the meaning of 'knowledge, understanding[1].' European scholars, misled probably by Muhammadan writers, have converted the phrase 'Avesta and Zand' into 'Zend-Avesta,' and have further identified Zand with the language of the Avesta. This use of the word Zand is, however, quite at variance with the practice of all Parsi writers who have been independent of European influence, as they apply the term Zand only to the Pahlavi translations and explanations of their sacred books, the original text of which they call Avesta. So that when they use the phrase 'Avesta and Zand' they mean the whole of any scripture, both the Avesta text and Pahlavi translation and commentary. And the latter, being often their only means of understanding the former, has now become of nearly equal authority with the Avesta itself. It is probable, indeed, that the first Zand was really written in the Avesta language, as we find many traces of such Avesta commentaries interpolated both in the Avesta and Pahlavi texts of the Parsi scriptures; but this is rather a matter of European inference than of Parsi belief. The later (or Pahlavi) Zand appears also, in many places, to be merely a translation of this earlier (or Avesta) Zand, with additional explanations offered by the Pahlavi translators.

Regarding the sacredness of these Pahlavi translations, in the eyes of the Parsis, there can be no manner of doubt, so far as they cannot be shown to be inconsistent with the

[1] See Haug's Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsis, second edition, London, 1878; pp. 121, 122.

original Avesta text. But besides these translations there is another class of Pahlavi religious writings whose authority is more open to dispute. These writings are either translations and Zands of Avesta texts no longer extant, or they contain the opinions and decisions of high-priests of later times, when the Pahlavi language was on the decline. Such writings would hardly be considered of indisputable authority by any Parsi of the present day, unless they coincided with his own preconceived opinions. But for outsiders they have the inestimable value either of supplying numerous details of religious traditions and customs which would be vainly sought for elsewhere, or of being contemporary records of the religious ideas of the Parsis in the declining days of their Mazdayasnian faith. It is with a few of such writings this volume has to deal; but before describing them more minutely it will be desirable to give some account of the Pahlavi language in which they are written.

2. The Pahlavi Language and Literature.

The term 'Pahlavi,' in its widest extent, is applied to all the varying forms of the mediæval Persian language, from the time when the grammatical inflexions of ancient Persian were dropped, till the period when the modern alphabet was invented, and the language became corrupted into modern Persian by the adoption of numerous Arabic words and phrases. Some traces of Pahlavi words and phrases, written in old Semitic characters, have been found in the legends of coins struck by certain kings of Persian provinces, subordinate to the Greek successors of Alexander, as early as the third century B. C.[1] Further traces have been discovered in the legends on some provincial coins of the time of the Arsacidan dynasty. But, practically, our acquaintance with Pahlavi commences with the inscriptions, on rocks and coins, of Ar*d*akhshîr-i Pâpakân (A.D. 226–240), the founder of the Sasanian dynasty, and ends with certain religious

[1] See Levy's Beiträge zur aramäischen Münzkunde Eran's, und zur Kunde der ältern Pehlewi-Schrift; Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenländischen Gesellschaft, Leipzig, 1867; XXI, 421-465.

writings of priests and other devout Parsis of post-Muhammadan times, among the latest of which is one dated A.Y. 250 (A.D. 881). Any fragments of Pahlavi composition of later date than A.D. 1000, must be considered merely as modern imitations of a dead language, and cannot be quoted as authorities for the use of any particular Pahlavi words construction.

With regard to the origin of the word Pahlavî, or language of Pahlav, many suggestions have been offered; but the most probable explanation[1] is that which connects it with the Parthva of the cuneiform inscriptions, the land of the Parthians known to the Greeks and Romans, and of the Pahlavâs mentioned by Sanskrit writers; the change of Parthva into Pahlav being very similar to that of Av. Mithra into Pers. Mihr. No doubt the language of the Parthians themselves was not Pahlavi, but they were the actual rulers of Persia for some centuries at the time when the Pahlavi language was forming there; and, being formidable to their neighbours, it is not surprising that their name became identified with everything Persian, in the same way as the Roman name has been applied by the Persians, not only to the later Greek empire of Constantinople, but even to the earlier conqueror, Alexander the Great.

Strictly speaking, the mediæval Persian language is only called Pahlavi when it is written in one of the characters used before the invention of the modern Persian alphabet, and in the peculiarly enigmatical mode adopted in Pahlavi writings. Whenever it is transcribed, either in Avesta characters, or in those of the modern Persian alphabet, and freed from this peculiarity, it is called Pâzand.

The peculiar mode of writing Pahlavi, here alluded to, long made the character of the language a standing puzzle for European scholars, and was first satisfactorily explained by Professor Haug, of Munich, in his admirable Essay on the Pahlavi Language already cited.

Like the Assyrians of old, the Persians of Parthian times appear to have borrowed their writing from a foreign race.

[1] See Haug's Essay on the Pahlavi Language, Stuttgart, 1870; pp. 33–37.

But, whereas the Semitic Assyrians adopted a Turanian syllabary, these later Aryan Persians accepted a Semitic alphabet. Besides the alphabet, however, which they could use for spelling their own words, they also transferred a certain number of complete Semitic words to their writings, as representatives of the corresponding words in their own language. These Semitic representatives (the number of which might at any time be increased or diminished at the discretion of the writer) were probably never very numerous, and not more than four hundred of them are to be found in the Pahlavi writings now extant; but, as they represent nearly all the commonest words in the language (excepting those specially relating to religious matters), they often constitute more than half the bulk of a Pahlavi text.

The use of such Semitic words, scattered about in Persian sentences, gives Pahlavi the motley appearance of a compound language; more especially as Persian terminations are often added to the Semitic words. But there are good reasons for supposing that the language was never spoken as it was written. The spoken language appears to have been purely Persian; the Semitic words being merely used as written representatives, or logograms, of the Persian words which were spoken. Thus the Persians would write malkân malkâ, 'king of kings,' but they would read shâhân shâh. This is still the mode in which most Parsis read their Pahlavi literature; and it is only by assuming it to have been their universal practice, in former times, that we can account for the total and immediate disappearance of the Semitic portion of the Pahlavi, from their language, when the Persians adopted their modern alphabet. As the Semitic words were merely a Pahlavi mode of writing their Persian equivalents (just as 'viz.' is a mode of writing 'namely' in English), they disappeared with the Pahlavi writing, and the Persians began at once to write all their words, with their new alphabet, just as they pronounced them.

In the meantime, the greater part of the nation had become Muhammadans, and a new influx of Semitic words commenced, but of a very different character. The Semitic

portion of the Pahlavi writing was nearly pure Chaldee, and was confined (as already stated) to the graphic representation of most of the simplest and commonest words unconnected with religion; but it seems to have formed no part of the spoken language, at all events in later times. Whereas the Semitic portion of modern Persian is borrowed from Arabic, and includes most words connected with religion, science, and literature; in fact, every class of words except that which was usually Semitic in Pahlavi writings; and these Arabic words form an essential part of the spoken language, being as indispensable to the modern Persian as words of Norman-French origin are to the English.

In Pahlavi writings, moreover, besides the four hundred Semitic logograms already mentioned, we also find about one hundred obsolete forms of Iranian words used as logograms; much in the same way as 'ye' may be used for 'the,' and 'Xmas' for 'Christmas' in English. The use of all these logograms was, however, quite optional, as their usual Persian equivalents might be substituted for any of them at any time, according to each particular writer's taste and discretion. But whenever they are employed they form what is called the Huzvâris portion of the Pahlavi; while the other words, intended to be pronounced as they are spelt, form the Pâzand portion.

Many attempts have been made to explain the word Huzvâris, but it cannot be said that any satisfactory etymology has yet been proposed. Like the word Pahlavî it seems hardly to occur in any old Pahlavi text, but only in colophons, chapter-headings, and similar notes of modern writers; it seems, therefore, more reasonable to trace it to modern Persian than direct to any more ancient source. Its Pahlavi form, hûzvâris or aûzvârisn, appears to represent the modern Persian uzvâris, which is rarely used; the usual Persian form of the word being zuvâris. Now zuvâris is precisely the form of an abstract noun derived from the crude form of a verb zuvârîdan, which has been admitted into some Persian dictionaries on the authority of Golius[1],

[1] See Castelli Lexicon Heptaglotton, Pars altera, London, 1669.

with the meaning 'to grow old, to become thread-bare.' If such a verb really exists in Persian, although its meaning may imply 'decrepitude or decay' rather than 'antiquity or obsoleteness,' yet its abstract noun would not be altogether inapplicable to the logograms used in Pahlavi, which are, in fact, last remnants of older writings.

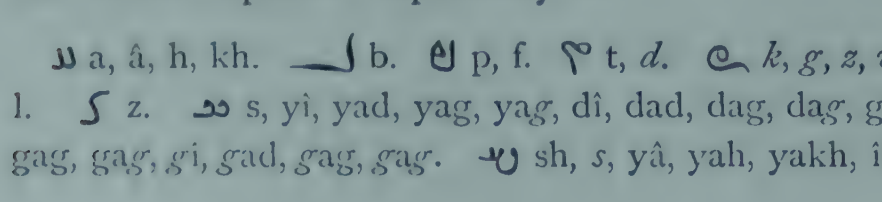
The word Pâzand is probably derived from Av. paitizaⁿti, with the meaning 're-explanation,' that is, a further interpretation of the Pahlavi Zand in the Persian vernacular. This term is applied not only to the purely Persian words in Pahlavi texts, but also (as already noticed) to transliterations of the said texts, either in Avesta or modern Persian characters, in which all the Huzvâris words are replaced by their Pâzand equivalents. These transliterations form what are called Pâzand texts; they retain the exact idiom and construction of the Pahlavi original, and represent the mode in which it was read. It may be remarked, however, that all such Pâzand texts, as have been examined, seem to have been written in India, so that they may be suspected of representing some corrupt Gugarâti pronunciation of Persian, rather than the peculiar orthography of any period of the Persian language.

This theory of the origin and development of Pahlavi writing could hardly be upheld, unless we could trace the same artificial mixture of Huzvâris and Pâzand in all accessible Pahlavi records, from their earliest appearance to the present time. This we are able to do, even in the scanty materials afforded by the legends on the provincial Persian coins of the third century B.C. and second century A.D. already mentioned. But we can trace it with greater certainty not only in the coin legends, but also in the rock inscriptions of the earlier Sasanian kings (A.D. 226–388), in the latest of which we find the written language differing very slightly from that contained in the manuscripts preserved by the Parsis of the present day, although the characters differ very much in form. And, finally, in the legends on the coins of the later Sasanian kings (A.D. 388–651) and on seals of their times, we find even this difference in the shapes of the letters disappearing by degrees. In

fact, all the materials at our disposal tend to show that Huzvâris has been an essential constituent of all Pahlavi writings from the time of Alexander's successors to that of the disuse of Pahlavi characters; but we have no reason to suppose that the spoken language of the great mass of the Persian people ever contained the Semitic words which they thus used as Huzvâris in their writings.

Although the use of Huzvâris, until explained recently, rendered the nature of the Pahlavi language very obscure, it added very little to the difficulty of understanding the Pahlavi texts, because the meaning of nearly every Huzvâris logogram was well known; being recorded in an old glossary preserved by the Parsis, in which every logogram is explained by its proper Pâzand equivalent. The extant copies of this old glossary generally contain the Huzvâris and Pâzand words written in the Pahlavi character, together with their traditional pronunciation, either in Avesta or modern Persian letters; there is, therefore, no particular difficulty in reading or translating the Huzvâris portion of a Pahlavi text, although doubts may often be entertained as to the accuracy of the traditional pronunciation.

The real difficulty of reading Pahlavi texts lies in the Pâzand portion (so far as it may be unexplained by existing vocabularies), and is chiefly occasioned by the ambiguity of some of the Pahlavi letters. The alphabet used in Pahlavi books contains only fourteen distinct letters, so that some letters represent several different sounds; and this ambiguity is increased by the letters being joined together, when a compound of two letters is sometimes exactly like some other single letter. The complication arising from these ambiguities may be understood from the following list of the sounds, simple and compound, represented by each of the fourteen letters of the Pahlavi alphabet respectively:—


a, â, h, kh. b. p, f. t, *d*. *k*, *g*, *z*, *v*. r, l. z. s, yî, yad, yag, yag, dî, dad, dag, dag, gî, gad, gag, gag, *gi*, *gad*, *gag*, *gag*. sh, *s*, yâ, yah, yakh, îh, îkh,

dâ, dah, dakh, gâ, gah, gakh, *gâ*, *gah*, *gakh*. ג gh. ג k. ם m. נ n, v, w, û, ô, r, l. י y, î, ê, d, g, *g*.

From this list it is easy to see the confusion produced by the letter ס s being exactly like the letter י y doubled, and by the letter ש sh being identical with a compound of י y and ד â; and there are, in fact, some compounds of two letters which have from ten to fifteen sounds in common use, besides others which might possibly occur. If it be further considered that there are only three letters (which are also consonants, as in most Semitic languages) to represent five long vowels, and that there are probably five short vowels to be understood, the difficulty of reading Pahlavi correctly may be readily imagined.

When Pahlavi writing was in common use this difficulty was probably no more felt by the Persians, than the complexity of Chinese characters is felt as an evil by a Chinese mandarin, or the corrupt system of English orthography by an educated Englishman. It is only the foreigner, or learner, who fully appreciates the difficulty of understanding such cumbrous systems of writing.

With regard, however, to their Huzvâris logograms the Persians seem to have experienced more difficulty. As the actual sounds of these Semitic words were rarely pronounced, in consequence of their Pâzand equivalents being substituted in reading, there must have been some risk of their true pronunciation being forgotten. That this risk was understood by the Persians, or Parsis, is proved by the existence of the Huzvâris-Pâzand glossary already described, which was evidently compiled as a record both of the pronunciation and meaning of the Huzvâris logograms. But its compilation does not appear to have been undertaken until the true pronunciation of some of these logograms had been already lost. Thus, although the traditional readings of most of the Semitic portion of the Huzvâris can be readily traced to well-known Chaldee words, there are yet many other such readings which are altogether inexplicable as Semitic

words. In most such cases, however, European scholars have found that the Huzvaris word can be easily read in some other way which at once connects it with some ordinary Chaldee equivalent. It may, therefore, be reasonably assumed that the compilers of the glossary had in some instances lost the correct pronunciation of these old Semitic words, and that, in such cases, they adopted (as a Parsi would probably do at the present day) the most obvious reading of the letters before them, which thenceforth became an artificial word to be handed down to posterity, by successive generations of writers, with all the authority of old tradition.

In the same manner the artificial pronunciation of the Iranian portion of the Huzvâris may be explained. The compilers of the glossary found a number of words in the Pahlavi texts, which were written in some obsolete or contracted manner; they knew the meanings of these words, but could not trace the true readings in the altered letters; they, therefore, adopted the most obvious readings of the written characters, and thus produced another series of artificial words, such as anhômâ for aûharmazd, yahân for yazdân, madônad for maînôk, shatan for shatrô, &c.

Naturally enough the Parsis are loth to admit the possibility of any error in their traditional readings of Huzvâris, and very few of them have yet adopted the views of European scholars further than to admit that they are ingenious hypotheses, which still require satisfactory proof. They are quite right in demanding such proof, and they may reasonably argue that the conflicting opinions of various European scholars do not tend to increase the certainty of their explanations. But, on the other hand, they are bound to examine all proofs that may be offered, and to consider the arguments of scholars, before utterly rejecting them in favour of their own preconceived notions of traditional authority.

Fortunately, we possess some means of ascertaining the ancient pronunciation of a few Huzvâris words, independent of the opinions of comparative philologists, in the inscrip-

tions already mentioned as having been engraved on rocks, and impressed on coins, by the earlier kings of the Sasanian dynasty in Persia. The earliest of these rock inscriptions records the name and titles of Artakhshatar son[1] of Pâpak, the first Sasanian monarch (A. D. 226–240); it is engraved in Greek and two kinds of old Pahlavi characters, which have been called Chaldæo-Pahlavi and Sasanian-Pahlavi, because the one bears more resemblance to Chaldee, both in its letters and the language they express, and the other is more frequently used by the subsequent Sasanian monarchs. A similar tri-lingual inscription records the names and titles of his son and successor Shahpûhar I (A. D. 240–271), who has also left a long bi-lingual inscription, in Chaldæo and Sasanian-Pahlavi, in a cave near Persepolis. Another long bi-lingual inscription, fragments of which have been found on stones among the ruins of Pâi Kûlî, is attributed to his early successors, who have also left us several uni-lingual inscriptions in Sasanian-Pahlavi, two of which are of great length, but none later than the end of the fourth century.

The language of the earlier of these inscriptions differs from that of the manuscripts preserved by the Parsis, chiefly in the use of several Semitic words unknown to the manuscript Huzvâris, the non-existence of Iranian Huzvâris (which is evidently a growth of later times), and the less frequent use of Persian terminations affixed to Semitic words. These differences however, are hardly greater than those which distinguish the English of Chaucer from that of our own day. Moreover, they gradually disappear in process of time, as we find the later inscriptions of the fourth century approaching much closer, in language, to the manuscripts.

As the alphabets of these inscriptions are less imperfect and ambiguous than that of the Pahlavi manuscripts, they render the pronunciation of many words much more certain. They consist of eighteen letters, having the following sounds :—

[1] So stated in the inscription, but Pahlavi MSS. call him the son of Pâpak's daughter and of Sâsân (see Bund. XXXI, 30).

1. a, â. 2. b. 3. p, f. 4. t, *d*. 5. *k*, *g*, 𐭪. 6. kh, h. 7. d. 8. r, v, w, û, ô. 9. z. 10. s. 11. sh, *s*. 12. k. 13. g. 14. l, r. 15. m. 16. n. 17. y, î, ê. 18. doubtful, being equivalent to Chaldee 𐡍𐡳 and to Pahl. MS. -man[1].

Comparing this list of sounds with that of the sounds of the manuscript alphabet (pp. xvi, xvii) it is evident that the inscriptions must afford a means of distinguishing â from kh, s from any binary compound of y, d, g, or *g*, sh from any compound of y, d, g, or *g* with â, h, or kh, n from v, r, or l, and y, d, g from each other; all which letters and compounds are left in doubt by the manuscript alphabet. Unfortunately we do not possess trustworthy copies of some of the inscriptions which are evidently the most important from a linguistic point of view[2]; but such copies as have been obtained supply corrections of traditional misreadings of about twenty-five Huzvâris logograms, and at the same time they confirm the correctness of three traditional readings which have been called in question by most European scholars. So far, therefore, the inscriptions would teach the Parsis that the decisions of comparative philologists are not likely to be right more than seven times out of eight, even when they are tolerably unanimous.

The Chaldæo-Pahlavi character appears to have soon

[1] Whether the sound of this letter can ever be satisfactorily settled remains doubtful. Levy, in his Beitrage, cited on p. xi, considers it to be the Semitic ם, on palæographical grounds; but there are serious objections to all the identifications that have been proposed.

[2] The Sasanian inscriptions, of which new and correct copies are most urgently wanted, are:—1. An inscription of thirty-one lines high up in the left side-compartment (behind the king) of the centre bas-relief of Naqs-i Ragab, near Persepolis. 2. Two inscriptions, of eleven and twelve lines respectively, on the stones of the edifice near the south-west corner of the great platform at Persepolis, south of the Hall of Columns (see Ouseley's Travels in Persia, vol. ii. p. 237 and plate 42). 3. All the fragments of the Pâî Kûlî inscription, of which probably not more than half have yet been copied.

Of the very long inscription behind the king's horse in the bas-relief of Naqs-i Rustam, containing more than seventy lines very much damaged, a copy taken by Westergaard in 1843, with his usual accuracy, probably gives nearly all that is legible. And of the Hâgîâbâd and shorter inscriptions, little or nothing remains doubtful.

gone out of use, after the establishment of the Sasanian dynasty, as the latest known inscription, in which it occurs, is that of Pâî Kûlî, which contains the name of Aûharmazd I (A. D. 271–272); while the long inscriptions of Naqs-i Rajab and Naqs-i Rustam, which contain the name of Varahrân II (A. D. 275–283), are engraved only in Sasanian-Pahlavi. From these facts it seems probable that Chaldæo-Pahlavi went out of use about A. D. 275. The Sasanian characters continue to appear, with very little alteration, upon the coins until the end of the fifth century, when most of them begin to assume the cursive form of the manuscript Pahlavi, which appears to have altered very slightly since the eighth century.

The oldest Pahlavi manuscript known to be extant, consists of several fragments of papyrus recently found in a grave in the Fayûm district in Egypt, and now in the Royal Museum at Berlin; it is supposed to have been written in the eighth century. Next to this, after a long interval, come four manuscripts written on Indian paper, all by the same hand, in A. D. 1323–1324; they are two copies of the Yasna and two of the Vendidad, containing the Avesta with its Zand, or Pahlavi translation and commentary; two of these old MSS. are now preserved in Kopenhagen, one in London, and one in Bombay. Next to these in age are two MSS. of miscellaneous Pahlavi texts, written probably about fifty years later; one of these is now in Kopenhagen and one in Bombay. Another MS. of nearly the same age is also a miscellaneous collection of Pahlavi texts, written in A. D. 1397, and now in Munich; where there is also one of the oldest Pâzand-Sanskrit MSS., a copy of the Ardâ-Vîrâf-nâmak, written in A. D. 1410. Another Pâzand-Sanskrit MS., a copy of the Khurdah Avesta, of about the same age, exists in Bombay. Pahlavi and Pâzand manuscripts of the sixteenth century are rather more numerous.

Pahlavi literature reached the zenith of its prosperity about thirteen centuries ago, when it included the whole literature of Persia. Seventy years later its destruction commenced with the fall of the Sasanian dynasty (A. D.

636–651); and the subsequent adoption of the modern Persian alphabet gave it its death-blow. The last remnants of Pahlavi writings are now contained in the few manuscripts still preserved by the Parsis in Western India, and their almost-extinct brethren in Persia. A careful estimate of the length of these remnants, so far as they are known to Europeans, has shown that the total extent of existing Pahlavi literature is about thirty-six times that of the Bundahiś, as translated in this volume. One-fifth of this literature consists of translations accompanying Avesta texts, and the remaining four-fifths are purely Pahlavi works which are nearly all connected with religion. How much of this literature may have descended from Sasanian times can hardly be ascertained as yet; in fact, it is only very recently that any trustworthy data, for determining the age of a few Pahlavi writings, have been discovered, as will be explained hereafter, when considering the age of the Bundahiś.

3. The Bundahiś.

The term Bundahiś, 'creation of the beginning,' or 'original creation,' is applied by the Parsis to a Pahlavi work[1] which, in its present state, appears to be a collection of fragments relating to the cosmogony, mythology, and legendary history taught by Mazdayasnian tradition, but which cannot be considered, in any way, a complete treatise on these subjects. This term is applicable enough to much of the earlier part of the work, which treats of the progressive development of creation under good and evil influences; but it is probably not the original name of the book. Its adoption was no doubt partly owing to the occurrence of the word bûn-dahiśn, or bûn-dahiśnîh, twice in the first sentence, and partly to its appropriateness to the subject. But the same sentence seems to inform

[1] When this work forms part of a collection of Pahlavi texts, the whole manuscript is sometimes called 'the great Bundahiś.' There also exists a Sadd̲ar Bundahiś, or Bundahiś of a hundred chapters, which is a comparatively modern compilation, detailing the chief customs and religious laws of the Parsis in a hundred sections.

us that the actual name of the treatise was Zand-âkâs, 'knowing the tradition.'

The work commences by describing the state of things in the beginning; the good spirit being in endless light and omniscient, and the evil spirit in endless darkness and with limited knowledge. Both produced their own creatures, which remained apart, in a spiritual or ideal state, for three thousand years, after which the evil spirit began his opposition to the good creation under an agreement that his power was not to last more than nine thousand years, of which only the middle three thousand were to see him successful. By uttering a sacred formula the good spirit throws the evil one into a state of confusion for a second three thousand years, while he produces the archangels and the material creation, including the sun, moon, and stars. At the end of that period the evil spirit, encouraged by the demons he had produced, once more rushes upon the good creation, to destroy it. The demons carry on conflicts with each of the six classes of creation, namely, the sky, water, earth, plants, animals represented by the primeval ox, and mankind represented by Gâyômar*d*; producing little effect but movement in the sky, saltness in the water, mountains in the earth, withering in plants, and death to the primeval ox, and also to Gâyômar*d* after an interval.

Then follows a series of chapters describing the seven regions of the earth, its mountains and seas, the five classes of animals, the origin of mankind, generation, the five kinds of fire and three sacred fires, the white Hôm tree and the tree of many seeds, the three-legged ass, the ox Hadhayôs, the bird *K*âmrôs, and other birds and animals opposed to the evil creation, the rivers of the world, the seventeen species of liquids, the lakes, the origin of the ape and bear, the chiefs of the several kinds of creatures and creations, the calendar, lineal measures, trees and plants, the characteristics of various demons, the spiritual chiefs of the various regions of the earth, and the resurrection and future existence; all which descriptions are given on the authority of the Dîn, which may have been some particular

book, or revelation generally. The concluding chapters give the genealogies of the legendary Persian kings and heroes, and of Zaratûst and certain priests, together with an epitome of Persian chronology from the creation to the Muhammadan conquest.

As the work now stands it is evidently of a fragmentary character, bearing unmistakable marks both of omissions and dislocations; and the extant manuscripts, as will be seen, differ among themselves both as to the extent and arrangement of the text. Many passages have the appearance of being translations from an Avesta original, and it is very probable that we have in the Bundahis either a translation, or an epitome, of the Dâmdâd Nask, one of the twenty-one books into which the whole of the Zoroastrian scriptures are said to have been divided before the time of Darius. This may be guessed from a comparison of the contents of the Bundahis with those of the Dâmdâd Nask, which are detailed in the Dînî-vagarkard as follows[1]:—'It contained an explanation of the spiritual existence and heaven, good and evil, the material existence of this world, the sky and the earth, and everything which Aûharmazd produced in water, fire, and vegetation, men and quadrupeds, reptiles and birds, and everything which is produced from the waters, and the characteristics of all things. Secondly, the production of the resurrection and future existence; the concourse and separation at the Kinvad bridge; on the reward of the meritorious and the punishment of sinners in the future existence, and such-like explanations.' Moreover, the Dâmdâd Nask is twice quoted as an authority in the Selections of Zâd-sparam (IX, 1, 16), when treating of animals, in nearly the same words as those used in the Bundahis.

The first manuscript of the Bundahis seen in Europe was brought from Surat by Anquetil Duperron in 1761, and he published a French translation of it in his great work on the Zend-Avesta in 1771[2]. This manuscript,

[1] See Haug's Essays, &c., second edition, pp. 127, 128.

[2] Zend-Avesta, ouvrage de Zoroastre, &c., par Anquetil Duperron; Paris, 1771. Tome seconde, pp. 343-422, Boun-dehesch.

which is now in the National Library at Paris, was a modern copy, written A. D. 1734, and contained a miscellaneous collection of Pahlavi writings besides the Bundahiś. And Anquetil's translation, though carefully prepared in accordance with the information he had obtained from his Parsi instructor, is very far from giving the correct meaning of the original text in many places.

In 1820 the very old codex from which Anquetil's MS. had been copied was brought to Europe, from Bombay, by the Danish scholar Rask, and was subsequently deposited in the University Library at Kopenhagen. This most important codex, which will be more particularly described under the appellation of K20, appears to have been written during the latter half of the fourteenth century; and a facsimile of the Pahlavi text of the Bundahiś, which it contains, was very carefully traced from it, lithographed, and published by Westergaard in 1851 [1].

In a review of this lithographed edition of the Pahlavi text, published in the Gottinger Gelehrte Anzeigen in 1854 [2], Haug gave a German translation of the first three chapters of the Bundahiś. And Spiegel, in his Traditional Literature of the Parsis [3], published in 1860 a German translation of many passages in the Bundahiś, together with a transcript of the Pahlavi text of Chaps. I, II, III, and XXX in Hebrew characters. But the complete German translation of the Bundahiś by Windischmann, with his commentary on its contents, published in his Zoroastrian Studies [4] in 1863, was probably the most important step in advance since the time of Anquetil, and the utmost

[1] Bundehesh, Liber Pehlvicus. E vetustissimo codice Havniensi descripsit, duas inscriptiones regis Saporis Primi adjecit, N. L. Westergard; Havniæ, 1851.

[2] Ueber die Pehlewi-Sprache und den Bundehesh, von Martin Haug; Göttingen, 1854.

[3] Die Traditionelle Literatur der Parsen in ihrem Zusammenhange mit den angränzenden Literaturen, dargestellt von Fr. Spiegel; Wien, 1860.

[4] Zoroastriche Studien. Abhandlungen zur Mythologie und Sagengeschichte des alten Iran, von Fr. Windischmann (nach dem Tode des Verfassers herausgegeben von Fr. Spiegel); Berlin, 1863.

that could be done on the authority of a single MS. which is far from perfect.

In 1866 another very old codex, containing the Pahlavi texts of the Bundahiś and other works, was brought to Europe by Haug, to whom it had been presented at Surat in 1864. It is now in the State Library at Munich, and will be more minutely described under the appellation of M6. In this codex the Bundahiś is arranged in a different order from that in K20, and Chaps. XXVIII, XXIX, and XXXI–XXXIII are omitted.

A second complete German translation of the Bundahiś, with a lithographed copy of the Pahlavi text, a transliteration of the text in modern Persian characters, and a glossary of all the words it contains, was published by Justi in 1868[1]. Its author, having had access to other MSS. (descended from M6) at London and Oxford, was able to rectify many of the deficiencies in Windischmann's translation; but, otherwise, he made but little progress in elucidating difficult passages.

Other European writers have published the result of their studies of particular parts of the Bundahiś, but it does not appear that any of them have attempted a continuous translation of several chapters.

Whether the existence of previous translations be more of an assistance than a hindrance in preparing a new one, may well be a matter of doubt. Previous translations may prevent oversights, and in difficult passages it is useful to see how others have floundered through the mire; but, on the other hand, they occasion much loss of time, by the necessity of examining many of their dubious renderings before finally fixing upon others that seem more satisfactory. The object of the present translation is to give the meaning of the original text as literally as possible, and with a minimum of extra words; the different renderings of other translators being very rarely noticed, unless there be some probability of their being of service

[1] Der Bundehesh, zum ersten Male herausgegeben, transcribirt, übersetzt, und mit Glossar versehen, von Ferdinand Justi; Leipzig, 1868.

to the reader. Some doubtful words and passages still defy all attempts at satisfactory solution, but of these the reader is warned; and, no doubt, a few oversights and mistakes will be discovered.

With regard to the original text, we have to recover it from four manuscripts which are, more or less, independent authorities, and may be styled K20, K20b, M6, and TD. The first three of these have evidently descended, either directly or through one or more intermediate copies, from the same original; but the source of TD, so far as it can be ascertained, seems to have been far removed from that of the others. All the other MSS. of the Bundahiṣ, which have been examined, whether Pahlavi or Pâzand, are descended either from K20 or M6, and are, therefore, of no independent authority.

K20 is the very old codex already mentioned as having been brought from Bombay by Rask in 1820, and is now No. 20 of the collection of Avesta and Pahlavi MSS. in the University Library at Kopenhagen. It consists now of 173 folios of very old and much-worn Indian paper of large octavo size, but five other folios are certainly missing, besides an uncertain number lost from the end of the volume. This MS. contains twenty Pahlavi texts, written twenty lines to the page, and some of them accompanied by Avesta; the Bundahiṣ is the ninth of these texts, and occupies fols. 88–129, of which fol. 121 is missing. Three of the texts, occurring before the Bundahiṣ, have dated colophons, but the dates are A.Y. 690, 720, and 700, all within 36 folios; it is, therefore, evident that these dates have been copied from older MSS.; but at the same time the appearance of the paper indicates that the actual date of the MS. cannot be much later than A.Y. 720 (A.D. 1351), and there are reasons for believing that it was written several years before A.Y. 766 (A.D. 1397), as will be explained in the description of M6. Owing to its age and comparative completeness this MS. of the Bundahiṣ is certainly the most important one extant, although comparison with other MSS. proves that its writer was rather careless, and frequently omitted words and phrases. The

loss of fol. 121, though it has hitherto left an inconvenient gap in the text (not filled up by other MSS.), is more than compensated by the three extra chapters which this MS. and its copies have hitherto alone supplied. The text on the lost folio was supposed by Anquetil to have contained a whole chapter besides portions of the two adjacent ones; this is now known to be a mistake, Anquetil's Chap. XXVIII being quite imaginary; the end of Chap. XXVII has long been supplied from other MSS., but the beginning of the next chapter has hitherto been missing.

Only two copies of K20 appear to be known to Europeans; the best of these is the copy brought from Surat by Anquetil, No. 7 of his collection of manuscripts, now in the National Library at Paris; this was written in A. D. 1734, when K20 appears to have been nearly in its present imperfect state, though it may have had some 15 folios more at the end. This copy seems to have been carefully written; but the same cannot be said of the other copy, No. 21 in the University Library at Kopenhagen, which is full of blunders, both of commission and omission, and can hardly have been written by so good a Pahlavi scholar as Dastûr Dârâb, Anquetil's instructor, although attributed to him.

K20b consists of nineteen loose folios[1], found by Westergaard among some miscellaneous fragments in the collection of Avesta and Pahlavi MSS. in the University Library at Kopenhagen, and now forming No. 20b in that collection. The first two folios are lost, but the third folio commences with the Pahlavi equivalent of the words 'knew that Aharman exists' (Bund. Chap. I, 8), and the text continues to the end of Chap. XI, 1, where it leaps at once (in the middle of a line on the fifteenth folio) to Chap. XXX, 15, 'one brother who is righteous,' whence the text continues to the end of Chap. XXXI, 15, which is followed by Chaps. XXXII, XXXIV, as in K20. This

[1] I am indebted to the late Professor N. L. Westergaard for all information about this MS., and also for a tracing of the Pahlavi text of so much of Chap. XXXI as is contained in it.

MS. is not very old, and contains merely a fragment of the text; but its value consists in its not being a descendant of either K20 or M6, as it clearly represents a third line of descent from their common original. It agrees with K20 in the general arrangement of its chapters, so far as they go, and also in containing Chap. XXXI; but it differs from it in some of the details of that chapter, and agrees with M6 in some verbal peculiarities elsewhere; it has not, however, been collated in any other chapter. The omission of nearly twenty chapters, in the centre of the work, indicates that some one of the MSS. from which it is descended, had lost many of its central folios before it was copied, and that the copyist did not notice the deficiency; such unnoticed omissions frequently occur in Pahlavi manuscripts.

M6 is the very old codex brought to Europe by Haug in 1866, and now No. 6 of the Haug collection in the State Library at Munich. It consists of 240 folios of very old, but well-preserved, Indian paper of large octavo size (to which thirteen others, of rather later date, have been prefixed) bound in two volumes. This MS. contains nineteen Pahlavi texts, written from seventeen to twenty-two lines to the page, and some of them accompanied by Avesta; eleven of these texts are also found in K20, and the Bundahiś is the fourteenth of the nineteen, occupying fols. 53–99 of the second volume. Two of the other texts have dated colophons, the dates being fifty days apart in A. Y. 766 (A. D. 1397), and as there are 150 folios between the two dates there is every probability that they are the actual dates on which the two colophons were written. The arrangement of the Bundahiś in this MS. is different from that in K20, giving the chapters in the following order:—Chaps. XV–XXIII, I–XIV, XXIV–XXVII, XXX, XXXII, XXXIV, and omitting Chaps. XXVIII, XXIX, and XXXI. These omissions and the misplacement of Chaps. I–XIV render it probable that the MS., from which the Bundahiś in M6 was copied, was already in a state of decay; and this supposition is confirmed by upwards of fifty peculiar mistakes, scattered over most parts of the

text in M6, which are evidently due to the illegibility of the original from which it was copied, or to its illegible words having been touched up by an ignorant writer, instances of which are not uncommon in old Pahlavi MSS. Eliminating these errors, for which the writer of M6 cannot be held responsible, he seems to have been a more careful copyist than the writer of K20, and supplies several words and phrases omitted by the latter. The close correspondence of K20 and M6 in most other places, renders it probable that they were copied from the same original, in which case K20 must have been written several years earlier than M6, before the original MS. became decayed and difficult to read. It is possible, however, that K20 was copied from an early copy of the original of M6; in which case the date of K20 is more uncertain, and may even be later than that of M6.

Several MSS. of the Bundahiś descended from M6 are in existence. One is in the MS. No. 121 of the Ouseley collection in the Bodleian Library at Oxford, and contains the chapters in the following order:—Chaps. XV–XXIII, I–VII, 17 (to 'Arag river'), XII–XIV, XXIV–XXVII, XXX, VII, 12–XI; followed by Sls. Chap. XX, 4–17, also derived from M6. Another is in the library of Dastûr Jâmâspji Minochiharji at Bombay, and contains the chapters also in a dislocated state (due to the misplacement of folios in some former MS.) as follows:—Chaps. XV–XXIII, I–XI, 5 (to 'and the evil spirit'), XII, 2 (from 'Sikidâv')–XII, 12 (first word), XI, 5 (from 'produced most for Khvanîras')–XII, 2 (to '*and* Kôndras, Mount'), XXX, 32 (from 'the renovation arises in')–XXX, 33, XXXII, XXXIV, Sls. Chap. XVIII, Bund. Chaps. XII, 12 (from 'Aîrak')–XIV, XXIV–XXVII, XXX. A third is in the library of Dastûr Nôshirvânji Jâmâspji at Poona, and contains the text in the same order as M6. A fragment of the Pahlavi text of the Bundahiś, also descended from M6, occupies eight folios in the Additional Oriental MS. No. 22,378 in the Library of the British Museum; it contains Chaps. XVIII, XIX, 17, and XX, 1–2 (to 'one from the other').

There are also several Pâzand manuscripts of the Bun-

dahiś, written in Avesta characters, and likewise derived from M6. One of the best of these is No. 22 of the collection of Avesta and Pahlâvi MSS. in the India Office Library at London; it is old, and has the date A.Y. 936 (A.D. 1567) in a Pahlavi colophon on fol. 111, but this may have been copied from an older MS.; its contents are arranged as follows:—Chaps. XVIII–XXIII, I–XIV, XXIV–XXVII, XXX, XXXII, XXXIV, followed by several short Pâzand texts, only part of which are derived from M6, and the last of them being left incomplete by the loss of the folios which originally formed the end of the volume; instead of these lost folios others, containing Chaps. XV–XVII, have been added and bound up with the rest. Another MS., No. 7 in the same collection, which is dated A.Y. 1174 (A.D. 1805), is a modern copy derived from No. 22 through one or more intervening MSS.[1]; it contains precisely the same text, but with many variations in orthography, indicative of the very uncertain character of Pâzand spelling. Two fragments of the Pâzand text are also contained in the MSS. No. 121 at Oxford, already mentioned; they consist of Chaps. V, 3–7 (to 'would have known the secret') and XXV, 18–22. Another fragment, evidently copied from an old MS., is found on fols. 34, 35 of the Rivâyat MS. No. 8 of the collection in the India Office Library; it consists of Chap. XVIII, 1–8.

The Pâzand text of the Bundahiś, derived from M6, is also written in Persian characters in M7 (No. 7 of the Haug collection at Munich), dated A.Y. 1178 (A.D. 1809). It is interlined by Persian glosses, word for word, and consists of Chaps. XVIII–XXIII, I–XIV, XXIV–XXVII, and XXX on fols. 81–119, with Chaps. XV–XVII on fols. 120–126, a repetition of Chap. XV and part of XVI on fols. 223-227, and Chap. XXXII on fol. 232.

Thus far, it will be noticed, we have two good independent authorities, K20 and M6, for ascertaining the text of the Bundahiś in the fourteenth century, so far as Chaps. I–

[1] This is proved by an omission in fol. 40, which clearly indicates the loss of a folio in an intermediate MS.

XXVII, XXX, XXXII, and XXXIV are concerned; and we have also, in K20b, a second authority for so much of Chap. XXXI as occurs in K20; but for Chaps. XXVIII and XXIX we have nothing but K20 to rely on, and part of Chap. XXVIII is lost in that manuscript. Such was the unsatisfactory state of that part of the text until Dec. 1877, when information about the MS. TD was received, followed by further details and a copy of Chaps. XXVIII, XXIX, and XXXI–XXXIII in Oct. 1878[1].

TD is a manuscript of the Bundahiś which contains a much more extensive text than the MSS. already described, but whether it be an extension of the hitherto-received text, or the received text be an abridgement of this longer one, is likely to be a matter of dispute among Pahlavi scholars until the whole of the new text has been thoroughly examined. At any rate, the contents of this MS., combined with those of some MSS. of the Dâdistân-i Dînîk, afford a means of fixing the date of this recension of the Bundahiś, as will be seen hereafter.

This MS. belongs to a young Mobad named Tchmuras Dinshawji Anklesaria in Bombay, and was brought from Persia a few years ago by a Mobad named Khodabakhsh Farod Abadan. It occupies the first 103 folios of the volume containing it, and is followed by 112 more folios containing the Nîrangistân. The first original folio, which contained the text as far as Chap. I, 5 (to 'endless light'), has been lost and replaced by another (which, however, is now old) containing some introductory sentences, besides the missing text. The last original folio of the Bundahiś, containing the last five lines of the last chapter, has also been lost and replaced by another modern folio, which contains the missing text followed by two colophons, both expressing approval of the text, and asserting that the MS. was written by Gôpatshah Rûstâm Bôndâr. The first of these colophons

[1] I am indebted to Mr. Khurshedji Rustamji Cama, of Bombay (who is well known for the interest he takes in all matters relating to the ancient customs and history of his fellow-countrymen), for obtaining this information, and to the owner of the MS. for his liberality in supplying me with all the details and extracts mentioned in the text.

is undated, but gives the testimony of Dastûr Rûstâm[1] Gûstâsp Ardashîr, who is known to have written another MS dated A.Y. 1068 (A.D. 1699). The second colophon is by Dastûr Jamshêd Jâmâsp Hakim, and is dated A.Y. 1113 (A.D. 1743), which was probably the date when this last folio was supplied to complete the old defective MS.

With regard to the age of the older part of this MS. we can arrive at an approximation in the following manner:— A valuable MS. of the Dâdistân-i Dînîk, which also belongs to Tehmuras Dinshawji, was written (according to a colophon which it contains) by Gôpatshah Rûstôm[2] Bandâr Malkâ-mardân in the land of Kirmân, who was evidently the same person as the writer of TD. Another MS. of the Dâdistân-i Dînîk was written by Marzapân Frêdan Vâhrôm Rûstâm Bôndâr Malkâ-mardân Din-ayâr, also in the land of Kirmân, in A.Y. 941 (A.D. 1572). Comparing these two genealogies together it seems evident that Gôpatshah was a brother of Vâhrôm, the grandfather of Marzapân, and, therefore, a grand-uncle of Marzapân himself. Allowing for these two generations, it is probable that Gôpatshah wrote TD about A.Y. 900 (say A.D. 1530); although instances have occurred in which a son has written a MS. at an earlier date than that of one written by his father.

The introductory sentences on the first restored folio are evidently a modern addition to the text, after it had acquired the name of Bundahis; but they seem to have been copied from some other MS., as the copyist appears to have hardly understood them, having written them continuously with the beginning of the text, without break or stop. The spelling is modern, but that may be due to the copyist; and the language is difficult, but may be translated as follows[3]:—

'The propitiation of the creator Aûharmazd, the radiant,

[1] This Dastûr is said to have sprung from the laity, and not from a priestly family.

[2] The vowels â and ô (or û) often interchange in Pahlavi MSS. from Persia, probably owing to peculiarities of dialect, and the very broad sound of Persian â, like English a in call.

[3] English words in italics are additions to complete the sense.

glorious, omniscient, wise, powerful, and supreme, *by what is* well-thought, well-said, *and* well-done in thought, word, *and* deed, and the good augury of all the celestial angels *and* terrestrial angels upon the virtuous creation, I beseech.

'Written at the second fortunate conjunction (akhtar) in the high-priestship (dastûrîh) of the God-devoted, all-sagacious cultivator of righteousness, the lover of good works who is God-discerning, spirit-surveying, *and* approved by the good, the high-priest of the good religion of the Mazdayasnians, the glorified[1] Spendyâd *son* of Mâh-vindâd, *son* of Rûstôm, *son* of Shatrôyâr.

'The writing[2] of the Bûndahis *was* set going by the coming of the Arabs to the country of Iran, whose heterodoxy (dûs-dînîh) and ignorance have arisen from not understanding the mysteries of Kayân[3] orthodoxy (hûdînôîh) and of those revered by the upholders of the religion. From their deep seats it draws the purport of benedictions, *and* from dubious thinking of actions *it draws* words of true meaning, the disclosure of which is entertaining knowledge.

'On account of evil times, even he of the undecayed family of the Kayâns and the Kayân upholders of the religion are mingled with the obedient and just of those heterodox; and by the upper *class* the words of the orthodox, uttered in assembled worship, are considered as filthy vice. He also whose wish was to learn propriety (varâg) through this treatise (farhâng), might provide *it* for himself, from various places, by trouble and day and night painstaking, *but* was not able.'

The text of Chap. I then commences (without any intermediate stop) with the words zak zand-âkâsîh, 'that knowledge of tradition.' As the whole text of the Bundahis occupies about 203 pages in TD, and each page contains

[1] Literally, 'immortal-soulled,' a term implying generally that the person is dead; but it seems to have been applied to King Khûsrô I (Nôshirvân) during his lifetime. The time when this priest lived has yet to be discovered.

[2] Reading zektîbûn-i, equivalent to Pâz. nivîs-i; the MS. has zak tîbnâ.

[3] The hero tribe or princely race of the Kayânian dynasty, from which later Persian rulers have fancied themselves descended.

seventeen lines rather longer than those in K20, it is evident that the text in TD must be more than twice the length of that in K20, which occupied originally about eighty-three pages of twenty lines each. This additional text consists not only of additional matter in many of the chapters but also of extra chapters, which give the work a more complete appearance than it presents in the manuscripts hitherto known. The whole number of chapters in TD appear to be forty-two, the general character of the contents of which may be gathered from the following list of the headings of each chapter, with the space it occupies in TD, and a reference to the corresponding chapter of the translation in this volume (such chapters as seem to be entirely wanting in K20 being marked with an asterisk):—

1. The knowledge of tradition, first about Aûharmazd's original creation and the antagonism of the evil spirit, afterwards about the nature of the creatures of the world, from the original creation till the end; 19 pages; see Chap. I.

2. On the formation of light; 11 pages; see Chap. II.

3. The rush of the destroyer at the creatures; 6 pages; see Chaps. III, IV.

4. On the opposition of the two spirits, that is, in what manner the arch-fiends have come spiritually in opposition to the celestial angels; 10 pages; see Chap. V for two of the middle pages.

5. On the waging of the conflict (Ârdik) of the creations of the world, encountering the evil spirit; 1 page; see Chap. VI.

6. The second conflict the water waged; 3 pages; see Chap. VII.

7. The third conflict the earth waged; 1 page; see Chap. VIII.

8. The fourth conflict the plants waged; ½ page; see Chap. IX.

9. The fifth conflict the primeval ox waged; ⅓ page; see Chap. X.

*10. The sixth conflict Gâyômard waged; 1⅓ page.

*11. The seventh conflict the fire waged; ⅓ page.

*12. The eighth conflict the constellations waged; ⅓ page.

*13. The ninth conflict the celestial angels waged with the evil spirit; three lines.

*14. Tenth, the stars practised non-intermeddling (agûmêgisn); ½ page.

*15. On the species of those creations; 2⅓ pages.

16. On the nature of lands; 1⅓ page; see Chap. XI.

17. On the nature of mountains; 4½ pages; see Chap. XII.

18. On the nature of seas; 2½ pages; see Chap. XIII.

19. On the nature of rivers; 5⅓ pages; see Chaps. XX, XXI.

20. On the nature of lakes; 1⅓ page; see Chap. XXII.

21. On the nature of the five classes of animals; 5⅓ pages; see Chap. XIV.

22. On the nature of men; 7½ pages; see Chap. XV[1].

23. On the nature of generation of every kind; 5 pages; see Chap. XVI.

24. On the nature of plants; 3½ pages; see Chap. XXVII.

25. On the chieftainship of men and animals *and* every single thing; 2⅓ pages; see Chap. XXIV.

26. On the nature of fire; 4⅔ pages; see Chap. XVII.

*27. On the nature of sleep; 2⅓ pages.

*28. On the nature of wind and cloud and rain; 9⅔ pages.

*29. On the nature of noxious creatures; 4½ pages[2].

*30. On the nature of the wolf species; 2 pages.

31. On things of every kind that are created by the spirits[3], and the opposition which came upon them; 7¾ pages; see Chaps. XVIII, XIX.

32. On the religious year; 4 pages; see Chaps. XXV, XXVI.

*33. On the great exploits of the celestial angels; 17½ pages.

34. On the evil-doing of Aharman and the demons; 7 pages, as in Chap. XXVIII.

[1] TD contains half a page more near the beginning, and a page and a half more at the end.

[2] Probably Chap. XXIII of the translation forms a part either of this chapter or the next.

[3] This word is doubtful.

*35. On the body of man *and* the opinion of the world[1]; 7 pages.

36. On the *spiritual* chieftainship of the regions *of the earth*; 3½ pages, as in Chap. XXIX.

*37. On the *Kinvad* bridge *and* the souls of the departed; 5⅔ pages.

*38. On the celebrated provinces of the country of Iran, the residence of the Kayâns; 5 pages[2].

*39. On the calamities of various millenniums happening to the country of Iran; 8⅓ pages[3].

40. On the resurrection and future existence; 6⅓ pages; see Chap. XXX.

41. On the race and offspring of the Kayâns; 8⅓ pages, as in Chaps. XXXI–XXXIII.

42. On the computation of years of the Arabs; 2¼ pages; see Chap. XXXIV.

Comparing this list of contents with the text in K20, as published in Westergaard's lithographed facsimile edition, it appears that TD contains, not only fifteen extra chapters, but also very much additional matter in the chapters corresponding to Chaps. I, II, V, XVI, XXVIII, and XXXI of the translation in this volume, and smaller additions to those corresponding to Chaps. III, IV, XV, XVII, and XXXIV. The arrangement of the chapters in TD is also much more methodical than in the Indian MSS., especially with regard to Chaps. XX, XXI, XXII, and XXVII, which evidently occupy their proper position in TD; and so far as Chap. XX is concerned, this arrangement is confirmed by the insertion of its first sentence between Chaps. XIII and XIV in the Indian MSS., which indicates that the whole chapter must have been in that position in some older copy. In fact, the Indian MSS. must probably be now regarded merely as collections of

[1] The meaning is doubtful and must depend upon the context.

[2] This chapter begins with a translation of the first fargard of the Vendidad, and concludes with an account of buildings erected by various kings.

[3] Containing an account of the kings reigning in the various millenniums, and concluding with prophecies similar to those in the Bahman Yast.

extracts from the original work; this has been long suspected from the fragmentary character of the text they contain, but it could hardly be proved until a more complete text had been discovered.

Whether TD may be considered as a copy of the text as it stood originally, or merely of an after recension of the work, can hardly be determined with certainty until the whole contents of the manuscript have been carefully examined; it is, therefore, to be hoped that its owner will be induced to publish a lithographed facsimile of the whole, after the manner of Westergaard's edition. So far as appears in the lengthy and valuable extracts, with which he has kindly favoured me, no decided difference of style can be detected between the additional matter and the text hitherto known, nor any inconsistencies more striking than such as sometimes occur in the Indian MSS. On the other hand, it will be noticed that heading No. 25 in the list of contents seems to be misplaced, which is an argument against the text being in its original state; and the style of the Bundahi*s* is so much less involved and obscure than that of the Selections of Zâ*d*-sparam (see Appendix to the Bundahi*s*), which treat of some of the same subjects, that it may be fairly suspected of having been written originally in a different age. But the writer of the text, as it appears in TD, calls Zâ*d*-sparam[1] one of his contemporaries (see Chap. XXXIII, 10, 11 of the translation); it may, therefore, be suspected that he merely re-edited an old text with some additions of his own, which, however, are rather difficult to distinguish from the rest. No stress can be laid upon peculiarities of orthography in TD, as they are, in all likelihood, attributable to copyists long subsequent to Zâ*d*-sparam's contemporaries.

Any future translator of the Bundahi*s* will probably have to take the text in TD as the nearest accessible approach to the original work; but the present translation is based, as heretofore, upon the text in K20, corrected in many places from M6, but with due care not to adopt

[1] He writes the name Zâ*d*-sparham.

readings which seem due to the illegibility of the original from which M6 was copied, as already explained. In Chaps. XXVIII, XXIX, XXXI, XXXII, and XXXIII, however, TD has been taken as a principal authority, merely checked[1] by K20, and having its additional passages carefully indicated; and in Chap. XXXI, K20b has also been consulted.

Since the present translation was printed, any lingering doubts, as to the genuineness of the text in TD, have been, in a great measure, dissipated by the discovery that a small fragment[1] of an old MS. of the Bundahiṣ, which has long been in Europe, is evidently a portion of a text of similar character to TD, and of exactly the same extent. This small fragment consists of two folios belonging to an old MS. brought from Persia by the late Professor Westergaard in 1843–44, and which is evidently the codex mentioned by him in the preface to his Zend-Avesta, p. 8, note 3. These two folios, which are numbered 130 and 131 in Persian words, now form the commencement of this old mutilated MS., of which the first 129 folios have been lost. They contain very little more than one page of the Bundahiṣ text, namely, the last sentences of the last chapter (corresponding to Bund. XXXIV, 7–9), followed by a colophon occupying less than two pages. This fragment of the text contains some additional details not found in the Indian MSS., as well as a few other variations of no great importance. It may be translated as follows:—

'[. . . . Sâhm[2] was in those *reigns of* Âûzôbô, Kavâd, and Mânûs*k*ihar.] Kaî-Kâyûs, till *his* going to the sky, seventy-five years, and after that, seventy-five years, altogether a hundred and fifty years; Kai-Khûsrôbô sixty

[1] I am indebted to Professor G. Hoffmann, of Kiel, for directing my attention to this fragment, and also for kindly sending me a facsimile of it. It had been recognised as a portion of the Bundahiṣ by Dr. Andreas some years ago, and probably by the owner of the MS., the late Professor Westergaard, long before that.

[2] See Bund. XXXI, 27. As the beginning of this sentence is lost, its translation is uncertain. Details not found in K20 and M6 are here enclosed in brackets, and words added by the translator to complete the sense are printed in italics.

years; Kaî-Lôharâsp a hundred and twenty years; Kaî-Vistâsp, till the coming of the religion, thirty years; [total (mar) one thousand years[1]. Then the millennium reign came to Capricornus, and Zaratûhast[2] the Spîtâmân, with tidings (pêtkhambarîh) from the creator Aûharmazd, came to King Vistâsp; *and* Vistâsp *was* king,] after receiving the religion, ninety years.

'Vohûman, *son* of Spend-dâd, a hundred and twelve years; Hûmâî, daughter of Vohûman, thirty years; Dârâî, son of Kihar-âzâd, that is, *of the daughter* of Vohûman, twelve years; Dârâî, son of Dârâî, fourteen years; and Alexander the Rûman[3] fourteen years.

'The Askânians should bear the title in an uninterrupted sovereignty two hundred and so many[4] years; and Artakh-shatar, son of Pâpak, and the number of the Sâsânians *bear* it four hundred and sixty years, until the withering Arabs obtained a place[5] [as far as the year 447 of the Persians; now *it is* the Persian year 527][6].'

The colophon, which follows, states that the MS. was finished on the thirteenth day of the ninth month A.Y. 936 (A.D. 1567), and was written by Mitrô-âpân, *son* of Anôshak-rûbân, *son* of Rûstâm. This MS. is, therefore, of nearly the same age as TD; but there has been no opportunity of collating the fragment of it, which is still extant, with the corresponding portion of TD. That it was a MS. of the same character as TD (that is, one containing the same text as K20, but with much additional matter) appears clearly

[1] From the beginning of Frêdûn's reign, when the millennium of Sagittarius commenced.

[2] The usual way of spelling Zaratûst in old MSS., excepting K20 and a few others.

[3] Here written correctly Alaksandar-i Arûmâî.

[4] Reading va and; as the final letter is d and not *d* it cannot be read nâvad as a variant of navad, 'ninety.'

[5] The words are, vad *g*înâk ayâft khûskô-i Tâzîkânð, but the exact meaning is rather doubtful

[6] The last date is doubtful, as the Pahlavi text gives the ciphers only for 'five and twenty-seven,' omitting that for 'hundred.' These Persian dates must either have been added by some former copyist, or Chap. XXXIV must have been appended to the Bundahis at a later date than the ninth century, when the preceding genealogical chapters were probably added to the original work (see p. xliii). The Persian year 527 was A.D. 1158.

from the fragment translated above. Regarding its original extent, it is possible to make an approximate estimate, by calculating the quantity of text which the 129 lost folios must have contained, from the quantity actually existing on folio 130. According to this calculation, the original extent of the text of the Bundahiś in this MS. must have been very nearly 30,000 words; and it is remarkable that a similar calculation of the extent of the text in TD, based upon the actual contents of ten folios out of 103, gives precisely the same result. This coincidence is a strong argument in favour of the absolute identity of the text lost from Westergaard's MS. with that actually existing in TD; it shows, further, that the original extent of the Bundahiś may now be safely estimated at 30,000 words, instead of the 13,000 contained in K20 when that MS. was complete.

That this fragment belonged to a separate MS, and is not the folio missing from the end of TD, is shown not only by its containing more of the text than is said to be missing, but also by the first folio of the fragment being numbered 130, instead of 103, and by its containing fifteen lines to the page, instead of seventeen, as would be necessary in order to correspond with TD.

Regarding the age of the Bundahiś many opinions have been hazarded, but as they have been chiefly based upon minute details of supposed internal evidence evolved from each writer's special misinterpretation of the text, it is unnecessary to detail them. The only indication of its age that can be fairly obtained from internal evidence, is that the text of the Bundahiś could not have been completed, in its present form, until after the Muhammadan conquest of Persia (A. D. 651). This is shown not only by the statements that the sovereignty 'went to the Arabs' (Chap. XXXIV, 9), that 'now, *through* the invasion of the Arabs, they (the negroes) are again diffused through the country of Iran' (Chap. XXIII, 3), and that 'whoever keeps the year by the revolution of the moon mingles summer with winter *and* winter with summer' (Chap. XXV, 19, referring probably to the Muhammadan year not corresponding with the seasons), but also, more positively

by the following translation of an extract from Chap. 39 in TD:—

'And when the sovereignty came to Yazdakard he exercised sovereignty twenty years, *and* then the Arabs rushed into the country of Iran in great multitude. Yazdakard did not prosper (lâ *s*âkaftô) in warfare with them, *and* went to Khûrâsân and Tûrkistân to seek horses, men, and assistance, and was slain by them there. The son of Yazdakard went to the Hindûs and fetched an army of champions; before it came, conducted unto Khûrâsân, that army of champions dispersed. The country of Iran remained with the Arabs, and their own irreligious law was propagated by them, and many ancestral customs were destroyed; the religion of the Mazdayasnians was weakened, *and* washing of corpses, burial of corpses, *and* eating of dead matter were put in practice. From the original creation until this day evil more grievous than this *has* not happened, for through their evil deeds—on account of want, foreign habits (Anirânîh), hostile acts, bad decrees, and bad religion—ruin, want, and other evils have taken lodgment.'

None of these passages could have been written before the Muhammadan conquest; but the writer, or editor, of the text as it appears in TD, supplies the means of approximating much more closely to the date of his work, in a passage in Chap. 41 of TD, in which he mentions the names of several of his contemporaries (see Chap. XXXIII, 10, 11). Among these, as already noticed, he mentions 'Zâd-sparham *son* of Yûdân-Yim,' who must have been the writer of the Selections of Zâd-sparam, a translation of which is added as an appendix to the Bundahi*s* in this volume. This writer was the brother of Mânû*sk*ihar son of Yûdân-Yim, who wrote the Dâ*d*istân-i Dînik[1], and from colophons found in certain MSS. of the Dâ*d*istân (which will be more particularly described in the next section of this introduction) it appears that this Mânû*sk*ihar was

[1] It is quite possible that Mânû*sk*ihar was also the reviser of the Bundahi*s*; see the note on Dâ*d*akîh-i Ashôvahistô in Chap. XXXIII, 10.

high-priest of Pârs and Kirmân in A. Y. 250 (A. D. 881). This date may, therefore, be taken as a very close approximation to the time at which the Bundahiś probably assumed the form we find in TD; but that MS., having been written about 650 years later, can hardly have been copied direct from the original. Whether that original was merely a new edition of an older Pahlavi work, as may be suspected from the simplicity of its language, or whether it was first translated, for the most part, from the Avesta of the Dâmdâd Nask, in the ninth century, we have no means of determining with certainty. Judging, however, from Chap. I, 1, the original Bundahiś probably ended with the account of the resurrection (Chap. XXX), and the extra chapters, containing genealogical and chronological details (matters not mentioned in Chap. I, 1), together with all allusions to the Arabs, were probably added by the revising editor in the ninth century. The last, or chronological, chapter may even have been added at a later date.

A Gugarâti translation, or rather paraphrase, of the Bundahiś was published in 1819 by Edal Dârâb Jamshêd Jâmâsp Âsâ, and a revised edition of it was published by Peshutan Rustam in 1877[1]. In the preface to the latter edition it is stated that the translator made use of two MSS., one being a copy of a manuscript written in Iran in A. Y. 776 by Rustamji Meherwanji Margabân Sheheriâr[2], and the other a MS. written in India by Dastûr Jamshêdji Jâmâspji in A. Y. 1139[3]. It is also mentioned that he was four years at work upon his translation. The editor of the new edition states that he has laboured to

[1] Bundehes ketâb, iâne duniâ-ni awal-thi te âkher sudhi pedâes-ni sahruât-ni hakikat; bigi-vâr sudhârine *kha*pâwanâr, Peshutan bin Rustam; Mumbai, 1877.

[2] There is no doubt whatever that the writer of the preface is referring to M6, although his description is incorrect. M6 was written at Bhrôč in India A. Y. 766 by Pêshôtan Râm Kâmdîn Shaharyâr Nêryôsang Shâhmard Shaharyâr Bâhrâm Aûrmazdyâr Râmyâr; but some portion of it (probably not the Bundahiś) was copied from a MS. written A. Y. 618 (A. D. 1249) by Rûstam Mihirâpân Marzapân Dahisn-ayâr, who must be the copyist mentioned in the preface to the Gugarâti translation.

[3] This is probably the copy derived from M6, and mentioned in p. xxx as being now in the library of Dastûr Jâmâspji Minochiharji.

improve the work by collecting all the further information he could find, on the various subjects, in many other Pahlavi works. The result of all this labour is not so much a mere translation of the Bundahiś, as a larger work upon the same subject, or a paraphrase more methodically arranged, as may be seen from the following summary of its contents:—

The headings of the fifty-nine chapters, which form the first part of the work, are:—Ahuramazd's covenant, account of the sky, of the first twelve things created, of Mount Alborg, of the twelve signs of the zodiac, of the stars, of the soul, of the first practices adopted by the creatures of the evil spirit Ahereman, of Ahereman's first breaking into the sky, of Ahereman's coming upon the primeval ox, of Ahereman's arrival in the fire, of Ahereman's coming upon Gaiomard, of the coming of Ahuramazd and Ahereman upon Gaiomard at the time of his creation, of the lustre residing in both spirits; further account of the arrangement of the sky, another account of all the mountains, of depressions for water, of great and small rivers, of the eighteen rivers of fresh water, of the seven external and seven internal liquids in the bodies of men, of the period in which water falling on the earth arrives at its destination, of the three spiritual rivers, of the star Tchestar's destroying the noxious creatures which Ahereman had distributed over the earth, of the prophet Zarathost's asking the creator Ahuramazd how long these noxious creatures will remain in the latter millenniums, of driving the poison of the noxious creatures out of the earth, of the divisions of the land, of the creator Ahuramazd's placing valiant stars as club-bearers over the heads of the demons, of all the things produced by the passing away of the primeval ox, of the 282 species of beasts and birds, of the bird named *K*amros, of the bird named Karsapad and the hollow of Vargamkard, of the birds who are enemies opposed to the demons and fiends, of the bitter and sweet plants among the fifty-five kinds of grain and twelve kinds of herbs, of the flowers of the thirty days, of the revolution of the sun and moon and stars, and how

night falls, and how the day becomes light, of the seven regions of the earth, of depressions, of the creatures of the sea, of the flow and ebb of the tide, of the three-legged ass, of the Gâhambârs, of Rapithvan, of the revolution of the seasons, of the production of mankind from the passing away of Gaiomard, of the production of offspring from the seed of men, of all fires, of all the clever work produced in the reign of King Jamshed and the production of the ape and bear, of the production of the Abyssinian and negro from Zohâk, of the splendour and glory of King Jamshed, of the soul of Kersâsp, of Kersâsp's soul being the first to rise, of the names of the prophet Zarathost's pedigree, of his going out into the world, of his children, of the orders given by Ahereman to the demons when the creator Ahuramazd created the creatures, of the weeping and raging of the evil spirit Ahereman, of the weeping of the demon of Wrath in the presence of Ahereman when the prophet Zarathost brought the religion, of the computation of twelve thousand years.

The headings of the thirteen chapters, which form the second part, are: — Account of the last millenniums, of the appearance of Hosedar-bâmi, of his going out into the world, of the appearance of Hosedar-mâh, of Sosios, of the fifty-seven years, of giving the light of the sun to men on the day of the resurrection, of the rising again of the whole of mankind on that day, of the resurrection, of the means of resurrection, of the annihilation of the evil spirit Ahereman and the demons and fiends on the day of resurrection, of the creator Ahuramazd's making the earth and sky one after the resurrection, of the proceedings of all creatures after the resurrection.

The third part contains an abstract of the contents of the hundred chapters of the Sad-dar Bundahis, and concludes with an account of the ceremonial formula practised when tying the kusti or sacred thread-girdle.

4. The Selections of Zâd-sparam.

In some manuscripts of the Dâdistân-i Dînîk the ninety-two questions and answers, which usually go by that name, are preceded and followed by Pahlavi texts which are each nearly equal in extent to the questions and answers, and treat of a variety of subjects, somewhat in the manner of a Rivâyat. Of the texts which follow the questions and answers the following are the principal :—

Incantations for fever, &c.; indications afforded by natural marks on the body; about the hamîstakân ('the ever-stationary,' or neutral state of future existence) and the different grades in heaven; copy of an epistle[1] from Herbad Mânûskîhar son of Yûdân-Yim[2], which he addressed to the good people of Sîrkân[3], about the decisions pronounced by Herbad Zâd-sparam son of Yûdân-Yim; copy of a letter from Herbad Mânûskîhar son of Yûdân-Yim to his brother, Herbad Zâd-sparam, on the same subject, and replying to a letter of his written from Nivshâpûhar; copy of a notice by Herbad Mânûskîhar, son of Yûdân-Yim and high-priest (rad) of Pârs and Kirmân, of the necessity of fifteenfold ablution on account of grievous sin, written and sealed in the third month A.Y. 250 (A.D. 881); memoranda and writings called 'Selections of Zâd-sparam son of Yûdân-Yim,' the first part treating of many of the same subjects as the Bundahis, together

[1] This long epistle contains one statement which is important in its bearing upon the age of certain Pahlavi writings. It states that Nîshahpûhar was in the council of Anôshak-rûbân Khûsrô, king of kings and son of Kavâd, also that he was Mobad of Mobads and a commentator. Now this is the name of a commentator quoted in the Pahlavi Vend. III, 151, V, 112, VIII, 64, and very frequently in the Nîrangistân; it is also a title applied to Ardâ-Vîrâf (see AV. I, 35). These facts seem to limit the age of the last revision of the Pahlavi Vendidad, and of the composition of the Pahlavi Nîrangistân and Ardâ-Vîrâf-nâmak to the time of King Khûsrô Nôshirvân (A.D. 531–579). The statement depends, of course, upon the accuracy of a tradition three centuries old, as this epistle must have been written about A.D. 880.

[2] Some Parsis read this name Gôshnajam, others Yûdân-dam.

[3] Mr. Tehmuras Dinshawji thinks this is the place now called Sîrgan, about thirty parasangs south of Kirmân, on the road to Bandar Abbâs, which is no doubt the case.

with legends regarding Zaratûst and his family; the second part about the formation of men out of body, life, and soul; and the third part about the details of the renovation of the universe. The last part of these Selections is incomplete in all known MSS., and is followed by some fragments of a further series of questions and answers regarding the omniscient wisdom, the evil spirit, Kangdez, the enclosure formed by Yim, &c.

A translation of so much of the Selections of Zâd-sparam as treats of the same subjects as the Bundahis, has been added as an appendix to the translation of that work in this volume, because the language used in these Selections seems to have an important bearing upon the question of the age of the Bundahis. The time when the Selections themselves were written is fixed with considerable precision by the date (A. D. 881), when their author's brother, Mânûskihar, issued his public notice, as mentioned above. But Zâd-sparam uses, in many places, precisely the same words as those employed in the Bundahis, interspersed with much matter written in a more declamatory style; it is, therefore, evident that he had the Bundahis before him to quote from, and that work must consequently have been written either by one of his contemporaries, or by an older writer. So far the Selections merely confirm the information already obtained more directly from TD (see p. xxxviii); but the involved style of their language seems to prove more than this. In fact, in none of the text of the Dâdistân-i Dînîk and its accompaniments is there much of the simplicity of style and directness of purpose which are the chief characteristics of most of the language of the Bundahis. So far, therefore, as style can be considered a mark of age, rather than a mere personal peculiarity of a contemporary writer, the contrast between the straightforward language of the Bundahis and the laboured sentences of Mânûskihar and Zâd-sparam, sons of Yûdân-Yim, tends to prove that the bulk of the Bundahis was already an old work in their days, and was probably saved from oblivion through their writings or influence. That this original Bundahis or Zandâkâs was an abridged translation of the Avesta of the

Dâmdâd Nask appears pretty evident from Zâd-sparam's remarks in Chap. IX, 1, 16 of his Selections.

The first part of these Selections consists of 'sayings about the meeting of the beneficent and evil spirits,' and the first portion of these 'sayings' (divided into eleven chapters in the translation) is chiefly a paraphrase of Chaps. I–XVII of the Bundahis (omitting Chaps. II, V, and XVI). It describes the original state of the two spirits, their meeting and covenant, with a paraphrase of the Ahûnavar formula; the production of the first creatures, including time; the incursion of the evil spirit and his temporary success in deranging the creation, with the reason why he was unable to destroy the primitive man for thirty years; followed by the seven contests he carried on with the sky, water, earth, plants, animals, man, and fire, respectively, detailing how each of these creations was modified in consequence of the incursion of the evil spirit. In the account of the first of these contests the Pahlavi translation of one stanza in the Gâthas is quoted verbatim, showing that the same Pahlavi version of the Yasna was used in the ninth century as now exists. The remainder of these 'sayings,' having no particular connection with the Bundahis, has not been translated.

With regard to the Pahlavi text of the Selections, the present translator has been compelled to rely upon a single manuscript of the Dâdistân-i Dînîk, brought by Westergaard from Kirmân[1] in 1843, and now No. 35 of the collection of Avesta and Pahlavi MSS. in the University Library at Kopenhagen; it may, therefore, be called K35. This MS. is incomplete, having lost nearly one-third of its original bulk, but still contains 181 folios of large octavo size, written fifteen to seventeen lines to the page; the first seventy-one folios of the work have been lost, and about thirty-five folios are also missing from the end; but the whole of the ninety-two questions and answers, together with one-third of the

[1] That is, so far as the late Professor Westergaard could remember in 1878, when he kindly lent me the MS. for collation with my copy of the text, already obtained from more recent MSS. in Bombay, the best of which turned out to be a copy of K35.

texts which usually precede them, and three-fifths of those which usually follow them, are still remaining. This MS. has lost its date, but a copy[1] of it exists in Bombay (written when it was complete) which ends with a colophon dated A.Y. 941 (A.D. 1572), as detailed in p. xxxiii; this may either be the actual date of that copy, or it may have been merely copied from K35, which cannot be much older. The latter supposition appears the more probable, as this colophon seems to be left incomplete by the loss of the last folio in the Bombay copy, and may, therefore, have been followed by another colophon giving a later date.

This copy of K35 was, no doubt, originally complete, but has lost many of its folios in the course of time; most of the missing text has been restored from another MS., but there are still twelve or more folios missing from the latter part of the work; it contains, however, all that portion of the Selections which is translated in this volume, but has, of course, no authority independent of K35. The other MS. in Bombay, from which some of the missing text was recovered, is in the library of Dastûr Jâmâspji Minochiharji; it is a modern copy, written at different periods from forty to sixty years ago, and is incomplete, as it contains only one-fourth of the texts which usually follow the ninety-two questions and answers, and includes no portion of the Selections of Zâd-sparam.

Another MS. of the Dâdistân-i Dînîk and its accompaniments, written also at Kirmân, but two generations earlier than K35 (say, about A.D. 1530), has been already mentioned (see p. xxxiii). It is said still to contain 227 folios, though its first seventy folios are missing; it must, therefore, begin very near the same place as K35, but extends much further, as it supplies about half the text still missing from the

[1] The fact of its being a copy of K35 is proved by strong circumstantial evidence. In the first place, it contains several false readings which are clearly due to mis-shapen letters and accidental marks in K35, so that it is evidently descended from that MS. But it is further proved to have been copied direct from that MS., by the last words in thirty-two of its pages having been marked with interlined circles in K35, the circle having been the copyist's mark for finding his place, when beginning a new page after turning over his folios.

Bombay copy of K35, though it has lost about fourteen folios at the end. This MS. must be either the original from which K35 was copied, or an independent authority of equal value, but it has not been available for settling the text of the Selections for the present translation.

5. The Bahman Yast.

The Bahman Yast, usually called the 'Zand of the Vohûman Yast,' professes to be a prophetical work, in which Aûharmazd gives Zaratûst an account of what was to happen to the Iranian nation and religion in the future.

It begins with an introduction (Chap. I) which states that, according to the Stûdgar Nask, Zaratûst having asked Aûharmazd for immortality, was supplied temporarily with omniscient wisdom, and had a vision of a tree with four branches of different metals which were explained to him as symbolical of four different periods, the times of Vistâsp, of Ardakhshîr the Kayânian, of Khûsrô Nôshirvân, and of certain demons or idolators who were to appear at the end of a thousand years. It states, further, that the commentaries of the Vohûman, Horvadad, and Âstâd Yasts mentioned the heretic Mazdak, and that Khûsrô Nôshirvân summoned a council of high-priests and commentators, and ordered them not to conceal these Yasts, but to teach the commentary only among their own relations.

The text then proceeds (Chap. II) to give the details of the commentary on the Vohûman Yast as follows:—Zaratûst, having again asked Aûharmazd for immortality, is refused, but is again supplied with omniscient wisdom for a week, during which time he sees, among other things, a tree with seven branches of different metals, which are again explained to him as denoting the seven ages of the religion, its six ages of triumph in the reigns of Vistâsp, of Ardakhshîr the Kayânian, of one of the Askânian kings, of Ardakhshîr Pâpakân and Shahpûr I and II, of Vâhrâm Gôr, and of Khûsrô Nôshirvân, and its seventh age of adversity when

Iran is to be invaded from the east by hordes of demons or idolators with dishevelled hair, who are to work much mischief, so as to destroy the greater part of the nation and mislead the rest, until the religion becomes nearly extinct. The details of this mischief, written in a tone of lamentation constitute the greater part of the text, which also notices that the sovereignty will pass from the Arabs, Rûmans, and these leathern-belted demons (Tûrks) to other Tûrks and non-Tûranians who are worse than themselves.

Distressed at this narrative Zaratûst asks Aûharmazd (Chap. III, 1) how the religion is to be restored, and these demons destroyed? He is informed that, in the course of time, other fiends with red banners, red weapons, and red hats, who seem to be Christians, will appear in the north-west, and will advance either to the Arvand (Tigris) or the Euphrates, driving back the former demons who will assemble all their allies to a great conflict, one of the three great battles of the religions of the world, in which the wicked will be so utterly destroyed that none will be left to pass into the next millennium.

Zaratûst enquires (III, 12) how so many can perish, and is informed that, after the demons with dishevelled hair appear, Hûshêdar, the first of the last three apostles, is born near Lake Frazdân; and when he begins to confer with Aûharmazd a Kayân prince is born in the direction of Kînistân (Samarkand), who is called Vâhrâm the Vargâvand, and when he is thirty years old he collects a large army of Hindu (Bactrian) and Kînî (Samarkandian) troops, and advances into Iran, where he is reinforced by a numerous army of Iranian warriors, and defeats the demon races with immense slaughter, in the great conflict already mentioned, so that there will be only one man left to a thousand women.

The writer then proceeds to describe the supernatural agencies employed to produce this result: how the evil spirit (III, 24) comes to the assistance of the demon-worshippers; how Aûharmazd sends his angels to Kangdez, to summon Pêshyôtanû, the immortal son of Vistâsp, with his disciples, to re-establish the sacred fires and restore the

religious ceremonies ; and how the angels assist them against the evil spirits, so that Vâhrâm the Varǵâvand is enabled to destroy the fiendish races, as already detailed, and Pêshyôtanû becomes supreme high-priest of the Iranian world.

Finally, the writer gives some details regarding the missions of the last three apostles, returning for that purpose (III, 44) to the birth of Hûshêdar, the first of the three, whose millennium witnesses both the invasion and the destruction of the fiendish races. Hûshêdar proves his apostolic authority, to the satisfaction of Varǵâvand and the people, by making the sun stand still for ten days and nights. His mission is to 'bring the creatures back to their proper state;' and it is not till near the end of his millennium that Pêshyôtanû appears, as before described. As this millennium begins with the invasion of the fiendish races and the fall of the Sasanian dynasty, it must have terminated in the seventeenth century, unless it was to last more than a thousand years. A very brief account is then given of the millennium of Hûshêdar-mâh, the second of the three apostles, whose mission is to make 'the creatures more progressive' and to destroy 'the fiend of serpent origin' (Aż-i Dahâk). During his millennium (which appears to be now in progress) mankind become so skilled in medicine that they do not readily die; but owing to their toleration of heretics the evil spirit once more attains power, and releases Aż-i Dahâk, from his confinement in Mount Dimâvand, to work evil in the world, till Aûharmazd sends his angels to rouse Keresâsp the Sâmân, who rises from his trance and kills Aż-i Dahâk with his club at the end of the millennium. Afterwards, Sôshyans, the last apostle, appears to 'make the creatures again pure;' when the resurrection takes place and the future existence commences.

Whether this text, as now extant, be the original commentary or zand of the Vohûman Yast admits of doubt, since it appears to quote that commentary (Chap. II, 1) as an authority for its statements; it is, therefore, most probably, only an epitome of the original commentary. Such an epitome would naturally quote many passages verbatim

from the original work, which ought to bear traces of translation from an Avesta text, as its title zand implies a Pahlavi translation from the Avesta (see p. x). There are, in fact, many such traces in this epitome, as indicated by the numerous sentences beginning with a verb, the mode of addressing Aûharmazd, the quotation of different opinions from various commentators, and other minor peculiarities. Some of these might be the result of careful imitation of other commentaries, but it seems more likely that they are occasioned by literal translation from an original Avesta text. In speculating, therefore, upon the contents of the Bahman Yast it is necessary to remember that we are most probably dealing with a composite work, whose statements may be referred to the three different ages of the Avesta original, the Pahlavi translation and commentary, and the Pahlavi epitome of the latter; and that this last form of the text is the only old version now extant.

With regard to the age of the work we have the external evidence that a copy of it exists in a manuscript (K20) written about five hundred years ago, and that this copy is evidently descended from older manuscripts as it contains several clerical blunders incompatible with any idea of its being the original manuscript, as witness the omissions noted in Chaps. II, 10, 13, 14, 22, 27, 45, III, 30, 32, the misplacement of II, 18, and many miswritings of single words. Owing to the threefold character of the work, already noticed, the internal evidence of its age can only apply to its last recension in the form of an epitome, as an oriental editor (to say nothing of others) generally considers himself at liberty to alter and add to his text, if he does not understand it, or thinks he can improve it. That this liberty has been freely exercised, with regard to these professed prophecies, is shown by the identification of the four prophetical ages of the Stûdgar Nask in the first chapter of the Bahman Yast being different from that given in the Dînkard. The Dînkard quotes the Stûdgar Nask (that is, its Pahlavi version) as identifying the iron age with some period of religious indifference subsequent to the time of Âtarô-pâd son of Mâraspend, the supreme high-priest and

prime minister of Shahpûr II (A.D. 309–379); but the Bahman Yast (Chap. I, 5) quotes the Nask as identifying the same age with the reign of an idolatrous race subsequent to the time of Khûsrô Nôshirvân (A.D. 531–579). This example is sufficient to show that the compiler of the extant epitome of the Bahman Yast commentary largely availed himself of his editorial license, and it indicates the difficulty of distinguishing his statements from those of the former editors. At the same time it proves that the epitome could not have been compiled till after Iran had been overrun by a foreign race subsequent to the reign of Khûsrô Nôshirvân. It is remarkable that the compiler does not mention any later Sasanian king, that he does not allude to Muhammadanism, and speaks of the foreign invaders as Turanians and Christians, only mentioning Arabs incidentally in later times; at the same time the foreign invasion (which lasts a thousand years) is of too permanent a character to allow of its having reference merely to the troublous times of Nôshirvân's successor.

Perhaps the most reasonable hypotheses that can be founded upon these facts are, first, that the original zand or commentary of the Bahman Yast was written and translated from the Avesta in the latter part of the reign of Khûsrô Nôshirvân, or very shortly afterwards, which would account for no later king being mentioned by name; and, secondly, that the epitome now extant was compiled by some writer who lived so long after the Arab invasion that the details of their inroad had become obscured by the more recent successes of Turanian rulers, such as the Ghaznavîs and Salgûqs of the eleventh and twelfth centuries. It is hardly possible that the epitomist could have lived as late as the time of Gingîz Khân, the great Mongol conqueror (A.D. 1206–1227), as that would bring him within 150 years of the date of the extant manuscript of his work, which has no appearance of being an immediate copy of the original; but the rule of the Salgûqs would certainly have afforded him sufficient materials for his long description of the iron age. The Avesta of the Bahman Yast was probably compiled from older sources (like the rest of the Avesta) during

the reigns of the earlier Sasanian monarchs; but it was, no doubt, very different in its details from the epitome of its commentary which still exists.

These hypotheses, regarding the threefold origin of the present form of this Yast, derive some confirmation from the inconsistencies in its chronological details; especially those relating to the periods of the invaders' reign and of Hûshêdar's birth. The Zoroastrians have for ages been expecting the appearance of Hûshêdar, the first of their last three apostles, but have always had to postpone their expectations from time to time, like the Jews and other interpreters of prophecy; so that they are still looking forward into the future for his advent, although his millennium has long since expired according to the chronology adopted in the Bahman Yast. This chronology, of course, represents the expectations of Zoroastrians in past times, and seems to express three different opinions. First, we have the statement that the last great battle of the demon-races is to take place at the end of Zaratûst's millennium (see Chap. III, 9), when the wicked will be so destroyed (compare III, 22, 23) that none will pass into the next millennium (III, 11), which is that of Hûshêdar (III, 43). And that the reign of evil is to precede the end of Zaratûst's millennium is evidently assumed also in Chap. II, 41, 63. Such opinions may reasonably be traced to the original Avesta writer, who must have expected only a short reign of evil to arise and fall near the latter end of Zaratûst's millennium, which was still far in the future, and to be followed by the appearance of Hûshêdar to restore the 'good' religion. Secondly, we are told (I, 5, II, 22, 24, 31) that the invasion of the demon-races, with its attendant evils, is to take place when Zaratûst's millennium is ended; on their appearance Hûshêdar is born (III, 13), and when he is thirty years old (compare III, 14 with III, 44) Vâhrâm the Vargâvand is also born, who at the age of thirty (III, 17) advances into Iran with an innumerable army to destroy the invaders. Such statements may be attributed to the original Pahlavi translator and commentator who, writing about A.D. 570–590, would have before his eyes the disastrous

reign of Aûharmazd IV, the son and successor of Khûsrô Nôshirvân, together with the prowess of the famous Persian general Bahrâm *Ā*ôpîn, which drove out all invaders. This writer evidently expected the reign of the demon-races to last less than a century, but still at some period in the near future; merely illustrating his theme by details of the disasters and wars of his own time. Thirdly, we find it stated (III, 44) that Hûshêdar will be born in 1600, which seems to mean the sixteen hundredth year of Zaratûst's millennium, or six hundredth of his own (say A.D. 1193–1235), also that the reign of the demon-races is to last a thousand years (III, 34), and that Pêshyôtanû does not come to restore the religion till near the end of the millennium (III, 51); it also appears (III, 49) that Vargâvand occupies a prominent position when Hûshêdar comes from his conference with Aûharmazd at thirty years of age (III, 44, 45). Such details were probably inserted by the compiler of the epitome, who had to admit the facts that the reign of the demon-races had already lasted for centuries, and that Hûshêdar had not yet appeared. To get over these difficulties he probably adopted the opinions current in his day, and postponed the advent of Hûshêdar till the beginning of the next century in his millennium, and put off the destruction of the wicked, as a more hopeless matter, till near the end of the millennium. Both these periods are now long since past, and the present Zoroastrians have still to postpone the fulfilment of the prophecies connected with their last three apostles, or else to understand them in a less literal fashion than heretofore.

For the Pahlavi text of the Bahman Yast the translator has to rely upon the single old manuscript K20, already described (p. xxvii), in which it occupies the 13½ folios immediately following the Bundahis; these folios are much worn, and a few words have been torn off some of them, but nearly all of these missing words can be restored by aid of the Pâzand version. The Pahlavi text is also found in the modern copies of K20 at Paris and Kopenhagen, but these copies (P7 and K21) have no authority independent of K20. In India this text has long been exceedingly rare.

and whether any copy of it exists, independent of K20, is doubtful.

The Pâzand version is more common in Parsi libraries, but contains a very imperfect text. Of this version two modern copies have been consulted; one of these occupies fols. 38–62 of a small manuscript, No. 22 of the Haug collection in the State Library at Munich; the other is a copy of a manuscript in the library of the high-priest of the Parsis in Bombay. Both these MSS. are evidently descended from the same original, which must have been a very imperfect transliteration of a Pahlavi text closely resembling that of K20, but yet independent of that MS., as a few words omitted in K20 are supplied by these Pâzand MSS. (see B.Yt. II, 13, 14, 22, &c.) To a certain extent, therefore, these Pâzand MSS. are of some assistance in settling the text of a few sentences, but the greater part of their contents is so imperfect as to be utterly unintelligible; they not only omit Chaps. I, 1–8, II, 17, 30–32, 40, III, 9, 12, 17–44, 58–63 entirely, but also words and phrases from nearly every other section of the text. Adhering scrupulously to the Pahlavi original for a few consecutive words, and then widely departing from it by misreading or omitting all difficult words and passages, this Pâzand version is a complete contrast to the Pâzand writings of Nêryôsang, being of little use to the reader beyond showing the extremely low ebb to which Pahlavi learning must have fallen, among the Parsis, before such unintelligible writings could have been accepted as Pâzand texts.

There is also a Persian version of the Bahman Yast, a copy of which, written A. D. 1676, is contained in a large Rivâyat MS. No. 29, belonging to the University Library at Bombay. According to the colophon of this Persian version it was composed in A.D. 1496 by Rustam Isfendiyâr of Yazd, from an Avesta (Pâzand) MS. belonging to his brother Jamshêd. This Persian version contains less than three per cent of Arabic words, and is more of a paraphrase than a translation, but it adheres very closely to the meaning of the Pahlavi text from Chaps. I, 1 to III, 9, where a dislocation occurs, evidently owing either to the displacement

of two folios in an older MS., or to the second page of a folio being copied before the first, so that §§ 10–14 follow §§ 15–22. From the middle of § 22 the folios of the older MS. seem to have been lost as far as the end of Hûshêdar's millennium (§ 51), to which point the Persian version leaps, but the remainder of this paraphrase is much more diffuse than the Bahman Yast, and is evidently derived from some other Pahlavi work.

This conclusion of the Persian version describes how adversity departs from the world, and ten people are satisfied with the milk of one cow, when Hûshêdar-mâh appears and his millennium commences. On his coming from his conference with Aûharmazd the sun stands still for twenty days and nights, in consequence of which two-thirds of the people in the world believe in the religion. Meat is no longer eaten, but only milk and butter, and a hundred people are satisfied with the milk of one cow. Hûshêdar-mâh destroys the terrible serpent, which accompanies apostasy, by means of the divine glory and Avesta formulas; he clears all noxious creatures out of the world, and wild animals live harmlessly among mankind; the fiends of apostasy and deceit depart from the world, which becomes populous and delightful, and mankind abstain from falsehood. After the five-hundredth year of Hûshêdar-mâh has passed away, Sôshyans (Sâsân) appears, and destroys the fiend who torments fire. The sun stands still for thirty days and nights, when all mankind believe in the religion, and the year becomes exactly 360 days. Dahâk escapes from his confinement, and reigns for a day and a half in the world with much tyranny; when Sôshyans rouses Sâm Narîmân, who accepts the religion and becomes immortal. Sâm calls upon Dahâk to accept the religion, but the latter proposes that they should together seize upon heaven for themselves, whereupon Sâm kills him. All evil having departed from the world mankind become like the archangels, and the resurrection takes place, which is described with many of the same details as are mentioned in Bund. XXX.

Accompanying this Persian version in B29 is another

fragment from the same source, which treats of the same subjects as the third chapter of the Bahman Yast, but is differently arranged. It confines itself to the millennium of Hûshêdar, and may possibly be some modification of the contents of the folios missing from the version described above. After some introductory matter this fragment contains a paraphrase (less accurate than the preceding) of Chap. III, 23–49 of the Bahman Yast; it then proceeds to state that Hûshêdar destroys the wolf race, so that wolves, thieves, highway robbers, and criminals cease to exist. When Hûshêdar's three-hundredth year has passed away the winter of Malkôs arrives and destroys all animals and vegetation, and only one man survives out of ten thousand; after which the world is repeopled from the enclosure made by Yim. Then comes the gathering of the nations to the great battle on the Euphrates, where the slaughter is so great that the water of the river becomes red, and the survivors wade in blood up to their horses' girths. Afterwards, the Kayân king, Vargâvand, advances from the frontiers of India and takes possession of Iran to the great delight of the inhabitants, but only after a great battle; and then Pêshyôtanû is summoned from Kangdez to restore the religious ceremonies.

A German translation of some passages in the Bahman Yast, with a brief summary of the greater part of the remainder, was published in 1860 in Spiegel's Traditionelle Literatur der Parsen, pp. 128–135.

6. The Shâyast lâ-shâyast.

Another treatise which must be referred to about the same age as the Bundahis, though of a very different character, is the Shâyast lâ-shâyast or 'the proper and improper.' It is a compilation of miscellaneous laws and customs regarding sin and impurity, with other memoranda about ceremonies and religious subjects in general. Its name has, no doubt, been given to it in modern times [1], and has pro-

[1] But perhaps before the compilation of the prose Sad-dar Bundahis, or Bundahis of a hundred chapters, which seems to refer to the Shâyast lâ-shâyast

bably arisen from the frequent use it makes of the words shâya*d*, 'it is fit or proper,' and lâ shâya*d*, 'it is not fit or proper.' And, owing to its resemblance to those Persian miscellanies of traditional memoranda called Rivâyats, it has also been named the Pahlavi Rivâyat, though chiefly by Europeans.

It consists of two parts, which are often put together in modern MSS., and bear the same name, but are widely separated in the oldest MSS. These two parts, consisting respectively of Chaps. I–X and XI–XIV in the present translation, are evidently two distinct treatises on the same and similar subjects, but of nearly the same age. That they were compiled by two different persons, who had access to nearly the same authorities, appears evident from Chaps. XI, 1, 2, XII, 11, 13–16, 18, 20 being repetitions of Chaps. I, 1, 2, X, 4, 20–23, 7, 31, with only slight alterations; such repetitions as would hardly be made in a single treatise by the same writer. Minor repetitions in the first part, such as those of some phrases in Chaps. II, 65, IV, 14, repeated in Chap. X, 24, 33, might readily be made by the same writer in different parts of the same treatise. To these two parts of the Shâyast lâ-shâyast a third part has been added in the present translation, as an appendix, consisting of a number of miscellaneous passages of a somewhat similar character, which are found in the same old MSS. that contain the first two parts, but which cannot be attributed either to the same writers or the same age as those parts.

The first part commences with the names and amounts of the various degrees of sin, and the names of the chief commentators on the Vendidad. It then gives long details regarding the precautions to be taken with reference to corpses and menstruous women, and the impurity they occasion; besides mentioning (Chap. II, 33–35) the pollution

in its opening words, as follows:—'This book is on "the proper and improper" which is brought out from the good, pure religion of the Mazdayasnians;' though this term may possibly relate to its own contents. There is also a Persian treatise called Shâyast na-shâyast, which gives a good deal of information obtained from the Persian Rivâyats, and copies of which are contained in the MSS. Nos. 56 and 116 of the Ouseley collection in the Bodleian Library at Oxford.

caused by a serpent. It next describes the proper size and materials of the sacred thread-girdle and shirt, giving some details about the sins of running about uncovered and walking with one boot, and thence proceeding to the sin of unseasonable chatter. Details are then given about good works, and those who can and cannot perform them; in which reference is made to Christians, Jews, and those of other persuasions (Chap. VI, 7). The next subjects treated of are reverencing the sun and fire; the sin of extinguishing fire, confession and renunciation of sin, atonement for sins, especially mortal sins, both those affecting others and those only affecting one's own soul; with a digression (Chap. VIII, 3) prohibiting the rich from hunting. The remainder of this first treatise is of a miscellaneous character, referring to the following subjects:—The Hâsar of time, priests passing away in idolatry, the discussion of religion, ceremonies not done aright, throwing a corpse into the sea, evil of eating in the dark, the four kinds of worship, when the angels should be invoked in worship, the ephemeral nature of life, proper looseness for a girdle, when the sacred cake set aside for the guardian spirits can be used, maintaining a fire where a woman is pregnant, providing a tank for ablution, the Gâthas not to be recited over the dead, food and drink not to be thrown away to the north at night, unlawful slaughter of animals, how the corpse of a pregnant woman should be carried, forgiveness of trespasses, evil of walking without boots, when the sacred girdle is to be assumed, breaking the spell of an inward prayer, ten women wanted at childbirth, and how the infant is to be treated, sin of beating an innocent person, evil of a false judge, men and women who do not marry, a toothpick must be free from bark, acknowledging the children of a handmaid, advantage of offspring and of excess in almsgiving, prayer on lying down and getting up, Avesta not to be mumbled, doubtful actions to be avoided or consulted about, evil of laughing during prayer, crowing of a hen, treatment of a hedgehog, after a violent death corruption does not set in immediately, necessity of a dog's gaze, putrid meat and hairy cakes or butter unfit for ceremonies, when a woman can do priestly duty, &c.

The second part also commences with the names and amounts of the various degrees of sin, followed by the proper meat-offerings for various angels and guardian spirits. Next come miscellaneous observations on the following subjects:—The simplest form of worship, necessity of submitting to a high-priest, advantage of a fire in the house, sin of clothing the dead, presentation of holy-water to the nearest fire after a death, nail-parings to be prayed over, advantage of light at childbirth, offerings to the angels, maintaining a fire where a woman is pregnant and a child is born, a toothpick must be free from bark, acknowledging the children of a handmaid, advantage of offspring and of excess in almsgiving, evil of drawing well-water at night, food not to be thrown away to the north at night, advantage of prayer at feasts, treatment of a hedgehog, praying when washing the face, the proper choice of a purifying priest, no one should be hopeless of heaven, necessity of a wife being religious as well as her husband, the ceremonies which are good works, and the cause of sneezing, yawning, and sighing. These are followed by a long account of the mystic signification of the Gâthas, with some information as to the errors which may be committed in consecrating the sacred cakes, and how the beginning of the morning watch is to be determined.

The third part, or appendix, commences with an account of how each of the archangels can be best propitiated, by a proper regard for the particular worldly existence which he specially protects. This is followed by a statement of the various degrees of sin, and of the amount of good works attributed to various ceremonies. Then come some account of the ceremonies after a death, particulars of those who have no part in the resurrection, the duty of submission to the priesthood, whether evil may be done for the sake of good, the place where people will rise from the dead, Aêshm's complaint to Aharman of the three things he could not injure in the world, the occasions on which the Ahunavar formula should be recited, and the number of recitals that are requisite, &c. And, finally, statements of the lengths of midday and afternoon shadows, blessings invoked

from the thirty angels and archangels who preside over the days of the month, and the special epithets of the same.

With regard to the age of this treatise we have no precise information. All three parts are found in a MS. (M6) which was written in A.D. 1397 (see p. xxix), and nearly the whole is also found in the MS. K20, which may be a few years older (see p. xxvii), and in which the first part of the Shâyast lâ-shâyast is followed by a Persian colophon dated A.Y. 700 (A.D. 1331), copied probably from an older MS. The text in both these old MSS. seems to have been derived almost direct from the same original, which must have been so old when M6 was written that the copyist found some words illegible (see notes on Chaps. VIII, 19, X, 34, XII, 14, 15, &c.) Now it is known from a colophon that a portion of M6, containing the book of Arḍâ-Virâf and the tale of Gôst-i Fryânô, was copied from a MS. written in A.D. 1249; and we may safely conclude that the Shâyast lâ-shâyast was copied, either from the same MS., or from one fully as old. So far, therefore, as external evidence goes, there is every reason to suppose that the whole of the Shâyast lâ-shâyast, with its appendix[1], was existing in a MS. written about 630 years ago.

But internal evidence points to a far higher antiquity for the first two parts, as the compilers of those treatises evidently had access, not only to several old commentaries, but also to many of the Nasks, which have long been lost. Thus, the first treatise contains quotations from the commentaries of Afarg, Gôgôsasp, Kûshtanô-bûgèd, Mèdôk-mâh, Rôshan, and Sôshyans, which are all frequently quoted in the Pahlavi translation of the Vendidad (see Sls. I, 3, 4, notes); besides mentioning the opinions of Mard-bûd, Nêryôsang, Nôsâî Bûrz-Mitrô, and Vand-Aûharmazd, who are rarely or never mentioned in the Pahlavi Vendidad. It also quotes no less than eleven of the twenty Nasks or books of the complete Mazdayasnian literature which are no longer extant, besides the Vendidad, the only Nask that still survives in the full extent it had in Sasanian times.

[1] Except Chaps. XXII, XXIII (see the note on the heading of Chap. XXII).

The Nasks quoted are the Stûdgar (Sls. X, 8), the Bagh (X, 26), the Dâmdâd (X, 22), the Pâzôn (IX, 9), the Ratûstâitîh (X, 29), the Kîdrast (X, 28), the Spend (X, 4), the Nihâdûm (X, 3, 22, 23), the Dûbâsrûgêd (X, 13), the Hûspâram (X, 21), and the Sakâdûm (X, 25), very few of which are mentioned even in the Pahlavi Vendidad. The second treatise mentions only one commentator, Vand-Aûharmazd, but it quotes eight of the Nasks no longer extant; these are the Stûdgar (Sls. XII, 32), the Dâmdâd (XII, 5, 15), the Spend (XII, 3, 11, 15, 29), the Bâg-yasnô (XII, 17), the Nihâdûm (XII, 15, 16), the Hûspâram (XII, 1, 7, 14, 31, XIII, 17), the Sakâdûm (XII, 2, 10, 12, XIII, 30), and the Hâdôkht (XII, 19, 30, XIII, 6, 10).

Of two of these Nasks, the Bagh and Hâdôkht, a few fragments may still survive (see notes on Sls. X, 26, Haug's Essays, p. 134, B. Yt. III, 25), but those of the latter Nask do not appear to contain the passages quoted in the Shâyast lâ-shâyast. With regard to the rest we only know that the Dâmdâd, Hûspâram, and Sakâdûm must have been still in existence about A.D. 881, as they are quoted in the writings of Zâd-sparam and Mânûskihar, sons of Yûdân-Yim, who lived at that time (see pp. xlii, xlvi); and the Nihâdûm and Hûspâram are also quoted in the Pahlavi Vendidad. It is true that the Dînkard gives copious information about the contents of all the Nasks, with two or three exceptions; and the Dînkard seems to have assumed its present form about A.D. 900 (see Bund. XXXIII, 11, notes); but its last editor was evidently merely a compiler of old fragments, so there is no certainty that many of the Nasks actually existed in his time.

Thus far, therefore, the internal evidence seems to prove that the two treatises called Shâyast lâ-shâyast, which constitute the first two parts of the present translation, are more than a thousand years old. On the other hand, they cannot be more than three centuries older, because they frequently quote passages from the Pahlavi Vendidad which, as we have seen (p. xlvi, note 1), could not have assumed its present form before the time of Khûsrô Nôshirvân (A.D. 531–579). As they contain no reference to any

interference of the governing powers with the religion or priesthood, it is probable that they were written before the Muhammadan conquest (A.D. 636–651), although they do not mention the existence of any 'king of the kings,' the usual title of the Sasanian monarchs. And this probability is increased by there being no direct mention of Muhammadanism among the contemporary religions named in Chap. VI, 7, unless we assume that passage to be a quotation from an earlier book. We may, therefore, conclude, with tolerable certainty, that the Pahlavi text of the first two parts of the present translation of the Shâyast lâ-shâyast was compiled some time in the seventh century; but, like the Bundahis and Bahman Yast, it was, for the most part, a compilation of extracts and translations from far older writings, and may also have been rearranged shortly after the Muhammadan conquest.

The fragments which are collected in the appendix, or third part of the present translation, are probably of various ages, and several of them may not be more than seven centuries old. The commentator Bakht-âfrîd, whose work (now lost) is quoted in Chap. XX, 11, may have lived in the time of Khûsrô Nôshirvân (see B. Yt. I, 7). And Chap. XXI must certainly have been written in Persia, as the lengths of noonday shadows which it mentions are only suitable for 32° north latitude. As regards the last two chapters we have no evidence that they are quite five centuries old.

For the Pahlavi text of the Shâyast lâ-shâyast and its appendix we have not only the very old codex M6 (see p. xxix) for the whole of it, but also the equally old codex K20 (see p. xxvii) for all but Chaps. XV–XVII, XX, XXII, and XXIII in the appendix. In M6 the first two parts are separated by twenty folios, containing the Farhang-i Oim-khadûk, and the second part is separated from the first three chapters of the appendix by four folios, containing the Patit-i Khûd; the next three chapters of the appendix are from the latter end of the second volume of M6. Chap. XXI is from the middle of the same, and the last two chapters are from some additional folios at the beginning of the

first volume. In K20 the first two parts are separated by ninety-two folios, containing the Farhang-i Oîm-khadûk, Bundahis, Bahman Yast, and several other Pahlavi and Avesta texts; Chap. XVIII precedes the first part, Chap. XIX precedes the second part, and Chap. XXI is in an earlier part of the MS.

Derived from K20 are the two modern copies P7 and K21 (see p. xxviii). Derived from M6 are the modern copy of the first two parts in M9 (No. 9 of the Haug collection in the State Library at Munich), a copy of Chaps. XIV, XV in L15 (No. 15 of the collection of Avesta and Pahlavi MSS. in the India Office Library at London), a copy of Chap. XX, 4–17 in O121 (No. 121 of the Ouseley collection in the Bodleian Library at Oxford, see p. xxx), and a copy of Chap. XVIII in Dastûr Jâmâspji's MS. of the Bundahis at Bombay. While an independent Pahlavi version of Chap. XXIII occurs in a very old codex in the library of the high-priest of the Parsis at Bombay, which version has been used for the text of the present translation, because that chapter is incomplete in M6.

Pâzand versions of some of the chapters, chiefly in the appendix, are to be found in some MSS., but all derived apparently from M6. Thus, in the Pâzand MSS. L7 and L22 (Nos. 7 and 22 in the India Office Library at London, see p. xxxi), written in Avesta characters, Chaps. XVIII, XX, XV follow the last chapter of the Bundahis, and Chap. XIV occurs a few folios further on. And in the Pâzand MS. M7 (No. 7 of the Haug collection in the State Library at Munich), written in Persian characters, the following detached passages occur in a miscellaneous collection of extracts (fols. 126–133):—Chaps. XX, 14–16, X, 18, 19, IX, 9, 10, XX, 12, 13, 4, 5, VIII, 2, 4–14, XX, 11. A Persian version of Chap. XVIII also occurs in M5 (No. 5 of the same collection) on fol. 54.

It does not appear that the Shâyast lâ-shâyast has ever been hitherto translated into any European language[1], nor

[1] Except Chap. XVIII, which was translated into German by Justi, as the last chapter of his translation of the Bundahis (see p. xxvi).

is any Persian or Gugarâti translation of it known to the present translator, though a good deal of the matter it contains may be found in the Persian Rivâyats, but generally given in a different form. Owing to the technical character of the treatise, it is hazardous for any one but a Parsi priest to attempt to translate it, so that errors will, no doubt, be apparent to the initiated in the present translation. At the same time it must not be forgotten that the laws and customs mentioned in the text were those current in Persia twelve centuries ago, which may be expected to differ, in many details, from those of the Parsis in India at the present day. This is a consideration which a Parsi translator might be too apt to ignore; so that his thorough knowledge of present customs, though invaluable for the decipherment of ambiguous phrases, might lead him astray when dealing with clear statements of customs and rules now obsolete and, therefore, at variance with his preconceived ideas of propriety.

7. Concluding Remarks.

The Pahlavi texts selected for translation in this volume are specimens of three distinct species of writings. Thus, the Bundahi*s* and its appendix, which deal chiefly with cosmogony, myths, and traditions, may be roughly compared to the book of Genesis. The Bahman Yast, which professes to be prophetical, may be likened unto the Apocalypse. And the Shâyast lâ-shâyast, which treats of religious laws regarding impurity, sin, ritual, and miscellaneous matters, bears some resemblance to Leviticus. But, though thus dealing with very different subjects these texts appear to have all originated in much the same manner, a manner which is characteristic of the oldest class of the Pahlavi writings still extant. All three are full of translations from old Avesta texts, collected together probably in the latter days of the Sasanian dynasty, and finally rearranged some time after the Muhammadan conquest of Persia; so that, practically, they may be taken as representing the ideas entertained of their prehistoric religion by Persians in the

sixth century, but modified so far as to suit the taste and exigencies of the tenth.

But, notwithstanding the wide range of subjects embraced by these texts, it would be rash for the reader to assume that they afford him sufficient information for forming a decided opinion as to the character of the Parsi religion. The texts translated in this volume contain barely one-eleventh part of the religious literature extant in the Pahlavi language, without taking the Pahlavi versions of existing Avesta texts into account, which latter are even more important than the former, from a religious point of view, as they are considered more authoritative by the Parsis themselves. What proportion the literature extant may bear to that which is lost it is impossible to guess; but, omitting all consideration of the possible contents of the lost literature, it is obvious that the remaining ten-elevenths of that which is extant may contain much which would modify any opinion based merely upon the one-eleventh here translated. What the untranslated portion actually contains no one really knows. The best Pahlavi scholar can never be sure that he understands the contents of a Pahlavi text until he has fully translated it; no amount of careful reading can make him certain that he does not misunderstand some essential part of it, and were he to assert the contrary he would be merely misleading others and going astray himself. How far the translations in this volume will enable the reader to judge of the Parsi religion may perhaps be best understood by considering how far a careful perusal of the books of Genesis, Leviticus, and the Revelation, which constitute one-eleventh part of the Protestant Bible, would enable him to judge of Christianity, without any further information.

But, though these translations must be considered merely as a contribution towards a correct account of mediæval Zoroastrianism, the Bundahiś does afford some very definite information upon one of the fundamental doctrines of that faith. The Parsi religion has long been represented by its opponents as a dualism; and this accusation, made in good faith by Muhammadan writers, and echoed more

incautiously by Christians, has been advanced so strenuously that it has often been admitted even by Parsis themselves, as regards the mediæval form of their faith. But neither party seems to have fairly considered how any religion which admits the personality of an evil spirit, in order to account for the existence of evil, can fail to become a dualism to a certain extent. If, therefore, the term is to be used in controversy, it behoves those who use it to define the limits of objectionable dualism with great precision, so as not to include most of the religions of the world, their own among the number.

If it be necessary for a dualism that the evil spirit be omnipresent, omniscient, almighty, or eternal, then is the Parsi religion no dualism. The Bundahis distinctly asserts that the evil spirit is not omniscient and almighty (Chap. I, 16); that his understanding is backward (I, 3, 9), so that he was not aware of the existence of Aûharmazd till he arose from the abyss and saw the light (I, 9); that he is unobservant and ignorant of the future (I, 19) till it is revealed to him by Aûharmazd (I, 21); that his creatures perish at the resurrection (I, 7, 21), and he himself becomes impotent (I, 21, III, 1) and will not be (I, 3, XXX, 32). Nowhere is he supposed to be in two places at once, or to know what is occurring elsewhere than in his own presence. So far, his powers are considerably less than those generally assigned by Christians to the devil, who is certainly represented as being a more intelligent and ubiquitous personage. On the other hand, Aharman is able to produce fiends and demons (Chap. I, 10, 24), and the noxious creatures are said to be his (III, 15, XIV, 30, XVIII, 2); in which respects he has probably rather more power than the devil, although the limits of the latter's means of producing evil are by no means well defined.

The origin and end of Aharman appear to be left as uncertain as those of the devil, and, altogether, the resemblance between these two ideas of the evil spirit is remarkably close; in fact, almost too close to admit of the possibility of their being ideas of different origin. The only important differences are that Zoroastrianism does not believe in an

eternity of evil as Christianity does, and that Christianity has been content to leave all its other ideas about the devil in a very hazy and uncertain form, while Zoroastrianism has not shrunk from carrying similar ideas to their logical conclusion. If, therefore, a belief in Aharman, as the author of evil, makes the Parsi religion a dualism, it is difficult to understand why a belief in the devil, as the author of evil, does not make Christianity also a dualism. At any rate, it is evident from the Bundahis that a Christian is treading on hazardous ground when he objects to Zoroastrianism on the score of its dualism.

Another misrepresentation of the Parsi religion is shown to have no foundation in fact, by a passage in the Selections of Zâd-sparam. Several writers, both Greek and Armenian, contemporaries of the Sasanian dynasty, represent the Persians as believing that both Aûharmazd and Aharman were produced by an eternal being, who is evidently a personification of the Avesta phrase for 'boundless time.' This view was apparently confirmed by a passage in Anquetil Duperron's French translation of the Vendidad (XIX, 32–34), but this has long been known to be a mistranslation due to Anquetil's ignorance of Avesta grammar; so that the supposed doctrine of 'boundless time' being the originator of everything is not to be found in the Avesta; still it might have sprung up in Sasanian times. But the Selections of Zâd-sparam (I, 24) distinctly state that Aûharmazd produced the creature Zôrvân (precisely the term used in the phrase 'boundless time' in the Avesta). Here 'time,' although personified, is represented as a creature of Aûharmazd, produced after the first appearance of Aharman; which contradicts the statement of the Greek and Armenian writers completely, and shows how little reliance can be placed upon the assertions of foreigners regarding matters which they view with antipathy or prejudice.

With reference to the general plan of these translations of Pahlavi texts a few remarks seem necessary. In the first place, it will be obvious to any attentive reader of this introduction that a translator of Pahlavi has not merely to translate, but also to edit, the original text; and, in some

cases, he has even to discover it. Next, as regards the translation, it has been already mentioned (p. xxvi) that the translator's object is to make it as literal as possible; in order, therefore, to check the inevitable tendency of free translation to wander from the meaning of the original text, all extra words added to complete the sense, unless most distinctly understood in the original, are italicised in the translation. And in all cases that seem doubtful the reader's attention is called to the fact by a note, though it is possible that some doubtful matters may be overlooked.

The notes deal not only with explanations that may be necessary for the general reader, but also with various readings and other details that may be useful to scholars; they are, therefore, very numerous, though some passages may still be left without sufficient explanation. References to the Vendidad, Yasna, and Visparad are made to Spiegel's edition of the original texts, not because that edition is superior, or even equal, in accuracy to that of Westergaard, but because it is the only edition which gives the Pahlavi translations, because its sections are shorter and, therefore, reference to them is more definite, and because the only English translation of the Avesta hitherto existing[1] is based upon Spiegel's edition, and is divided into the same sections.

No attempt has been made to trace any of the myths or traditions farther back than the Avesta, whence their descent is a fact that can hardly be disputed. To trace them back to earlier times, to a supposed Indo-Iranian personification or poetic distortion of meteorological phenomena, would be, in the present state of our knowledge, merely substituting plausible guesses for ascertained facts. In many cases, indeed, we have really no right to assume that an Avesta myth has descended from any such Indo-Iranian origin, as there have been ample opportunities for the infiltration of myths from other sources, yet unknown,

[1] Bleeck's Avesta; the Religious Books of the Parsees; from Professor Spiegel's German Translation; London, 1864. Not much reliance can be placed upon the correctness of this translation, owing to defects in the German one.

among the many nations with which the religion of the Avesta has come in contact, both before and since the time of Zaratûst. For, notwithstanding the ingenious rhetoric of the expounders of myths, it is still as unsafe, from a scientific point of view, to disbelieve the former existence of Zaratûst as it is to doubt that of Moses, or any other practically prehistoric personage, merely because mythic tales have gathered about his name in later times, as they always do about the memory of any individual who has become famous or revered.

In many cases the original Pahlavi word is appended, in parentheses, to its English equivalent in the translation. This has been done for the sake of explanation, when the word is technical or rare, or the translation is unusual. For, with regard to technical terms, it has been considered best, in nearly all cases, to translate them by some explanatory phrase, in preference to filling the translation with foreign words which would convey little or no distinct meaning to the general reader. Some of these technical terms have almost exact equivalents in English, such as those translated 'resurrection' and 'demon,' or can be well expressed by descriptive phrases, such as 'sacred twigs' and 'sacred cakes.' Other terms are only approximately rendered by such words as 'archangel' and 'angel;' others can hardly be expressed at all times by the same English words, but must change according to the context, such as the term variously rendered by 'worship, ceremonial, prayer, or rites.' While the meaning of some few terms is so technical, complicated, or uncertain, that it is safer to use the Pahlavi word itself, such as Tanâpûhar, Frasast, Gêtî-kharîd, Dvâzdah-hômâst, &c.

The following is a list of nearly all the technical terms that have been translated, with the English equivalents generally used to express them:—Âfrîn, 'blessing;' aharmôk, 'apostate, heretic;' aharûbŏ, 'righteous;' aharûbŏ-dâd, 'alms, almsgiving;' akdînô, 'infidel;' ameshôspend, 'archangel;' armêst, 'helpless;' ast-hômand, 'material;' aûsôfrîd, 'propitiation, offering;' baghô-bakhtô, 'divine providence;' baresôm, 'sacred twigs or twig-bundle;'

baresômdân, 'twig stand;' dakhmak (Huz. khazân), 'depository for the dead;' dashtânistân, 'place for menstruation;' dînô, 'religion, revelation, religious rites;' drâyân-gûyisnîh, 'unseasonable chatter;' drevand, 'wicked;' drônô, 'sacred cake;' drûg, 'fiend;' frashakard, 'renovation of the universe;' fravâhar, 'guardian spirit;' fravardikân, 'days devoted to the guardian spirits;' ganrâk mainôk, 'evil spirit;' garzisn, 'confession of sin;' gâs, 'period of the day, time;' gâsânbâr, 'season-festival;' gasnŏ, 'feast;' gâûs-dâk (Av. gâus hudhau), 'meat-offering, sacred butter;' gavid-rastakân, 'the heterodox;' giv (Av. gâus givya), 'sacred milk;' gômêz, 'bull's urine;' hamêmâl, 'accuser;' hamrêd, 'direct pollution, contagion;' hazârak, 'millennium;' hikhar, 'bodily refuse;' kâr, 'duty;' kêshvar, 'region;' khayebit, 'destroyer;' khrafstar, 'noxious creature;' khvêtûk-das, 'next-of-kin marriage;' kirfak, 'good works;' kûstik, 'sacred thread-girdle;' magh, 'stone ablution-seat;' mainôk, 'spirit;' marg-argân, 'worthy of death, mortal sin;' myazd, 'feast, sacred feast;' nasâî, 'corpse, dead matter;' nasâî katak, 'corpse chamber;' nirang, 'religious formula, ritual;' nîrangistân, 'code of religious formulas;' niyâyisn, 'salutation;' padâm, 'mouth-veil;' pâdiyâvih, 'ablution, ceremonial ablution;' pâhlûm ahvân, 'best existence;' paîtrêd, 'indirect pollution, infection;' parâhôm, 'hôm-juice;' parîk, 'witch;' patitih, 'renunciation of sin;' patîyârak, 'adversary;' pôryôdkêshîh, 'primitive faith;' rad, 'chief, spiritual chief, primate, high-priest;' rîstâkhêz, 'resurrection;' satûih, 'the three nights;' sêdâ, 'demon;' shapîk, 'sacred shirt;' shnâyisn, 'propitiation, gratification;' shnûman, 'dedication formula, propitiation;' spênâk maînôk, 'beneficent spirit;' tanû-i pasînŏ, 'future existence;' tôgisn, 'retribution;' tôrâ-i khadû-dâd, 'primeval ox;' vâg, 'inward prayer;' vigârisn, 'atonement for sin;' vishâd-dûbârisnîh, 'running about uncovered;' yasnô, 'ritual;' yast, 'prayers, ritual, form of prayer, worship, consecration;' yastanŏ, 'to consecrate, solemnize, propitiate, reverence;' yâtûk, 'wizard;' yazdân, 'angels, sacred beings, celestial beings, God;' yazisn,

'ceremonial, ceremony, sacred ceremony, ceremonial worship, worship, reverence, rites, prayer;' yêdatô, 'angel;' zand, 'commentary;' zôhar or zôr, 'holy-water;' zôt, 'officiating priest.'

With regard to the orthography of Pahlavi names and words, advantage has been taken of the system of transliteration adopted for this series of Translations of the Sacred Books of the East, by making use of italics for the purpose of distinguishing between certain Pahlavi letters which were probably pronounced very nearly alike. Thus, besides the usual letters ו for v and ז for z, the Pahlavi letter ר is often used to denote those same sounds which, in such cases, are represented by the italic letters *v* and *z*. An extension of the same mode of distinction to the letters l and r would be desirable, but has not been attempted in this volume; these two letters are usually written ל, but in a few words they are represented by or by ר, in which cases they would be better expressed by the italics *l* and *r*. Some attempt has been made to adhere to one uniform orthography in such names as occur frequently, but as there is no such uniformity in the various languages and writings quoted, nor even in the same manuscript, some deviations can hardly be avoided.

In conclusion it may be remarked that a translator of Pahlavi generally begins his career by undervaluing the correctness of Pahlavi texts and the literary ability of their authors, but he can hardly proceed far without finding abundant reason for altering his opinion of both. His depreciatory view of Pahlavi literature is generally due partly to want of knowledge, and partly to his trusting too much to the vile perversions of Pahlavi texts usually supplied by Pâzand writers. But as his knowledge of Pahlavi increases he becomes better able to appreciate the literary merits of the texts. If the reader should have already formed some such low estimate of the ability of Pahlavi writers, it may be hoped that these translations will afford him sufficient reason for changing his opinion; if not, they will have signally failed in doing those writers justice.

BUNDAHIS

OR

THE ORIGINAL CREATION.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. For all divisions into chapters and sections the translator is responsible, as the original text is written continuously, with very few stops marked.

2. Italics are used for any English words which are not expressed, or fully understood, in the original text, but are added to complete the sense of the translation.

3. Oriental words are usually 'spaced.' Italics occurring in them, or in names, are intended to represent certain peculiar Oriental letters. The italic consonants *d*, *n*, *v* may be pronounced as in English; but *g* should be sounded like j, *hv* like wh, *k* like ch in 'church,' ṅ like ng, *s* like sh, *z* like French j. For further information, see 'Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East' at the end of the volume.

4. In Pahlavi words all circumflexed vowels and any final ŏ are expressed in the Pahlavi original, but all other vowels are merely understood.

5. In the translation, words in parentheses are merely explanatory of those which precede them.

6. Abbreviations used are:—Av. for Avesta. Dâd. for Dâdistân-i Dînik. Huz. for Huzvâriṣ. Mkh. for Mainyô-i-khard, ed. West. Pahl. for Pahlavi. Pâz. for Pâzand. Pers. for Persian. Sans. for Sanskrit. Vend. for Vendîdâd, ed. Spiegel. Visp. for Visparad, ed. Sp. Yas. for Yasna, ed. Sp. Yt. for Yast, ed. Westergaard.

7. The manuscripts mentioned in the notes are:—

K20 (about 500 years old), No. 20 in the University Library at Kopenhagen.

K20b (uncertain date), a fragment of the text, No. 20b in the same library.

M6 (written A.D. 1397), No. 6 of the Haug Collection in the State Library at Munich.

TD (written about A.D. 1530), belonging to Mobad Tehmuras Dinshawji Anklesaria at Bombay.

BUNDAHIS.

Chapter I.

0. In the name of the creator Aûharmazd.

1. The Zand-âkâs ('Zand-knowing or tradition informed')[1], which is first about Aûharmazd's original creation and the antagonism of the evil spirit[2], *and* afterwards about the nature of the creatures from the original creation till the end, which is the future existence (tanû-î pasînŏ). 2. As *revealed* by the religion of the Mazdayasnians, so it is declared that Aûharmazd is supreme in omniscience and goodness,

[1] The Pâzand and most of the modern Pahlavi manuscripts have, 'From the Zand-âkâs,' but the word min, 'from,' does not occur in the old manuscript K20, and is a modern addition to M6. From this opening sentence it would appear that the author of the work gave it the name Zand-âkâs.

[2] The Avesta Angra-mainyu, the spirit who causes adversity or anxiety (see Darmesteter's Ormazd et Ahriman, pp. 92–95); the Pahlavi name is, most probably, merely a corrupt transliteration of the Avesta form, and may be read Ganrâk-maînôk, as the Avesta Spe*n*ta-mainyu, the spirit who causes prosperity, has become Spênâk-maînôk in Pahlavi. This latter spirit is represented by Aûharmazd himself in the Bundahi*s*. The Pahlavi word for 'spirit,' which is read madônad by the Parsis, and has been pronounced mînavad by some scholars and mînôî by others, is probably a corruption of maînôk, as its Sasanian form was minô. If it were not for the extra medial letter in ganrâk, and for the obvious partial transliteration of spênâk, it would be preferable to read ganâk, 'smiting,' and to derive it from a supposed verb gandan, 'to smite' (Av. ghna), as proposed by most Zendists. A Parsi would probably suggest gandan, 'to stink.'

and unrivalled[1] in splendour; the region of light is the place of Aûharmazd, which they call 'endless light,' and the omniscience *and* goodness of the unrivalled Aûharmazd is what they call 'revelation[2].' 3. Revelation is the explanation of both *spirits* together; one is he who is independent of unlimited time[3], because Aûharmazd and the region, religion, and time of Aûharmazd were and are and ever will be; *while* Aharman[4] in darkness, with backward understanding and desire for destruction, was *in* the abyss, and it is *he* who *will* not be; and the place of that destruction, and also of that darkness, is what they call the 'endlessly dark.' 4. And between them was empty space, *that* is, what they call 'air,' in which is now *their* meeting.

5. Both are limited and unlimited spirits, for the supreme is that which they call endless light, and the abyss that which is endlessly dark, so that between them is a void, and one is not connected with

[1] Reading aham-kaî, 'without a fellow-sovereign, peerless, unrivalled, independent.' This rare word occurs three times in §§ 2, 3, and some Pâzand writers suggest the meaning 'everlasting' (by means of the Persian gloss hamîsah), which is plausible enough, but hâmakî would be an extraordinary mode of writing the very common word hamâî, 'ever.'

[2] The word dînô (properly dênô), Av. daêna, being traceable to a root dî, 'to see,' must originally have meant 'a vision' (see Haug's Essays on the Religion of the Parsis, 2nd ed. p. 152, note 2), whence the term has been transferred to 'religion' and all religious observances, rules, and writings; so it may be translated either by 'religion' or by 'revelation.'

[3] This appears to be the meaning, but the construction of § 3 is altogether rather obscure, and suggestive of omissions in the text.

[4] The usual name of the evil spirit; it is probably an older corruption of Angra-mainyu than Ganrâk-maînôk, and a less technical term. Its Sasanian form was Aharmanî.

the other; and, again, both spirits are limited as to their own selves. 6. And, secondly, on account of the omniscience of Aûharmazd, both things are in the creation of Aûharmazd, the finite and the infinite; for this they know is that which is in the covenant of both spirits. 7. And, again, the complete sovereignty of the creatures of Aûharmazd is in the future existence, and that also is unlimited for ever and everlasting; and the creatures of Aharman will perish at the time when[1] the future existence occurs, and that also is eternity.

8. Aûharmazd, through omniscience, knew that Aharman exists, *and* whatever he schemes he infuses with malice and greediness till the end; *and* because He accomplishes the end by many means, He also produced spiritually the creatures which were necessary for those means, *and* they remained three thousand years in a spiritual *state*, so that they were unthinking[2] and unmoving, with intangible bodies.

9. The evil spirit, on account of backward knowledge, was not aware of the existence of Aûharmazd; and, afterwards, he arose from the abyss, and came in unto the light which he saw. 10. Desirous of destroying, and because of *his* malicious nature, he

[1] Substituting amat, 'when,' for mûn, 'which,' two Huzvâris forms which are frequently confounded by Pahlavi copyists because their Pâzand equivalents, ka and ke, are nearly alike.

[2] Reading aminîdâr in accordance with M6, which has amînîdâr in Chap. XXXIV, 1, where the same phrase occurs. Windischmann and Justi read amûîtâr, 'uninjured, invulnerable,' in both places. This sentence appears to refer to a preparatory creation of embryonic and immaterial existences, the prototypes, fravashis, spiritual counterparts, or guardian angels of the spiritual and material creatures afterwards produced.

rushed in to destroy that light of Aûharmazd unassailed by fiends, and he saw its bravery and glory were greater than his own; *so* he fled back to the gloomy darkness, and formed many demons and fiends; *and* the creatures of the destroyer arose for violence.

11. Aûharmazd, by whom the creatures of the evil spirit were seen, creatures terrible, corrupt, and bad, also considered them not commendable (bûrzisnîk). 12. Afterwards, the evil spirit saw the creatures of Aûharmazd; they appeared many creatures of delight (vâyah), enquiring creatures, and they seemed to him commendable, and he commended the creatures and creation of Aûharmazd.

13. Then Aûharmazd, with a knowledge[1] of which way the end of the matter *would be*, went to meet the evil spirit, and proposed peace to him, *and* spoke thus: 'Evil spirit! bring assistance unto my creatures, and offer praise! so that, in reward for it, ye (you and your creatures) may become immortal and undecaying, hungerless and thirstless.'

14. And the evil spirit shouted thus[2]: 'I *will* not depart, I *will* not provide assistance for thy creatures, I *will* not offer praise among thy creatures, and I am not of the same opinion with thee as to good things. I *will* destroy thy creatures for ever and everlasting; moreover, I *will* force all thy creatures into disaffection to thee and affection for myself.' 15. And the explanation thereof is this, that the evil spirit reflected in this manner, that

[1] The Huz. khavîtûnast stands for the Pâz. dânist with the meaning, here, of 'what is known, knowledge,' as in Persian.

[2] Literally, 'And it was shouted by him, the evil spirit, thus:' the usual idiom when the nominative follows the verb.

Aûharmazd was helpless as regarded him[1], therefore He proffers peace; and he did not agree, but bore on even into conflict with Him.

16. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'You are not omniscient and almighty, O evil spirit! so that it is not possible for thee to destroy me, and it is not possible for thee to force my creatures so that they *will* not return to my possession.'

17. Then Aûharmazd, through omniscience, knew that: If I do not grant a period of contest, then it *will* be possible for him to act *so* that he *may* be able to cause the seduction of my creatures to himself. As even now there are many of the intermixture of mankind who practise wrong more than right. 18. And Aûharmazd spoke to the evil spirit thus: 'Appoint a period! so that the intermingling of the conflict may be for nine thousand years.' For he knew that by appointing this period the evil spirit *would* be undone.

19. Then the evil spirit, unobservant and through ignorance, was content with that agreement; just like two men quarrelling together, who propose a time thus: Let us appoint such-and-such a day for a fight.

20. Aûharmazd also knew this, through omniscience, that within these nine thousand years, *for* three thousand years everything proceeds *by* the will of Aûharmazd, three thousand years *there is* an intermingling of the wills of Aûharmazd and Aharman, and the last three thousand years the evil spirit is disabled, and they keep the adversary away[2] from the creatures.

[1] The words dên val stand for dên valman.

[2] That is, 'the adversary is kept away.' In Pahlavi the third

21. Afterwards, Aûharmazd recited the Ahunavar thus: Yathâ ahû vairyô ('as a heavenly lord is to be chosen'), &c.[1] once, *and* uttered the twenty-one words[2]; He also exhibited to the evil spirit His own triumph in the end, and the impotence of the evil spirit, the annihilation of the demons, and the resurrection *and* undisturbed future existence of the creatures for ever and everlasting. 22. And the evil spirit, who perceived his own impotence and the annihilation of the dęmons, became confounded, and fell back to the gloomy darkness; even so as is declared in revelation, that, when one of its (the Ahunavar's) three *parts* was uttered, the evil spirit contracted *his* body through fear, and when two parts of it were uttered he fell upon *his* knees, and when all of it was uttered he became confounded

person plural is the indefinite person, as in English. These 9000 years are in addition to the 3000 mentioned in § 8, as appears more clearly in Chap. XXXIV, 1.

[1] This is the most sacred formula of the Parsis, which they have to recite frequently, not only during the performance of their ceremonies, but also in connection with most of their ordinary duties and habits. It is neither a prayer, nor a creed, but a declaratory formula in metre, consisting of one stanza of three lines, containing twenty-one Avesta words, as follows:—

Yathâ ahû vairyô, athâ ratus, ashâd *kîd* hakâ,
Vangheus dazdâ mananghô, skyaothnanãm angheus mazdâi,
Khshathremkâ ahurâi â, yim dregubyô dadad vâstârem.

And it may be translated in the following manner: 'As a heavenly lord is to be chosen, so is an earthly master (spiritual guide), for the sake of righteousness, *to be* a giver of the good thoughts of the actions of life towards Mazda; and the dominion is for the lord (Ahura) whom he (Mazda) has given as a protector for the poor' (see Haug's Essays on the Religion of the Parsis, 2nd ed. pp. 125, 141).

[2] The word mârîk must mean 'word' here, but in some other places it seems to mean 'syllable' or 'accented syllable.'

and impotent as to the harm he caused the creatures of Aûharmazd, *and* he remained three thousand years in confusion[1].

23. Aûharmazd created *his* creatures in the confusion of Aharman; first he produced Vohûman ('good thought'), by whom the progress of the creatures of Aûharmazd was advanced.

24. The evil spirit first created[2] Mitôkht ('falsehood'), and then Akôman ('evil thought').

25 The first of Aûharmazd's creatures of the world *was* the sky, and his good thought (Vohûman), by good procedure[3], produced the light of the world, along with which was the good religion of the Mazdayasnians; this *was* because the renovation (frashakar*d*)[4] which happens to the creatures *was* known to him. 26. Afterwards *arose* Ar*d*ava-

[1] This is the first third of the 9000 years appointed in §§ 18, 20, and the second 3000 years mentioned in Chap. XXXIV, 1.

[2] It is usual to consider dâ*d*an (Huz. yehabûntan), when traceable to Av. dâ = Sans. dhâ, as meaning 'to create,' but it can hardly be proved that it means to create out of nothing, any more than any other of the Avesta verbs which it is sometimes convenient to translate by 'create.' Before basing any argument upon the use of this word it will, therefore, be safer to substitute the word 'produce' in all cases.

[3] Or it may be translated, 'and from it Vohûman, by good procedure,' &c. The position here ascribed to Vohûman, or the good thought of Aûharmazd, bears some resemblance to that of the Word in John i. 1–5, but with this essential difference, that Vohûman is merely a creature of Aûharmazd, not identified with him; for the latter idea would be considered, by a Parsi, as rather inconsistent with strict monotheism. The 'light of the world' now created must be distinguished from the 'endless light' already existing with Aûharmazd in § 2.

[4] The word frashakar*d*, 'what is made durable, perpetuation,' is applied to the renovation of the universe which is to take place about the time of the resurrection, as a preparation for eternity.

hist, and then Shatvaîrô, and then Spendarmad, and then Horvadad, and then Amerôdad[1].

27. From the dark world of Aharman *were* Akôman and Andar, and then Sôvar, and then Nâkahêd, and then Tâîrêv and Zâîrîk[2].

28. Of Aûharmazd's creatures of the world, the first *was* the sky; the second, water; the third, earth; the fourth, plants; the fifth, animals; the sixth, mankind.

CHAPTER II.

0. On the formation of the luminaries.

1. Aûharmazd produced illumination between the sky and the earth, the constellation stars and those also not of the constellations[3], then the moon, and afterwards the sun, as I *shall* relate.

[1] These five, with Vohûman and Aûharmazd in his angelic capacity, constitute the seven Ameshaspends, 'undying causers of prosperity, immortal benefactors,' or archangels, who have charge of the whole material creation. They are personifications of old Avesta phrases, such as Vohû-manô, 'good thought;' Asha-vahista, 'perfect rectitude;' Khshathra-vairya, 'desirable dominion;' Spenta-ârmaiti, 'bountiful devotion;' Haurvatâd, 'completeness or health;' and Ameretâd, 'immortality.'

[2] These six demons are the opponents of the six archangels respectively (see Chap. XXX, 29); their names in the Avesta are, Akem-manô, 'evil thought;' Indra, Sauru, Naunghaithya, Tauru, Zairika (see Vendîdâd X, 17, 18 Sp., and XIX, 43 W.), which have been compared with the Vedic god Indra, Sarva (a name of Siva), the Nâsatyas, and Sans. tura, 'diseased,' and garas, 'decay,' respectively. For further details regarding them, see Chap. XXVIII, 7–13.

[3] The word akhtar is the usual term in Pahlavi for a constellation of the zodiac; but the term apâkhtar, 'away from the akhtar,' means not only 'the north,' or away from the zodiac, but also 'a

2. First he produced the *celestial* sphere, and the constellation stars are assigned to it by him; especially these twelve whose names *are* Varak (the Lamb), Tôrâ (the Bull), Dô-patkar (the Two-figures or Gemini), Kalaḵang (the Crab), Sêr (the Lion), Khûsak (Virgo), Tarâzûk (the Balance), Gazdûm (the Scorpion), Nîmâsp (the Centaur or Sagittarius), Vahîk[1] (Capricornus), Dûl (the Waterpot), and Mâhîk (the Fish); 3. which, from their original creation, *were divided* into the twenty-eight subdivisions of the astronomers[2], of which the names are Padêvar, Pêsh-Parvîz, Parviz, Paha, Avêsar, Besn, Rakhvaḏ, Taraha, Avra, Nahn, Miyân, Avdem, Mâshâha, Spûr, Husru, Srob, Nur, Gêl, Garafsa, Varaṇt, Gaṇu, Goî, Muru, Bunda, Kahtsar, Vaht, Miyân, Kaht[3]. 4. And all his original creations,

planet,' which is in the zodiac, but apart from the constellations. The meaning of akhtar, most suitable to the context here, appears to be the general term 'constellation.'

[1] Written Nahâzîk here, both in K20 and M6, which may be compared with Pers. nahâz, 'the leading goat of a flock;' but the usual word for 'Capricornus' is Vahîk, as in Chap. V, 6. None of the other names of the signs of the zodiac are written here in Pâzand, but it may be noted that if the ah in Vahîk were written in Pâzand (that is, in Avesta characters), the word would become the same as Nahâzîk in Pahlavi.

[2] Literally, 'fragments of the calculators,' khurḏak-i hâmârîkân. These subdivisions are the spaces traversed daily by the moon among the stars, generally called 'lunar mansions.'

[3] All these names are written in Pâzand, which accounts for their eccentric orthography, in which both K20 and M6 agree very closely. The subdivision Parviz is evidently the Pers. parvên, which includes the Pleiades, and corresponds therefore to the Sanskrit Nakshatra Kṛittikâ. This correspondence leads to the identification of the first subdivision, Padêẏar, with the Nakshatra Aṣvinî. The Pâzand names are so corrupt that no reliance can be placed upon them, and the first step towards recovering the true

residing in the world, are committed to them[1]; so that when the destroyer arrives they overcome the adversary *and* their own persecution, and the creatures are saved from those adversities.

5. *As* a specimen of a warlike army, which is destined for battle, they have ordained every single constellation of those 6480 thousand small stars as assistance; and among those constellations four chieftains, appointed on the four sides, are leaders. 6. On the recommendation of those chieftains the many unnumbered stars are specially assigned to the various quarters and various places, as the united strength *and* appointed power of those constellations. 7. As it is said that Tîstar is the chieftain of the east, Satavês the chieftain of the west, Vanand the chieftain of the south, *and* Haptôk-rîng the chieftain of the north[2]. 8. The great *one* which they

Pahlavi names would be to transliterate the Pâzand back into Pahlavi characters. The ninth subdivision is mentioned in Chap. VII, 1 by the name Avrak.

[1] That is, to the zodiacal constellations, which are supposed to have special charge of the welfare of creation.

[2] Of these four constellations or stars, which are said to act as leaders, there is no doubt that Haptôk-ring, the chieftain of the north, is Ursa Major; and it is usually considered that Tîstar, the chieftain of the east, is Sirius; but the other two chieftains are not so well identified, and there may be some doubt as to the proper stations of the eastern and western chieftains. It is evident, however, that the most westerly stars, visible at any one time of the year, are those which set in the dusk of the evening; and east of these, all the stars are visible during the night as far as those which rise at daybreak, which are the most easterly stars visible at that time of the year. Tîstar or Sirius can, therefore, be considered the chieftain of the eastern stars only when it rises before daybreak, which it does at the latter end of summer; and Haptôk-ring or Ursa Major is due north at midnight (on the meridian below the pole) at about the same time of the year. These stars, there-

call a Gâh (period of the day), which they say is the great *one* of the middle of the sky, till *just* before the destroyer came was the midday (or south) *one* of the five, that is, the Rapîtvîn [1].

---

fore, fulfil the conditions necessary for being chieftains of the east and north at the end of summer, and we must look for stars capable of being chieftains of the south and west at the same season. Now, when Ursa Major is near the meridian below the pole, Fomalhaut is the most conspicuous star near the meridian in the far south, and is probably to be identified with Vanand the chieftain of the south. And when Sirius rises some time before daybreak, Antares (in Scorpio) sets some time after dusk in the evening, and may well be identified with Satavês the chieftain of the west. Assuming that there has been a precession of the equinoxes equivalent to two hours of time, since the idea of these chieftains (which may perhaps be traced to Avesta times) was first formed, it may be calculated that the time of year when these leading stars then best fulfilled that idea was about a month before the autumnal equinox, when Ursa Major would be due north three-quarters of an hour after midnight, and Fomalhaut due south three-quarters of an hour before midnight, Sirius would rise three hours before the sun, and Antares would set three hours after the sun. In the Avesta these leading stars are named Tistrya, Satavaêsa, Vana*nt*, and Haptôi-ri*ng*a (see Tîstar Yt. 0, 8, 9, 12, 32, &c., Rashnu Yt. 26–28, Sîrôz. 13).

[1] This translation, though very nearly literal, must be accepted with caution. If the word mas be not a name it can hardly mean anything but 'great;' and that it refers to a constellation appears from Chap. V, 1. The word khômsâk is an irregular form of the Huz. khômsyâ, 'five,' and may refer either to the five chieftains (including 'the great one') or to the five Gâhs or periods of the day, of which Rapîtvîn is the midday one (see Chap. XXV, 9). The object of the text seems to be to connect the Rapîtvîn Gâh with some great mid-sky and midday constellation or star, possibly Regulus, which, about B. C. 960, must have been more in the daylight than any other important star during the seven months of summer, the only time that the Rapîtvîn Gâh can be celebrated (see Chap. XXV, 7–14). Justi has, 'They call that the great one of the place, which is great in the middle of the sky; they say that before the enemy came it was always midday, that is, Rapîtvîn.'

9. Aûharmazd performed the spiritual Yazisn *ceremony* with the archangels (ameshôspendân) in the Rapîtvîn Gâh, and in the Yazisn he supplied every means necessary for overcoming the adversary[1]. 10. He deliberated with the consciousness (bôd) *and* guardian spirits (fravâhar) of men[2], and the omniscient wisdom, brought forward among men, spoke thus: 'Which seems to you the more advantageous, when[3] I shall present you to the world? *that* you shall contend in a bodily form with the fiend (drûg), and the fiend shall perish, and in the end I *shall* have you prepared again perfect and immortal, and in the end give you back to the world, *and* you *will* be wholly immortal, undecaying, and undisturbed; or *that* it be always necessary to provide you protection from the destroyer?'

11. Thereupon, the guardian spirits of men became of the same opinion with the omniscient wisdom about going to the world, on account of the evil *that* comes upon them, in the world, from the fiend (drûg) Aharman, and *their* becoming, at last, again unpersecuted by the adversary, perfect, and immortal, in the future existence, for ever and everlasting.

Windischmann has nearly the same, as both follow the Pâzand MSS. in reading hômîsak (as a variant of hamîsak), 'always,' instead of khômsâk.

[1] Or 'adversity.'

[2] These were among the fravashis already created (see Chap. I, 8).

[3] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'which' (see note to Chap. I, 7).

CHAPTER III.

1. On the rush of the destroyer at the creatures it is said, in revelation, that the evil spirit, when he saw the impotence of himself and the confederate[1] (hâm-dast) demons, owing to the righteous man[2], became confounded, *and* seemed in confusion three thousand years. 2. During that confusion the arch-fiends[3] of the demons severally shouted thus: 'Rise up, *thou* father of us! for we *will* cause a conflict in the world, the distress and injury from which *will* become those of Aûharmazd and the archangels.'

3. Severally they twice recounted their own evil deeds, and it pleased him not; and that wicked evil spirit, through fear of the righteous man, was not able to lift up *his* head until the wicked *Gêh*[4] came, at the completion of the three thousand years. 4. And she shouted to the evil spirit thus: 'Rise up, *thou* father of us! for I *will* cause that conflict in the world wherefrom the distress and injury of Aûharmazd and the archangels *will* arise.' 5. And she twice recounted severally her own evil deeds, and it pleased him not; and that wicked evil spirit

---

[1] The Pâzand MSS. have garôist, for the Huz. hêmnunast, 'trusted.' Windischmann and Justi have 'all.'

[2] Probably Gâyômar*d*.

[3] The word kamârakân is literally 'those with an evil pate,' and is derived from Av. kameredha, 'the head of an evil being,' also applied to 'the evil summit' of Mount Arezûra (Vend. XIX, 140, 142), which is supposed to be at the gate of hell (see Chap. XII, 8). That the chief demons or arch-fiends are meant, appears more clearly in Chap. XXVIII, 12, 44, where the word is kamârîkân.

[4] The personification of the impurity of menstruation.

rose not from that confusion, through fear of the righteous man.

6. And, again, the wicked *Gêh* shouted thus: 'Rise up, *thou* father of us! for in that conflict I *will* shed thus much vexation[1] on the righteous man and the labouring ox that, through my deeds, life *will* not be wanted, and I will destroy their living souls (nismô)[2]; I *will* vex the water, I *will* vex the plants, I *will* vex the fire of Aûharmazd, I *will* make the whole creation of Aûharmazd vexed.' 7. And she so recounted those evil deeds a second time, that the evil spirit was delighted and started up from that confusion; and he kissed *Gêh* upon the head, and the pollution which they call menstruation became apparent in *Gêh*.

8. He shouted to *Gêh* thus: 'What is thy wish? so that I may give *it* thee.' And *Gêh* shouted to the evil spirit thus: 'A man is the wish, so give *it* to me.'

9. The form of the evil spirit was a log-like lizard's (vazak) body, and he appeared a young man of fifteen years to *Gêh*, and that brought the thoughts of *Gêh* to him[3].

[1] The word vêsh or vîsh may stand either for bêsh, 'distress, vexation,' as here assumed, or for vish, 'poison,' as translated by Windischmann and Justi in accordance with the Pâz. MSS.

[2] That this is the Huzvâris of rûbân, 'soul,' appears from Chap. XV, 3–5, where both words are used indifferently; but it is not given in the Huz.-Pâz. Glossary. It is evidently equivalent to Chald. nismâ, and ought probably to have the traditional pronunciation nisman, an abbreviation of nismman.

[3] This seems to be the literal meaning of the sentence, and is confirmed by Chap. XXVIII, 1, but Windischmann and Justi understand that the evil spirit formed a youth for *Gêh* out of a toad's body. The incident in the text may be compared with Milton's idea of Satan and Sin in Paradise Lost, Book II, 745–765.

10. Afterwards, the evil spirit, with the confederate demons, went towards the luminaries, and he saw the sky; and he led them up, fraught with malicious intentions. 11. He stood upon one-third[1] of the inside of the sky, and he sprang, like a snake, out of the sky down to the earth.

12. *In* the month Fravar*d*în and the day Aûharmazd[2] he rushed in at noon, and thereby the sky was as shattered and frightened by him, as a sheep by a wolf. 13. He came on to the water which was arranged[3] below the earth, and then the middle of this earth was pierced *and* entered by him. 14. Afterwards, he came to the vegetation, then to the ox, then to Gâyômar*d*, and then he came to fire[4]; so, just like a fly, he rushed out upon the whole creation; and he made the world quite as injured and dark[5] at midday as though it were in dark night. 15. And noxious creatures were diffused by him over the earth, biting and venomous, such as the snake, scorpion, frog (kalvâk), and lizard (vazak), so that not so much as the point of a needle remained *free* from noxious creatures. 16. And blight[6] was diffused by him over the

[1] Perhaps referring to the proportion of the sky which is overspread by the darkness of night. The whole sentence is rather obscure.

[2] The vernal equinox (see Chap. XXV, 7).

[3] Literally, 'and it was arranged.'

[4] For the details of these visitations, see Chaps. VI–X.

[5] Reading khûst tôm; but it may be hangî*d*tûm, 'most turbid, opaque.'

[6] The word makhâ, 'blow, stroke,' is a Huzvâri*s* logogram not found in the glossaries; M6 has dâr, 'wood,' but this may be a misreading, due to the original, from which M6 was copied, being difficult to read.

vegetation, and it withered away immediately. 17. And avarice, want, pain, hunger, disease, lust, and lethargy were diffused by him abroad upon the ox and Gâyômard.

18. Before *his* coming to the ox, Aûharmazd ground up the healing fruit[1], which some call 'bînâk,' small in water openly before *its* eyes, so that *its* damage *and* discomfort from the calamity (zanisn) might be less; and when it became at the same time lean and ill, as *its* breath went forth and it passed away, the ox also spoke thus: 'The cattle are to be created, *and* their work, labour, and care are to be appointed.'

19. And before *his* coming to Gâyômard, Aûharmazd brought forth a sweat upon Gâyômard, so long as he might recite a prayer (vâg) of one stanza (vikast); moreover, Aûharmazd formed that sweat into the youthful body of a man of fifteen years, radiant *and* tall. 20. When Gâyômard issued from the sweat he saw the world dark as night, and the earth as though not a needle's point remained *free from* noxious creatures; the *celestial* sphere was in revolution, *and* the sun and moon remained in motion: *and* the world's struggle, owing to the clamour of the Mâzînikân demons[2], was with the constellations.

21. And the evil spirit thought that the creatures of Aûharmazd were all rendered useless except

[1] The word mîvang is an unusual form of mîvak, 'fruit.' It is probably to be traced to an Av. mivangh, which might mean 'fatness,' as Windischmann suggests.

[2] The Mâzainya daêva of the Avesta, and Mâzendarân demons, or idolators, of Persian legends.

Gâyômar*d*; and Astô-vîdâ*d*[1] with a thousand demons, causers of death, were let forth by him on Gâyômar*d*. 22. But his appointed time had not come, *and* he (Astô-vîdâ*d*) obtained no means of noosing (âvizî-*d*anŏ) *him;* as it is said that, when the opposition of the evil spirit came, the period of the life and rule of Gâyômar*d* was appointed for thirty years. 23. After the coming of the adversary he lived thirty years, and Gâyômar*d* spoke thus: 'Although the destroyer *has* come, mankind *will* be all of my race; and this one thing is good, when they perform duty and good works.'

24. And, afterwards, he (the evil spirit) came to fire, and he mingled smoke and darkness with it. 25. The planets, with many demons, dashed against the *celestial* sphere, and they mixed the constellations; and the whole creation was as disfigured as though fire disfigured every place and smoke arose over *it*. 26. And ninety days *and* nights the heavenly angels were contending in the world with the confederate demons of the evil spirit, *and* hurled *them* confounded to hell; and the rampart of the sky was formed so that the adversary should not be able to mingle with it.

27. Hell is in the middle of the earth; there where the evil spirit pierced the earth[2] and rushed in upon it, as all the possessions of the world were

[1] The demon of death, Astô-vîdhôtu in the Avesta (Vend. IV, 137, V, 25, 31), who is supposed 'to cast a halter around the necks of the dead to drag them to hell, but if their good works have exceeded their sins they throw off the noose and go to heaven' (Haug's Essays, 2nd ed. p. 321). This name is misread Asti-vihâ*d* by Pâzand writers.

[2] See § 13.

changing into duality, *and* persecution, contention, and mingling of high and low became manifest.

Chapter IV.

1. This also is said, that when the primeval ox[1] passed away it fell to the right hand, *and* Gâyômar*d* afterwards, when he passed *away*, to the left hand. 2. Gôsûrvan[2]; as the soul of the primeval ox came out from the body of the ox, stood up before the ox *and* cried to Aûharmazd, as much as a thousand men when they sustain a cry at one time, thus: 'With whom is the guardianship of the creatures left by thee, when ruin *has* broken into the earth, and vegetation is withered, and water is troubled? Where is the man[3] of whom it was said by thee thus: I *will* produce *him*, so that he may preach carefulness?'

3. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'You are made ill[4], O Gôsûrvan! you have the illness which the evil spirit brought on; if it were proper to produce that man in this earth at this time, the evil spirit would not have been oppressive in it.'

[1] Literally, 'the sole-created ox' from whom all the animals and some plants are supposed to have proceeded (see Chaps. X and XIV), as mankind proceeded from Gâyômar*d*. It is the ox of the primitive creation, mentioned in Chap. III, 14, 18.

[2] The spiritual representative of the primeval ox, called Geus-urvâ, 'soul of the bull,' in the Avesta, of which name Gôsûrvan is a corruption. The complaint of Gôsûrvan is recorded in the Gâthas, the oldest part of the Avesta (see Yas. XXIX).

[3] Referring to Zaratûst.

[4] In K20, 'You are ill.'

4. Forth Gôsûrvan walked to the star station (pâyak) *and* cried in the same manner, and forth to the moon station *and* cried in the same manner, *and* forth to the sun station, and then the guardian spirit of Zaratûst was exhibited to her, *and Aûharmazd said* thus[1]: 'I will produce for the world *him* who will preach carefulness.' 5. Contented became the spirit Gôsûrvan, and assented thus: 'I will nourish the creatures;' that is, she became again consenting to a worldly creation in the world.

Chapter V.

1. Seven chieftains of the planets have come unto the seven chieftains of the constellations[2], as the planet Mercury (Tîr) unto Tîstar, the planet Mars (Vâhrâm) unto Haptôk-rîng, the planet Jupiter (Aûharmazd) unto Vanand, the planet Venus (Anâhîd) unto Satavês, the planet Saturn (Kêvân) unto the great *one* of the middle of the sky, Gôkîhar[3]

[1] As the text stands in the MSS. it means, 'and then the guardian spirit of Zaratûst demonstrated to her thus;' but whether it be intended to represent the fravâhar as producing the creature is doubtful. The angel Gôs, who is identified with Gôsûrvan, is usually considered a female, but this is hardly consistent with being the soul of a bull (see Chap. X, 1, 2), though applicable enough to a representative of the earth. In the Selections of Zâd-sparam, II, 6, however, this mythological animal is said to have been a female (see Appendix to Bundahis).

[2] Five of these are mentioned in Chap. II, 7, 8, to which the sun and moon are here added.

[3] As this name stands in the MSS. it may be read Gûrgdâr (as in the Pâz. MSS.), Gûrkîhar, or Dûrkîhar; the reading is very uncertain, and Windischmann suggests Gûrg-kîhar, 'wolf progeny' (compare vehrkô-kithra in Ardabahist Yast 8). A shooting star,

and the thievish (dûggun) Mûspar [1], provided with tails, unto the sun and moon and stars. 2. The sun has attached Mûspar to its own radiance by mutual agreement, so that he may be less able to do harm (vinâs).

3. Of Mount Albûrz [2] it is declared, that around the world and Mount Têrak [3], which is the middle of the world, the revolution of the sun is like a moat [4] around the world; it turns back in a circuit [5] owing to the enclosure (var) of Mount Albûrz around Têrak. 4. As it is said that *it is* the Têrak of Albûrz from behind which my sun and moon *and* stars return again [6]. 5. For there are a hundred

---

or meteor, is probably meant (see Chap. XXX, 18, 31), and as it is the special disturber of the moon, it may be Gô-*k*îhar (Av. gao-*k*ithra, 'of ox-lineage'), a common epithet of the moon; the Pahlavi letter *k* being often written something like the compound r*k*; and this supposition is confirmed by the Gôk-*k*ihar of TD in Chap. XXVIII, 44.

[1] This is written Mûs-parîk in TD in Chap. XXVIII, 44, and seems to be the mûs pairika of Yas. XVII, 46, LXVII, 23, as noticed by Windischmann; it is probably meant here for a comet, as it is attached to the sun. The zodiacal light and milky way have too little of the wandering character of planets to be considered planetary opponents of the sun and moon.

[2] The hara berezaiti, 'lofty mountain-range,' of the Avesta, which is an ideal representative of the loftiest mountains known to the ancient Iranians, the Alburz range in Mâzendarân, south of the Caspian. See Chaps. VIII, 2, XII, 1, 3.

[3] The Taêra of Yas. XLI, 24, Râm Yt. 7, Zamyâd Yt. 6. See Chap. XII, 2, 4.

[4] The word mayâ-gîr is a Huz. hybrid for âv-gîr, 'a water-holder, or ditch.'

[5] The word may be either âvêgak or khavîgak, with this meaning.

[6] This appears to be a quotation from the Rashnu Yast, 25. The Huz. word for 'month' is here used for the 'moon.'

and eighty apertures (rôgin) in the east, and a hundred and eighty in the west, through Albûrz; *and* the sun, every day, comes in through an aperture, and goes out through an aperture[1]; *and* the whole connection and motion of the moon and constellations and planets is with it: every day it always illumines (or warms) three regions (kêshvar)[2] *and* a half, as is evident to the eyesight. 6. And twice in every year the day and night are equal, for on the original attack[3], when[4] it (the sun) went forth from its first degree (khûrdak), the day and night were equal, it was the season of spring; when it arrives at the first degree of Kalaḍang (Cancer) the time of *day* is greatest, *it is* the beginning of summer; when it arrives at the sign (khûrdak) Tarâgûk (Libra) the day and night are equal, *it is* the beginning of autumn; when it arrives at the sign Vahik (Capricorn) the night is a maximum, *it is* the beginning of winter; and when it arrives at Varak (Aries) the night and day *have* again become equal, as when it

[1] This mode of accounting for the varying position of sunrise and sunset resembles that in the Book of Enoch, LXXI, but only six eastern and six western gates of heaven are there mentioned, and the sun changes its gates of entrance and exit only once a month, instead of daily.

[2] See § 9 and Chap. XI.

[3] The reading of this word is doubtful, although its meaning is tolerably clear. The Pâz. MSS. read har dô, 'both;' Justi reads ardab, 'quarrel;' and in the Selections of Zâd-sparam it is written ârḍîk. It seems probable that the word is kharah, 'attack,' which being written exactly like ardê (Av. ashya, see Yas. LVI, 1, 1) has had a circumflex added to indicate the supposed d, and this false reading has led to the more modern form ârḍîk (Pers. ârd, anger'). But probabilities in obscure matters are often treacherous guides.

[4] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'which,' throughout the sentence (see note to Chap. I, 7).

went forth from Varak. 7. So that when it comes back to Varak, in three hundred and sixty days and the five Gâtha days[1], it goes in *and* comes out through one and the same aperture; the aperture is not mentioned, for if it had been mentioned the demons would have known the secret, and been able to introduce disaster.

8. From there where the sun comes on on the longest day to *where* it comes on on the shortest day is the east region Savah; from there where it comes on on the shortest day to *where* it goes off on the shortest day is the direction of the south regions Fradadafsh and Vîdadafsh; from there where it goes in on the shortest day to *where* it goes in on the longest day is the west region Arzah; from there where it comes in on the longest day to there where it goes in on the longest day are the north regions Vôrûbarst *and* Vôrûgarst[2]. 9. When the sun comes on, it illumines (or warms) the regions of Savah, Fradadafsh, Vîdadafsh, and half of Khvanîras[3]; when it goes in on the dark side, it illumines the regions of Arzah, Vôrûbarst, Vôrûgarst, *and* one half of Khvanîras; when *it is* day here *it is* night there.

[1] The five supplementary days added to the last of the twelve months, of thirty days each, to complete the year. For these days no additional apertures are provided in Albûrz, and the sun appears to have the choice of either of the two centre apertures out of the 180 on each side of the world. This arrangement seems to indicate that the idea of the apertures is older than the rectification of the calendar which added the five Gâtha days to an original year of 360 days.

[2] This sentence occurs, without the names of the kêshvars or regions, in the Pahl. Vend. XIX, 19. For the kêshvars see Chap. XI.

[3] Often corrupted into Khanîras in the MSS.

Chapter VI.

1. On the conflict[1] of the creations of the world with the antagonism of the evil spirit it is said in revelation, that the evil spirit, even as he rushed in and looked upon the pure bravery of the angels and his own violence[2], wished to rush back. 2. The spirit of the sky is himself like one of the warriors who has put on armour; he arrayed the sky against the evil spirit, and led on in the contest, until Aûharmazd had completed a rampart around, stronger than the sky and in front of the sky. 3. And his guardian spirits (fravâhar) of warriors and the righteous, on war horses and spear in hand, were around the sky; such-like as the hair on the head is the similitude (ânguni-aîtak) of those who hold the watch of the rampart. 4. And no passage was found by the evil spirit, who rushed back; and he beheld the annihilation of the demons and his own impotence, as Aûharmazd *did* his own final triumph, producing the renovation *of the universe* for ever and everlasting.

Chapter VII.

1. The second conflict was waged with the water, because, as the star Tîstar *was* in Cancer, the water which is in the subdivision they call Avrak[3] was

[1] This is the doubtful word translated 'attack' in Chap. V, 6 (see the note there); it also occurs at the beginning of each of the following four chapters.

[2] Reading zôrîh; but it may be zûrîh, 'falsity.'

[3] The ninth lunar mansion (see Chap. II, 3) corresponding with the middle of Cancer. Tîstar (Sirius) being in Cancer probably

pouring, on the same day when the destroyer rushed in, *and* came again into notice for mischief (âvârak) in the direction of the west. 2. For every single month is the owner of one constellation; the month Tîr is the fourth month[1] of the year, *and* Cancer the fourth constellation from Aries, so it is the owner of Cancer, into which Tîstar sprang, *and* displayed the characteristics of a producer of rain; and he brought on the water aloft by the strength of the wind. 3. Co-operators with Tîstar were Vôhûman and the angel Hôm, with the assistance of the angel Bûrg and the righteous guardian spirits in orderly arrangement.

4. Tîstar was converted into three forms, the form of a man and the form of a horse and the form of a bull[2]; thirty days *and* nights he was distinguished in brilliance[3], and in each form he produced rain ten days *and* nights; as the astrologers say that every constellation has three forms. 5. Every single drop of that rain became as big as a bowl, and the water stood the height of a man over the whole of this earth; *and* the noxious creatures on the earth being all killed by the rain, went into the holes of the earth[4].

means that it rises about the same time as the stars of Cancer, as is actually the case.

[1] See Chap. XXV, 20.

[2] See Tîstar Yt. 13, 16, 18, where it is stated that Tîstar assumes the form of a man for the first ten nights, of a bull for the second ten nights, and of a horse for the third ten nights. Also in Vend. XIX, 126 Tîstar is specially invoked in his form of a bull.

[3] Or it may be translated, 'he hovered in the light,' as Windischmann and Justi have it.

[4] In comparing the inundation produced by Tîstar with the Noachian deluge, it must be recollected that the former is represented as occurring before mankind had propagated on the earth.

6. And, afterwards, the wind spirit, so that it may not be contaminated (gûmîkht), stirs up the wind *and* atmosphere as the life stirs in the body; and the water was all swept away by it, and was brought out to the borders of the earth, and the wide-formed[1] ocean arose therefrom. 7. The noxious creatures remained dead within the earth, and their venom and stench were mingled with the earth, and in order to carry that poison away from the earth Tîstar went down into the ocean in the form of a white horse with long hoofs[2].

8. And Apâôsh[3], the demon, came meeting him in the likeness of a black horse with clumsy (kund) hoofs; a mile (parasang)[4] away from him fled Tîstar, through the fright which drove *him* away. 9. And Tîstar begged for success from Aûharmazd, and Aûharmazd gave *him* strength and power, as it is said, that unto Tîstar was brought at once the strength of ten vigorous horses, ten vigorous camels, ten vigorous bulls, ten mountains, and ten rivers[5]. 10. A mile away from him fled Apâôsh, the demon, through fright at *his* strength; on account of this they speak of an arrow-*shot* with Tîstar's strength in the sense *of a mile*.

---

[1] The term farâkhû-kar*d*, 'wide-formed,' is a free Pahlavi translation of Av. vouru-kasha, 'wide-shored,' or 'having wide abysses,' applied to the boundless ocean (see Chap. XIII, 1).

[2] For the Avesta account of this expedition of Tîstar, see Tîstar Yt. 20–29.

[3] Miswritten Apav*s* or Apava*s* in Pâzand, by all MSS. in this chapter, but see Chap. XXVIII, 39.

[4] The word parasang is here used for Av. hâthra, which was about an English mile (see Chap. XXVI, 1).

[5] A quotation from Tîstar Yt. 25.

11. Afţerwards, with a cloud for a jar (khûmb)—thus they call the measure which was a means of the work—he seized upon the water *and* made it rain most prodigiously, in drops *like* bull's heads and men's heads, pouring in handfuls *and* pouring in armfuls, both great and small. 12. On the production of that rain the demons Aspengargâk[1] *and* Apâôsh contended *with it*, and the fire Vâzist[2] turned *its* club over; and owing to the blow of the club Aspengargâk made a very grievous noise, as even now, in a conflict with the producer of rain, a groaning and raging[3] are manifest. 13. And ten nights and days rain was produced by him in that manner, and the poison and venom of the noxious creatures which were in the earth were all mixed up in the water, and the water became quite salt, because there remained in the earth *some* of those germs which noxious creatures ever collect.

14. Afterwards, the wind, in the same manner *as before*, restrained the water, at the end of three days, on various sides of the earth; and the three great seas *and* twenty-three small seas[4] arose therefrom, *and* two fountains (*k*ashmak) of the sea thereby became manifest, one the *Ā*ê*k*ast lake, and one the Sôvbar[5], whose sources are connected with the

[1] Mentioned in Vend. XIX, 135, thus: 'thou shouldst propitiate the fire Vâzista, the smiter of the demon Spengaghra.' It is also written Spêngargâk in Chap. XVII, 1, and Aspengarôgâ in Chap. XXVIII, 39.

[2] That is, the lightning (see Chap. XVII, 1).

[3] Or, 'a tumult and flashing.' Justi has 'howling and shrieking;' the two words being very ambiguous in the original.

[4] See Chap. XIII, 6.

[5] See Chap. XXII, 1–3.

fountain of the sea. 15. And at its north side[1] two rivers flowed out, *and* went one to the east *and* one to the west; they are the Arag river and the Vêh river; as it is said thus: 'Through those finger-breadth tricklings do thou pour *and* draw forth two such waters, O Aûharmazd!' 16. Both those rivers wind about through all the extremities of the earth, and intermingle again with the water of the wide-formed ocean. 17. As those two rivers flowed out, *and* from the same place of origin as theirs, eighteen[2] navigable rivers flowed out, and after the other waters have flowed out from those navigable *streams* they all flow back to the Arag[3] river and Vêh river, whose fertilization (khvâpardârîh) of the world *arises* therefrom.

CHAPTER VIII.

0. On the conflict which the evil spirit waged with the earth.

1. As the evil spirit rushed in, the earth shook[4], *and* the substance of mountains was created in the earth. 2. First, Mount Albûrz arose; afterwards,

[1] Probably meaning the north side of the Arêdvîvsûr fountain of the sea, which is said to be on the lofty Hûgar, a portion of Albûrz, from the northern side of which these two semi-mythical rivers are said to flow (see Chaps. XII, 5, XX, 1).

[2] See Chap. XX, 2.

[3] Here written Arêng, but the usual Pahlavi reading is Arag; the nasal of the Av. Rangha being generally omitted in Pahlavi, as other nasals are sometimes; thus we often find sag for sang, 'stone.'

[4] The word *gudnîd* is a transposition of *gundîd*, a graphical variant of *gunbîd*, 'shook.'

the other ranges of mountains (kôfânîhâ) of the middle of the earth; for as Albûrz grew forth all the mountains remained in motion, for they have all grown forth from the root of Albûrz. 3. At that time they came up from the earth, like a tree which *has* grown up to the clouds *and its* root[1] to the bottom; and their root passed on that way *from* one to the other, *and* they are arranged in mutual connection. 4. Afterwards, about that wonderful shaking out from the earth, they say that a great mountain is the knot of lands; *and* the passage for the waters within the mountains is the root which is below the mountains; they forsake the upper *parts* so that they may flow into it, just as the roots of trees pass into the earth; a counterpart (ânguniaîtak) of the blood in the arteries of men, which gives strength to the whole body. 5. In numbers[2], apart from Albûrz, all the mountains grew up out of the earth in eighteen years[3], from which *arises* the perfection[4] of men's advantage.

Chapter IX.

1. The conflict waged with plants was that when[5] they became quite dry. 2. Amerôdad the arch-

[1] M6 has rakâk, but this and many other strange words are probably due to the copyist of that MS. having an original before him which was nearly illegible in many places.

[2] Or, 'as it were innumerable;' the word amar meaning both 'number' and 'innumerable.'

[3] See Chap. XII, 1.

[4] The word must be farhâkhtagân, 'proprieties,' both here and in Chap. IX, 6, as farhâkhtisn is an ungrammatical form.

[5] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'which' (see the note to Chap. I, 7).

angel, as the vegetation was his own, pounded the plants small, *and* mixed *them* up with the water *which* Tîstar seized, and Tîstar made that water rain down upon the whole earth. 3. On the whole earth plants grew up like hair upon the heads of men. 4. Ten thousand[1] of them grew forth of one special description, for keeping away the ten thousand species of disease *which* the evil spirit produced for the creatures; *and* from those ten thousand, the 100,000 species[2] of plants have grown forth.

5. From that same germ of plants the tree of all germs[3] was given forth, *and* grew up in the wide-formed ocean, from which the germs of all species of plants ever increased. 6. And near to that tree of all germs the Gôkar*d* tree[4] was produced, for keeping away deformed (dûspa*d*) decrepitude; *and* the full perfection of the world arose therefrom.

CHAPTER X.

•0. On the conflict waged with the primeval ox.

1. As it passed away[5], owing to the vegetable principle (*k*îharak) *proceeding* from every limb of the ox, fifty and five species of grain[6] *and* twelve species of medicinal plants grew forth from the earth, and their splendour and strength were the

[1] See Chap. XXVII, 2.

[2] Here 120,000 are mentioned, but see Chap. XXVII, 2, and Selections of Zâ*d*-sparam, VIII, 2.

[3] Or, 'of all seeds' (see Chap. XVIII, 9).

[4] The white-Hôm tree (see Chaps. XVIII, 1–6, XXVII, 4).

[5] See Chap. IV, 1. [6] See Chaps. XIV, 1, XXVII, 2.

seminal energy (tôkhmîh) of the ox. 2. Delivered to the moon station[1], that seed was thoroughly purified by the light of the moon, fully prepared in every way, and produced life in a body. 3. Thence *arose* two oxen, one male *and* one female; and, afterwards, two hundred and eighty-two species of each kind[2] became manifest upon the earth. 4. The dwelling (mânîst) of the birds is in the air, and the fish are in the midst of the water.

Chapter XI.

1. On the nature of the earth it says in revelation, that *there* are thirty and three kinds[3] of land. 2. *On* the day when Tîstar produced the rain, when its seas arose therefrom, the whole place, half taken up by water, was converted into seven portions; this portion[4], as much as one-half, is the middle, *and* six portions are around; those six portions are *together* as much as Khvanîras. 3. The name

[1] See Chap. XIV, 3. In the Mâh Yt. 0, 7, blessings are invoked for 'the moon of ox lineage' (gaokithra) in conjunction with the 'sole-created ox and the ox of many species.' In the Avesta the gender of these two primeval oxen appears doubtful, owing probably to the dual gen. masc. of their epithets being of the same form as a sing. gen. fem.

[2] That is, of each sex. See Chap. XIV, 13, 27. In all three occurrences of this number K20 has 272, but all other MSS. have 282 (except M6 in this place only).

[3] K20b has 'thirty-two kinds.'

[4] That is, Khvanîras; or it may be 'one portion,' as hanâ, 'this,' is often used for aê, 'one,' because the Pâzand form of both words is *e*.

kêshvar ('zone or region') is also applied to them, and *they* existed side by side (kash kash)[1]; as on the east side of this portion (Khvaniras) is the Savah region, *on* the west is the Arzah region; the two portions on the south side are the Frada*d*afsh *and* Vida*d*afsh regions, the two portions on the north side are the Vôrûbar*z*t *and* Vôrûgar*z*t regions, *and* that in the middle is Khvaniras. 4. And Khvaniras has the sea, for one part of the wide-formed ocean wound about around it; *and from* Vôrûbar*z*t *and* Vôrûgar*z*t a lofty mountain grew up; so that it is not possible for any one to go from region to region[2].

5. And of these seven regions every benefit was created most in Khvaniras, and the evil spirit also produced most for Khvaniras, on account of the superiority (sarîh)[3] which he saw in it. 6. For the Kayânians and heroes were created in Khvaniras; and the good religion of the Mazdayasnians was created in Khvaniras, and afterwards conveyed to the other regions; Sôshyans[4] is born in Khvaniras, who makes the evil spirit impotent, and causes the resurrection *and* future existence.

[1] Possibly an attempt to connect the term kêshvar with kash; but the sentence may also be translated thus: 'and *they* formed various districts like this portion; on the east side is the Savah region,' &c.

[2] In the Pahlavi Vend. I, 4a, and in the Mainyô-i-khar*d*, IX, 6, it is added, 'except with the permission of the angels' or the demons.

[3] So in M6; but K20 has za*d*ârîh, which would imply, 'for the destruction of what he saw of it.'

[4] Always spelt so in the Bundahi*z* MSS. K20 and M6, and corrupted into Sôshyôs in Pâzand; but it is more usually written Sôshâns in other Pahlavi works, and its Avesta form is Saoshyãs (see Chap. XXXII, 8).

Chapter XII.

1. On the nature of mountains it says in revelation, that, at first, the mountains have grown forth in eighteen years; and Albûrz ever grew till the completion of eight hundred years; two hundred years *up* to the star station (pâyak), two hundred years to the moon station, two hundred years to the sun station, and two hundred years to the endless light[1]. 2. While the other mountains have grown out of Albûrz, in number 2244 mountains, *and* are Hûgar the lofty[2], Têrak of Albûrz, Kâkâd-i-Dâîtîk, and the Arezûr ridge, the Aûsîndôm mountain, Mount Apârsên which they say is the mountain of Pârs, Mount Zarid also which is Mount Mânûs, Mount Airak, Mount Kaf, Mount Vâdgês, Mount Aûshdâstâr, Mount Arezûr-bûm, Mount Rôyisn-hômand, Mount Padashkhvârgar which is the greatest in Khvârîh, the mountain which they call Kînô, Mount Rêvand, Mount Dârspêt the Bakyir mountain, Mount Kabed-sikaft, Mount Siyâk-mûî-mand, Mount Vafar-hômand, Mount Spendyâd *and* Kôndrâsp, Mount Asnavand *and* Kôndras, Mount

[1] These are the four grades of the Mazdayasnian heaven.

[2] In all the geographical details, mentioned in the Bundahis, there is a strange mixture of mythical tradition with actual fact. The author of the work finds names mentioned in the Avesta, by old writers of another country, and endeavours to identify them with places known to himself; much in the same way as attempts have been made to identify the geographical details of the garden of Eden. Most of the names of these mountains occur in the Zamyad Yast, or in other parts of the Avesta, as will be noticed in detail further on. The number 2244 is also mentioned in § 7 of that Yast. A very able commentary on this chapter will be found in Windischmann's Zoroastriche Studien, pp. 1–19.

Sikidâv [1], a mountain among those which are in Kangdez [2], *of* which they say that they are a comfort and delight of the good creator, the smaller hills.

3. I *will* mention them also a second time; Albûrz [3] is around this earth and is connected with the sky. 4. The Têrak [4] of Albûrz is that through which the stars, moon, *and* sun pass [5] in, and through it they come back. 5. Hûgar the lofty [6] is that from which the water of Arêdvîvsûr [7] leaps down the height of a thousand men. 6. The Aûsîndôm [8] mountain is that which, being of ruby

[1] The Av. Sikidava of Zamyâd Yt. 5.

[2] See Chap. XXIX, 4, 10; the name is here written Kankez in K20. In M6 the word is kôf, 'mountain,' which is almost identical in form; if this be the correct reading, the translation will be, 'a mountain among those in the mountain which they say is agreeable and the delight,' &c. This mountain is, however, probably intended for the Av. Antare-kangha, 'within Kangha,' of Zamyâd Yt. 4.

[3] The Haraiti-barez of Zamyâd Yt. 1; but it is more usually called Hara berezaiti (see Chap. V, 3).

[4] A central peak of the mythic Albûrz, around which the heavenly bodies are said to revolve (see Chap. V, 3). It is the Av. Taêra. mentioned in Yas. XLI, 24, Râm Yt. 7, Zamyâd Yt. 6.

[5] So in M6, but K20 has 'go in.'

[6] This appears to be another peak of the mythic Albûrz, probably in the west, as it is connected with Satavês, the western chieftain of the constellations (see Chaps. XXIV, 17, and II, 7). It is the Av. Hukairya berezô, of Yas. LXIV, 14, Âbân Yt. 3, 25, 96, Gôs Yt. 8, Mihir Yt. 88, Rashnu Yt. 24, Fravardîn Yt. 6, Râm Yt. 15.

[7] See Chap. XIII, 3–5.

[8] In Aûharmazd Yt. 31 and Zamyâd Yt. 2, 66, an Ushidhâo mountain is mentioned as having many mountain waters around it, but this seems to be a near neighbour of the Ushidarena mountain (see § 15). The details in the text correspond with the description of the Hindva mountain, given in Tîstar Yt. 32, thus: us Hindvad paiti garôid yô histaiti maidhîm zrayanghô vouru-kashahê. 'up on the Hindva mountain, which stands amid the wide-shored

(khûn-âhinŏ), of the substance of the sky[1], is *in* the midst of the wide-formed ocean, so that its water, which is from Hûgar, pours down into it (the ocean). 7. *K*akâ*d*-i-Dâîtîk ('the judicial peak') is that of the middle of the world, the height of a hundred men, on which the *K*învar bridge[2] stands; and they take account of the soul at that place. 8. The Arezûr[3] ridge [of the Albûrz mountain] is a summit at the gate of hell, where they always hold the concourse of the demons. 9. This also is said, that, excepting Albûrz, the Apârsên[4] mountain is the

ocean;' and the Pahlavi name, Aûsîndôm, has probably arisen from the us Hindva*d* of this passage, as suggested by Justi. (See Chaps. XIII, 5, and XVIII, 10, 11.)

[1] The sky is considered to be a true firmament, or hard and indestructible dome.

[2] The *K*învatô-peretu of the Avesta, mentioned even in the Gâthas. In the Pahlavi Vend. XIX, 101, it is stated that 'they pass across by the *K*înva*d* bridge, whose two extremities are their own heavenly angels, one stands at *K*akâ*d*-i-Dâîtîk, and one at Albûrz;' the former mountain seems not to be mentioned in the Avesta, but the bridge is the path of the soul to the other world; if righteous the soul passes by it easily over Albûrz (the confines of this world) into paradise, but if wicked it drops off the bridge into hell.

[3] See Vend. III, 23, XIX, 140. The words in brackets may perhaps be inserted by mistake, but they occur in all MSS. examined, and there is nothing inconsistent with tradition in supposing Arezûr to be the extreme northern range of the mythic Albûrz which surrounds the earth, being the place where demons chiefly congregate.

[4] Justi adopts the reading Harpârsên, which occurs in K20 four times out of eleven, but is corrected thrice. Windischmann suggests that this mountain is the Av. *s*kyata (or i*s*katâ) upairi-saêna of Yas. X, 29, and Zamyâd Yt. 3, which the Pahlavi translator of the Yasna explains as 'the Pârsên crag.' It seems to be a general name for the principal mountain ranges in the south and east of Iran, as may be seen on comparing this passage and Chap. XXIV,

greatest; the Apârsên mountain they call the mountain of Pârs, and its beginning is in Sagastân[1] and its end in Khûgistân. 10. Mount Mânûs[2] is great; the mountain on which Mânûskihar was born.

11. The remaining mountains have chiefly grown from those; as it is said that the elevation (afsârih) of the districts had arisen most around those three mountains[3]. 12. Mount Airak[4] is in the middle from Hamadân to Khvârizem, and has grown from Mount Apârsên. 13. Mount [Kînô][5], which is on its east, on the frontier of Tûrkistân, is connected also with Apârsên. 14. Mount Kaf[6] has grown from the same Mount Apârsên. 15. Mount Aûshdâs-

---

28, with Chap. XX, 16, 17, 21, 22, where the Haro, Hêtûmand, Marv, and Balkh rivers are said to spring from Mount Apârsên; but its application to the southern range is perhaps due to the etymological attempt, in the text, to connect it with Pârs. The Selections of Zâd-sparam, VII, 7, have Kînistân for Khûgistân.

[1] This name can also be read Sîstân.

[2] In § 2 it is also called Zarid, but in Zamyâd Yt. 1 Zeredhô and Aredhô-manusha are mentioned as neighbouring mountains. The word 'great' is omitted in M6.

[3] That is, around the ranges of Albûrz, Apârsên, and Mânûs.

[4] Perhaps intended for the Erezishô of Zamyâd Yt. 2. The description would apply to any of the mountains near Nisâpûr.

[5] This name is omitted in the MSS., but is taken from § 2 as suggested by Justi. Perhaps it may be connected with 'the country of Sênî' (Chap. XV, 29), which is explained as being Kînistân, probably the land of Samarkand, which place was formerly called Kîn, according to a passage in some MSS. of Tabarî's Chronicle, quoted in Ouseley's Oriental Geography, p. 298.

[6] Not Kâf, nor is it mentioned in the Pahlavi Vend. V, 57, as supposed by Justi; the kâf kôp ârâyad of Spiegel's edition of the Pahlavi text being a misprint for kâfakŏ pârâyad, 'it traverses a fissure' (see Haug's Essays, 2nd ed. p. 326, note 2).

târ[1] is in Sagastân. 16. Mount Arezûr[2] is that which is in the direction of Arûm. 17. The Padashkhvârgar[3] mountain is that which is in Taparîstân and the side of Gîlân. 18. The Rêvand[4] mountain is in Khûrâsân[5], on which the Bûrzîn fire[6] was established; and its *name* Rêvand *means* this, that *it* is glorious. 19. The Vâdgês[7] mountain is that which is on the frontier of the Vâdgêsians; that quarter is full of timber *and* full of trees. 20. The Bakyîr[8] mountain is that which Frâsiyâv of Tûr used as a stronghold, and he made his residence within *it;* and *in* the days of Yim[9] a myriad towns and cities were erected on its pleasant *and* prosperous territory. 21. Mount Kabed-sikaft[10] ('very rugged')

[1] The Av. Ushi-darena of Yas. I, 41, II, 54, III, 55, IV, 45, XXII, 31, XXV, 22, Aûharmazd Yt. 31, Zamyâd Yt. 0, 2, 97.

[2] Called Arezûr-bûm in § 2, which name stands for the sixth and seventh mountains, Erezurô and Bumyô, in Zamyâd Yt. 2. The land of Arûm was the eastern empire of the Romans.

[3] Evidently the mountain range south of the Caspian, now called Albûrz; but whether this actual Albûrz is to be considered a part of the mythic Albûrz is not very clear.

[4] The Av. Raêvaus, 'shining,' of Zamyâd Yt. 6. It is also called the Ridge of Vistâsp (see § 34).

[5] Or, 'the east.' [6] See Chap. XVII, 8.

[7] The Av. Vâiti-gaêsô, the twelfth mountain in Zamyâd Yt. 2; Bâdghês in Persian.

[8] In § 2 it is Bakyir, which Justi thinks is another name for Mount Dârspêt ('white poplar'); the latter name not being repeated here makes this supposition probable.

[9] K20 has rûm and M6 has lanman, but both explained by the Pâz. gloss Yim, which is also the reading of the Pâz. MSS. If the gloss be rejected the most probable translation would be, 'and *in* our days Shatrô-râm (or râmisn), the victorious, erected on it a myriad towns and cities.'

[10] Windischmann suggests that this may be intended for the Av. skyata or iskatâ mentioned in the note on Apârsên in § 9.

is that in Pârs, out of the same Mount Apârsên. 22. Mount Siyâk-hômand ('being black') *and* Mount Vafar-hômand ('having snow')[1], as far as their Kâvûl borders, have grown out of it (Apârsên) towards the direction of Ǻînô. 23. The Spend-yâd[2] mountain is in the circuit (var) of Rêvand[3]. 24. The Kôndrâsp[4] mountain, on the summit of which is Lake Sôvbar[5], is in the district (or by the town) of Tûs. 25. The Kondrâs[6] mountain is in Aîrân-vêg. 26. The Asnavand[7] mountain is in Âtarô-pâtakân. 27. The Rôyisn-hômand[8] ('having growth') mountain is that on which vegetation has grown.

28. Whatever[9] mountains are those which are in every place of the various districts *and* various

---

[1] The Av. Syâmaka and Vafrayau of Zamyâd Yt. 5; and probably the Siyâh-kôh and Safêd-kôh of Afghânistân. With regard to Ǻînô, see the note on § 13. The former mountain is called Sîyâk-mûî-mand, 'having black hair,' in § 2, which is certainly a more grammatical form than Sîyâk-hômand.

[2] The Av. Spentô-dâta of Zamyâd Yt. 6.

[3] The term var often means 'lake,' but we are not informed of any Lake Rêvand, though a mountain of that name is described in § 18; so it seems advisable to take var here in its wider sense of 'enclosure, circuit, district.'

[4] The Av. Kadrva-aspa of Zamyâd Yt. 6.

[5] See Chap. XXII, 3. All MSS. have Sôbar here.

[6] If the circumflex be used in Pahlavi to indicate not only the consonant d, but also the vowel î, ê when it follows a vowel, as seems probable, this name can be read Kôirâs; in any case, it is evidently intended for the Av. Kaoirisa in Zamyâd Yt. 6. It is written Kôndras in § 2.

[7] The Av. Asnavau of Zamyâd Yt. 5, Âtash Nyây. 5, Sirôz. 9. See also Chap. XVII, 7.

[8] The Av. Raoidhitô, the eighth mountain of Zamyâd Yt. 2.

[9] So in M6 and the Pâz. MSS., but K20 has, 'The country mountains.'

countries, and cause the tillage *and* prosperity therein, are many *in* name and many *in* number, *and* have grown from these same mountains. 29. *As* Mount Ganâvad, Mount Asparôg, Mount Pâhargar, Mount Dimâvand, Mount Râvak, Mount Zarîn, Mount Gêsbakht, Mount Dâvad, Mount Mîgîn, *and* Mount Marak [1], which have all grown from Mount Apârsên, of which the other mountains are enumerated. 30. For the Dâvad [2] mountain has grown into Khûgîstân likewise from the Apârsên mountain. 31. The Dimâvand [3] mountain is that in which Bêvarâsp is bound. 32. From the same Padashkhvârgar mountain unto Mount Kûmîs [4], *which* they call Mount Madôfryâd ('Come-to-help') — that in which Vistâsp routed Argâsp — is Mount Mîyân-i-dast ('mid-plain')[5], *and* was broken off from that mountain there. 33. They say, in the war of the religion, when there was confusion among the Iranians it broke off from that mountain, *and* slid down *into* the middle of the plain; the Iranians were saved by

[1] This list is evidently intended to include the chief mountains known to the author of the Bundahis, which he could not identify with any of those mentioned in the Avesta.

[2] This is the Pâzand reading of the name, on which very little reliance can be placed; the Pahlavi can also be read Dânad, and it may be the Deana mountain, 12,000 feet high, near Kaski-zard.

[3] See Chap. XXIX, 9. This volcanic mountain, about 20,000 feet high and near Teheran, still retains this ancient Persian name, meaning 'wintry.' It is the chief mountain of the Padashkhvârgar range, which the Bundahis evidently considers as an offshoot of the Apârsên ranges.

[4] The present name of a mountain between Nîsâpûr and the desert.

[5] The name of a place about midway between Astarâbâd and Nîsâpûr. This mountain is called Mîgîn in § 29, probably from a place called Mezinan in the same neighbourhood.

it, and it was called 'Come-to-help' by them. 34. The Ganâvad[1] mountain is likewise there, on the Ridge of Vistâsp (pûst-i Vistâspân)[2] at the abode of the Bûrzîn-Mitrô fire, nine leagues (parasang) to the west. 35. Râvak Bîsan[3] is in Zrâvakad; this place, some say, is Zravad, some call *it* Bîsan, some Kalâk; from this the road of two sides of the mountain is down the middle of a fortress; for this reason, that is, because it is there formed, they call Kalâk a fortress; this place they also call within the land of Sarak. 36. Mount Asparôg[4] is established from the country of Lake Kêkast[5] unto Pârs. 37. Pâhargar ('the Pâhar range') is in Khûrâsân. 38. Mount Marak[6] is in Lârân. 39. Mount Zarîn is in Tûrkistân. 40. Mount Bakht-tan[7] is in Spâhân.

41. The rest, *apart* from this enumeration, which they reckon *as* fostering hills of the country in the religion of the Mazdayasnians, are the small hills, those which have grown piecemeal in places.

CHAPTER XIII.

1. On the nature of seas it says in revelation, that the wide-formed ocean keeps one-third of this earth on the south side of the border of Albûrz[8], *and* so

[1] The Pers. Kanâbad, or Gunâbad, is near Gumin.

[2] Another name for Mount Rêvand (§ 18). See Chap. XVII, 8.

[3] Probably in Kirmân.

[4] The mountain ranges of western Persia, including the Mount Zagros of classical writers.

[5] See Chap. XXII, 2.

[6] Probably the Merkhinah range in northern Lâristân.

[7] The Bakhtiyârî range in the province of Ispahân.

[8] Or perhaps better thus: 'the wide-formed ocean is in the

wide-formed is the ocean that the water of a thousand lakes is held by it, such as the source Arêdvîvsûr[1], *which* some say is the fountain lake. 2. Every particular lake is of a particular kind[2], some are great, and some are small; some are so large that a man with a horse might compass *them* around in forty days[3], which is 1700 leagues (parasang) in extent.

3. Through the warmth and clearness of the water, purifying more than other waters, everything continually flows from the source Arêdvîvsûr. 4. At the south of Mount Albûrz a hundred thousand golden channels are there formed, *and* that water goes with warmth and clearness, through the channels, on to Hûgar the lofty[4]; on the summit of that mountain is a lake[5]; into that lake it flows, becomes quite purified, and comes back through a different golden channel. 5. At the height of a thousand men an open golden branch from that channel is connected with Mount Aûsîndôm[6] amid the wide-formed ocean; from there one portion flows forth to the ocean for the purification of the sea, *and* one portion drizzles in moisture upon the whole of this earth, and all the creations of Aûharmazd acquire

direction of the south limit of Albûrz, *and* possesses one-third of this earth.'

[1] The Av. Ardvî sûra of Âbân Yt. 1, &c.

[2] Literally, 'for every single lake *there is* a single kind;' but we may perhaps read lâ, 'not,' instead of the very similar râî, 'for,' and translate as follows: 'every single lake is not of one kind;' which expresses very nearly the same meaning.

[3] Compare Âbân Yt. 101.

[4] See Chap. XII, 5.

[5] Lake Urvis (see Chap. XXII, 11).

[6] See Chaps. XII, 6, and XVIII, 10, 11.

health from it, and it dispels the dryness of the atmosphere.

6. Of the salt seas three are principal, *and* twenty-three are small. 7. Of the three which are principal, one is the Pûtîk, one the Kamrûd, and one the Sahî-bûn. 8. Of all three the Pûtîk[1] is the largest, in which is a flow *and* ebb, on the same side as the wide-formed ocean, *and* it is joined to the wide-formed ocean. 9. Amid this wide-formed ocean, on the Pûtîk side, it has a sea which they call the Gulf (var) of Satavês[2]. 10. Thick and salt the stench[3] wishes to go from the sea Pûtîk to the wide-formed ocean; with a mighty high wind therefrom, the Gulf of Satavês drives away whatever is stench, *and* whatever is pure and clean goes into the wide-formed *ocean* and the source Arêdvivsûr; *and* that flows back a second *time* to Pûtîk[4]. 11. The control[5] of this sea (the Pûtîk) is connected with the

[1] The Av. Pûitika of Vend. V, 52, 57, and evidently the Persian Gulf.

[2] So called from the constellation Satavês (§ 12), see Chap. II, 7. The details given in the text are applicable to the Gulf and Sea of 'Umân, the Arabian Sea of Europeans. The description of this Gulf, given in the Pahl. Vend. V, 57, which is rather obscure, is as follows: 'In purification *the impurities* flow, in the purity of water, from the sea Pûtîk into the wide-formed ocean; at the southernmost side *the water* stands back in mist, and the blue body of Satavês stands back around it. Pûtîk stands *out* from the side of Satavês, this is where *it is*. From which side it stands is not clear to me. The water comes to Satavês through the bottom; some say that it traverses a fissure.'

[3] Perhaps a better reading would be stûrg sûr-i gôndakîh, 'the intense saltness which is stench.' The author appears to have had some vague idea of the monsoon.

[4] Or, perhaps, 'the other (the stench) flows back to Pûtîk.'

[5] Reading band; but it may be bôd, 'consciousness, sensitiveness.'

moon and wind; it comes again *and* goes down, in increase and decrease, because of her revolving. 12. The control[1] also of the Gulf of Satavês is attached to the constellation Satavês, in whose protection are the seas of the southern quarter, just as *those* on the northern side are in the protection of Haptôk-rîng[2]. 13. Concerning the flow *and* ebb it is said, that everywhere from the presence of the moon two winds continually blow, whose abode is in the Gulf of Satavês, one they call the down-draught, and one the up-draught; when the up-draught blows *it is* the flow, and when the down-draught blows it is the ebb[3]. 14. In the other seas there is nothing of the nature of a revolution of the moon therein, *and* there are no flow *and* ebb. 15. The sea of Kamrûd[4] is that which they pass by, in the north, in Taparîstân; that of Sahî-bûn[5] is in Arûm.

16. Of the small seas that which was most whole-

[1] See p. 43, note 5.

[2] See Chap. II, 7.

[3] This is not a confused attempt to explain the tides as the effect of the land and sea breezes, as might be suspected at first, but is a reasonable conclusion from imaginary facts. Assuming that the wind always blows eastward and westward from the moon, it follows that as the moon rises an easterly wind must blow, which may be supposed to drive the flood tide westward into the Persian Gulf; until the moon passes the meridian, when the wind, changing to the west, ought to drive the ebb tide eastward out of the Gulf, thus accounting for one flow and ebb every day, dependent on the position of the moon.

[4] Evidently the Caspian, which lies north of Taparîstân, a province including part of Mâzendarân.

[5] Or perhaps Gâhî-bûn, meaning probably the Mediterranean or Euxine, if not both of them; the author appears merely to have heard of the existence of such a sea in Asia Minor (Arûm). In the Selections of Zâd-sparam, VI, 14, it is called Gêhân-bûn.

some[1] was the sea Kyânsîh[2], *such* as is in Sagastân; *at* first, noxious creatures, snakes, and lizards (vazagh) were not in *it*, *and* the water was sweeter *than in* any of the other seas; later (dadîgar) *it became* salt; at the closest, on account of the stench, it is not possible to go so near as one league, so very great are the stench and saltness through the violence of the hot wind. 17. When the renovation *of the universe* occurs it *will* again become sweet[3].

Chapter XIV.

1. On the nature of the five classes of animals (gôspend) it says in revelation, that, when the primeval ox passed away[4], there where the marrow came out grain grew up[5] of fifty and five species, *and* twelve[6] species of medicinal plants grew; as it says, that out of the marrow is every separate creature, every single thing whose lodgment is in the marrow[7]. 2. From the horns *arose* peas (mîgûk),

[1] Comparing nîstûm with Pers. nist, 'healthy.'

[2] The Av. Kãsu of Vend. XIX, 18, and Zamyâd Yt. 66, 92 (see also Chaps. XX, 34, and XXI, 7). A brackish lake and swamp now called Hâmûn, 'the desert,' or Zarah, 'the sea,' and which formerly contained fresher water than it does now.

[3] The MSS. here add the first sentence of Chap. XX, and there is every reason to believe that Chaps. XX–XXII originally occupied this position, between XIII and XIV, (see the list of the contents of TD in the Introduction.)

[4] See Chaps. IV, 1, and X, 1.

[5] All MSS. have lakhvâr, 'again,' but this is probably a blunder for lâlâ, 'up.'

[6] K20 has 'fifteen' here, but 'twelve' in Chaps. X, 1, and XXVII, 2.

[7] K20 has 'of every single thing the lodgment is in the marrow.'

from the nose the leek, from the blood the grape-vine[1] from which they make wine—on this account wine abounds with blood—from the lungs the rue-like herbs, from the middle of the heart[2] thyme *for* keeping away stench, *and* every one of the others as revealed in the Avesta.

3. The seed of the ox was carried up to the moon station[3]; there it was thoroughly purified, *and* produced the manifold species of animals[4]. 4. First, two oxen, one male and one female, and, afterwards, one pair of every single species was let go into the earth, *and* was discernible in Aîrân-vêg *for* a Hâsar ('mile'), which is like a Parasang ('league')[5]; as it says, that, on account of the valuableness of the ox, it was created twice, one time as an ox, and one time as the manifold species of animals. 5. A thousand days and nights they were without eating, and first water and afterwards herbage (aûrvar) were devoured by them.

6. And, afterwards, the three classes (kar*d*ak) of animals were produced therefrom, as it says that first were the goat and sheep, and then the camel

[1] Probably ka*d*ûk-i raz may mean 'the pumpkin and grape.'

[2] Reading dîl; but the word may also be read sar, 'the head,' or jigar, 'the liver.'

[3] See Chap. X, 2.

[4] This translation suits both text and context very well, but gôspend pûr-sar*d*ak is evidently intended for the Av. gâus pouru-saredhô, 'the ox of many species,' of Mâh Yt. 0, 7, and Sîrôz. 12.

[5] Reading mûn aê parasang humânâk; if 3 be read for aê the translation must be, 'three of which are like a Parasang,' for a Hâsar cannot be equal to three Parasangs (see Chaps. XVI, 7, and XXVI). The phrase in the text probably means merely that a Hâsar is a measure for long distances, just as a Parasang is.

and swine, and then the horse and ass. 7. For, first, *those* suitable for grazing were created therefrom, those are now kept in the valley (lâi); the second created were those of the hill summits (sar-i dêz)[1], which are wide-travellers, *and* habits (nihâdak) are not taught to them by hand; the third created were *those* dwelling in the water.

8. As for the genera (khadûînak), the first genus is that which *has* the foot cloven in two, *and is* suitable for grazing; of which a camel larger than a horse is small *and* new-born. 9. The second genus is ass-footed, of which the swift[2] horse is the largest, *and* the ass the least. 10. The third genus is that of the five-dividing paw, of which the dog is the largest, *and* the civet-cat the least. 11. The fourth genus is the flying, of which the griffon of three natures[3] is the largest, and the chaffinch[4] the least. 12. The fifth genus is that of the water, of which the Kar fish[5] is the largest, *and* the Nemadu[6] the least.

13. These five genera are apportioned out into

[1] Justi reads gîrîsa*k*, the Av. gairishâ*k*ô, 'mountain-frequenting,' of Tîstar Yt. 36; but this is doubtful.

[2] Pahl. zibâl = Pers. zîbâl.

[3] The Pâz. sin-i se avinâ is the Pahl. sên-i 3 khadûînak of Chap. XXIV, 11, 29, the Sîn bird or Sîmurgh of Persian legends, the Av. saêna. The word avinâ is a Pâz. misreading either of âînak, 'kind, sort,' or of anganâk, 'dividing.' The mixture of Pâzand and Pahlavi in this and some other chapters is rather perplexing, but the Pâzand misreadings can usually be corrected after transliterating them back into Pahlavi characters.

[4] Reading va taru (Pers. tar).

[5] See Chaps. XVIII, 3, and XXIV, 13.

[6] If this Pâzand word be written in Pahlavi letters it may be read va magan, which may stand for va magil, 'and the leech;' but this is very uncertain.

two hundred and eighty-two[1] species (sar*d*ak). 14. First are five species of goat, the ass-goat[2], the milch-goat, the mountain-goat, the fawn, *and* the *common* goat. 15. Second, five species of sheep, that with a tail, that which has no tail, the dog-sheep, the wether, *and* the Kûri*s*k sheep, a sheep whose horn is great; it possesses a grandeur[3] like unto a horse, *and* they use *it* mostly for a steed (bâra), as it is said that Mânû*s*kîhar kept a Kûri*s*k as a steed. 16. Third, two species of camel, the mountain *one and that* suitable for grazing; for one is fit to keep in the mountain, *and* one in the plain; they are one-humped *and* two-humped. 17. Fourth, fifteen species of ox, the white, mud-coloured[4], red, yellow, black, *and* dappled, the elk, the buffalo, the camel-leopard ox, the fish-chewing[5] ox, the Far*s* ox, the Ka*g*au, *and* other species of ox. 18. Fifth, eight species of horse, the Arab, the Persian, the mule[6], the ass, the wild ass (gôr), the hippopotamus (asp-i âvî), *and* other species of horse. 19. Sixth, ten species of dog, the shepherd's dog, the village-dog which is the house-protector, the blood-hound, the slender hound[7], the water-

[1] K20 alone has 272 (see Chap. X, 3).

[2] The khar-bûz (see Chap. XXIV, 2).

[3] Supposing se koh to be a Pâz. misreading of Pahl. *s*ukûh. Justi's translation is: 'it inhabits the three mountains, like the horse.'

[4] Pâz. ashgun is evidently for Pahl. ha*s*gûn.

[5] Transcribing the Pâz. mâhi khu ushân into Pahlavi it may be read mâhîkân-khvashân (khashân?).

[6] Instead of these first three species M6 has 'the white, black, yellow, bay, *and* chestnut.' K20 omits 'the ass' by mistake.

[7] These first four species are the Av. pasu*s*-haurvô, vi*s*-haurvô, vôhunazgô, and taurunô of Vend. V, 92–98, XIII, 21, 26–74, 117, 164, 165.

beaver[1] which they call the water-dog, the fox, the ichneumon (râsu), the hedgehog which they call 'thorny-back,' the porcupine[2], *and* the civet-cat; of which, two species are those accustomed[3] to burrows, one the fox *and* one the ichneumon; *and* those accustomed to jungle are such as the porcupine which has spines on *its* back, *and* the hedgehog which is similar. 20. Seventh, five species of the black[4] hare; two are wild species, one dwelling in a burrow[5] *and* one dwelling in the jungle. 21. Eighth, eight species of weasel; one the marten, one the black marten, the squirrel, the Bez ermine[6], the white ermine, *and* other species of weasel. 22. Ninth, eight species of musk *animals*; one is that which is recognised by *its* musk[7], one

[1] The Av. bawri*s* upâpô of Âbân Yt. 129.

[2] The word indra has usually been taken as a Pâz. misreading of the Pahl. aûdrak (Av. udra, 'otter,' of Vend. XIII, 48, 167, 169, XIV, 2), but this would be more probably read andra. The Pahl. sûgar, 'porcupine,' is just as likely to be misread indra, and its meaning suits the context better.

[3] The Pâz. âmokhte*s*n, which is an ungrammatical form, is evidently a misreading of the Pahl. âmûkhtagân.

[4] K20 has seyâ, M6 has zyâgi hest. Perhaps some old copyist has corrected sîyâk-gôsh into khar-gôsh, and so both the epithets have crept into the text, the word 'black' being superfluous.

[5] Reading khan-mâni*s*t, the Pâz. khu being an obvious misreading of khan.

[6] The Pâz. be*z* is written bedh in the Pâzand MS. (the z in M6 being shaped something like dh), and Justi supposes it represents the Arabic abyadh or baîdhâ, 'white,' and is explained by the Pers. sapêd, 'white,' which follows; but there is nothing in the text to indicate that the second name is an explanation of the first. It is more probable that be*z* represents the Pers. bîgâd, 'reddish, rufous, variegated,' an epithet quite applicable to the ermine in its summer fur.

[7] Or, 'is known as the musk *animal*.'

the musk *animal* with a bag in which is their pleasant scent, the Bis-musk[1] which eats the Bis-*herb*, the black musk which is the enemy of the serpent *that is* numerous in rivers, *and* other species of musk *animals*. 23. Tenth, one hundred and ten species of birds; flying creatures (vey=vâî) such as the griffon bird[2], the Karsipt[3], the eagle, the Kahrkâs[4] which they call the vulture, the crow, the Ardâ, the crane, *and* the tenth[5] is the bat. 24. There are two of them which have milk in the teat *and* suckle *their* young, the griffon bird and the bat which flies in the night; as they say that the bat is created of three races (sardak), the race (âyina) of the dog, the bird, *and* the musk *animal;* for it flies like a bird, has many teeth like a dog, *and* is dwelling in holes like a musk-rat. 25. These hundred and ten species of birds are distributed into eight groups (khadûînak), mostly as scattered about as when a man scatters seed, *and* drops the seed in *his* fingers to the ground, large, middling, *and* small. 26. Eleventh[6], fish were created of ten

[1] A kind of musk-rat; the bis it eats is said to be the Napellus Moysis.

[2] Pahl. sênô mârûk, the sîmurgh of Persian tradition, and Av. mereghô saênô of Bahrâm Yt. 41.

[3] See Chap. XIX, 16. [4] See Chap. XIX, 25.

[5] Counting the 'flying creatures' and 'the vulture' as distinct species, 'the bat' is the tenth. It has been generally supposed that we should read 'eleventh,' and consider the bats as an eleventh group, especially as the MSS. call the next group (the fish) the 'twelfth;' but this view is contradicted by the remarks about the bats being mingled with those about the birds, and also by Zâd-sparam in his Selections, Chap. IX, 14 (see App. to Bund.), not mentioning any group of bats among the other animals.

[6] All the MSS. have 'twelfth,' but they give no 'eleventh' nor 'thirteenth,' though they have 'fourteenth' in § 29. These irre-

species; first, the fish Ariz[1], the Arzuvâ, the Arzukâ, the Marzukâ, *and* other Avesta names[2]. 27. Afterwards, within each species, species within species are created, so the total is two hundred and eighty-two species[3].

28. Of the dog they say that out of the star station, that is, *away* from the direction of the constellation Haptôk-rîng, was given to him further by a stage (yôgist)[4] than to men, on account of *his* protection of sheep, *and* as associating with sheep *and* men; for this the dog is purposely adapted[5], as three more kinds of advantage are given to him than *to* man, *he has* his own boots, his own clothing[6], *and* may wander about without self-exertion. 29. The twelfth[7] is the sharp-toothed beast of

gularities seem to indicate that part of this chapter has been omitted by some old copyist.

[1] See Chaps. XVIII, 5, and XXIV, 13.

[2] None of these names are found in the portion of the Avesta now extant.

[3] K20 alone has 272 (see Chap. X, 3). The actual total number of species mentioned is 186, leaving ninety-six for the 'species within species.' Zâd-sparam in his Selections, Chap. IX, 14, differs from the numbers given in the text merely in giving ten species of ox, instead of fifteen; so the total of his details is 181, leaving 101 sub-species to make up his grand total of 282 (see App. to Bund.)

[4] A yôgist (compare Sans. yogana) was probably from fifteen to sixteen English miles, as it consisted of sixteen hâsar, each of one thousand steps of the two feet (see Chap. XXVI, 1). This sentence seems to imply that on account of the useful qualities of the dog he has a part of the lowermost grade of paradise allotted to him, further from the demon-haunted north than that allotted to the men whose inferior order of merit does not entitle them to enter the higher grades of paradise.

[5] Reading âhang-hômand, 'having a purpose.'

[6] Compare Vend. XIII, 106.

[7] All the MSS. have 'fourteenth,' but they give no 'thirteenth.'

which the leader of the flock is in such great fear, for that flock of sheep is very badly maintained which has no dog.

30. Aûharmazd said when the bird Vâresha [1] was created by him, *which* is a bird of prey, thus: 'Thou art created by me, O bird Vâresha! so that my vexation may be greater than *my* satisfaction with thee, for thou doest the will of the evil spirit more than that of me; like the wicked man who did not become satiated with wealth, thou also dost not become satiated with the slaughter of birds; but if thou be not created by me, O bird Vâresha! thou wouldst be created by him, the evil spirit, *as* a kite [2] with the body of a Varpa [3], by which no creature would be left alive.'

31. Many animals are created in all these species for this reason, that when one shall be perishing *through* the evil spirit, one shall remain.

Chapter XV.

1. On the nature of men it says in revelation, that Gâyômard, in passing away [4], gave forth seed; that seed was thoroughly purified by the motion of

[1] No doubt 'a hawk' (Pers. vâsah or bâsah), as mentioned by Justi; Av. vâre would become vâ or bâ in Persian.

[2] Compare gûrîk with Pers. varik, varkâ, varkâk, varkak, vargâh, 'an eagle, falcon, kite, or hawk.'

[3] Transcribing the Pâz. varpa êyi into Pahlavi we have varpak-aê, which is very nearly the same in form as varîkak-aê, 'a hut or cottage' (Pers. gurîkah-ê); so the formidable bird which the evil spirit might have created was 'a kite with a body like a cottage.'

[4] See Chap. IV, 1.

the light of the sun, and Nêryôsang [1] kept charge of two portions, and Spendarmad [2] received one portion. 2. And *in* forty years, with the shape of a one-stemmed Rîvâs-*plant* [3], *and* the fifteen years of *its* fifteen leaves, Matrô and Matrôyâô [4] grew up from the earth in such a manner that their arms rested behind on *their* shoulders (dôsh), and one joined to the other they were connected together and both alike. 3. And the waists of both of them were brought close *and* so connected together that it was not clear which is the male and which the female, and which is the *one* whose living soul (nismô) of Aûharmazd is not away [5]. 4. As it is said thus: 'Which is created before, the soul (nismô) or the body? And Aûharmazd said that the soul is created before, and the body after, for him who was

[1] Av. Nairyô-sangha of Yas. XVII, 68, LXX, 92, Vend. XIX, 111, 112, XXII, 22, &c.; the angel who is said to be Aûharmazd's usual messenger to mankind.

[2] The female archangel who is supposed to have special charge of the earth (see Chap. I, 26).

[3] A plant allied to the rhubarb, the shoots of which supply an acid juice used by the Persians for acidulating preserves and drinks.

[4] These names are merely variants of the Mâshya and Mâshyôî of the latter part of this chapter (nom. dual, m. and f., of Av. mashya, 'mortal'). This is shown by the Pandnâmak-i Zaratûst, saying: 'and my human nature is from Matrôîh *and* Matrôyâôîh, *from* which first generation and seed from Gâyômard I have sprung.' And the names are also found in the more Persian forms Maharîh and Maharîyâôyîh (see the note to § 22). Windischmann considered the meaning to be that 'they grew up on the day Mitrô of the month Mitrô,' that is, the sixteenth day of the seventh month of the Parsi year; this is not confirmed, however, by Zâdsparam in his Selections, Chap. X, 4 (see App. to Bund.)

[5] That is, whether they had souls or not. That nismô is the Huzvâris for rûbân, 'soul,' appears clearly in § 4, where both words are used for the same thing.

created; it is given into the body that it may produce activity, and the body is created only for activity;' hence the conclusion is this, that the soul (rûbân) is created before and the body after. 5. And both of them changed from the shape of a plant into the shape of man, *and* the breath (nismô) went spiritually into them, which is the soul (rûbân); and now, moreover, in that similitude a tree had grown up whose fruit was the ten varieties of man[1].

6. Aûharmazd spoke to Mashya *and* Mashyôî thus: 'You are man, you are the ancestry of the world, and you are created perfect in devotion[2] by me; perform devotedly the duty of the law, think good thoughts, speak good words, do good deeds, and worship no demons!' 7. Both of them first thought this, that one of them should please the other, as he is a man for him; and the first deed done by them was this, when they went out they washed[3] themselves thoroughly; and the first words spoken by them were these, that Aûharmazd created the water and earth, plants and animals, the stars, moon, and sun, and all prosperity whose origin and effect are from the manifestation of righteousness[4]. 8. And, afterwards, antagonism rushed into their minds, and their minds were

[1] This evidently refers to another tree, which is supposed to have produced the ten varieties of human monstrosities (see § 31).

[2] This would be a translation of the Avesta phrase, 'the best of Ârmaiti (the spirit of the earth).'

[3] Comparing mêgîd with Pers. magîd; but the verb is very ambiguous, as it may mean, 'they feasted themselves,' or 'they made water.'

[4] The last phrase appears to be quoted from the Pahlavi Hâdôkht Nask, I, 2.

thoroughly corrupted, and they exclaimed that the evil spirit created the water and earth, plants and animals, *and* the other things as *aforesaid*. 9. That false speech was spoken through the will of the demons, *and* the evil spirit possessed himself of this first enjoyment from them; through that false speech they both became wicked, and their souls are in hell until the future existence.

10. And they had gone thirty days without food[1], covered with clothing of herbage (giyâh); *and* after the thirty days they went forth into the wilderness, came to a white-haired goat, and milked the milk from the udder with their mouths. 11. When they had devoured the milk Mâshya *said* to Mâshyôi thus: 'My delight was owing to it when I had not devoured the milk, and my delight is more delightful now when it is devoured by my vile body.' 12. That second false speech enhanced the power of the demons, and the taste of the food was taken away by them, so that out of a hundred parts one part remained.

13. Afterwards, in another thirty days and nights they came to a sheep, fat[2] *and* white-jawed, and they slaughtered *it;* and fire was extracted by them out of the wood of the lote-plum[3] and box-tree, through the guidance of the heavenly angels, since both woods were most productive of fire for them;

---

[1] Reading akhûrisn instead of the khûrisn of all MSS. which is hardly intelligible. Perhaps âv-khûrisn, 'drinking water,' ought to be read, as it is alluded to in Chap. XXX, 1.

[2] Comparing gefar with Av. garewa and Pers. garb, but this identification may not be correct.

[3] The kûnâr, a thorny tree, allied to the jujube, which bears a small plum-like fruit.

and the fire was stimulated by their mouths; and the first fuel kindled by them was dry grass, kendâr, lotos, date palm leaves, *and* myrtle; and they made a roast of the sheep. 14. And they dropped three handfuls of the meat into the fire, *and* said: 'This is the share of the fire [1].' One piece of the rest they tossed to the sky, *and* said: 'This is the share of the angels.' A bird, the vulture, advanced *and* carried *some* of it away from before *them*, as a dog ate the first meat. 15. And, first, a clothing of skins covered them; afterwards, it is said, woven garments were prepared *from* a cloth woven [2] in the wilderness. 16. And they dug out a pit in the earth, and iron was obtained by them and beaten out with a stone, and without a forge they beat out a cutting edge [3] from it; and they cut wood with it, *and* prepared a wooden shelter from the sun (pês-khûr).

17. Owing to the gracelessness which they practised, the demons became more oppressive, and they themselves carried on unnatural malice between themselves; they advanced one against the other, *and* smote and tore *their* hair *and* cheeks [4]. 18. Then the demons shouted out of the darkness

[1] Most of this sentence is omitted in K20 by mistake.

[2] Reading khês-i-i tad, which Pahlavi words might be easily misread ashâbê tad, as given in Pâzand in the text. That Pâz. tadha stands for Pahl. tadak (Pers. tadah, 'spun, woven') is quite certain.

[3] Or 'an axe,' according as we read têkh or tash. The order of the foregoing words, barâ tapâk-i, 'without a forge,' appears to have been reversed by mistake.

[4] Reading rôd as equivalent to Pers. rûî, 'face,' but it ought to be rôd. Perhaps the word is lût, 'bare,' and the translation should be, 'tore *their* hair bare.'

thus: 'You are man; worship the demon! so that your demon of malice may repose.' 19. Mâshya went forth and milked a cow's milk, *and* poured *it* out towards the northern quarter; through that the demons became more powerful, and *owing to* them they both became so dry-backed that in fifty winters they had no desire for intercourse, and though they had had intercourse they would have had no children. 20. And on the completion of fifty years the source of desire arose, first *in* Mâshya and then *in* Mâshyôî, for Mâshya said to Mâshyôî thus: 'When I see thy shame my desires arise.' Then Mâshyôî spoke thus: 'Brother Mâshya! when I see thy great desire I am also agitated[1].' 21. Afterwards, it became their mutual wish that the satisfaction of their desires should be accomplished, as they reflected thus: 'Our duty even for those fifty years was this.'

22. From them was born in nine months a pair, male and female; *and* owing to tenderness for offspring[2] the mother devoured one, and the father one. 23. And, afterwards, Aûharmazd took tenderness for offspring away from them, so that *one* may nourish a child, and the child may remain.

24. And from them arose seven pairs, male *and*

[1] This is merely a paraphrase of the original.

[2] Or, 'the deliciousness of children' (shîrînîh-i farzand). Justi has, 'owing to an eruption on the children the mother deserted one,' &c.; but the legend of devouring the first children is still more clearly mentioned in the Pahlavi Rivâyat, which forms the first book of the Dâdistân-i Dînîk (preceding the ninety-two questions and answers to which that name is usually applied) as follows: Maharîh va Maharîyâôyîh dûshâram râî nazdistô farzand-i nafsman barâ vastamûnd, 'Mâshya and Mâshyôî, through affection, at first ate up their own offspring.'

female, *and* each was a brother and sister-wife; and from every one of them, in fifty years, children were born, and they themselves died in a hundred years. 25. Of those seven pairs one was Sîyâkmak, the name of the man, and Nasâk [1] of the woman; and from them a pair was born, whose names were Fravâk of the man and Fravâkaîn of the woman. 26. From them fifteen pairs were born, every single pair of whom became a race (sardak); and from them the constant continuance of the generations of the world arose.

27. Owing to the increase (zâyisn) of the whole fifteen races, nine races proceeded on the back of the ox Sarsaok [2], through the wide-formed ocean, to the other six regions (kêshvar), and stayed there; and six races of men remained in Khvanîras. 28. Of those six races the name of the man of one pair was Tâz and of the woman Tâzak, and they went *to* the plain of the Tâzîkân (Arabs); and of one pair Hôshyang [3] was the name of the man and Gûzak of the woman, and from them arose the Airânakân (Iranians); and from one pair the Mâzendarâns [4] have arisen. 29. Among the number (pavan aĉ mar) were those who are in the coun-

[1] Or 'Vasâk.'

[2] See Chaps. XVII, 4, XIX, 13; the name is here written Srisaok in the MSS., and is a Pâzand reading in all three places.

[3] Av. Haoshyangha of Âbân Yt. 21, Gôs Yt. 3, Fravardîn Yt. 137, Râm Yt. 7, Ashi Yt. 24, 26, Zamyâd Yt. 26. His usual epithet is paradhâta (Pahl. pês-dâd), which is thus explained in the Pahlavi Vend. XX, 7: 'this early law (pês-dâdîh) was this, that he first set going the law of sovereignty.' For this reason he is considered to be the founder of the earliest, or Pêsdâdian, dynasty. See Chaps. XXXI, 1, XXXIV, 3, 4.

[4] The people of the southern coast of the Caspian, the Mâzainya daêva, 'Mâzainyan demons or idolators,' of the Avesta.

tries of Sûrâk[1], those who are in the country of Anêr[2], those who are in the countries of Tûr, those who are in the country of Salm which is Arûm, those who are in the country of Sênî, that which is *K*înîstân, those who are in the country of Dâî[3], *and* those who are in the country of Sind[4]. 30. Those, indeed, throughout the seven regions are all from the lineage of Fravâk, *son* of Siyâkmak, *son of* Mâshya.

31. As there were ten varieties of man[5], *and* fifteen races from Fravâk, there were twenty-five races all from the seed of Gâyômard; *the varieties are such* as *those* of the earth, of the water, the breast-eared, the breast-eyed, the one-legged, those also who have wings like a bat, *those* of the forest, with tails, *and* who have hair on the body[6].

---

[1] Not Syria (which is Sûristân, see Chap. XX, 10), but the Sûrîk of the Pahlavi Vend. I, 14, which translates Av. Sughdha, the land east of the Oxus (see Chap. XX, 8). Windischmann reads it as Pâz. Erâk.

[2] Probably for Av. anairya, 'non-Aryan,' which seems specially applied to the lands east of the Caspian.

[3] The countries of Tûr, Salm, Sênî, and Dâî are all mentioned successively in Fravardîn Yt. 143, 144, in their Avesta forms Tûirya, Sairima, Sâini, and Dâhi. The country of Tûr was part of the present Turkistân, that of Salm is rightly identified with Arûm (the eastern Roman Empire, or Asia Minor) in the text; the country of Sênî (miswritten Sênd), being identified with *K*înîstân, was probably the territory of Samarkand, and may perhaps be connected with Mount *K*înŏ (see Chap. XII, 2, 13); and the land of Dâî must be sought somewhere in the same neighbourhood.

[4] Bactria or any part of north-western India may be intended; wherever Brahmans and Buddhists existed (as they did in Bactria) was considered a part of India in Sasanian times.

[5] Grown on a separate tree (see § 5).

[6] Only seven varieties of human monsters are here enumerated,

Chapter XVI.

1. On the nature of generation it says in revelation, that a woman when she comes out from menstruation, during ten days and nights, when they go near unto her, soon becomes pregnant. 2. When she is cleansed from her menstruation, *and* when the time for pregnancy has come, always when the seed of the man is the more powerful a son arises from it; when that of the woman is the more powerful, a daughter; when both seeds are equal, twins and triplets. 3. If the male seed comes the sooner, it adds to the female, and she becomes robust; if the female seed comes the sooner, it becomes blood, *and* the leanness of the female *arises* therefrom.

4. The female seed is cold and moist, and *its* flow is from the loins, and the colour is white, red, and yellow; and the male seed is hot and dry, *its* flow is from the brain of the head, *and* the colour is white and mud-coloured (hasgûn). 5. All[1] the seed of the females *which* issues beforehand, takes a place within the womb, and the seed of the males will remain above it, *and* will fill the space of the womb; whatever refrains therefrom becomes blood again, enters into the veins of the females, *and* at the time any one is born it becomes milk and

for the last three details seem to refer to one variety, the monkeys. The Pârsî MS. of miscellaneous texts, M7 (fol. 120), says, 'The names of the ten species of men are the breast-eyed, the three-eyed, the breast-eared, the elephant-eared, the one-legged, the web-footed, the leopard-headed, the lion-headed, the camel-headed, *and* the dog-headed.'

[1] M6 has 'always.'

nourishes him, as all milk arises from the seed of the males, *and* the blood is that of the females.

6. These four things, they say, are male, *and these* female: the sky, metal, wind, *and* fire are male, *and* are never otherwise; the water, earth, plants, *and* fish are female, *and* are never otherwise; the remaining creation consists of male and female.

7. As regards the fish[1] it says that, at the time of excitement, they go forwards and come back in the water, two *and* two, the length of a mile (hâsar), which is one-fourth of a league (parasang), in the running water; in that coming *and* going they then rub *their* bodies *together*, and a kind of sweat drops out betwixt them, *and* both become pregnant.

Chapter XVII.

1. On the nature of fire it says in revelation, that fire is produced of five kinds, namely, the fire Berezi-savang[2], the fire which shoots up before Aûharmazd the lord; the fire Vohu-fryân[3], the fire which is in the bodies of men and animals; the fire Urvâzist[4], the fire which is in plants; the fire

[1] K20 has 'the male fish,' which is inconsistent with the preceding sentence.

[2] These Avesta names of the five kinds of fire are enumerated in Yas. XVII, 63–67, and the Pahlavi translation of that passage interchanges the attributes ascribed to the first and fifth in the text, thus it calls the first 'the fire of sublime benefit in connection with Varahrân (Bahrâm).' See also Selections of Zâd-sparam, XI, 1.

[3] 'The fire of the good diffuser (or offerer), that within the bodies of men' (Pahl. Yas. XVII, 64).

[4] 'The fire of prosperous (or abundant) life, that within plants' (Pahl. Yas. XVII, 65).

Vâzist[1], the fire which is in a cloud *which* stands opposed to Spêngargâk in conflict; the fire Spênist[2], the fire which they keep in use in the world, likewise the fire of Vâhrâm[3]. 2. Of those five fires one consumes both water and food, as that which is in the bodies of men; one consumes water *and* consumes no food, as that which is in plants, which live and grow through water; one consumes food *and* consumes no water, as that which they keep in use in the world, and likewise the fire of Vâhrâm; one consumes no water and no food, as the fire Vâzist. 3. The Berezi-savang is that in the earth and mountains *and* other things, which[4] Aûharmazd created, *in* the original creation, like three breathing souls (nismô); through the watchfulness and protection *due* to them the world ever develops (vakhshêd).

4. And in the reign of Takhmôrup[5], when men continually passed, on the back of the ox Sarsaok[6], from Khvanîras to the other regions, one night

[1] 'The fire Vâzist, that which smites the demon Spengargâ' (Pahl. Yas. XVII, 66). See Chap. VII, 12.

[2] 'The propitious fire *which* stands in heaven before Aûharmazd in a spiritual state' (Pahl. Yas. XVII, 67).

[3] The Bahrâm fire, or sacred fire at places of worship.

[4] M6 has min, instead of mûn, which alters the translation, but not the meaning. This appears to be a different account of the fire Berezi-savang to that given in § 1, but it merely implies that it is fire in its spiritual state, and the name can, therefore, be applied to any natural fire which can be attributed to supernatural agency, such as burning springs of petroleum, volcanic eruptions, ignis fatuus, phosphorescence of the sea, &c.

[5] The second Pêsdâdian monarch (see Chaps. XXXI, 2, 3, XXXIV, 4).

[6] Written Srisaok in the MSS. in Chap. XV, 27; where it also appears that the sea was 'the wide-formed ocean.' See likewise Chap. XIX, 13.

amid the sea the wind rushed upon[1] the fireplace—the fireplace in which the fire was, such as was provided in three places on the back of the ox—which the wind dropped with the fire into the sea; and all those three fires, like three breathing souls, continually shot up in the place and position of the fire on the back of the ox, so that it becomes quite light, *and* the men pass again through the sea. 5. And in the reign of Yim[2] every duty was performed more fully through the assistance of all those three fires; and the fire Frôbak[3] was established by him at the appointed place (dâ*d*-gâs) on the Gadman-hômand ('glorious') mountain in Khvârizem[4], which Yim constructed for them; and the glory of Yim saves the fire Frôbak from the hand of Dahâk[5]. 6. In the reign of King Vistâsp, upon revelation from the religion[6], it was established, out of Khvârizem, at the Rôshan ('shining') mountain in Kâvulistân, the country of Kâvul (Kâbul), just as it remains there even now.

7. The fire Gûsasp, until the reign of Kaî-Khûsrôb[7], continually afforded the world protection in the manner *aforesaid*[8]; *and* when Kaî-Khûsrôb[7] was

[1] Compare staft with Pers. *sitâftan*, 'to hasten.'

[2] The third Pêsdâdian monarch (see Chaps. XXXI, 3, 4, XXXIV, 4).

[3] Also written Frôbŏ, Frôbâ, Frôbâk, or Frôbâg.

[4] The Av. *Hv*âirizem of Mihir Yt. 14, a province east of the Caspian.

[5] It is doubtful whether va gadman, 'and the glory,' or nismô, 'the soul, reason' (see Chaps. XXIII, 1, XXXIV, 4), should be read. And it may even be that 'the fire Frôbak saves the soul of Yim,' &c. For Dahâk see Chaps. XXXI, 6, XXXIV, 5.

[6] Or, 'upon declaration from revelation.'

[7] Here written Kaî-Khûsrôbî.

[8] In § 3. The 'three breathing souls' of spiritual fire are sup-

extirpating the idol-temples of Lake *Kêkast*[1] it settled upon the mane of *his* horse, and drove away the darkness and gloom, and made *it* quite light, so that they might extirpate the idol-temples; in the same locality the fire Gûsasp was established at the appointed place on the Asnavand mountain[2].

8. The fire Bûrzîn-Mitrô, until the reign of King Vistâsp, ever assisted[3], *in* like manner, in the world, *and* continually afforded protection; *and* when the glorified[4] Zaratûst was introduced to produce confidence in the progress of the religion, King Vistâsp and *his* offspring were steadfast in the religion of God[5], *and* Vistâsp established *this fire* at the appointed place on Mount Rêvand, where they say the Ridge of Vistâsp (pûst-i Vistâspân) is[6].

9. All those three fires are the whole body of the fire of Vâhrâm, together with the fire of the world, and those breathing souls are lodged in them; a counterpart of the body of man when it forms in the womb of the mother, *and* a soul from the spirit-*world* settles within *it*, which controls the body while living; when that body dies, the body mingles with the earth, *and* the soul goes back to the spirit.

---

posed to be incorporated in its three earthly representatives, the fires Frôbak, Gûsasp, and Bûrzîn-Mitrô respectively.

[1] That is, of the province around that lake (see Chap. XXII, 2).

[2] See Chap. XII, 26. Compare Selections of Zâd-sparam, VI, 22.

[3] Taking vagîd as equivalent to Pers. guzîd; but it may be equivalent to Pers. vazîd, 'grew, shot up.'

[4] The epithet anôshak-rûbân (Pers. nôshirvân) means literally 'immortal-souled.'

[5] Or, 'of the angels,' which plural form is often used to express 'God.'

[6] See Chap. XII, 18, 34.

CHAPTER XVIII.

1. On the nature of the tree they call Gôkar*d* [1] it says in revelation, that *it was* the first day when the tree they call Gôkar*d* grew in the deep mud [2] within the wide-formed ocean; *and* it is necessary as a producer of the renovation *of the universe*, for they prepare its immortality therefrom. 2. The evil spirit has formed therein, among those which enter as opponents, a lizard [3] as an opponent in that deep water, so that it may injure the Hôm [4]. 3. And for keeping away that lizard, Aûharmazd has created there ten Kar fish [5] which, at all times, continually circle around the Hôm, so that the head of one of those fish is continually towards the lizard. 4. And together with the lizard those fish are spiritually fed [6], that is, no food is necessary for them; *and* till the renovation *of the universe* they remain in contention. 5. There are places *where* that fish is

[1] A corruption of the Av. gaokerena of Vend. XX, 17, Aûharmazd Yt. 30, Haptân Yt. 3, Sîrôz. 7. In the old MSS. of the Bundahi*s* the form gôkar*d* occurs thrice, gôkarn once, and gogrv once.

[2] Reading gil, 'mud.' Windischmann and Justi prefer gar, 'mountain,' and have 'depth of the mountain.'

[3] That the writer of the Bundahi*s* applies the term vazagh to a lizard, rather than a frog, appears from the 'log-like lizard's body' of Chap. III, 9.

[4] That is, the Gôkar*d* tree, which is the white Hôm (see Chap. XXVII, 4).

[5] The Av. karô masyô of Vend. XIX, 140, Bahrâm Yt. 29, Dîn Yt. 7; see also Chap. XXIV, 13.

[6] Windischmann and Justi prefer translating thus: 'Moreover, the lizard is the spiritual food of those fish;' but this can hardly be reconciled with the Pahlavi text.

written *of as* 'the Ariz[1] of the water;' as it says that the greatest of the creatures of Aûharmazd is that fish, and the greatest of those *proceeding* from the evil spirit is that lizard; with the jaws of *their* bodies, moreover, they snap in two whatever of the creatures of both *spirits has* entered between them, except that one fish which is the Vâs of Pan*k*âsa*d*varân[2]. 6. This, too, is said, that those fish are so serpent-like[3] in that deep water, they know the scratch (mâli*s*n) of a needle's point by which the water shall increase, or by which it is diminishing.

7. Regarding the Vâs of Pan*k*âsa*d*varân it is declared that it moves within the wide-formed ocean, and its length is as much as what a man, while in a swift race, will walk *from* dawn till when the sun goes down; so much that it does not itself move[4] the length of the whole of its great body. 8. This, too, is said, that the creatures of the waters live also specially *under* its guardianship.

9. The tree of many seeds has grown amid the wide-formed ocean, and in its seed are all plants; some say *it is* the proper-curing, some the energetic-curing, some the all-curing[5].

---

[1] See Chaps. XIV, 26, and XXIV, 13.

[2] The Av. vâsîm yãm pa*n*kâsadvarãm of Yas. XLI, 27.

[3] Transcribing the Pâz. mârâdu into Pahlavi we have mâr âyin, 'snake's manner.' Compare the text with Bahrâm Yt. 29.

[4] K20 omits the words from 'walk' to 'move.'

[5] This is the tree of the saêna or Simurgh, as described in Rashnu Yt. 17, and these three epithets are translations of its three titles, hubi*s*, eredhwô-bi*s*, and vîspô-bi*s*. See also Chap. XXVII, 2, 3.

10. Between[1] these trees of such kinds[2] is formed the mountain with cavities, 9999 thousand myriads *in number*, each myriad being ten thousand. 11. Unto that mountain is given the protection of the waters, so that water streams forth from there, in the rivulet channels, to the land of the seven regions, as the source of all the sea-water in the land of the seven regions is from there[3].

CHAPTER XIX.

1. Regarding the three-legged ass[4] they say, that it stands amid the wide-formed ocean, and its feet are three, eyes six, mouths[5] nine, ears two, and horn

[1] This must have been the original meaning of the Huz. dên (bên in the Sasanian inscriptions) before it was used as a synonym of Pâz. andar, 'within.' The mountain is between the white-Hôm tree and the tree of many seeds.

[2] Transcribing the Pâz. oînoh into Pahlavi we have ân-gûnak. 'that kind;' or the word may be a miswriting of Pâz. ânô, 'there.'

[3] This description of the mountain seems to identify it with the Aûsîndôm mountain of Chaps. XII, 6, and XIII, 5.

[4] The Av. khara, 'which is righteous *and* which stands in the middle of the wide-shored ocean' (Yas. XLI, 28). Darmesteter, in his Ormazd et Ahriman (pp. 148–151), considers this mythological monster as a meteorological myth, a personification of clouds and storm; and, no doubt, a vivid imagination may trace a striking resemblance between some of the monster's attributes and certain fanciful ideas regarding the phenomena of nature; the difficulty is to account for the remaining attributes, and to be sure that these fanciful ideas were really held by Mazdayasnians of old. Another plausible view is to consider such mythological beings as foreign gods tolerated by the priesthood, from politic motives, as objects worthy of reverence; even as the goddess Anâhita was tolerated in the form of the angel of water.

[5] This is the traditional meaning of the word, which (if this

one, body white, food spiritual, *and* it is righteous. 2. And two of its six eyes are in the position of eyes, two on the top of the head, and two in the position of the hump[1]; with the sharpness of those six eyes it overcomes *and* destroys. 3. Of the nine mouths three are in the head, three in the hump, and three in the inner part of the flanks; and each mouth is about the size of a cottage, and *it is* itself as large as Mount Alvand[2]. 4. Each one of the three feet, when it is placed on the ground, is as much as a flock (gird) of a thousand sheep comes under when they repose together; *and* each pastern[3] is so great in its circuit that a thousand men with a thousand horses may pass inside. 5. As for the two ears *it is* Mâzendarân which they will encompass. 6. The one horn is as it were of gold *and* hollow, and a thousand *branch* horns[4] have grown upon it, some befitting[5] a camel, some befitting a horse, some befitting an ox, some befitting an ass, both great and small. 7. With that horn it will vanquish *and* dissipate all the vile corruption *due to* the efforts of noxious creatures.

---

meaning be correct) ought probably to be read yông, and be traced to Av. *ceaungh* (Yas. XXVIII, 11). In the MSS. the word is marked as if it were pronounced gûnd, which means 'a testicle.'

[1] The hump is probably supposed to be over the shoulders, as in the Indian ox, and not like that of the camel.

[2] Near Hamadân, rising 11,000 feet above the sea, or 6000 above Hamadîn. It may be one of the Av. Aurvan*t*ô of Zamyâd Yt. 3. The Pâzand MSS. read Hunavand.

[3] Literally, 'the small of the foot,' khûr*d*ak-i ragelman.

[4] Or, 'a thousand cavities (srûbŏ, Pers. surub, 'cavern') have grown in it.'

[5] Reading zîyâk; compare Pers. ziyîdan, 'to suit, befit.'

8. When that ass shall hold *its* neck in the ocean *its* ears will terrify (asahmêd), *and* all the water of the wide-formed ocean will shake with agitation, *and* the side of Ganâvad[1] will tremble (shîvanêd). 9. When it utters a cry all female water-creatures, of the creatures of Aûharmazd, will become pregnant; and all pregnant noxious water-creatures, when they hear that cry, will cast *their* young. 10. When it stales in the ocean all the sea-water will become purified, which is in the seven regions of the earth—*it is* even on that account when all asses which come into water stale in the water—as it says thus: 'If, O three-legged ass! you were not created for the water, all the water in the sea would have perished from the contamination which the poison of the evil spirit has brought into its water, through the death of the creatures of Aûharmazd.'

11. Tîstar seizes the water[2] more completely from the ocean with the assistance of the three-legged ass. 12. Of ambergris also (ambar-ik) *it* is declared, that it is the dung of the three-legged ass; for if it has much spirit food, then also the moisture of the liquid nourishment goes through the veins *pertaining* to the body into the urine, *and* the dung is cast away.

13. Of the ox Hadhayôs[3], which they call Sarsaok[4], it says, that in the original creation men passed from region to region *upon it*, *and* in the

[1] A mountain (see Chap. XII, 29, 34).

[2] See Chap. VII, 11.

[3] Written Hadayâvs in the MSS. in Chap. XXX, 25, and Hadhayâs in the Dâdistân-i Dînîk, Part II, reply 89; it is a Pâzand reading in all three places.

[4] See Chaps. XV, 27, XVII, 4.

renovation *of the universe* they prepare Hûsh (the beverage producing immortality) from it. 14. It is said, that life is in the hand of that foremost man, at the end of *his* years [1], who has constructed the most defences around this earth, until the renovation *of the universe* is requisite.

15. Regarding the bird *K*âmrôs [2] it says, that *it is* on the summit of Mount Albûrz; *and* every three years many come from the non-Iranian districts for booty (gird) [3], by going to bring damage (zîyân) on the Iranian districts, and to effect the devastation of the world; then the angel Bûrg [4], *having* come up from the low country of Lake Arag [5], arouses that very bird *K*âmrôs, *and* it flies upon the loftiest of all the lofty mountains, *and* picks up all those non-Iranian districts as a bird *does* corn.

16. Regarding Karsipt [6] they say, that it knew how to speak words, *and* brought the religion to the enclosure which Yim made, and circulated *it*; there they utter the Avesta in the language of birds.

---

[1] Transcribing the Pâz. svadyi into Pahlavi we have snatîh, 'term of years.' The whole sentence is very obscure.

[2] Written *K*amrôs in Chap. XXIV, 29. It is the Av. *K*amraos (gen. of *K*amru) of Fravardîn Yt. 109. See also Chap. XXVII, 3.

[3] Or, 'to an assembly.'

[4] The Av. Beregya of Yas. I, 21, II, 27, III, 35, 'a spirit co-operating with the Ushahina Gâh, who causes the increase of herds and corn.'

[5] Or, 'of the district of Arag' (see the note on Chap. XII, 23). Although no Lake Arag is described in Chap. XXII, some of the epithets referring to its Avesta equivalent Rangha are more applicable to a lake than to a river, as in Bahrâm Yt. 29. Possibly the low lands between the Caspian and Aral, or on the shores of the Caspian, are meant.

[6] The Av. vis karsipta of Vend. II, 139, where, however, vis

17. Regarding the ox-fish they say, that it exists in all seas; when it utters a cry all fish become pregnant, and all noxious water-creatures cast *their* young.

18. The griffon bird [1], which is a bat, is noticed (kar*d*) twice in another chapter (babâ).

19. Regarding the bird Ashôzust [2], which is the bird Zobara[3]-vahman *and* also the bird Sôk [4], they say that it has given an Avesta with *its* tongue; when it speaks the demons tremble at it *and* take nothing away there; a nail-*paring*, when it is not prayed over (afsû*d*), the demons *and* wizards seize, *and* like an arrow it shoots at *and* kills that bird. 20. On this account the bird seizes *and* devours a nail-*paring* when it is prayed over, so that the demons may not control *its* use; when it is not prayed over it does not devour *it*, *and* the demons are able to commit an offence with it.

21. Also other beasts and birds are created all in opposition to noxious creatures, as it says, that when the birds *and* beasts are all in opposition to noxious creatures and wizards, *&c.*[5] 22. This, too, it says, that of all precious[6] birds the crow (valâgh) is the most precious. 23. Regarding the white falcon it

---

does not mean 'bird,' and the Pahlavi translator calls it 'a quadruped.' In the Pahl. Visp. I, 1, 'the Karsipt is the chief of flying creatures,' and the Bundahis also takes it as a bird (see Chaps. XIV, 23, XXIV, 11).

[1] See Chaps. XIV, 11, 23, 24, XXIV, 11, 29.

[2] The Av. Ashô-zusta of Vend. XVII, 26, 28.

[3] Compare Pers. *s*ûlah, 'a sparrow or lark.'

[4] Compare Pers. *s*ak, 'a magpie.'

[5] This quotation is evidently left incomplete.

[6] The Pahlavi word is ambiguous; it may be read zîl, 'cheap, common,' or it may be zagar = yakar, 'dear, precious,' but the

says, that it kills the serpent with wings. 24. The magpie (kâskînak) bird kills the locust, *and* is created in opposition to it. 25. The Kahrkâs[1], dwelling in decay, which is the vulture, is created for devouring dead matter (nasâî); so also are the crow (valâk)[2] and the mountain kite.

26. The mountain ox, the mountain goat, the deer, the wild ass, *and* other beasts devour all snakes. 27. So also, of other *animals*, dogs are created in opposition to the wolf species, *and* for securing the protection of sheep; the fox is created in opposition to the demon Khava; the ichneumon is created in opposition to the venomous snake (garzak) *and* other noxious creatures in burrows; so also the great musk-*animal* is created in opposition[3] to ravenous intestinal worms (kadûk-dânak garzak). 28. The hedgehog is created in opposition to the ant which carries off grain[4], as it says, that the hedgehog, every time that it voids urine into an ant's nest, will destroy a thousand ants; when the grain-carrier travels over the earth it pro-

---

latter seems most probable, although the crow is perhaps as 'common' as it is 'precious,' as a scavenger in the East. Singularly enough Pers. arzân is a synonym to both words, as it means both 'cheap' and 'worthy.'

[1] The Av. kahrkâsa of Vend. III, 66, IX, 181, Âbân Yt. 61, Mihir Yt. 129; its epithet zarmân-mânisn, 'dwelling in decay,' is evidently intended as a translation of the Av. zarenumainis, applied to it in Bahrâm Yt. 33, Dîn Yt. 13.

[2] The text should probably be valâk-i sîyâk va sâr-i gar, 'the black crow and the mountain kite,' which are given as different birds in Shâyast-lâ-shâyast, II, 5.

[3] K20 omits the words from this 'opposition' to the next one.

[4] The môr-i dânak-kash is the Av. maoiris dânô-karshô of Vend. XIV, 14, XVI, 28, XVIII, 146.

duces a hollow track[1]; when the hedgehog travels over it the track goes away from it, and it becomes level. 29. The water-beaver is created in opposition to the demon which is in the water. 30. The conclusion is this, that, of all beasts and birds and fishes, every one is created in opposition to some noxious creature.

31. Regarding the vulture (karkâs) it says, that, even from his highest flight, he sees when flesh the size of a fist is on the ground; and the scent of musk is created under his wing, so that if, in devouring dead matter, the stench of the dead matter comes *out* from it, he puts *his* head back under the wing *and* is comfortable again. 32. Regarding the Arab horse they say, that if, in a dark night, a single hair occurs on the ground, he sees *it*.

33. The cock is created in opposition to demons *and* wizards, co-operating with the dog; as it says in revelation, that, of the creatures of the world, those which are co-operating with Srôsh[2], in destroying the fiends, are the cock and the dog. 34. This, too, it says, that it would not have *been* managed if I had not created the shepherd's dog, which is the Pasus-haurva[3], *and* the house watch-dog, the Vis-haurva[3]; for it says in revelation, that the dog is a destroyer of such a fiend as covetous-

[1] Comparing sûrâk with Pers. surâgh in preference to sûrâkh or sûlâkh, 'a hole.'

[2] Av. Sraosha, the angel who is said specially to protect the world from demons at night; he is usually styled 'the righteous,' and is the special opponent of the demon Aêshm, 'Wrath' (see Chap. XXX, 29).

[3] These are the Avesta names of those two kinds of dog (see Chap. XIV, 19).

ness, among those which are in the nature (aîtîh) of man and of animals. 35. Moreover it says, that, inasmuch as it will destroy all the disobedient, when it barks it will destroy pain[1]; and its flesh and fat are remedies for driving away decay and pain from men[2].

36. Aûharmazd created nothing useless whatever, for all these (kolâ aê) are created for advantage; when one does not understand the reason of them, it is necessary to ask the Dastûr ('high-priest'), for his five dispositions (khûk)[3] are created in this way that he may continually destroy the fiend (or deceit).

Chapter XX.

1. On the nature of rivers it says in revelation, that these two rivers flow forth from the north, part from Albûrz *and* part from the Albûrz of Aûhar-

[1] Or it may be thus: 'For it says thus: Wherewith will it destroy? When it barks it will destroy the assembly (gird) of all the disobedient.'

[2] This is the most obvious meaning, but Spiegel (in a note to Windischmann's Zoroastrische Studien, p. 95) translates both this sentence and the next very differently, so as to harmonize with Vend. XIII, 78, 99.

[3] The five dispositions (khîm) of priests are thus detailed in old Pahlavi MSS.: 'First, innocence; second, discreetness of thoughts, words, and deeds; third, holding the priestly office as that of a very wise and very true-speaking master, who has learned religion attentively and teaches *it* truly; fourth, celebrating the worship of God (yazdân) with a ritual (nîrang) of rightly spoken words and scriptures known by heart (narm naskîhâ); fifth, remaining day and night propitiatingly in *his* vocation, struggling with his own resistance (hamêstâr), and, *all* life long, not turning away from steadfastness in religion, and being energetic in *his* vocation.'

mazd[1]; one towards the west, that is the Arag[2]; *and* one towards the east, that is the Vêh river. 2. After them eighteen rivers flowed forth from the same source, just as the remaining waters have flowed forth from them in great multitude; as they say that they flowed out so very fast, one from the other, as when a man recites one Ashem-vohû[3] of a series (pa*d*îsâr). 3. All of those, with the same water, are again mingled with these rivers, that is, the Arag river *and* Vêh river. 4. Both of them continually circulate through the two extremities of the earth, and pass into the sea; and all the regions feast owing to the discharge (zahâk) of both, which, after both arrive together at the wide-formed ocean, returns to the sources whence they flowed out; as it says in revelation, that just as the light comes in through Albûrz *and* goes out through Albûrz[4], the

[1] So in K20, and if correct (being only partially confirmed by the fragment of this chapter found in all MSS. between Chaps. XIII and XIV) this reading implies that the rivers are derived partly from the mountains of Albûrz, and partly from the celestial Albûrz, or the clouds in the sky. M6 has 'flow forth from the north part of the eastern Albûrz.'

[2] For further details regarding these two semi-mythical rivers see §§ 8, 9.

[3] The sacred formula most frequently recited by the Parsis, and often several times in succession, like the Pater-noster of some Christians; it is not, however, a prayer, but a declaratory formula in 'praise of righteousness' (which phrase is often used as its name in Pahlavi). It consists of twelve Avesta words, as follows:

Ashem vohû vahistem astî,
ustâ astî; ustâ ahmâi
hya*d* ashâi vahistâi ashem.

And it may be translated in the following manner: 'Righteousness is the best good, a blessing it is; a blessing be to that which is righteousness to perfect rectitude' (Asha-vahista the archangel).

[4] See Chap. V, 5.

water also comes out through Albûrz and goes away through Albûrz. 5. This, too, it says, that the spirit of the Arag begged of Aûharmazd thus: 'O first omniscient creative power[1]! from whom the Vêh river begged for the welfare that thou mightest grant, do thou then grant *it* in my quantity!' 6. The spirit of the Vêh river similarly begged of Aûharmazd for the Arag river; *and* on account of loving assistance, one towards the other, they flowed forth with equal strength, as before the coming of the destroyer they proceeded without rapids, and when the fiend shall be destroyed[2] they *will* again be without rapids.

7. Of those eighteen principal rivers, distinct from the Arag river *and* Vêh river, and the other rivers which flow out from them, I *will* mention the more famous[3]: the Arag river, the Vêh river, the Diglat[4] river they call also again the Vêh river[5], the Frât river, the Dâîtîk river, the Dargâm river, the Zôndak river, the Harôî river, the Marv river, the Hêtûmand river, the Akhôshir river, the Nâvadâ[6] river, the Zîsmand river, the Khvegand river, the Balkh river, the Mehrvâ river they call the Hendvâ river, the Spêd[7] river, the Rad[8] river which they call also the Koir, the Khvaraê river which they call

[1] So in M6, but K20 has, 'First is the propitiation of all kinds.'

[2] Literally, 'when they shall destroy the fiend.'

[3] For details regarding these rivers see the sequel.

[4] The Pâz. Deyrid is evidently a misreading of Pahl. Diglat or Digrat, which occurs in § 12.

[5] So in K20, but M6 (omitting two words) has, 'they call also the Didgar.'

[6] No further details are given, in this chapter, about this river, but it seems to be the river Nâhvtâk of Chap. XXI, 6, the Nâîvtâk of Chap. XXIX, 4, 5.

[7] K20 has 'Spend.'

[8] Called Tort in § 24.

also the Mesrgân, the Harhaz[1] river, the Teremet river, the Khvanaîdis[2] river, the Dâraga river, the Kâsîk river, the *Sêd*[3] ('shining') river Pêdâ meyan *or* Katru-meyan river *of* Mokarstân.

8. I *will* mention them also a second time: the Arag[4] river is that of which it is said that it comes out from Albûrz in the land of Sûrâk[5], *in* which they call it also the Âmi; it passes on through the land of Spêtos, which they also call Mesr, and they call it there the river Niv[6]. 9. The Vêh[7] river

[1] Miswritten Araz in Pâzand, both here and in § 27.

[2] M6 has Khvanaînidis, but in K20 it is doubtful whether the extra syllable (which is interlined) is intended to be inserted or substituted; the shorter form is, however, more reconcilable with the Pahlavi form of Vendeses in § 29.

[3] As there is no description of any *Sêd* river it is probably only an epithet of the Pêdâ-meyan or Katru-meyan (pêdâk being the usual Pahlavi equivalent of Av. *kithrô*). Justi suggests that Mokarstân (Mokarsta rûd in M6) stands for Pers. Moghulstân, 'the country of the Moghuls,' but this is doubtful.

[4] Sometimes written Arang or Arêng, but the nasal is usually omitted; it is the Av. Rangha of Âbân Yt. 63, Rashnu Yt. 18, Râm Yt. 27, which is described more like a lake or sea in Vend. I, 77, Bahrâm Yt. 29. This semi-mythical river is supposed to encompass a great part of the known world (see Chap. VII, 16), and the Bundahis probably means to trace its course down the Âmû (Oxus) from Sogdiana, across the Caspian, up the Aras (Araxes) or the Kur (Cyrus), through the Euxine and Mediterranean, and up the Nile to the Indian Ocean. The Âmû (Oxus) is also sometimes considered a part of the Vêh river or Indus (see §§ 22, 28).

[5] Sogdiana (see Chap. XV, 29), the country of the Âmû river.

[6] The combination of the three names in this clause, as Justi observes, renders it probable that we should read, 'the land of Egypt,' which is called Misr, and where the river is the Nile. The letter S in Pâz. Spêtos is very like an obsolete form of Av. g, or it may be read as Pahl. îk or îg, so the name may originally have been Gpêtos or Ikpêtos; and the Pâz. Niv, if transcribed into Pahlavi, can also be read Nîl.

[7] The 'good' river, which, with the Arag and the ocean, completes

passes on in the east, goes through the land of Sînd[1], *and* flows to the sea in Hindûstân, and they call it there the Mehrâ[2] river. 10. The sources of the Frât[3] river are from the frontier of Arûm, they feed *upon it* in Sûristân, *and* it flows to the Diglat river; and of this Frât *it is*[4] that they produce irrigation over the land. 11. It is declared that Mânûskîhar excavated the sources, *and* cast back the water all to one place, as it says thus: 'I reverence the Frât, full of fish, which Mânûskîhar excavated for *the benefit of* his own soul, *and* he seized the water *and* gave to drink[5].' 12. The Diglat[6] river comes out from Salmân[7], *and* flows to the sea in Khûgistân. 13. The Dâitîk[8] river is the river

the circuit of the known world, and is evidently identified with the Indus; sometimes it seems also to include the Âmû (Oxus), as Bactria was considered a part of India; thus we find the Balkh and Teremet rivers flowing into the Vêh (see §§ 22, 28).

[1] See § 30.

[2] No doubt the Mehrvâ or Hendvâ river of § 7, and the Mihrân of Ouseley's Oriental Geography of the pseudo Ibn 'Haûqal, pp. 148–155, which appears to combine the Satlig and lower Indus. The final n is usually omitted by the Bundahis after â in Pâzand words. This river is also called Kâsak (see § 30).

[3] The Euphrates, which rises in Armenia (part of the eastern empire of the Romans), traverses Syria, and joins the Tigris.

[4] Or, 'and its convenience is this;' a play upon the words farhat and Frât, which are identical in Pahlavi.

[5] Referring probably to canals for irrigation along the course of the Euphrates.

[6] The Tigris (Arabic Diglat), Hiddekel of Gen. ii. 14, Dan. x. 4, and perhaps the Av. tighris of Tîstar Yt. 6, 37; misread Dêîrid in Pâzand.

[7] The country of Salm (see Chap. XV, 29), son of Frêdûn (see Chap. XXXI, 9, 10). The name can also be read Dîlmân, which is the name of a place in the same neighbourhood.

[8] The Av. Dâitya of Vend. XIX, 5, Aûharmazd Yt. 21, Âbân Yt. 112, Gôs Yt. 29. The 'good dâitya of Airyana-vaêgô' is also

which comes out from Airân-vêg, *and* goes out through the hill-country[1]; of all rivers the noxious creatures in it are most, as it says, that the Dâitik river is full of noxious creatures. 14. The Dargâm river is in Sûde. 15. The Zend[2] river passes through the mountains of Pangistân, *and* flows away to the Haro river. 16. The Haro[3] river flows out from the Apârsên range[4]. 17. The Hêtûmand[5] river is in Sagastân, and its sources are from the Apârsên range; this is distinct from that which Frâsîyâv conducted away[6]. 18. The river Akhôshir is in Kûmîs[7]. 19. The Zîsmand[8] river, in the direc-

---

mentioned in Vend. I, 6, II, 42, 43, Âbân Yt. 17, 104, Râm Yt. 2, but this may not be a river, though the phrase has, no doubt, led to locating the river Dâitîk in Airân-vêg.

[1] Pâz. gopestân in K20, which is evidently Pahl. kôfistân, but not the Kôhistân of southern Persia. M6 has 'the mountain of Pangistân,' which must be incorrect, as according to §§ 15, 16, this is in north-east Khurâsân, and too far from Airân-vêg in Âtarô-pâtakân (Âdar-bîgân), see Chap. XXIX, 12. Justi proposes to read Gurgistân (Georgia), and identifies the Dâitîk with the Araxes. But, adhering to the text of K20, the Dâitîk rises in Âdar-bîgân and departs through a hill-country, a description applicable, not only to the Araxes, but also more particularly to the Safêd Rûd or white river; although this river seems to be mentioned again as the Spêd or Spend river in § 23.

[2] Written Zôndak in § 7. This can hardly be the Zendah river of Ispahan, but is probably the Tegend river, which flows past Meshhed into the Heri river.

[3] This is the Heri, which flows past Herat.

[4] See Chap. XII, 9.

[5] The Etymander of classical writers, now the Hêlmand in Afghânistân. The Av. Haêtumat of Vend. I, 50, XIX, 130, Zamyâd Yt. 66, is the name of the country through which it flows.

[6] See § 34 and Chap. XXI, 6.

[7] The district about Dâmaghân.

[8] Perhaps the Zarafsân.

tion of Soghd, flows away towards the Khvegand river. 20. The Khvegand[1] river goes on through the midst of Samarkand *and* Pargâna, and they call it also the river Ashârd. 21. The Marv[2] river, a glorious river in the east[3], flows out from the Apârsên range. . 22. The Balkh river comes out *from* the Apârsên mountain of Bâmîkân[4], *and* flows on to the Vêh[5] river. 23. The Spêd[6] river is in Âtarôpâtakân; they say that Dahâk begged a favour[7] here from Aharman and the demons. 24. The Tort[8] river, which they call also the Koir, comes out from

[1] This is evidently not the small affluent now called the Khugand, but the great Syr-darya or Iaxartes, which flows through the provinces of Farghânah and Samarkand, past Kokand, Khugand, and Tashkand, into the Aral. The Pâz. Ashârd represents Pahl. Khshârt, or Ashârt (Iaxartes).

[2] The Murghâb.

[3] Or, 'in Khûrâsân.'

[4] Bâmian, near which the river of Balkh has its source.

[5] Justi observes that it should be 'the Arag river;' but according to an Armenian writer of the seventh century the Persians called the Oxus the Vêh river, and considered it to be in India, because Buddhists occupied the country on its banks (see Garrez in Journal Asiatique for 1869, pp. 161–198). It would seem, therefore, that the Oxus was sometimes (or in early times) considered a part of the Arag (Araxes), and sometimes (or in later times) a part of the Vêh (Indus).

[6] So in M6, but K20 has 'Spend,' both here and in § 7. The name of this river corresponds with that of the Safêd Rûd, although the position of that river agrees best with the account given of the Dâîtîk in § 13.

[7] Compare Râm Yt. 19, 20. K20 has 'there,' instead of 'here.'

[8] Called Rad in § 7 (by the loss of the first letter of the original Pahlavi name); by its alternative name, Koir, Justi identifies it as the Kûr in Georgia, flowing into the Caspian, or sea of Vergân, the Av. Vehrkâna (Hyrcania) of Vend. I, 42, which is Gûrgân in Pahlavi.

the sea of Gîklân[1], *and* flows to the sea of Vergân[2]. 25. The Zahâvayi[3] is the river *which* comes out from Âtarô-pâtakân, *and* flows to the sea in Pârs. 26. The sources of the Khvaraê[4] river are from Spâhân[5]; it passes on through Khûgistân, flows forth to the Diglat[6] river, and in Spâhân they call it the Mesrkân[7] river. 27. The Harhaz[8] river is in Taparistân, and its sources are from Mount Dimâvand. 28. The Teremet[9] river flows away to the Vêh river. 29. The Vendeses[10] river is in *that part of* Pârs which they call Sagastân. 30. The Kâsak[11] river comes out through a ravine (kâf) in the province of Tûs[12], and they call it there the Kasp river; more-

[1] M6 has Pâz. Keyâseh, but this is in Sagastân (see Chap. XIII, 16).

[2] The MSS. have Vergâ, but the final nasal after â is often omitted in Pâzand readings in the Bundahis.

[3] Not mentioned in § 7. Possibly one of the rivers Zâb, which rise on the borders of Âdarbîgân, flow into the Tigris, and so reach the Persian Gulf, the sea on the coast of Pârs. Or it may be the Shirvân, another affluent of the Tigris, which flows through the district of Zohab.

[4] The Kuran, upon which the town of Shûstar was founded by one of the early Sasanian kings, who also dug a canal, east of the town, so as to form a loop branch of the river; this canal was called Nahr-i Masrûqân by Oriental geographers (see Rawlinson, Journal Roy. Geogr. Soc. vol. ix. pp. 73–75).

[5] Ispahân in Persian.

[6] Miswritten Dayrid in Pâzand (see § 12).

[7] Written in Pâzand without the final n, as usual. This is the old name of the canal forming the eastern branch of the Kuran at Shûstar; it is now called Âb-i Gargar.

[8] Flows into the Caspian near Amûl.

[9] Probably the river which flows into the Âmû (Oxus) at Tarmaz; but, in that case, the Oxus is here again identified with the Vêh (Indus) as in § 22, instead of the Arag (Araxes) as in § 8.

[10] Called Khvanaîdis, or Khvanaînidis, in § 7.

[11] Called Kâsîk in § 7.

[12] Close to Meshhed.

over, the river, which is there the Vêh, they call the Kâsak[1]; even in Sînd they call *it* the Kâsak. 31. The Pêdâk-mîyân[2], which is the river Katru-mîyân, is that which is in Kangdez[3]. 32. The Dâraga river is in Aîrân-vêg, on the bank (bâr) of which was the dwelling of Pôrûshasp, the father of Zaratûst[4]. 33. The other innumerable waters and rivers, springs *and* channels are one in origin with those[5]; so in various districts *and* various places they call *them* by various names.

34. Regarding Frâsîyâv[6] they say, that a thousand springs were conducted away by him into the sea Kyânsîh[7], suitable for horses, suitable for camels, suitable for oxen, suitable for asses, both great and small[8]; and he conducted the spring Zarînmand (or golden source), which is the Hêtûmand[9] river they say, into the same sea; and he conducted the seven navigable waters of the source of the Vakaêni[10] river into the same sea, *and* made men settle *there*.

[1] Or, 'this same Vêh river they call there the Kâsak; even in Sênî they call *it* the Kâsak;' Sênî is apt to be miswritten Sênd or Sînd (see Chap. XV, 29).

[2] See § 7. The latter half of both names can also be read mâhan, mâhô, or mahân. Pêshyôtan, son of Vistâsp, seems to have taken a surname from this river (see Chap. XXIX, 5).

[3] See Chap. XXIX, 10.

[4] See Chaps. XXIV, 15, XXXII, 1, 2.

[5] Or, 'are from those as a source.'

[6] The MSS. have 'Pôrûshasp,' but compare § 17 and Chap. XXI, 6. The two names are somewhat alike in Pahlavi writing.

[7] See Chap. XIII, 16.

[8] Compare Chap. XIX, 6. K20 omits the words 'suitable for asses here.

[9] Another Hêtûmand according to § 17. Possibly a dried-up bed of that river.

[10] K20 has Vataêni; *k* and t being much alike in Pâzand. The

CHAPTER XXI[1].

1. In revelation they mention seventeen[2] species of liquid (mayâ), as one liquid resides in plants[3]; second, that which is flowing from the mountains, that is, the rivers; third, that which is rain-water; fourth, that of tanks *and* other special *constructions*; fifth, the semen of animals and men; sixth, the urine of animals and men[4]; seventh, the sweat of animals and men; the eighth liquid is that in the skin of animals and men; ninth, the tears of animals and men; tenth, the blood of animals and men; eleventh, the oil in animals and men, a necessary in both worlds[5]; twelfth, the saliva of animals and men, with which they nourish the embryo[6]; the thirteenth is that which is under the bark[7] of plants, as it is said that every bark has a liquid, through which a drop *appears* on a twig (têkh) *when placed* four finger-breadths before a fire[8]; fourteenth, the milk of animals and men. 2. All these, through growth, or

---

'navigable (nâvtâk) waters' may be 'the Nâvadâ river' of § 7, 'the river Nâhvtâk' of Chap. XXI, 6, and Nâivtâk of Chap. XXIX, 4, 5.

[1] This chapter is evidently a continuation of the preceding one.

[2] Only fourteen are mentioned in the details which follow.

[3] Most of these details are derived from the Pahl. Yas. XXXVIII, 7–9, 13, 14; and several varieties of water are also described in Yas. LXVII, 15.

[4] This sixth liquid is omitted by K20.

[5] Departed souls are said to be fed with oil in paradise.

[6] K20 omits the word pûs, 'embryo.'

[7] The meaning 'bark' for Pâz. ayvan is merely a guess; Anquetil has 'sap' (compare Pers. âvînâ, 'juice'), but this is hardly consistent with the rest of the sentence.

[8] See Chap. XXVII, 25.

the body which is formed, mingle again with the rivers, for the body which is formed *and* the growth are both one.

3. This, too, they say, that of these three rivers, that is, the Arag river, the Marv river, *and* the Vêh[1] river, the spirits were dissatisfied, so that they would not flow into the world, owing to the defilement of stagnant water (armêst) which they beheld, so that they were in tribulation through it until Zaratûst was exhibited to them, whom I (Aûharmazd) will create, who *will* pour sixfold holy-water (zôr) into it *and* make *it* again wholesome; he will preach carefulness[2]. 4. This, too, it says, that, of water whose holy-water is more and pollution less, the holy-water has come in excess, *and* in three years it goes back to the sources[3]; *that* of which the pollution *and* holy-water have both become equal, arrives back in six years; *that* of which the pollution is more and holy-water less, arrives back in nine years. 5. So, also, the growth of plants is connected, in this manner, strongly with the root[4]; so, likewise, the blessings (âfrîn) which the righteous utter, come back, in this proportion, to themselves.

6. Regarding the river Nâhvtâk[5] it says, that Frâsîyâv of Tûr conducted it away; *and* when[6]

[1] K20 has 'Hêtûmand,' but M6 has 'Sapîr,' the Huz. equivalent of 'Vêh,' which is more probable.

[2] Or, 'abstinence *from impurity*.'

[3] The source Arêdvîvsûr (see Chap. XIII, 3, 10).

[4] That is, by the sap circulating like the waters of the earth. The greater part of this sentence is omitted in K20.

[5] Probably 'the Nâvadâ' and 'navigable waters' of Chap. XX, 7, 34, and Nâîvtâk of Chap. XXIX, 4, 5.

[6] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'which' (see note to Chap. I, 7).

Hûshêdar[1] comes it *will* flow again suitable for horses; so, also, *will* the fountains of the sea Kyânsîh[2]. 7. Kyânsîh[2] is the one where the home (*g*înâk) of the Kayân race is.

CHAPTER XXII.

1. On the nature of lakes it says in revelation, that thus many fountains of waters have come into notice, which they call lakes (var); counterparts of the eyes (*k*ashm) of men are those fountains (*k*ashmak) of waters; such as Lake *K*êk*k*ast, Lake Sôvbar, Lake Khvârizem[3], Lake Frazdân, Lake Zarînmand, Lake Âsvast, Lake Husru, Lake Satavês, Lake Urvis.

2. I *will* mention them also a second time: Lake *K*êk*k*ast[4] is in Âtarô-pâtakân, warm is the water *and* opposed to harm, so that nothing whatever is living in *it;* and its source is connected with the wide-formed ocean[5]. 3. Lake Sôvbar is in the upper district and country on the summit of the mountain of Tûs[6]; as it says, that the Sûd-bâhar[7] ('share of benefit') is propitious and good from which abound-

[1] Written Khûrshêdar, as usual in Bundahi*s* (see Chap. XXXII, 8).

[2] Written Kayâseh in Pâzand (see Chap. XIII, 16).

[3] Pâz. Khvârazm both here and in § 4.

[4] Av. *K*aê*k*asta of Âbân Yt. 49, Gô*s* Yt. 18, 21, 22, Ashi Yt. 38, 41, Sîrôz. 9. The present Lake Urumiyah in Âdarbîgân, which is called Khegest, or *K*egest, by 'Hamdu-l-lâh Mustaûfî.

[5] Implying that the water is salt.

[6] The Kôndrâsp mountain (see Chap. XII, 24). This lake is probably a small sheet of water on the mountains near Meshhed.

[7] Evidently a punning etymology of the name of this lake.

ing liberality is produced. 4. Regarding Lake Khvârizem[1] it says that excellent benefit is produced from it, *that is*, Arshisang[2] the rich in wealth, the well-portioned *with* abounding pleasure. 5. Lake Frazdân[3] is in Sagastân; they say, where a generous man, *who is* righteous, throws anything into it, it receives *it;* when not righteous, it throws *it* out again; its source also is connected with the wide-formed *ocean*. 6. Lake Zarînmand is in Hamadân[4]. 7. Regarding Lake Âsvast it is declared that the undefiled[5] water which it contains is always constantly flowing into the sea, so bright and copious[6] that *one* might say that the sun had come into it *and* looked at Lake Âsvast, into that water which is requisite for restoring the dead in the renovation *of the universe*. 8. Lake Husru[7] is within fifty[8]

[1] The province of Khvârizem was between the Aral and Caspian, along the ancient course of the Oxus (see Chap. XVII, 5). This lake has been identified with the Aral.

[2] Av. ashis vanguhi, 'good rectitude,' personified as a female angel whose praises are celebrated in the Ashi Yast; in later times she has been considered as the angel dispensing wealth and possessions. She is also called Ard (Av. areta, which is synonymous with asha), see Chap. XXVII, 24.

[3] The 'Frazdânava water' of Âbân Yt. 108 and Farhang-i Oîm-khadûk, p. 17. Justi identifies it with the Âb-istâdah ('standing water') lake, south of Ghaznî. It is here represented as a salt lake.

[4] K20 adds, 'they say.' This lake cannot be the spring Zarînmand of Chap. XX, 34.

[5] Pâz. avnasti transcribed into Pahlavi is avinastag, 'unspoiled,' the equivalent of Av. anâhita in Yas. LXIV, 1, 16, Visp. I, 18.

[6] K20 has 'glorious' as a gloss to 'copious.'

[7] The Av. Haosravangha of Sîroz. 9, 'the lake which is named Husravau' of Zamyâd Yt. 56. It may be either Lake Van or Lake Sevan, which are nearly equidistant from Lake Urumiyah.

[8] M6 has 'four leagues.'

leagues (parasang) of Lake Kêkast. 9. Lake (or, rather, Gulf) Satavês[1] is that *already* written *about*, between the wide-formed ocean *and* the Pûtik. 10. It is said that in Kamindân is an abyss (zafar), from which everything they throw in always comes *back*, and it *will* not receive it unless alive (gânvar); when they throw a living creature into it, it carries *it* down; men say that a fountain from hell is in it. 11. Lake Urvis is on Hûgar the lofty[2].

Chapter XXIII.

1. On the nature of the ape *and* the bear they say, that Yim, when reason (nismô) departed from him[3], for fear of the demons took a demoness as wife, and gave Yimak, who was *his* sister, to a demon as wife; and from them have originated the tailed ape and bear *and* other species of degeneracy.

2. This, too, they say, that in the reign of Az-i Dahâk[4] a young woman was admitted to a demon, and a young man was admitted to a witch (parik), and on seeing them they had intercourse; owing to that one intercourse the black-skinned negro arose from them. 3. When Frêdûn[5] came to them they fled from the country of Iran, *and* settled upon the sea-coast; now, *through* the invasion of the Arabs, they are again diffused through the country of Iran.

[1] See Chap. XIII, 9–13.

[2] See Chaps. XII, 5, XIII, 4.

[3] See Chap. XXXIV, 4. This is the Jamshêd of the Shâhnâmah. Perhaps for 'reason' we should read 'glory.'

[4] See Chaps. XXXI, 6, XXXIV, 5.

[5] See Chap. XXXIV, 6.

Chapter XXIV.

1. On the chieftainship of men and animals *and* every single thing it says in revelation, that first of the human species Gâyômar*d* was produced, brilliant and white, with eyes which looked out for the great *one*, him who *was* here the Zaratûstrôtûm (chief high-priest); the chieftainship of all things was from Zaratûst[1]. 2. The white ass-goat[2], which holds *its* head down, is the chief of goats, the first of those species created[3]. 3. The black sheep which is fat and white-jawed is the chief of sheep; it was the first of those species created[3]. 4. The camel with white-haired knees *and* two humps is the chief of camels. 5. First the black-haired ox with yellow knees was created; he is the chief of oxen. 6. First the dazzling white (arûs) horse, with yellow ears, glossy hair, *and* white eyes, was produced; he is the chief of horses. 7. The white, cat-footed[4] ass is the chief of asses. 8. First of dogs the fair (arûs) dog with yellow hair was produced; he is the chief of dogs. 9. The hare was produced brown

[1] So in all MSS., but by reading mûn, 'who,' instead of min, 'from,' we should have, 'him who *was* here the chief high-priest *and* chieftainship of all things, who was Zaratûst.' The Pahlavi Visp. I, 1, gives the following list of chiefs: 'The chief of spirits is Aûharmazd, the chief of worldly existences is Zaratûst, the chief of water-creatures is the Kar-fish, the chief of *land*-animals is the ermine, the chief of flying-creatures is the Karsipt, the chief of the wide-travellers is the . . . , the chief of those suitable for grazing is the ass-goat.'

[2] See Chap. XIV, 14.

[3] It is doubtful whether the phrase, 'the first of those species created,' belongs to this sentence or the following one.

[4] Or, 'cat-legged.'

(bûr); he is the chief of the wide-travellers. 10. Those beasts which have no dread whatever of the hand are evil. 11. First of birds the griffon of three natures[1] was created, not for here (this world), for the Karsipt[2] is the chief, which they call the falcon (*k*ark), that which revelation says was brought to the enclosure formed by Yim. 12. First of fur animals the white ermine was produced: he is the chief of fur animals; as it says that *it is* the white ermine which came unto the assembly of the archangels. 13. The Kar-fish, *or* Ariz[3], is the chief of the water-creatures. 14. The Dâitik[4] river is the chief of streams. 15. The Dâraga[5] river is the chief of exalted rivers, for the dwelling of the father of Zaratûst was on its banks[6], *and* Zaratûst was born there. 16. The hoary forest[7] is the chief of forests. 17. Hûgar the lofty[8], on which the water of Arêdvîvsûr flows *and* leaps, is the chief of summits, since *it is that* above which is the revolution of the constellation Satavês[9], the chief of reser-

[1] The Sîmurgh (see § 29 and Chap. XIV, 11, 23, 24). In Mkh. LXII, 37–39, it is mentioned as follows: 'And Sinamrû's resting-place is on the tree which is opposed to harm, of all seeds; and always when he rises aloft a thousand twigs will shoot forth from that tree; and when he alights he will break off the thousand twigs, and he sheds their seed therefrom.'

[2] See Chap. XIX, 16. In § 29 *K*amrôs is said to be the chief.

[3] See Chaps. XIV, 12, 26, XVIII, 3–6.

[4] See Chap. XX, 13.

[5] See Chap. XX, 32.

[6] The MSS. have 'in Balkh' instead of 'on the banks.'

[7] The arûs-i razur is the Av. spaêtitem razurem of Râm Yt. 31.

[8] See Chap. XII, 5.

[9] See Chap. II, 7.

voirs[1]. 18. The Hôm which is out-squeezed is the chief of medicinal plants[2]. 19. Wheat is the chief of large-seeded[3] grains. 20. The desert wormwood is the chief of unmedicinal[4] *plants*. 21. The summer vetch, which they also call 'pag' (gâvirs), is the chief of small-seeded grains[5]. 22. The Kûstîk (sacred thread-girdle) is the chief of clothes. 23. The Bâzâyvâna[6] is the chief of seas. 24. Of two men, when they come forward together, the wiser and more truthful is chief.

25. This, too, it says in revelation, that Aûharmazd created the whole material world one abode, so that all may be one; for there is much splendour and glory of industry in the world. 26. Whatsoever he performs, who practises that which is good, is the value of the water of life[7]; since water is not created alike[8] in value, for the undefiled water of Arêdvîvsûr is worth the whole water of the sky and earth of Khvanîras[9], except the Arag river[10], created by Aûharmazd. 27. Of trees the myrtle *and* date,

[1] The meaning of Pâz. gobarâ is doubtful, but it is here taken as standing for Pahl. gôbalân, equivalent to the plural of Pers. gôl or kôl, 'a reservoir;' Satavês being a specially 'watery' constellation (see Tîstar Yt. 0). Justi traces gobarân to Av. gufra, and translates it by 'protecting *stars*.'

[2] Pâz. khvad and bakagâ evidently stand for Pahl. hûd (Av. huta) and bezashk.

[3] Compare Av. as-dânunãm-ka yavananãm (Tîstar Yt. 29).

[4] Pâz. abakagâ stands for Pahl. abezashk.

[5] Compare Av. kasu-dânunãm-ka vâstranãm (Tîstar Yt. 29).

[6] Justi identifies this with Lake Van, but perhaps Lake Sevan may be meant.

[7] Or, 'its value is water.' K20 omits the word 'water.'

[8] Reading ham instead of hamâk, 'all.'

[9] See Chap. XI, 2–6.

[10] See Chap. XX, 8.

on which *model*, it is said, trees were formed, are worth all the trees of Khvaniras, except the Gôkar*d* tree[1] with which they restore the dead.

28. Of mountains Mount Apârsên's beginning is *in* Sagastân *and* end in Khûgistân, some say *it is* all the mountains of Pârs, *and* is chief of all mountains except Albûrz. 29. Of birds *K*'amrôs[2] is chief, who is worth all the birds in Khvaniras, except the griffon of three natures. 30. The conclusion is this, that every one who performs a great duty has then much value.

CHAPTER XXV.

1. On matters of religion[3] it says in revelation thus: 'The creatures of the world were created by me complete in three hundred and sixty-five days,' that is, the six periods of the Gâhanbârs which are completed in a year. 2. It is always necessary first to count the day *and* afterwards the night, for first the day goes off, *and* then the night comes on[4]. 3. And from the season (gâs) of Mê*d*ôk-shêm[5],

[1] See Chap. XVIII, 1–4.

[2] See Chap. XIX, 15, where it is written *K*'âmrôs. This § is at variance with § 11, which gives the chieftainship to Karsipt.

[3] That is, 'on the *periods for* observance of religious duties.'

[4] The Jewish and Muhammadan practice is just the contrary.

[5] The Av. maidhyô-shema of Yas. I, 27, II, 36, III, 41, Visp. I, 3, II, 1, Âfrîngân Gâhanbâr 2, 8. It is the second season-festival, held on the five days ending with the 105th day of the Parsi year, which formerly corresponded approximately to midsummer, according to the Bundahis. Later writings assert that it commemorates the creation of water.

which is the auspicious[1] day Khûr of the month Tîr[2], to the season of Mêdîyârêm[3], which is the

[1] A dispute as to the meaning of this word formed no small part of the Kabîsah controversy, carried on between the leaders of the two rival sects of Parsis in Bombay about fifty years ago. Dastur Edalji Dârâbji, the high-priest of the predominant sect (who adhered to the traditional calendar of the Indian Parsis), insisted that it meant 'solar,' or 'belonging to the calendar rectified for solar time by the intercalation of a month every 120 years;' Mullâ Fîrûz, the high-priest of the new sect (who had adopted the calendar of the Persian Parsis, which is one month in advance of the other), asserted that the word had no connection with intercalation, but meant 'commencing,' or 'pertaining to New-year's day,' as translated into Sanskrit, by Nêryôsang, in Mkh. XLIX, 27. Anquetil translates it either as 'inclusive' or 'complete;' Windischmann simply skips it over; and Justi translates it everywhere as 'inclusive.' Dastur Edalji reads the word vehîgakî or vehîgak; Nêryôsang has vahcza; Mullâ Fîrûz reads nâîkakîk in the Bundahis, but vêhîgakîk in the Dînkard, where the word also occurs; Justi has nâîkakîk. The meaning 'inclusive' suits the context in nearly all cases in the Bundahis, but not elsewhere; if it had that meaning the most probable reading would be vikhêgakîk or nikhêgakîk, 'arising, leaping over, including.' It is nearly always used in connection with dates or periods of time, and must be some epithet of a very general character, not only applicable to intercalary periods, but also to New-year's day and dates in general; something like the Arabic epithet mubârak, 'fortunate,' so commonly used in Persian dates. Dastur Edalji compares it with Pers. bîhrak or bihtarak, 'intercalary month,' which is probably a corruption of it; and this suggests veh, 'good,' as one component of the epithet. The word may be read veh-yazakîk, 'for reverencing the good,' but as veh, 'good,' is an adjective, this would be an irregular form; a more probable reading is veh-îkakîk, 'for anything good,' which, when applied to a day, or any period of time, would imply that it is suitable for anything good, that is, it is 'auspicious.' Sometimes the word is written vehîkak, vêhîkakîk, or vêhîkŏ; and epithets of similar forms in Pahlavi are applied by the writers of colophons to themselves, but these should be read vakhêzak or nisîvak, 'lowly, abject.'

[2] The eleventh day of the fourth month, when the festival commences.

[3] The Av. maidhyâirya of Yas. I, 30, II, 39, III, 44, Visp. I,

auspicious day Vâhrâm of the month Din[1]—the short*est* day—the night increases; and from the season of Mê*dî*yârêm to the season of Mê*dô*k-shêm the night decreases *and* the day increases. 4. The summer day is as much as two of the shortest[2] winter days, *and* the winter night is as much as two of the shortest summer nights[3]. 5. The summer day is twelve Hâsars, the night six Hâsars; the winter night is twelve Hâsars, the day six; a Hâsar *being* a *measure of* time *and*, in like manner, of land[4]. 6. In the season of Hamêspamadâyêm[5], that is, the

6, II, 1, Âf. Gâhan. 2, 11. It is the fifth season-festival, held on the five days ending with the 290th day of the Parsi year, which formerly corresponded approximately to midwinter, according to the Bundahi*s*. Later writings assert that it commemorates the creation of animals.

[1] The twentieth day of the tenth month, when the festival ends.

[2] The word kah-aît is merely a hybrid Huzvâri*s* form of kahist, 'shortest,' which occurs in the next phrase.

[3] This statement must be considered merely as an approximation. The longest day is twice the length of the shortest one in latitude 49°, that is, north of Paris, Vienna, and Odessa, if the length of the day be computed from sunrise to sunset; and, if twilight be included, it is necessary to go still further north. In Âdarbîgân, the northern province of Persia, the longest day is about $14\frac{1}{2}$ hours from sunrise to sunset, and the shortest is about $9\frac{1}{2}$ hours.

[4] According to this passage a hâsar of time is one hour and twenty minutes; it is the Av. hâthra of the Farhang-i Oîm-khadûk (p. 43, ed. Hoshangji), which says, 'of twelve Hâsars is the longest day, *and* the day *and* night in which is the longest day are twelve of the longest Hâsars, eighteen of the medium, and twenty-four of the least—an enumeration of the several measures of the Hâsar.' For the hâsar measure of land, see Chap. XXVI.

[5] So in K20, but this name is rarely written twice alike; it is the Av. hamaspathmaêdaya of Yas. I, 31, II, 40, III, 45, Visp. I, 7, II, 1, Âf. Gâhan. 2, 12. It is the sixth season-festival, held on the five Gâtha days which conclude the Parsi year, just before

five *supplementary* days at the end of the month Spendarmad, the day *and* night are again equal.

7. As from the auspicious day Aûharmazd of the month Fravardîn to the auspicious day Anîrân of the month Mitrô[1] is the summer of seven months, *so* from the auspicious day Aûharmazd of the month Âvân to the auspicious month Spendarmad, on to the end of the five *supplementary* days[2], is the winter of five months. 8. The priest fulfils the regulation (vakar) about a corpse *and* other things, by this calculation as to summer and winter. 9. In those seven months[3] of summer the periods (gâs) of the days and nights are five—since *one* celebrates the Rapîtvîn—namely, the period of daybreak is Hâvan, the period of midday is Rapîtvîn, the period of afternoon is Aûzêrîn, when the appearance of the stars *has* come into the sky[4] until midnight is the period of Aîbisrûtêm, from midnight until the stars become imperceptible is the period of Aûshahîn[5]. 10. In winter are four periods, for *from* daybreak till Aûzêrîn is all Hâvan, *and* the rest as I *have* said; and the reason of it is this, that the appearance[6] of winter is in the direction of the

---

the vernal equinox, according to the Bundahis. Later writings assert that it commemorates the creation of man.

[1] That is, from the first day of the first month to the last day of the seventh month.

[2] That is, from the first day of the eighth month to the last of the five Gâtha days, which are added to the twelfth month to complete the year of 365 days.

[3] All MSS. have 'five months' here.

[4] K20 has 'when the stars *have* come into sight.'

[5] The Avesta names of the five Gâhs are Hâvani, Rapithwina, Uzayêirina, Aiwisrûthrema, and Ushahina.

[6] Pâz. ashâris is evidently a misreading of Pahl. âshkârîh.

north, where the regions Vôrûbarst[1] and Vôrûgarst are; the original dwelling of summer, too, is in the south, where the regions Fradadafsh *and* Vidadafsh are; on the day Âûharmazd of the auspicious month Âvân the winter acquires strength *and* enters into the world, *and* the spirit of Rapitvin goes from above-ground to below-ground, where the spring (khânî) of waters is, *and* diffuses[2] warmth and moisture in the water, *and* so many roots of trees do not wither with cold and drought. 11. And *on* the auspicious day Âtarô of the month Din[3] the winter arrives, with much cold, at Airân-vêg; *and* until the end, in the auspicious month Spendarmad, winter advances through the whole world; on this account they kindle a fire everywhere *on* the day Âtarô of the month Din, *and* it forms an indication that winter *has* come. 12. In those five months the water of springs *and* conduits is all warm[4], for Rapîtvîn keeps warmth *and* moisture there, *and one* does not celebrate the period of Rapîtvîn. 13. As the day Aûharmazd of the month Fravardin advances it diminishes the strength which winter possesses, *and* summer comes in from its own original dwelling, *and* receives strength *and* dominion. 14. Rapîtvîn comes up from below-ground, *and* ripens the fruit of the trees; on this account

[1] See Chaps. V, 8, XI, 3. The north, being opposed to the south or midday quarter, is opposed to the midday period of Rapîtvîn, which, therefore, disappears as winter approaches from the north.

[2] If, instead of khânî for khânîk, 'spring,' we read ahû-i, 'lord of,' the translation will be, 'so that the angel of waters may diffuse,' &c.

[3] The ninth day of the tenth month.

[4] That is, warmer than the air, as it is cooler in summer.

the water of springs is cold in summer[1], for Rapîtvîn is not there; *and* those seven[2] months *one* celebrates the Rapîtvîn, *and* summer advances through the whole earth. 15. And yet in the direction of Hindûstân, there *where* the original dwelling of summer is nearer, it is always neither cold nor hot; for in the season which is the dominion of summer, the rain always dispels most of the heat, *and* it does not become perceptible; in the winter rain does not fall, *and* the cold does not become very perceptible[3]. 16. In the northern direction, where the preparation of winter is, *it is* always cold[4]; for in the summer mostly, on account of the more oppressive winter there, it is not possible so to dispel the cold that *one* might make *it* quite warm. 17. In the middle localities the cold of winter *and* heat of summer *both* come on vehemently.

18. Again, the year *dependent* on the revolving moon is not equal to the computed year on this account, for the moon[5] returns one time in twenty-nine, *and* one time in thirty *days*, and there are four

[1] K20 has 'winter' by mistake.

[2] K20 has 'six,' and M6 'five,' instead of 'seven.'

[3] This is a fairly accurate account of the effect of the monsoons over the greater part of India, as understood by a foreigner unacquainted with the different state of matters in a large portion of the Madras provinces.

[4] M6 has khûrâsân instead of ârâyisn, 'preparation,' which alters the sense into 'that is, Khûrâsân, of which the winter is always cold.'

[5] The MSS. have the Huzvâris term for 'month,' which is sometimes used, by mistake, for 'moon.' It is doubtful which word the author intended to use here, but it is usual to count the days of a lunar month from the first actual appearance of the new moon, which usually occurs a full day after the change of the moon.

hours (zamân) more than such a one of its *years*[1]; as it says, that every one deceives where they speak about the moon (or month), except when they say that it *comes* twice in sixty days. 19. Whoever keeps the year by the revolution of the moon mingles summer with winter *and* winter with summer[2].

20. This, *too*, *it says*, that the auspicious month Fravard*î*n, the month Ard*a*vahist, *and* the month Horvada*d*[3] are spring; the month Tîr, the month Amerôda*d*, *and* the month Shatvairô are summer; the month Mitrô, the month Âvân, *and* the month Âtarô are autumn; the month Dîn, the month Vohûman, *and* the month Spendarma*d* are winter[4]. 21. And the sun comes from the sign (khûr*d*ak) of Aries, into which it proceeded in the beginning, back to that *same* place in three hundred and sixty-five days and six short times (hours), which are one year. 22. As every three months it (the sun) advances through three constellations, more or less, the moon comes, in a hundred and eighty days, back to the place out of which it travelled in the beginning[5].

---

[1] Meaning, probably, that the lunar year is four hours more than twelve months of 29 and 30 days each, alternately. It should be 8 hours, 48 minutes, and 37 seconds. The sentence seems defective, but it is evident from § 21 that zamân means 'hour.'

[2] That is, the lunar year being eleven days shorter than the solar one, its months are constantly retrograding through the seasons.

[3] Generally written Avardâ*d* in Pâzand, and Khurdâd in Persian.

[4] The names of the months are selected from the names of the days of the month (see Chap. XXVII, 24), but are arranged in a totally different order.

[5] Probably meaning, that the new moon next the autumnal

Chapter XXVI.

1. A Hâsar[1] on the ground is a Parasang of one thousand steps of the two feet. 2. A Parasang[2] is a measure as much as a far-seeing man may look out, see a beast *of burden, and* make known that *it* is black or white. 3. And the measure of a man is eight medium spans[3].

---

equinox is to be looked for in the same quarter as the new moon nearest the vernal equinox, the moon's declination being nearly the same in both cases.

[1] Av. hâthra of Vend. II, 65, VIII, 280, 287, 291, Tîstar Yt. 23, 29. The statements regarding the length of a Hâsar are rather perplexing, for we are told that it 'is like a Parasang' (Chap. XIV, 4), that 'the length of a Hâsar is one-fourth of a Parasang' (Chap. XVI, 7), and that 'a medium Hâsar on the ground, which they also call a Parasang, is a thousand steps of the two feet when walking with propriety' (Farhang-i Oîm-khadûk, ed. Hosh. p. 42). To reconcile these statements we must conclude that the Hâsar is like a Parasang merely in the sense of being a long measure of distance, that it is really the mille passus or mile of the Romans, and that it is a quarter of the actual Parasang. At the same time, as it was usual to call a Hâsar by the name of a Parasang, we are often left in doubt whether a mile or a league is meant, when a Hâsar or Parasang is mentioned. The Farhang-i Oîm-khadûk (p. 41) also mentions other measures of distance, such as the ta*k*ar (Av. ta*k*ara) of two Hâsars, the asvâst (or aêast) of four Hâsars, the dashmêst (Av. dakhshmaiti) of eight Hâsars, and the yôgêst (Av. yigaiasti or yugaiasti) of sixteen Hâsars.

[2] A Parasang is usually from 3½ to 4 English miles, but perhaps a Hâsar is meant here.

[3] Reading vitast-i miyânak instead of vitast damânak. The Farhang-i Oim-khadûk (p. 41) mentions three kinds of spans, the Av. vitasti (Vend. VIII, 243, 245, XVII, 13) of twelve finger-breadths (angûst), or about 9 inches, which is a full span between the thumb and little finger (the one mentioned in the text); the Av. disti (Vend. XVII, 13) of ten finger-breadths, or about 7½ inches, which is a span between the thumb and middle finger; and the

Chapter XXVII.

1. On the nature of plants it says in revelation, that, before the coming of the destroyer, vegetation had no thorn and bark about it; and, afterwards, when the destroyer came, it became coated with bark *and* thorny[1], for antagonism mingled with every single thing; owing to that cause vegetation is also much mixed with poison, like Bîs the height of hemp (kand)[2], that is poisonous, for men when they eat *it* die.

2. In like manner even as the animals, with grain of fifty and five species *and* twelve species of medicinal plants, have arisen from the primeval ox[3], ten thousand[4] species among the species of principal

---

Av. uzasti (Pahl. lâlâ-ast) of eight finger-breadths, or about 6 inches, which is a span between the thumb and fore-finger. Other measures mentioned by the same authority are the pâi (Av. padha, Vend. IX, 15, 20, 29), 'foot,' of fourteen finger-breadths, or about 10½ inches; the gâm (Av. gâya, Vend. III, 57, &c.), 'step,' which 'in the Vendîdâd is three pâi,' or about 2 feet 7½ inches, 'and in other places is said *to be* two frârâst' (Av. frârâthni in Vend. VII, 76, 79, 87); so the frârâst, which is probably the distance from the neck to the extended elbow, is half a gâm, or from 15 to 16 inches. Two other measures are mentioned in Vend. VII, 79, 87, 90, IX, 8, the Av. frâbâzu, 'fore-arm or cubit' from elbow to finger-ends, which is about 18 inches (or it may be a half fathom); and Av. vîbâzu, which is probably the 'fathom,' or extent of the two arms out-stretched, from 5½ to 6 feet.

[1] M6 has 'poisonous,' but is evidently copied from an original almost illegible in some places.

[2] Perhaps 'hemp the height of Bîs' would better express the Pahlavi words, but Bîs (Napellus Moysis) is often mentioned as a poisonous plant. The phrase may also be translated 'like Bîs *and* tall hemp.'

[3] See Chap. XIV, 1.

[4] M6 has 'a thousand,' but marks an omission. See Chap. IX, 4.

plants, *and* a hundred thousand species among *ordinary* plants have grown from all these seeds of the tree opposed to harm[1], the many-seeded, *which* has grown in the wide-formed ocean. 3. When the seeds of all these plants, with those from the primeval ox, have arisen upon it, every year the bird[2] strips that tree *and* mingles all the seeds in the water; Tîstar seizes *them* with the rain-water *and* rains *them on* to *all* regions. 4. Near to that tree the white Hôm, the healing and undefiled, has grown at the source of the water of Arêdvîvsûr[3]; every one who eats *it* becomes immortal, and they call it the Gôkard[4] tree, as it is said that Hôm is expelling death[5]; also in the renovation *of the universe* they prepare its immortality therefrom[6]; *and* it is the chief of plants[7].

5. These are as many genera of plants as exist: trees and shrubs, fruit-*trees*, corn, flowers, aromatic herbs, salads, spices, grass, wild plants, medicinal

[1] See Chaps. IX, 5, XVIII, 9, XXIX, 5.

[2] The apparently contradictory account in Chap. IX, 2, refers only to the first production of material plants from their spiritual or ideal representative. The bird here mentioned is *Kamrôs* (see Chaps. XIX, 15, XXIV, 29), as appears from the following passage (Mkh. LXII, 40–42): 'And the bird *Kamrôs* for ever sits *in* that vicinity; and his work is this, that he collects that seed which sheds from the tree of all seeds, which is opposed to harm, and conveys *it* there where Tîstar seizes the water, so that Tîstar may seize the water with that seed of all kinds, and may rain *it* on the world with the rain.'

[3] See Chaps. XII, 5, XIII, 3–5.

[4] Here written Gôkarn in all MSS. See Chaps. IX, 6, XVIII, 1, 2.

[5] That is, in Yas. IX, where Haoma is entitled dûraosha.

[6] See Chap. XXIV, 27.

[7] See Chap. XXIV, 18.

plants, gum *plants*, *and* all producing [1] oil, dyes, *and* clothing. 6. I *will* mention them also a second time: all whose fruit is not welcome as food of men, *and* are perennial (sâlvâr), as the cypress, the plane, the white poplar, the box, and others of this genus, they call trees and shrubs (dâr va dirakht). 7. The produce of everything welcome as food of men, *that* is perennial, as the date, the myrtle, the lote-plum [2], the grape, the quince, the apple, the citron, the pomegranate, the peach, the fig, the walnut, the almond, *and* others in this genus, they call fruit (mîvak). 8. Whatever requires labour with the spade [3], *and* is perennial, they call a shrub (dirakht). 9. Whatever requires that they take its crop through labour, *and its* root withers away, such as wheat, barley, grain, various kinds [4] of pulse, vetches, *and* others of this genus, they call corn (gûrdâk). 10. Every *plant with* fragrant leaves, *which* is cultivated by the hand-labour of men, *and* is perennial (hamvâr), they call an aromatic herb (siparam). 11. Whatever sweet-scented blossom arises *at* various seasons through the hand-labour of men, or has a perennial root *and* blossoms in *its* season *with* new shoots *and* sweet-scented blossoms, as the rose, the narcissus, the jasmine, the dog-rose (nêstarûn),

[1] Comparing this list with the subsequent repetition it appears probable that hamâk barâ is a corruption of aesam bôd (see §§ 19, 21), and that we ought to read 'gum *plants*, woods, scents, *and plants* for oil, dyes, *and* clothing.' M6 has 'oil *and* dyes for clothing.'

[2] The kûnâr (see Chap. XV, 13).

[3] The Pâz. pêhani (which is omitted in K20) is evidently a misreading of Pahl. pashang, 'a hoe-like spade.'

[4] M6 adds Pâz. gavina (Pahl. gûnak) to gvîd gvîd mungân, without altering the meaning materially.

the tulip, the colocynth (kavastîk), the pandanus (kêdi), the *k*amba, the ox-eye (hêri), the crocus, the swallow-wort (zarda), the violet, the kârda, *and* others of this genus, they call a flower (gûl). 12. Everything whose sweet-scented fruit, or sweet-scented blossom, arises in *its* season, without the hand-labour of men, they call a wild plant (vahâr or nihâl). 13. Whatever is welcome as food of cattle and beasts *of burden* they call grass (giyâh). 14. Whatever enters into cakes (pês-pârakîhâ) they call spices (âvzârîhâ). 15. Whatever is welcome in eating of bread, as torn shoots[1] of the coriander, water-cress (kakîg), the leek, *and* others of this genus, they call salad (têrak)[2]. 16. Whatever is like spinning[3] cotton, *and* others of this genus, they call clothing *plants* (gâmak). 17. Whatever lentil[4] is greasy, as sesame, dûshdâng, hemp, zandak[5], *and* others of this genus, they call an oil-*seed* (rôkanô). 18. Whatever *one* can dye clothing with, as saffron, sapan-wood, za*k*ava, vaha, *and* others of this genus, they call a dye-*plant* (rag). 19. Whatever root, or gum[6], or wood

[1] Reading stâk darî*d*; Justi has 'baked shoots;' Anquetil has 'the three following;' M6 has stâk va karafs, 'shoots and parsley.'

[2] Or târak in § 5, Pers. tarah.

[3] Reading Huz. neskhunân, 'twisting,' but the word is doubtful; Justi has 'sitting *on the plant*,' which is a rather singular description for cotton.

[4] Reading ma*k*ag; Anquetil, Windischmann, and Justi read mazg, 'marrow,' but this is usually written otherwise.

[5] Perhaps for zêtô, 'olive,' as Anquetil supposes, and Justi assumes.

[6] Reading tûf (compare Pers. tuf, 'saliva').

is scented, as frankincense[1], varâst[2], kust, sandal-wood, cardamom[3], camphor, orange-scented mint, *and* others of this genus, they call a scent (bôd). 20. Whatever stickiness comes out from plants[4] they call gummy (zadak). 21. The timber which proceeds from the trees, when it is either dry or wet, they call wood (kibâ). 22. Every one of all these plants which is so, they call medicinal (dârûk)[5].

23. The principal fruits are *of* thirty kinds (khadûinak), and ten species (sardak) of them are fit to eat inside and outside, as the fig, the apple, the quince, the citron, the grape, the mulberry, the pear, *and* others of this kind; ten are fit to eat outside, *but* not fit to eat inside, as the date, the peach, the white apricot, *and* others of this kind; those which are fit to eat inside, *but* not fit to eat outside, are the walnut, the almond, the pomegranate, the cocoa-nut[6], the filbert[7], the chesnut[8], the pistachio nut, the vargân, *and* whatever else of this description are very remarkable.

24[9]. This, too, it says, that every single flower is appropriate to an angel (ameshôspend)[10], as the

[1] Pâz. kendri for Pahl. kundur probably.

[2] Justi compares Pers. barghast.

[3] Pâz. kâkura may be equivalent to Pers. qaqulah, 'cardamoms,' or to Pers. kâkul or kâkûl, 'marjoram.'

[4] K20 omits a line, from here to the word 'either.'

[5] The line which contained this sentence is torn off in K20.

[6] Pâz. anârsar is a misreading of Pahl. anârgîl (Pers. nârgîl. 'cocoa-nut').

[7] Pâz. pendak, a misreading of Pahl. funduk.

[8] Pâz. shahbrôd, a misreading of Pahl. shahbalût; omitted in M6.

[9] M6 begins a new chapter here.

[10] These are the thirty archangels and angels whose names are applied to the thirty days of the Parsi month, in the order in

white[1] jasmine (saman) is for Vohûman, the myrtle *and* jasmine (yâsmin) are Aûharmazd's own, the mouse-ear (or sweet marjoram) is Ashavahist's[2] own, the basil-royal is Shatvaîrô's own, the musk flower is Spendarmad's, the lily is Horvadad's, the *k*amba is Amerôdad's, Dîn-*pavan-Âtarô has* the orange-scented mint (vâdrang-bôd), Âtarô *has* the marigold[3] (âdargun), the water-lily is Âvân's, the white marv is Khûrshêd's, the ranges[4] is Mâh's, the violet is Tîr's, the mêren[5] is Gôs's, the kârda is Dîn-pavan-Mitrô's, all violets are Mitrô's, the red chrysanthemum (khêr) is Srôsh's, the dog-rose (nestran) is Rashnû's, the cockscomb is Fravardîn's, the sisebar is Vâhrâm's, the yellow chrysanthemum is Râm's, the orange-scented mint is Vâd's[6], the trigonella is Dîn-pavan-Dîn's, the hundred-petalled rose is Dîn's, all kinds of wild flowers (vahâr) are Ard's[7], Âstâd *has* all the white Hôm[8], the bread-baker's basil is Âsmân's, Zamyâd *has* the crocus, Mâraspend *has the flower*[9] of Ardashîr,

which they are mentioned here, except that Aûharmazd is the first day, and Vohûman is the second.

[1] M6 has 'yellow.'

[2] Synonymous with the Ardavahist of Chap. I, 26.

[3] Anquetil, Windischmann, and Justi have 'the poppy.'

[4] M6 has Pâz. lg as only the first part of the word, and Justi translates it by 'red lac,' which is not a plant. Transcribing the Pâzand into Pahlavi, perhaps the nearest probable word is rand, 'laurel.'

[5] M6 has Pâz. mênr; Anquetil has 'vine blossom,' and is followed by Windischmann and Justi, but the word is very uncertain.

[6] The remainder of this chapter is lost from K20.

[7] This female angel is also called Arshisang (see Chap. XXII, 4).

[8] See § 4.

[9] M6 leaves a blank space for the name of the flower; perhaps it is the marv-i Ardashîrân.

Anîrân *has* this Hôm of the angel Hôm [1], of three kinds.

25. It is concerning plants that every single kind *with* a drop of water on a twig (teh) they should hold four finger-breadths in front of the fire [2]; most of all it is the lotos (kûnâr) they speak of.

Chapter XXVIII [3].

[1. On the evil-doing of Aharman *and* the demons it says in revelation, that the evil which the evil spirit has produced for the creation of Aûharmazd it is possible to tell by this winter [4]; and his body is that of a lizard (vazagh) [5] *whose* place is filth (kalâ). 2. He does not think, nor speak, nor act *for* the welfare (nadûkîh) of the creatures of Aûharmazd; and his business is unmercifulness and the destruction of this *welfare*, so that the creatures which Aûharmazd shall increase he will destroy; and *his* eyesight (*k*ashm mî*k*isn) [6] does not refrain from doing the creatures harm. 3. As it says that, 'ever

[1] Reading, in Pahlavi, Hôm yêdatô aê hôm.

[2] See Chap. XXI, 1. Referring to the necessity of drying fire-wood before putting it on the fire. The kûnâr is specially mentioned, as one of the first fire-woods used by mankind, in Chap. XV, 13.

[3] Chaps. XXVIII, XXIX, and XXXI are omitted in M6 and all MSS. descended from it, whether Pahlavi or Pâzand; and, owing to the loss of a folio from K20 before any of its extant copies were written, the first quarter of Chap. XXVIII has hitherto been missing, but is here supplied (enclosed in brackets) from TD, a MS. belonging to Mobad Tahmuras Dinshaw (see Introduction).

[4] Winter being one of the primary evils brought upon creation by Angra-mainyu (see Vend. I, 8–12).

[5] See Chap. III, 9. [6] Referring to 'the evil eye.'

since a creature was created by us, I, who am Aûharmazd, have not rested at ease, on account of providing protection for my own creatures; and likewise not even he, the evil spirit, on account of contriving evil for the creatures.' 4. And by *their* devotion to witchcraft (yâtûk-dînôîh) he seduces mankind into affection for himself and disaffection to Aûharmazd[1], so that they forsake the religion of Aûharmazd, and practise that of Aharman. 5. He casts this into the thoughts of men, that this religion of Aûharmazd is nought, and it is not necessary to be steadfast in it. 6. Whoever gives that man anything, in whose law (dâd) this saying is established, then the evil spirit is propitiated by him, that is, he has acted by his pleasure.

7. The business of Akôman[2] is this, that he gave vile thoughts and discord to the creatures. 8. The business of the demon Andar is this, that he constrains the thoughts of the creatures from deeds of virtue, just like a leader who *has* well-constrained (sardâr-i khûp afsârdŏ); *and* hè casts this into the thoughts of men, that it is not necessary to have the *sacred* shirt *and thread*-girdle. 9. The business of the demon Ŝâvar[3], that is a leader of the demons, is this, that is, misgovernment, oppressive anarchy, and drunkenness. 10. The business of the demon Nâîkîyas[4] is this, that he gives discontent to the creatures; as it says, that should this *one*

[1] Compare Chap. I, 14.

[2] The six arch-fiends of this paragraph are those mentioned in Chaps. I, 27, XXX, 29.

[3] Written Sôvar in Chap. I, 27.

[4] Written Nâkahêd in Chap. I, 27, Nâîkîyas when repeated in this sentence, and Pâz. Nâûnghas in Chap. XXX, 29.

give anything to those men whose opinion (dâd) is this, that it is not necessary to have the *sacred* shirt *and thread*-girdle, then Andar, Sâvar, and Nâîkiyas are propitiated by him. 11. The demon Taprêv[1] is he who mingles poison with plants and creatures; as it says thus: 'Taprêv the frustrater, *and* Zâirik the maker of poison.' 12. All those six, it is said, are arch-fiends[2] of the demons; the rest are co-operating and confederate with them. 13. This, too, it says, that][3] should *one* give [anything to] a man who says [that it is proper to have one boot], and in his law walking with one boot [is established, then][4] the fiend Taprêv is propitiated [by him].

14. The demon Tarômat[5] [is he who] produces disobedience; the demon Mîtôkht[6] is the liar (drôgan) of the evil spirit[7]; the demon Arask[8] ('malice') is the spiteful fiend of the evil eye. 15. Theirs are the same[9] appliances as the demon Aeshm's[10], as it

[1] Written Tâîrêv in Chap. I, 27. [2] See Chap. III, 2.

[3] From this point the Pahlavi text is extant in K20, except some illegible words, the translation of which (supplied from TD) is here enclosed in brackets.

[4] Anquetil, misled by the lacuna in his MS., thought that there was a change of subject here, and began a new chapter at this point. On this account the numbers of his chapters are henceforth one in excess of those in this translation.

[5] Written Tarôkmatŏ in TD, and identified with Nâûnghas (Nâîkîyas) in Chap. XXX, 29; a personification of the Av. tarômaiti, 'disobedience,' of Yas. XXXIII, 4, LIX, 8.

[6] A personification of the Av. mithaokhta, 'false-spoken,' of Yas. LIX, 8, Vend. XIX, 146, Visp. XXIII, 9, Zamyâd Yt. 96.

[7] TD has drûg gûmânîkîh, 'the fiend of scepticism.'

[8] Av. araska of Yas. IX, 18, Râm Yt. 16, personified.

[9] The word hômanam in K20 is a false Huzvâris reading of ham, owing to the copyist reading am, 'I am;' TD has ham-afzâr, 'having like means.'

[10] Or Khashm, 'wrath;' so written in K20, but it is usually

says that seven powers are given *to* Aeshm[1], that he may utterly destroy the creatures therewith; with those seven powers he will destroy seven[2] of the Kayân heroes in his own time, *but* one will remain. 16. There where Mîtôkht ('falsehood') arrives, Arask ('malice') becomes welcome, [and there where Arask is welcome][3] Aeshm lays a foundation[4], and there where Aeshm has a foundation[5] many creatures perish, *and* he causes much non-Iranianism[6]. 17. Aeshm mostly contrives all evil for the creatures of Aûharmazd, *and* the evil deeds of those Kayân heroes have been more complete through Aeshm, as it says, that Aeshm, the impetuous assailant, causes them most[7].

18. The demon Vîzarêsh[8] is he who struggles with the souls of men which *have* departed, those

---

Âêshm elsewhere; the Av. aêshma of Vend. IX, 37, X, 23, 27, &c. The Asmodeus of the Book of Tobit appears to be the Av. Aêshmô daêvô, 'demon of wrath.'

[1] TD has 'there were seven powers of Aêshm.'

[2] TD has 'six,' which looks like an unlucky attempt to amend a correct text. Tradition tells us that only five Kayâns reigned (see Chap. XXXIV, 7), and the Shâhnâmah also mentions Siyâwush (Pahl. Kaî-Siyâvakhsh), who did not reign; but eight Kayâns, besides Lôharâsp and Vistâsp, who were of collateral descent (see Chap. XXXI, 28), are mentioned in the Avesta, whence the author of the Bundahis would obtain much of his information (see Fravardîn Yt. 132, Zamyâd Yt. 71, 74).

[3] The phrase in brackets occurs only in TD.

[4] Reading bunak as in TD; K20 has 'sends down a root.'

[5] So in TD; K20 has 'where Aeshm keeps on.'

[6] That is, 'many foreign customs.'

[7] The word vêsh, 'most,' is only in TD.

[8] So in TD; K20 has Vigêsh. He is the Av. Vîzaresha of Vend. XIX, 94, who is said to convey the souls of the departed to the *K*invad bridge.

days and nights[1] when *they remain* in the world; he carries *them* on, terror-stricken, *and* sits at the gate of hell. 19. The demon Uda[2] is he who, when a man sits in a private place, or when he eats at meals, strikes *his* knee spiritually on *his* back[3], so that he bawls out [*and* looks out, that chattering he may eat, chattering] he may evacuate (riêd), and chattering he may make water (mêzêd), so that he may not attain [unto the] best existence[4].

[20. The demon Akâtâsh[5] is the fiend of perversion (nikîrâyîh), who makes the creatures averse (nikîrâî) from proper things; as it says, that whoever *has* given anything to that person (tanû) whose opinion (dâd) is this, that it is not necessary to have a high-priest (dastôbar), then the demon Aeshm is propitiated by him. 21. Whoever *has* given anything to that person whose opinion is this, *and* who says, that it is not necessary to have a snake-killer (mâr-van), then Aharman, with the foregoing demons, is propitiated by him; this is said of him who, when he sees a noxious creature, does not kill *it*. 22. A snake-killer (mârô-gnô)[6] is a stick on the end of which a leathern *thong* is

[1] TD has 'those three nights,' referring to the period that the soul is said to remain hovering about the body after death (see Hâdôkht Nask, ed. Haug, II, 1–18, III, 1–17).

[2] So in K20; TD has Aûdak (see Pahl.Vend. XVIII, 70).

[3] TD has merely 'strikes a slipper (padîn-pôsh) spiritually,' that is, invisibly, for the purpose of startling the man.

[4] The short phrases in brackets are taken from TD to supply words torn off from K20, which passes on to Chap. XXIX at this point, but TD supplies a continuation of Chap. XXVIII, which is added here, and enclosed in brackets.

[5] The Av. Akatasha of Vend. X, 23 Sp., XIX, 43 W.

[6] See Pahlavi Vend. XVIII, 5, 6.

provided; and it is declared that every one of the good religion must possess one, that they may strike *and* kill noxious creatures *and* sinners more meritoriously with it.

23. Zarmân[1] is the demon who makes decrepit (dûspa*d*), whom they call old age (pîrîh). 24. Ak'îshmak[2] is he who makes disastrous (vazandak), and also causes the whirlwind[3] *which* passes over for disturbance. 25. The demon Varenô[4] is he who causes illicit intercourse, as it says thus: 'Varenô the defiling (âlâî).' 26. The demon Bûsh-âsp[5] is she who causes slothfulness; Sê*g* is the fiend (drû*g*) who causes annihilation; and the demon Nîyâz is he who *causes* distress.

27. The demon Âz[6] ('greediness') is he who swallows everything, and when, through destitution, nothing has come he eats himself; he is that fiendishness which, although the whole wealth of the world be given up to it, does not fill up and is not satisfied; as it says, that the eye of the covetous is a noose (gamand), and *in* it the world is nought. 28. Pû*s*[7] is the demon who makes a hoard, *and*

[1] A personification of the Av. zaurva of Vend. XIX, 43 W., Yas. IX, 18 Sp., Gô*s* Yt. 10, Râm Yt. 16.

[2] The reading of this name is uncertain.

[3] The small whirlwinds, which usually precede a change of wind in India, are commonly known by the name of shaîtân, which indicates that such whirling columns of dust are popularly attributed to demoniacal agency.

[4] A personification of Av. varena, 'desire,' in an evil sense.

[5] Av. Bûshyãsta of Vend. XI, 28, 29, 36, 37, XVIII, 38, &c. The names of the three demons in this sentence are Persian words for 'sloth,' 'trouble,' and 'want.'

[6] Av. Âzi of Vend. XVIII, 45, 50, Yas. XVII, 46, LXVII, 22, Âstâd Yt. 1.

[7] Compare Pers. payû*s*, 'covetous,' and piyû*s*, 'avarice.' Pû*s* is evidently the demon of misers, and Âz that of the selfish.

does not consume *it*, *and* does not give to any one; as it says, that the power of the demon Âz is owing to that person who, not content with his own wife, snatches away even those of others.

29. The demon Nas[1] is he who causes the pollution and contamination (nisrûstih), which they call nasâî ('dead matter'). 30. The demon Fríftâr ('deceiver') is he who seduces mankind. 31. The demon Spazg[2] ('slander') is he who brings *and* conveys discourse (milayâ), *and* it is nothing in appearance such *as* he says; and he shows that mankind fights *and* apologizes (avakhshînêd), individual with individual. 32. The demon Arâst[3] ('untrue') is he who speaks falsehood. 33. The demon Aîghâsh[4] is the malignant-eyed fiend who smites mankind with *his* eye. 34. The demon Bût[5] is he whom they worship among the Hindûs, and his growth is lodged in idols, as one worships the horse *as* an idol[6]. 35. Astô-vîdâd[7] is the evil flyer (vâê-i sarîtar) who seizes the life; as it says that, when

---

[1] Av. Nasu of Vend. V, 85–106, VI, 65, 72, 74, 79, VII, 2–27, 70, VIII, 46, 48, 132–228, IX, 49–117, &c.

[2] Av. spazga of Ardabahist Yt. 8, 11, 15.

[3] Always written like anâst.

[4] Av. aghashi of Vend. XX, 14, 20, 24, which appears to be 'the evil eye;' but see § 36.

[5] Av. Bûiti of Vend. XIX, 4, 6, 140, who must be identified with Pers. but, 'an idol,' Sans. bhûta, 'a goblin,' and not with Buddha.

[6] Reading afas vakhsh pavan bûtîhâ mâhmânŏ, ǩîgûn bût asp parastêdŏ, which evidently admits of many variations, but the meaning is rather obscure.

[7] Here written Astî-vîdâd (see Chap. III, 21). Vend. V, 25, 31 says, 'Astô-vîdhôtu binds him (the dying man); Vayô (the flying demon) conveys him bound;' from which it would appear that Astô-vîdâd and 'the evil flyer' were originally considered as distinct demons.

his hand strokes a man *it is* lethargy, when he casts *it* on the sick *one it is* fever, when he looks in his eyes he drives away the life, and they call it death. 36. The demon of the malignant eye (sûr-*k*ashmîh) is he who will spoil anything which men see, *when* they do not say 'in the name of God' (yazdân).

37. With every one of them are many demons *and* fiends co-operating, to specify whom a second time *would be* tedious; demons, too, who are furies (khashmakân), are in great multitude it is said. 38. They are demons of ruin, pain, and growing old (zvârân), producers of vexation and bile, revivers of grief (nîvagîh), the progeny of gloom, and bringers of stench, decay, and vileness, who are many, very numerous, and very notorious; and a portion of all of them is mingled in the bodies of men, *and their* characteristics are glaring in mankind.

39. The demon Apâôsh [1] and the demon Aspengargâk [2] are those who remain in contest with the rain. 40. Of the evil spirit [3] are the law of vileness, the religion of sorcery, the weapons of fiendishness, and the perversion (khâmîh) of God's works; and

[1] Av. Apaosha of Tistar Yt. 21, 22, 27, 28, Âstâd Yt. 2, 6; see also Chap. VII, 8, 10, 12.

[2] Here written Aspengarôgâ, but see Chaps. VII, 12, XVII, 1. He is the Av. Spengaghra of Vend. XIX, 135, and, being a demon, is not to be confounded with the demon-worshipper, Spiṇgauruska, of Gôs Yt. 31, Ashi Yt. 51.

[3] The 'evil spirit,' Ganrâk-maînôk, seems to be here treated as a demon distinct from Aharman, which is inconsistent with what is stated in §§ 1–6, and is contrary to general opinion. This inconsistency would indicate the possibility of this continuation of Chap. XXVIII in TD, or a portion of it, having been added by an editor in later times (although it is difficult to discover any difference of style in the language), if we did not find a similar confusion of the two names in Chap. XXX, 29, 30.

his wish is this, that is: 'Do not ask *about* me, and do not understand me! for if ye ask *about* and understand me, ye *will* not come after me[1].' 41. This, too, it says, that the evil spirit remains at the distance of a cry, even at the cry of a three-year-old cock (kûlêng), even at the cry of an ass, even at the cry of a righteous man when *one* strikes *him* involuntarily *and* he utters a cry[2]. 42. The demon Kûndak[3] is he who is the steed (bârak) of wizards.

43. Various new demons *arise* from the various new sins the creatures may commit, *and* are produced for such *purposes;* who make even those planets rush *on* which are in the *celestial* sphere, *and* they stand very numerously in the conflict. 44. Their ringleaders (kamârikân) are those seven *planets*, the head and tail of Gôkihar, and Mûspar[4]

[1] Compare Mkh. XL, 24–28: 'The one wish that Hôrmezd, the lord, desires from men is this, that "ye shall understand me (Hôrmezd), since every one who shall understand me comes after me, and strives for my satisfaction." And the one wish that Aharman desires from men is this, that "ye shall not understand me (Aharman), since whoever shall understand me wicked, *his* actions proceed not after me, and, moreover, no advantage and friendship come to me from that man."'

[2] The sentence is rather obscure, but it seems to imply that such cries keep the evil spirit at a distance; it is, however, just possible that it means that the cry of the evil spirit can be heard as far as such cries.

[3] Av. Kunda of Vend. XI, 28, 36, XIX, 138.

[4] TD has Gôk-*k*ihar and Mûs-parîk here, but see Chap. V, 1, where these beings are included among the seven planetary leaders, and not counted in addition to them. This is another inconsistency which leads to the suspicion that this continuation of the chapter may have been written by a later hand. According to this later view, the sun and moon must be included among those malevolent orbs, the planets.

provided with a tail, *which* are ten. 45. And by them these ten worldly creations, *that* is, the sky, water, earth, vegetation, animals, metals, wind, light, fire, and mankind, are corrupted with all this vileness; and from them calamity, captivity, disease, death, and other evils and corruptions ever come to water, vegetation, and the other creations which exist *in* the world, owing to the fiendishness of those ten. 46. They whom I *have* enumerated are *furnished* with the assistance and crafty (afzâr-hômand) nature of Aharman.

47. Regarding the cold, dry, stony, and dark interior of mysterious (târîk dên afrâg-pêdâk) hell it says, that the darkness is fit to grasp with the hand[1], and the stench is fit to cut with a knife; and if they inflict the punishment of a thousand men within a single span, they (the men) think in this *way*, that they are alone; *and* the loneliness is worse than its punishment[2]. 48. And its connection (band) is with the seven planets, be it through much cold like Saturn[3] (Kêvân), be it through much heat like Aharman; and their food is brimstone (gandak), and of succulents the lizard (vazagh); *and* other evil *and* wretchedness (patyâh).]

[1] Compare Mkh. VII, 31: 'and always their darkness is such-like as though it be possible to grasp with the hand.'

[2] Compare Ardâ-Virâf-nâmak (LIV, 5–8): '*As close* as the ear to the eye, and as many as the hairs on the mane of a horse, so *close and* many in number, the souls of the wicked stand, but they see not, and hear no sound, one from the other; every one thinks thus, "I am alone."'

[3] Or, 'with more cold than Saturn.'

CHAPTER XXIX[1].

1. On [the *spiritual* chieftainship[2] of the regions *of the earth*] it says in revelation, that every one of those six chieftainships[3] has one *spiritual* chief; as the chief of Arzah is Ashâshagahad-ê *Hvandk*ân[4], the chief of Savah is Hoazarôdathhri-hanâ Parêstyarô[5], the chief of Fradadafsh is Spitôid-i Aûspôsinân[6], [the chief of Vidadafsh is Aîriz-râsp Aûspôsinân[7],] the chief of Vôrûbarst is Huvâsp[8], the chief of Vôrûgarst is *K*'akhravâk[9]. 2. Zaratûst is

[1] For this chapter, which is numbered XXX by previous translators, we have to depend only on K20 and TD (see the note on the heading of Chap. XXVIII); and the words enclosed in brackets are supplied from TD, being either illegible or omitted in K20.

[2] Perhaps 'patriarchate' or 'episcopate' would be a better translation of radîh, and 'patriarch' or 'bishop' of rad, in this chapter, as the chief high-priest (dastûr-i dastûrân) and his office are evidently meant by these words.

[3] Of the six other regions, distinct from this one of Khvanîras, see Chap. XI, 2–4.

[4] TD has Ashashâg,had-ê aîgh Nêvandân; both MSS. giving these names in a barbarous Pâzand form which cannot be relied on. Perhaps this Dastûr is the Av. Ashâvanghu Bivandangha of Fravardîn Yt. 110.

[5] TD has Hôazarôkakhhr-hanâ Parêstyrô, all in Pâzand in both MSS., except Huz. hanâ, which stands for Pâz. ê, here used for the idhâfat i. Perhaps this Dastûr is the Av. Garô-danghu Pairistîra of Fravardîn Yt. 110.

[6] So in TD; K20 has Pâz. Spaitanid-i Huspâsnyân. This Dastûr is, no doubt, the Av. (gen.) Spitôis Uspâsnaos of Fravardîn Yt. 121.

[7] Omitted in K20, but, no doubt, this Dastûr is the Av. Erezrâspa Uspâsnu of Fravardîn Yt. 121.

[8] Av. Hvaspa of Fravardîn Yt. 122.

[9] So in both MSS. As in the case of each of the preceding two pair of regions, two consecutive names of Dastûrs have been taken from the Fravardîn Yast, it may be supposed that the names

spiritual chief of the region of Khvanîras, and also of all the regions; *he is* chief of the world of the righteous, *and* it is said that the whole religion was received by them from Zaratûst[1].

3. In the region of Khvanîras are many places, from which, in this evil time of violent struggling with the adversary, a passage (vidarg) is constructed by the power of the spiritual world (maînôkîh), *and one* calls *them* the beaten tracks[2] of Khvanîras.

4. Counterparts of those other regions[3] are *such places* as Kangdez, the land of Saukavastân, the plain of the Arabs (Tâzîkân), the plain of Pêsyânsaî, the river Nâîvtâk[4], Aîrân-vêg, the enclosure (var) formed by Yim, *and* Kasmîr in India[5]. 5. And one immortal chief acts in the government of *each*

---

taken for this third pair of regions will also be consecutive, and this Dastûr must, therefore, be identified with the Av. Kathwaraspa of Fravardîn Yt. 122.

[1] TD has 'Zaratûst is chief of this region of Khvanîras, and also of the whole world of the righteous; all chieftainship, also, is from Zaratûst, so that the whole religion,' &c.

[2] Justi has 'zones, climates;' but transcribing Pâz. habâvanhâ back into Pahlavi we have a word which may be read khabânŏhâ, pl. of khabân, 'a trampling-place' (comp. Pers. khabîdan). TD has khvabîsnŏ-gâs, which has the same meaning.

[3] Meaning, probably, that they resemble the six smaller regions in being isolated and difficult of access; in other words, either mythical, or independent of Iranian rule.

[4] So in TD, which also omits the second, third, and fourth of these isolated territories. In K20 we might read rad va khûdâk, 'chief and lord,' as an epithet of Aîrân-vêg. This river must be the Nâhvtâk of Chap. XXI, 6.

[5] Reading Kasmîr-i andar Hindû, but TD has Kasmîr-i andarûnŏ; perhaps the last word was originally anîrânak, in which case we should read 'the non-Iranian Kasmîr.'

of them; as it says, that Pêshyôtanû[1] *son* of Vistâsp, whom they call *K*itrô-mainô[2], is in the country of Kangdez[3]; Aghrêra*d*[4] *son* of Pashang is in the land of Sa*u*kavastân[5], and they call him Gôpatshah[6]; Par*s*adgâ[7] *Hv*embya is in the plain of

[1] The Av. Peshôtanu of Vishtâsp Yt. 4, where he is described as free from disease and death. TD has Pêshyôk-tanû. See also Chaps. XXXI, 29, XXXII, 5.

[2] TD has *K*îtrô-mâônô, and it may be doubted whether the latter portion of the name be derived from Av. mainyu, 'spirit,' or m*a*unghô, 'moon.' The Dâ*d*istân-i Dînîk (Reply 89) calls him 'Patshâyôtanû who is called from the *K*îtrôk-mâhanô (or mîyânô),' the *K*atru-mîyân river of Chap. XX, 7, 31.

[3] See § 10. TD has Kangdez-i bâmîk, 'Kangdez the splendid.'

[4] The Av. Aghraêratha Narava of Gô*s* Yt. 18, 22, Fravardîn Yt. 131, Ashi Yt. 38, Zamyâd Yt. 77; he is Aghrîrath, brother of Afrâsiyâb, in the Shâhnâmah; see also Chap. XXXI, 15.

[5] TD has Pahl. Sakîkstân here, but Sôkapastân in § 13 (the letters îk and p being often much alike in Pahlavi writing). K20 has Pâz. Sâvkavatân, Sa*u*kâvasta, and Sâvkavastân.

[6] TD has Gôpat-malkâ, 'king of Gôpat;' and Dâ*d*. (Reply 89) states that 'the reign of Gôpatshah is over the country of Gôpatô, coterminous with Aîrân-vê*g*, on the bank of the water of the Dâîtîk; *and* he keeps watch over the ox Hadhaya*s*, on whom occurred the various emigrations of men of old.' Mkh. (LXII, 31–36) says, 'Gôpatshâh remains in Aîrân-vê*g*, within the region of Khvanîras; from foot to mid-body *he is* a bull, and from mid-body to top *he is* a man; at all times he stays on the sea-shore, and always performs the worship of God, and always pours holy-water into the sea; through the pouring of that holy-water innumerable noxious creatures in the sea will die; for if he should not mostly perform that ceremonial, and should not pour that holy-water into the sea, and those innumerable noxious creatures should not perish, then always when rain falls the noxious creatures would fall like rain.' In Chap. XXXI, 20, he is said to be a son of Aghrêra*d*.

[7] So in K20; and Av. Parsha*dga*u occurs in Fravardîn Yt. 96, 127; but TD has Fradakhstar Khûmbîkân, and Dâ*d*. (Reply 89) mentions 'Fradhakhstô son of Khûmbîkân' as one of the seven

Pêšyânsaî[1], *and he* is *Hv*embya for this reason, because they brought *him* up in a *hv*emb ('jar') for fear of Khashm ('Wrath'); [Asâm-i[2] Yamâhušt is in the place which they call the River Nâîvtâk]; the tree opposed to harm[3] is in Aîrân-vêǧ; Urvatadnar[4] *son* of Zaratûšt is in the enclosure formed by Yim. 6. Regarding them it says, they are *those* who are immortal, as are Narsih[5] *son* of Vîvanghâû, Tûs[6] *son* of Nôdar[7], Gîw[8] *son* of Gûdarz, Ibairaz[9] the causer of strife, *and* Ashavazd son of Pourudhâkhšt[10]; and they will all[11] come forth, to the

immortal lords of Khvanîras, which name corresponds with the Av. Fradhâkhšti Khunbya of Fravardîn Yt. 138.

[1] TD has always Pahl. Pêšânsih. No doubt the Pišîn valley is meant (see § 11).

[2] Or it may be read Aêshm-i. This phrase occurs only in TD, but Dâd. (Reply 89) mentions 'the Avesta Yakhmâyîšad, son of the same Fryânô,' as one of the seven immortal lords of Khvanîras.

[3] See Chap. XXVII, 2.

[4] See Chap. XXXII, 5.

[5] Or Narsâe in TD; K20 has Pâz. Narêî, but see Chap. XXXI, 3, 5.

[6] Av. Tusa of Âbân Yt. 53, 58, and an Iranian warrior in the Shâhnâmah.

[7] Av. Naotara, whose descendants are mentioned in Âbân Yt. 76, 98, Fravardîn Yt. 102, Râm Yt. 35.

[8] Av. Gaêvani of Fravardîn Yt. 115 is something like this name of one of the Iranian warriors in the Shâhnâmah.

[9] TD has Pâz. Bairazd. Perhaps it is not a name, but a Pâzand corruption of Pahl. aêvarz, 'warrior, trooper' (traditionally); in which case we should have to read 'the warrior who was a causer of strife.'

[10] So in TD; K20 has 'Ashavand son of Porudakhšt,' and Dâd. (Reply 89) mentions 'Ashavazang son of Pôrûdakhstôîh' as one of the seven immortal lords of Khvanîras. He is the Av. 'Ashavazdangh the Pourudhâkhštiyan' of Âbân Yt. 72, Fravardîn Yt. 112.

[11] So in TD, but K20 has 'always.'

assistance of Sôshyans, on the production of the renovation *of the universe.*

7. Regarding Sâm[1] it says, that he became immortal, *but* owing to his disregard of the Mazdayasnian religion, a Tûrk whom they call Nihâg[2] wounded *him* with an arrow, when he was asleep there, in the plain of Pêsyânsaî; and it had brought upon him the unnatural lethargy (bûshasp) *which* overcame *him in* the midst of the heat[3]. 8. And the glory (far) of heaven stands over him[4] for the purpose that, when Az-i Dahâk[5] becomes unfettered (arazak), he may arise and slay him; and a myriad guardian spirits of the righteous are as a protection to him. 9. Of Dahâk, whom they call Bêvarâsp, this, too, it says, that Frêdûn when he captured Dahâk was not able to kill *him*, and afterwards confined him in Mount Dimâvand[6]; when he becomes unfettered, Sâm arises, and smites and slays him.

10. As to Kangdez, *it is* in the direction of the east, at many leagues from the bed (var)[7] of the

[1] This is not Sâm the grandfather of Rustam, but the Av. Sâma, who appears to have been an ancestor of Keresâspa (see Yas. IX, 30), called *S*am, grandfather of Garsâsp, in a passage interpolated in some copies of the Shâhnâmah (compare Chap. XXXI, 26, 27). Here, however, it appears from the Bahman Yast (III, 59, 60) that Keresâspa himself is meant, he being called Sâma Keresâspa in Fravardîn Yt. 61, 136.

[2] It can also be read Nihâv or Nîyâg in K20, and Nihâv or Nihân in TD.

[3] TD has '*as* he lay *in* the midst of the heat.'

[4] TD has 'and the snow (vafar) has settled (nishast) over him.'

[5] See Chaps. XXXI, 6, XXXIV, 5.

[6] See Chap. XII, 31.

[7] TD has agvar, 'above,' instead of min var, 'from the bed.'

wide-formed ocean towards that side. 11. The plain of Pêsyânsaî is in Kâvulistân, as it says, that the most remarkable upland (bâlist) in Kâvulistân is where Pêsyânsaî is; there it is hotter, on the more lofty elevations there is no heat[1]. 12. Aîrân-vêg is in the direction of Âtarô-pâtakân[2]. 13. The land of Saukavastân is on the way from Tûrkistân to Kînistân, in the direction of the north. 14. [The enclosure][3] formed by Yim is *in* the middle of Pârs, in Sruvâ[4]; thus, they say, that *what* Yim formed (Yim-kard) is below Mount Yimakân[5]. 15. Kasmîr is in Hindûstân.

Chapter XXX[6].

1. On the nature of the resurrection and future existence it says in revelation, that, whereas Mâshya and Mâshyôî, who grew up from the earth[7], first fed upon water, then plants, then milk, *and* then meat, men also, when their time of death *has* come, first desist from eating meat, then milk, then from

[1] Or, 'the hottest there, through the very lofty elevation, is not heat.'

[2] Pers. Âdarbîgân.

[3] The word var is omitted in K20.

[4] TD has Pahl. Srûbâk.

[5] Or it may be read Damakân, but TD has Kamakân. It can hardly be Dâmaghân, as that is a town and district in Khurâsân; Justi also suggests the district of Gamagân in Pârs, and thinks Sruvâ means 'cypress wood,' there being a Salvastân between Shîrâz and Fasâ.

[6] This chapter is found in all MSS., and has been numbered XXXI by former translators.

[7] See Chaps. XV, 2–16, XXXIV, 3.

bread, till when[1] they shall die they always feed upon water. 2. So, likewise, in the millennium of Hûshêdar-mâh[2], the strength of appetite (âz) will thus diminish, when men *will* remain three days and nights in superabundance (sîrîh) through one taste of consecrated food. 3. Then they will desist from meat food, *and* eat vegetables *and* milk; afterwards, they abstain from milk food *and* abstain from vegetable food, *and* are feeding on water; *and* for ten years before Sôshyans[3] comes they remain without food, *and* do not die.

4. After Sôshyans *comes* they prepare the raising of the dead, as it says, that Zaratûst asked of Aûharmazd thus: 'Whence does a body form again, which the wind *has* carried *and* the water conveyed (vazîd)[4]? *and* how does the resurrection occur?' 5. Aûharmazd answered thus: 'When through me the sky *arose* from the substance of the ruby[5], without columns, on the spiritual support of far-compassed light; when through me the earth arose, which[6] bore the material life, *and* there is no

[1] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'which' (see the note on Chap. I, 7).

[2] Written Khûrshêdar-mâh, or Khûrshêd-mâh, in the Bundahis; see Chap. XXXII, 8, and Bahman Yt. III, 52, 53.

[3] See Chaps. XI, 6, XXXII, 8, Bahman Yt. III, 62.

[4] Compare (Vend. V, 26) 'the water carries *him* up, the water carries *him* down, the water casts *him* away.'

[5] Compare Mkh. IX, 7.

[6] All MSS. have min, 'out of,' but translators generally suppose it should be mûn, 'which,' as the meaning of 'brought out of material life' is by no means clear. Perhaps the two phrases might be construed together, thus: 'there is no *other* maintainer of the worldly creation, brought from the material life, than it.' Windischmann refers to Fravardîn Yt. 9.

maintainer of the worldly creation but it; when by me the sun and moon *and* stars are conducted in the firmament (andarvâî) of luminous bodies; when by me corn was created so that, scattered about in the earth, it grew again *and* returned with increase; when by me colour [1] of various kinds was created in plants; when by me fire was created in plants *and* other things [2] without combustion; when *by me* a son was created *and* fashioned [3] in the womb of a mother, *and* the structure (pîsak) severally of the skin, nails, blood, feet, eyes, ears, and other things was produced; when by me legs were created for the water, so that it flows away, *and* the cloud was created which carries the water of the world *and* rains there where it has a purpose; when by me the air was created which conveys *in one's* eyesight, through the strength of the wind, the lowermost upwards according to *its* will, *and one* is not able to grasp *it* with the hand out-stretched; each one of them, when created by me, was herein more difficult than causing the resurrection, for [4] *it is* an assistance to me in the resurrection that they exist, *but* when they were formed it was not *forming* the future out of the past [5]. 6. Observe that when that which was not was then produced, why is it not possible to

[1] Former translators all read rag, 'vein, pore;' but it probably stands for rang, 'colour, dye,' as in Chap. XXVII, 5, 18.

[2] See Chap. XVII, 1, 2.

[3] Pâz. srahtîd is evidently a misreading of Pahl. srîstîd, 'formed, shaped.' Windischmann compares Fravardîn Yt. 11, 22, 28.

[4] Here *k*îm is the Pâzand of Huz. mamanam, 'for to me;' being a different word from the interrogative *k*îm, 'why?' of the next §.

[5] Literally, '*what* becomes out of *what* was.'

produce again that which was? for at that time *one will* demand the bone from the spirit of earth, the blood from the water, the hair from the plants, *and* the life from fire, since *they* were delivered to them in the original creation.'

7. First, the bones of Gâyômar*d* are roused up, then those of Mâshya *and* Mâshyôi, then those of the rest of mankind; in the fifty-seven years *of* Sôshyans[1] they prepare all the dead, *and* all men stand up; whoever is righteous *and* whoever is wicked, every human creature, they rouse up from the spot where its life departs. 8. Afterwards, when all material living beings assume again their bodies *and* forms, then they assign (barâ yehabûnd) them a single class[2]. 9. Of the light accompanying (levatman) the sun, one half will *be* for Gâyômar*d*, and one half will give enlightenment among the rest of men, so that the soul *and* body will know that this is my father, and this is my mother, and this is my brother, and this is my wife, and these are some other of my nearest relations.

10. Then is the assembly of the Sa*d*vâstarâr[3], where all mankind will stand at this time; in that assembly every one sees his own good deeds and his own evil deeds; *and* then, in that assembly, a wicked *man* becomes as conspicuous as a white sheep among those which are black. 11. In that

[1] K20 omits 'Sôshyans.'

[2] The phrase is obscure, and K20 omits the numeral 'one' (the idhâfat of unity); but the meaning is probably that all former distinctions of class, or caste, are abolished.

[3] Windischmann suggests that it may be 'the assembly of Isa*d*-vâstar,' the eldest son of Zaratûst (see Chap. XXXII, 5); perhaps supposed to be presided over by him as the first supreme high-priest after Zaratûst's death.

assembly whatever righteous *man* was friend of a wicked *one* in the world, *and* the wicked *man* complains of him who is righteous, thus: 'Why did he not make me acquainted, when in the world, with the good deeds which he practised himself?' if he who is righteous did not inform him, then it is necessary for him to suffer shame accordingly in that assembly[1].

12. Afterwards, they set the righteous *man* apart from the wicked; *and* then the righteous is for heaven (garôdmân), and they cast the wicked back to hell. 13. Three days *and* nights they inflict punishment bodily in hell, *and* then he beholds bodily those three days' happiness in heaven[2]. 14. As it says that, on the day when the righteous *man* is parted from the wicked, the tears of every one, thereupon, run down unto *his* legs. 15. When, after they set apart a father from his consort (hambâz), a brother from his brother, and a friend from

[1] In the Ardâ-Vîrâf-namak (Chap. LXVIII) it is related that Ardâ-Vîrâf saw the souls of a husband and wife, that of the husband destined for heaven, and that of the wife for hell; but the wife clung to her husband and asked why they should be separated, and he told her it was on account of her neglect of religious duties; whereupon she reproached him for not teaching and chastising her. 'And, afterwards, the man went to heaven and the woman to hell. And owing to the repentance of that woman she was in no other affliction in hell but darkness and stench. And that man sat in the midst of the righteous of heaven in shame, from not converting and not teaching the woman, who might have become virtuous in his keeping.'

[2] As an aggravation of his punishment in hell. It has generally been supposed that this last phrase refers to the reward of the righteous man, but this cannot be the case unless akhar be taken in the sense of 'other,' which is unlikely; besides, beholding the happiness of others would be no reward to an Oriental mind.

his friend, they suffer, every one for his own deeds, *and* weep, the righteous for the wicked, and the wicked about himself; for there may be a father who is righteous *and* a son wicked, *and* there may be one brother who is righteous *and* one wicked. 16. Those for whose peculiar deeds it is appointed, such as Dahâk and Frâsîyâv of Tûr, *and* others of this sort, as those deserving death (marg-argânân), undergo a punishment no other men undergo; they call *it* 'the punishment of the three nights[1].'

17. Among his producers of the renovation *of the universe*, those righteous men of whom it is written[2] that they are living, fifteen men and fifteen damsels, will come to the assistance of Sôshyans. 18. As Gôkîhar[3] falls in the *celestial* sphere from a moon-beam on to the earth, the distress of the earth becomes such-like as *that of* a sheep when a wolf falls *upon it*. 19. Afterwards, the fire and halo[4] melt the metal of Shatvaîrô, in the hills *and* mountains, *and* it remains on this earth like a river.

[1] According to the Pahlavi Vend. VII, 136 (p. 96, Sp.) it appears that a person who has committed a marg-argân or mortal sin, without performing patît or renunciation of sin thereafter, remains in hell till the future existence, when he is brought out, beheaded three times for each mortal sin unrepented of, and then cast back into hell to undergo the punishment tishrãm khshafnãm ('of the three nights') before he becomes righteous; some say, however, that this punishment is not inflicted for a single mortal sin. This period of three nights' punishment is quite a different matter from the three nights' hovering of the soul about the body after death.

[2] See Chap. XXIX, 5, 6. As the text stands in the MSS. it is uncertain whether the fifteen men and fifteen damsels are a portion of these righteous immortals, or an addition to them.

[3] Probably a meteor (see Chap. V, 1).

[4] Reading khîrman; M6 has 'the fire and angel Aîrman (Av. Airyaman) melt the metal in the hills,' &c.

20. Then all men will pass into that melted metal and will become pure; when *one* is righteous, then it seems to him just as though he walks continually in warm milk; *but* when wicked, then it seems to him in such manner as though, in the world, he walks continually in melted metal.

21. Afterwards, with the greatest affection, all men come together, father and son and brother and friend ask one another thus: 'Where has it[1] been these many years, and what was the judgment upon thy soul? hast thou been righteous or wicked?' 22. The first soul the body sees, it enquires of it with those words (gûft). 23. All men become of one voice *and* administer loud praise to Aûharmazd and the archangels.

24. Aûharmazd completes *his work* at that time, *and* the creatures become so that it is not necessary to make any effort about them; *and* among those by whom the dead are prepared, it is not necessary *that* any effort be made. 25. Sôshyans, with his assistants, performs a Yazisn *ceremony* in preparing the dead, *and* they slaughter the ox Hadhayôs[2] in that Yazisn; from the fat of that ox and the white Hôm[3] they prepare Hûsh, *and* give *it* to all men, and all men become immortal for ever *and* everlasting. 26. This, too, it says, that whoever has been the size of a man, they restore him then with an age of forty years; they who have been little *when* not dead, they restore then with an age of fifteen years; and they give every one *his* wife, and

[1] K20 has 'have I;' probably hômanîh, 'hast thou,' was the original reading.

[2] See Chap. XIX, 13.

[3] See Chap. XXVII, 4.

show *him his* children with the wife; so they act as now in the world, but there is no begetting of children.

27. Afterwards, Sôshyans *and his assistants*, by order of the creator Aûharmazd, give every man the reward and recompense suitable to *his* deeds; this is even the righteous existence (aît) where it is said that they convey *him* to paradise (vahist), and the heaven (garô*d*mân) of Aûharmazd takes up the body (kerp) as itself requires; with that assistance he continually advances for ever *and* everlasting. 28. This, too, it says, that whoever has performed no worship (yast), and has ordered no Gêtî-kharî*d*[1], and has bestowed no clothes as a righteous gift, is naked there; and he performs the worship (yast) of Aûharmazd, and the heavenly angels[2] provide him the use of his clothing.

[1] The Sad-dar Bundahis says that by Gêtî-kharî*d* 'heaven is purchased in the world, and one's own place brought to hand in heaven.' The Rivâyat of Dastûr Barzû (as quoted in MS. 29 of Bombay University Parsi Collection) gives the following details in Persian: 'To celebrate Gêtî-kharîd it is necessary that two hêrbads (priests) perform the Nâbar, and with each khshnûman which they pray it is fit and necessary that both hêrbads have had the Nâbar; and the first day they recite the Nônâbar yast, and consecrate the Nônâbar drôn and the Nônâbar âfrîngân which they recite in each Gâh; in the Hâvan Gâh it is necessary to recite fravarânê (as in Yas. III, 24 W. to end), ahurahê mazda*u* raêvatô (as in Aûharmazd Yt. 0, to) frasastayaêča, then Yas. III, 25 W., XVII, 1–55 Sp., ashem vohû thrice, âfrînâmi khshathryãn (as in Âfrîngân I, 14, to end). The second day the Srôsh yast and Srôsh drôn and âfrîngân are to be recited; and the third day it is necessary to recite the Sîrôzah yast, the Sîrôzah drôn and âfrîngân dahmân; and it is needful to recite the second and third âfrîngâns in each Gâh, and each day to consecrate the barsom and drôn afresh with seven twigs, so that it may not be ineffective.'

[2] Pâz. gehân is probably a misreading of Pahl. yazdân, as

29. Afterwards, Aûharmazd seizes on[1] the evil spirit, Vohûman *on* Akôman[2], Ashavahi*s*t *on* Andar[3], Shatvaîrô *on* Sâvar, Spendarma*d* *on* Tarômat who is Nâûnghas[4], Horvada*d* *and* Amerôda*d* *on* Tâîrê*v* *and* Zâîrî*k*[5], true-speaking *on* what is evil-speaking, Srôsh[6] *on* Aeshm[7]. 30. Then two fiends remain at large, Aharman[8] and Â*z*[9]; Aûharmazd comes to the world, himself the Zôta and Srôsh the Râspî[10], and holds the Kûstî in *his* hand;

neither 'the spirit of the world,' nor 'the spirit of the Gâhs' is a likely phrase. It is possible, however, that maînôk gehân is a misreading of min aîvyahân, 'from the girdle,' and we should translate as follows: 'and out of its girdle (that is, the kûstî of the barsom used in the ceremony) he produces the effect of his clothing.'

[1] Instead of vakhdûnd, 'seize on,' we should probably read vânend, 'smite,' as in the parallel passages mentioned below.

[2] Compare Zamyâd Yt. 96. Each archangel (see Chap. I, 25, 26) here seizes the arch-fiend (see Chaps. I, 27, XXVIII, 7–12) who is his special opponent.

[3] Here written Pâz. Inder. Compare Pahlavi Yas. XLVII, 1: 'When among the creation, in the future existence, righteousness smites the fiend, Ashavahi*s*t *smites* Indar.'

[4] Written Nâkahê*d* in Chap. I, 27, and Nâîkîyas in Chap. XXVIII, 10, where he is described as a distinct demon from Tarômat in XXVIII, 14.

[5] Here written Târê*v* and Zârî*k*.

[6] Av. Sraosha, a personification of attentive hearing and obedience, who is said to watch over the world and defend it from the demons, especially at night; see Vend. XVIII, 48, 51, 70, &c., Yas. LVI, Srôsh Yt. Hâdôkht, &c.

[7] See Chap. XXVIII, 15–17.

[8] Comparing § 29 with § 30 it is not very clear whether the author of the Bundahi*s* considered Aharman and the evil spirit as the same or different demons; compare also Chap. XXVIII, 1–6 with 40, 41.

[9] See Chap. XXVIII, 27.

[10] The Zôta is the chief officiating priest in all ceremonies, and the Râspî is the assistant priest.

defeated by the Kûstî[1] formula the resources of the evil spirit and Âz act most impotently, *and* by the passage through which he rushed into the sky[2] he runs back to gloom *and* darkness. 31. Gôkîhar[3] burns the serpent (mâr)[4] in the melted metal, *and* the stench and pollution *which* were in hell are burned in that metal, *and* it (hell) becomes quite pure. 32. He (Aûharmazd) sets the vault[5] into which the evil spirit fled, in that metal; he brings the land of hell back for the enlargement of the world[6]; the renovation arises in the universe by *his* will, *and* the world is immortal for ever *and* everlasting.

33. This, too, it says, that this earth *becomes* an iceless[7], slopeless plain[8]; even the mountain[9],

[1] The words zak g,hâni, for ân gehâni, are probably a misreading of aîvyahân, 'the kûstî or sacred thread-girdle,' which is tied round the waist in a peculiar manner, during the recital of a particular formula, in which Aûharmazd is blessed and Aharman and the demons are cursed.

[2] See Chap. III, 10–12. [3] See § 18 and Chap. V, 1.

[4] Probably referring to Âz, which means both 'greediness' and 'serpent.' It is, however, possible to read 'Gôkîhar the serpent burns in' &c., and there can be no doubt that Gôkîhar is represented as a malevolent being.

[5] Or, perhaps, 'hiding-place.' Comparing K20 and M6 together the word seems to be alôm, which may be compared with Heb. אוּלָם 'a vault,' or Chald. אוּלְמָא 'a porch;' it may, however, be vâlôm, which may be traced to עלם 'to conceal.' In the old MSS. it is certainly not shôlman, 'hell,' which is an emendation due to the modern copy in Paris.

[6] Or, 'to the prosperity of the world.'

[7] Former translators read anhîkhar, 'undefiled,' but this does not suit the Pahlavi orthography so well as anhasâr, 'iceless' (compare Pers. hasar, khasar, or khasâr, 'ice'); cold and ice, being produced by the evil spirit, will disappear with him.

[8] Pâz. âmâvan is a misreading of Pahl. hâmûn, so the reading is ansîp (compare Pers. sîb) hâmûn. Mountains, being the work of the evil spirit, disappear with him.

[9] Kakâd-i-Dâîtîk, see Chap. XII, 7.

whose summit is the support of the *K*învar *bridge*, they keep down, *and* it *will* not exist.

Chapter XXXI[1].

0. On the race and genealogy of the Kayâns.

1. Hôshyang[2] *was son* of Fravâk, *son* of Sîyâkmak[3], *son* of Mâshya[4], *son* of Gâyômar*d*. [2. Takhmôrup[5] *was son* of Vîvanghâû[6], *son* of Yangha*d*'[7], *son of* Hôshyang. 3. Yim,][8] Takhmôrup, Spîtûr[9], *and* Narsih[10], whom they also call 'the Rashnû of *K*înŏ[11],'

[1] For this chapter, which is numbered XXXII by previous translators, we have to depend only on K20, TD, and K20b (a fragment evidently derived from the same original as K20 and M6, but through some independent line of descent).

[2] So in K20, but usually Hôshâng (see Chaps. XV, 28, XXXIV, 3, 4).

[3] See Chap. XV, 25, 30.

[4] See Chaps. XV, 2–24, 30, XXXIV, 3.

[5] Av. Takhmô-urupa of Râm Yt. 11, Zamyâd Yt. 28, Âfrîn Zarat. 2; written Tâkhmôrup in TD, which is the only MS. in which the passage enclosed in brackets is found, the omission of which by K20 was suspected by Windischmann (Zoroastriche Studien, p. 199). This king is the Tahmûras of the Shâhnâmah. See also Chaps. XVII, 4, XXXIV, 4.

[6] Av. Vîvanghau of Yas. IX, 11, 20, XXXII, 8, Vend. II, 8, 28, 94, Fravardîn Yt. 130, Zamyâd Yt. 35.

[7] As this Pâzand name or title begins with a *medial* y, its initial vowel is probably omitted (see p. 141, note 8).

[8] Av. Yima or Yima khshaêta of Vend. II, &c., the Jamshêd of the Shâhnâmah (see Chaps. XVII, 5, XXXIV, 4).

[9] Av. Spityura of Zamyâd Yt. 46.

[10] Here written Nârsî in K20 and K20b, and Nôsîh in TD; but see § 5 and Chap. XXIX, 6. Windischmann suggests that he may be the Av. Aoshnara pouru-gîra of Fravardîn Yt. 131, Âf. Zarat. 2.

[11] An epithet equivalent to 'the Minos of China;' Rashnû being the angel of justice, who is said to weigh the meritorious deeds of

were all brothers. 4. From Yim and Yimak [1], who was *his* sister, was born a pair, man *and* woman, and they became husband *and* wife together; Mîrak the Âspiyân [2] and Zîyânak Zardâhim were *their* names, *and* the lineage went on. 5. Spitûr was he who, with Dahâk, cut up Yim [3]; Narsih [4] lived then [5] also, *whom* they call Nêsr-gyâvân [6]; they say that such destiny (gadman) is allotted to him [7], that he shall pass every day in troubles, and shall make all food purified *and* pure.

6. Dahâk [8] *was son* of Khrûtâsp, *son* of Zâînigâv,

---

the departed soul against its sins. Neither word is, however, quite certain, as rashnûk may stand for rasnîk, 'spear,' and has also been translated by 'light' and 'hero;' Âînŏ, moreover, was probably not China, but Samarkand (see Chaps. XII, 13, 22, XV, 29).

[1] See Chap. XXIII, 1.

[2] Av. Âthwyâna of Âbân Yt. 33, Gôs Yt. 13, Fravardîn Yt. 131, Zamyâd Yt. 36, &c., where it is the family name of Thraêtaona, who is said to be a son of Âthwya in Yas. IX, 23, 24. In the text this name seems to be used rather as a title than a patronymic, and in § 7 it appears to be a family surname.

[3] As stated in Zamyâd Yt. 46.

[4] Here written Nârsak in K20 and K20b, and Nôsîh in TD.

[5] TD has 'together,' instead of 'then.'

[6] So in K20, but K20b has Narst-gyâvân, and TD has Nôsîh-vîyâvânîk (or nîyâzânîk). Perhaps we may assume the epithet to have been nîgîr-vîyâvânîk (or nîyâzânîk), 'one with a bewildering (or longing) glance.'

[7] Justi supposes this clause of the sentence refers to Yim and the disease which attacked his hand. If this be the case it may be translated as follows: 'they say aîghash is produced on his hand (yadman), so that,' &c.; aîghash being a disease, or evil, mentioned in Vend. XX, 14, 20, 24; compare Chap. XXVIII, 33.

[8] Or Az-i Dahâk, the Av. Azi Dahâka, 'destructive serpent,' of Yas. IX, 25, Vend. I, 69, Âbân Yt. 29, 34, Bahrâm Yt. 40, Zamyâd Yt. 46–50. A name applied to a foreign dynasty (probably Semitic) personified as a single king, which conquered the dominions of Yim (see Chap. XXXIV, 5).

son of Virafsang, *son* of Tâz, *son* of Fravâk, *son* of Sîyâkmak[1]; by *his* mother Dahâk *was* of Udaî[2], *son* of Bayak, *son* of Tambayak, *son* of Owokhm[3], *son* of Pairi-urvaêsm[4], *son* of Gadhwithw[5], *son* of Drûgâskân[6], *son* of the evil spirit.

7. Frêdûn the Âspiyân[7] *was son of* Pûr-tôrâ[8] the Âspiyân, *son* of Sôk-tôrâ[9] the Âspiyân, *son* of Bôr-tôrâ the Âspiyân, *son* of Sîyâk-tôrâ the Âspiyân, *son* of Spêd-tôrâ the Âspiyân, *son* of Gefar-tôrâ the Âspiyân, *son* of Ramak-tôrâ the Âspiyân, *son* of

[1] For the last three names, see Chap. XV, 25, 28.

[2] Pahl. Aûd in TD; compare 'the demon Uda' of Chap. XXVIII, 19. The following two names look like 'fear' and 'gloom-fear,' both appropriate names for demons.

[3] TD has Pâz. Owôikh; compare Av. aoiwra, 'a species of nightmare,' observing that r and ô are often written alike in Pahlavi.

[4] TD and K20b have Pâz. Pairi-urva-urvaêsm, and K20 has Pai-urvaêsm.

[5] TD has Pâz. Gawithw.

[6] So in TD, but K20 has Pâz. Drus-i ayaskâ, and K20b has Drug-i ayaskâ. It corresponds to Av. drugaska in Vend. XIX, 139, Vistâsp Yt. 26. This genealogy appears to trace Dahâk's maternal descent through a series of demons.

[7] Av. Thraêtaona, son of Âthwya, but generally called 'the Âthwyânian,' who slew the destructive serpent (azi dahâka), see Yas. IX, 24, 25, Vend. I, 69, Âbân Yt. 33, 61, Gôs Yt. 13, Fravardîn Yt. 131, Bahrâm Yt. 40, Râm Yt. 23, Ashi Yt. 33, Zamyâd Yt. 36, 92, Âf. Zarat. 2. In the Shâhnâmah he is called Ferîdûn son of Abtîn.

[8] This name is omitted in K20, but occurs in the other two MSS.; it is a Huzvâris hybrid equivalent to Pâz. Pûr-gau and Av. Pouru-gau, which is a title of an Âthwyânian in Âf. Zarat. 4, Vistâsp Yt. 2. This genealogy consists almost entirely of such hybrid names, which have a very artificial appearance, though suitable enough for a race of herdsmen, meaning, as they severally do, 'one with abundant oxen, with useful oxen, with the brown ox, with the black ox, with the white ox, with the fat ox, and with a herd of oxen.'

[9] So in TD, but the other two MSS. have Sîyâk-tôrâ, which is probably wrong, as the same name occurs again in this genealogy.

Vanfraghesn[1] the Âspiyân, *son* of Yim, *son* of Vîvanghâû; as these, apart from the Âspiyân Pûr-tôrâ, were ten generations, they every one lived a hundred years, which becomes one thousand years; those thousand years were the evil reign of Dahâk. 8. By the Âspiyân Pûr-tôrâ was begotten Frêdûn, who exacted vengeance for Yim; together *with him*[2] also were the sons Barmâyûn *and* Katâyûn, *but* Frêdûn was fuller of glory than they.

9. By Frêdûn three sons were begotten, Salm and Tûg and Aîrîk[3]; and by Aîrîk one son *and* one pair[4] were begotten; the names of the couple of sons were Vânîdâr *and* Anastokh[5], *and* the name of the daughter was Gûzak[6]. 10. Salm *and* Tûg slew *them* all, Aîrîk and *his* happy sons, *but* Frêdûn kept the daughter in concealment, *and* from that daughter a daughter was born[7]; they became aware *of it*, and the mother was slain by them. 11. Frêdûn provided for the daughter[8], also in concealment, for

[1] In TD this name can be read Vanfrôkisn or Vanfrôkgân.

[2] TD has 'as well as *him*.' K20b omits most of this sentence by mistake.

[3] These sons, as Windischmann observes, are not mentioned in the extant Avesta, but their Avesta names, Sairima, Tûirya or Tûra, and Airya or Airyu, may be gathered from the names of the countries over which they are supposed to have ruled (see Fravardîn Yt. 143).

[4] TD has 'two sons *and* one daughter.'

[5] TD has Anîdâr and Anastabŏ.

[6] Or Gûgak, in TD; the other MSS. have Pâz. Ganga here, but Guzak in § 14; it is identical with the name of Hôshyang's sister and wife in Chap. XV, 28. In the Pâzand Gâmâsp-nâmah the name of Frêdûn's grand daughter is written Vîrak.

[7] Reading min zak dûkht dûkht-ı zâd, as in K20b and TD; some uncertainty arises here from the words dûkht, 'daughter,' and dvâd, 'pair,' being written alike in Pahlavi.

[8] TD has bartman, 'daughter,' indicating that the word in K20 must be read dûkht, and not dvâd, 'pair.'

ten generations, when Mânûs-i Khûrshêd-vînîk was born from *his* mother, [*so called* because, as he was born, *some* of][1] the light of the sun (khûrshêd) fell upon *his* nose (vînîk). 12. From Mânûs-i Khûrshêd-vînîk *and his* sister[2] was Mânûs-khûrnar, *and* from Mânûs-khûrnar [*and his* sister] was Mânûskîhar born[3], by whom Salm and Tûg were slain in revenge for Aîrîk[4]. 13. By Mânûskîhar were Fris, Nôdar[5], and Dûrâsrôb[6] begotten.

14. Just as Mânûskîhar *was* of Mânûs-khûrnar, of Mânûs-khûrnâk[7], who was Mâm-sozak[8], of Aîrak, of Thritak, of Bîtak, of Frazûsak, of Zûsak[9], of Fragûzak, of Gûzak, of Aîrîk, of Frêdûn, *so* Frâsîyâv[10] *was*

[1] The phrase in brackets occurs only in TD; and the whole passage from 'vînîk' to 'sun' is omitted in K20, evidently by mistake.

[2] TD has 'from Mânûs and *his* sister,' and K20b has 'from Mânûs-hûkîhar *and* Mânûs-khûrshêd.'

[3] The words in brackets occur only in TD, and K20b has 'from Mânûs-khûrnar also was Mânûs-khûrnâk, *from* Mânûs-khûrnâk was Mânûskîhar born,' but this introduction of an extra generation is not confirmed by the list of names in § 14. The term khûrnâk (or khûrnak) seems to be merely a transcript of the Avesta word of which khûrshêd-vînîk, 'sun-nose,' is a translation. The other term khûrnar can also be read khûrvar, but K20 has Pâz. *hv*arnar. Mânûskîhar is the Av. Manuskithra of Fravardîn Yt. 131, where he is styled the Airyavan, or descendant of Airyu (Aîrîk).

[4] TD has '*and* vengeance exacted for Aîrîk.'

[5] See Chap. XXIX, 6.

[6] Pâz. Durâsro, but the Pahlavi form, given in the text, occurs in § 31 and Chap. XXXII, 1 in TD, which MS. omits this § by mistake.

[7] The same as Mânûs-i khûrshêd-vînîk, as noted above.

[8] This Pâzand epithet seems to mean 'mother-burning,' and may have some connection with the legend mentioned in § 11. TD has mûn am Gûgak, 'whose mother was Gûgak.'

[9] K20b omits the five names from Aîrak to Zûsak.

[10] Av. Frangrasyan, the Tûryan, of Yas. XI, 21, Âbân Yt. 41,

of Pashang, of Zaêsm[1], of Tûrak, of Spaêñyasp, of Dûrôshasp, of Tûg, of Frêdûn. 15. He (Frâsiyâv) as well as Karsêvaz[2], whom they call Kadân[3], *and* Aghrêrad[4] were all three brothers.

[16[5]. Pashang and Vîsak were both brothers. 17. By Vîsak were Pîrân[6], Hûmân, Sân[7], and other brothers begotten. 18. By Frâsiyâv were Frasp-i Kûr, Sân, Shêdak[8], and other sons begotten; *and* Vispân-fryâ[9], from whom Kaî-Khûsrôb was born, was daughter of Frâsiyâv, *and* was of the same mother with Frasp-i Kûr. 19. From Frasp-i Kûr *were* Sûrâk, Asûrîk, and other children; *and* by them were Khvâst-aîrikht, Yazdân-aîrikht, Yazdân-sarâd, Frêh-khûrd, Lâ-vahâk[10], and others begotten, a recital of whom *would* be tedious.

20. By Aghrêrad *was* Gôpatshah[11] begotten. 21. When Frâsiyâv made Mânûskîhar, with the Iranians, captive in the mountain-range (gar) of Padashkh-

---

Gôs Yt. 18, 22, Ashi Yt. 38, 42, Zamyâd Yt. 56–63, 82, 93; called Afrâsiyâb in the Shâhnâmah.

[1] Zâdsam in the Shâhnâmah.

[2] Garsîvaz in the Shâhnâmah.

[3] TD has Pahl. Kîdân.

[4] See Chap. XXIX, 5.

[5] The remainder of this chapter is found only in TD.

[6] Pîrân Vîsah is Afrâsiyâb's chief general in the Shâhnâmah, and Hûmân and Pîlsam are his brothers.

[7] This name is very ambiguous in Pahlavi, as it can be read many other ways.

[8] Shêdah in the Shâhnâmah.

[9] She is called Farangîs in the Shâhnâmah.

[10] The reading of several of these names is more or less uncertain, but the object of the author is evidently to apply opprobrious epithets to all the male descendants of Afrâsiyâb.

[11] TD has Gôpat-malkâ here, as also in Chap. XXIX, 5, where it is said to be a title of Aghrêrad (always written Agrêrad in TD).

vâr[1], *and* scattered ruin *and* want among them, Aghrêra*d* begged a favour of God (yazdân), and he obtained the benefit that the army and champions of the Iranians were saved by him from that distress. 22. Frâsîyâ*v* slew Aghrêra*d* for that fault; *and* Aghrêra*d*, as his recompense, begat *such* a son as Gôpatshah.

23. Aûzôbô the Tûhmâspian[2], Kanak-i Barzi*s*t, Arawi*s*anasp, *and* Vaêta*n*d-i Râghinôi*d* *were* the three sons *and* the daughter of Agâima*s*vâk[3], the *son* of Nô*d*ar, *son* of Mânû*sk*îhar, who begat Aûzôbô. 24. Kavâ*d*[4] was a child in a waist-cloth (kuspû*d*); they abandoned *him* on a river, *and* he froze upon the door-sills (kavâ*d*akân); Aûzôbô perceived and took *him*, brought *him* up, *and* settled the name of the trembling child.

25. By Kavâ*d* *was* Kaî-Apîvêh begotten; by Kaî-Apîvêh *were* Kaî-Arsh, Kaî-Vyârsh, Kaî-Pisân, and Kaî-Kâûs begotten; by Kaî-Kâûs *was* Sîyâvakhsh begotten; by Sîyâvakhsh *was* Kaî-Khûsrôb[5]

[1] The mountains south of the Caspian (see Chap. XII, 17).

[2] Av. Uzava Tûmâspana of Fravardîn Yt. 131, called Zav, or Zâb, son of Tahmâsp, in the Shâhnâmah.

[3] None of these names, which TD gives in Pâzand, are to be found in the portion of the Avesta yet extant.

[4] Av. Kavi Kavâta of Fravardîn Yt. 132, Zamyâd Yt. 71, called Kaî-Qubâd in the Shâhnâmah. There appears to be an attempt, in the text, to derive his name from the 'door-sill' on which he is said to have been found.

[5] The Avesta names of these seven other Kayâns are, respectively, Kavi Aipi-vanghu, Kavi Arshan, Kavi Byârshân, Kavi Pisanangh, Kavi Usadhan, Kavi Syâvarshân, and Kavi Husravangh (see Fravardîn Yt. 132, Zamyâd Yt. 71, 74); omitting the third, they are called, respectively, Armîn, Ari*s*, Pa*s*în, Kaî-Kâvûs, Siyâvush, and Kaî-Khusrô in the Shâhnâmah. TD, omitting the first letter, has Sânŏ for Pisân; it also writes Kaî-Kâyûks and Kaî-Khûsrôvî.

begotten. 26. Keresâsp[1] *and* Aûrvakhsh[2] were both brothers. 27. Athrat[3] *was son* of Sâhm, *son* of Tûrak, *son* of Spaêñyasp, *son* of Dûrôshasp[4], *son* of Tûg, *son* of Frêdûn. 28. Lôharâsp[5] *was son* of Aûzâv[6], *son* of Mânûs, *son of* Kaî-Pîsîn[7], *son of* Kaî-Apîvêh, *son of* Kaî-Kavâd. 29. *By* Kaî-Lôharâsp were Vistâsp, Zarîr[8], *and* other brothers begotten; by Vistâsp were Spend-dâd[9] and Pêshyôtanû[10] begotten; and by Spend-dâd were Vohûman[11], Âtarô-tarsah, Mitrô-tarsah, *and* others begotten.

30. Artakhshatar *descendant* of Pâpak—of whom his mother *was* daughter—*was son* of Sâsân[12], *son* of

---

[1] Av. Keresâspa of Yas. IX, 31, 36, 39, Vend. I, 36, Âbân Yt. 37, Fravardîn Yt. 61, 136, Râm Yt. 27, Zamyâd Yt. 38–44, Âf. Zarat. 3; he is called Garsâsp in the Shâhnâmah.

[2] Av. Urvâkhshaya of Yas. IX, 31, Râm Yt. 28, Âf. Zarat. 3. These brothers were sons of Thrita or Athrat, mentioned in the next §.

[3] Av. Thrita of the Sâma race (see Yas. IX, 30, Vend. XX, 11) and father of Keresâspa, whose genealogy is given in a passage interpolated in some copies of the Shâhnâmah as follows: Garsâsp, Atrat, Sam, Tûrag, Sîdasb, Tûr, Jamshêd.

[4] Written Dûrôshap in TD, both here and in § 14.

[5] Av. Aurvad-aspa of Âbân Yt. 105, Vistâsp Yt. 34, 46, called Luhrâsp in the Shâhnâmah.

[6] Reading doubtful.

[7] Written Ka-Pîsîn here, but he is the same person as Kaî-Pisân of § 25; the latter part of the name is written both Pisanangh and Pisina in the Avesta.

[8] Probably Zargar (being Av. Zairivairi of Âbân Yt. 112, 117, Fravardîn Yt. 101), but called Zarîr in the Shâhnâmah.

[9] Av. Spentô-dâta of Fravardîn Yt. 103, Vistâsp Yt. 25, called Isfendiyâr in the Shâhnâmah.

[10] See Chaps. XXIX, 5, XXXII, 5.

[11] Called Bahman in the Shâhnâmah, and Ardashîr the Kayânian in Bahman Yt. II, 17; the successor of his grandfather Vistâsp (see Chap. XXXIV, 8).

[12] The text is rather obscure, but the Kârnâmak of Ardashîr-i Pâpakân states clearly that Ardashîr was son of Sâsân by the

Vêh-âfrî*d* and[1] Zarîr, *son* of Sâsân, *son* of Artakhshatar who *was* the said Vohûman *son* of Spend-dâ*d*.

31. The mother of Kaî-Apîvêh was Farhank[2], *daughter* of *him who is* exalted on the *heavenly* path[3], Urva*d*-gâi-frâ*st*[4], *son* of Râk, *son* of Dûrâsrôb, *son* of Mânû*sk*îhar. 32. This, too, it says, that the glory[5] of Frê*d*ûn settled on the root of a reed (kanyâ) in the wide-formed ocean; *and* Nôktargâ[6], through sorcery, formed a cow for tillage, *and* begat *children* there; three years he carried the reeds there, *and* gave them to the cow, until the glory went on to the cow; he brought the cow, milked *her* milk, *and* gave *it* to his three sons; as *their* walking *was on* hoofs, the glory did not go to the sons, but to Farhank. 33. Nôktargâ wished to injure[7] Farhank, *but* Farhank went with the glory *away* from

daughter of Pâpak, a tributary ruler of Pârs under Ardavân, the last of the Askâniyân monarchs.

[1] So in the Pahlavi text, which therefore makes Vêh-âfrî*d* a woman's name (like Pers. Beh-âfrîn); but this is doubtful, as the MSS. often confound va, 'and,' and i, '*son* of.'

[2] In the Shâhnâmah Farhang is mother of Kaî-Kâvûs. The Pahlavi name can also be read Farânak, the name of the mother of Ferîdûn in the Shâhnâmah.

[3] Pâz. vîdharg-âfrâ*st*aka, which looks more like an epithet than a name.

[4] Or, perhaps, 'Urva*d*-gâ *son* of Frâ*st*.'

[5] The divine glory which was supposed to accompany all legitimate sovereigns of Iran, from the time of Hôshyang even to that of the Sasanian dynasty; it is the Av. *hv*arenangh of the Zamyâd Yast, and is said to have fled to the ocean for refuge during the reign of foreign dynasties and wicked kings (see Âbân Yt. 42, Zamyâd Yt. 51, 56, 59, 62).

[6] The last syllable is so written, in Pâzand, in § 33.

[7] Reading hangî*d*anŏ, 'to injure,' instead of khung*d*anŏ, which may mean 'to embrace;' the difference between the two words being merely the letter î.

the fierce (tîb) father, and made a vow (patyastâk) thus: 'I will give *my* first son to Aûshbâm[1].' 34. Then Aûshbâm saved her from the father; and the first son, Kaî-Apîvêh, she bore and gave to Aûshbâm, was a hero associating with Aûshbâm, and travelled in Aûshbâm's company.

35. The mother of Aûzôbô was the daughter of Nâmûn the wizard, when Nâmak[2] was with Frâsîyâv.

36. And, moreover, together with those begotten by Sâm[3] were six children in pairs, male *and* female; the name of one *was* Damnak, of one Khûsrôv, *and of one* Mârgandak, *and* the name of *each* man and woman together was one. 37. And the name of one *besides* them was Dastân[4]; he was considered more eminent than they, and Sagânsîh[5] and the southern quarter were given to him; and Avar-shatrô[6] and the governorship were given by him to Avarnak. 38. Of Avar-shatrô this is said, that *it is* the district of Avarnak, *and* they offered blessings *to* Srôsh and Ardavahist in succession; on this account is *their* possession of horses and possession of arms; and on account of firm religion, purity, and manifest joy, good estimation and extensive fame are greatly

[1] This name means 'the dawn;' perhaps it may be identified with Av. Usinemangh or Usenemangh of Fravardîn Yt. 113, 140, whose wife Freni may possibly be the Farhank (or Frânak) of the text.

[2] So in TD, but it is probably only a variant of Nâmûn.

[3] The grandfather of Rustam (see § 41). In the Avesta he is usually called Sâma Keresâspa with the title Nairimanau; while in the Shâhnâmah Sâm is son of Narîmân.

[4] Another name for Zâl, the father of Rustam, in the Shâhnâmah.

[5] The same as Sagastân.

[6] Or, perhaps, 'the upper district.'

among them. 39. To Damnak the governorship of Asûristân was given; sovereignty and arranging the law of sovereignty, wilfulness and the stubborn defects they would bring, were among them. 40. To Sparnak[1] the governorship of Spâhân[2] was given; to Khûsrôv the governorship of Râi[3] was given; to Mârgandak the kingdom, forest settlements, and mountain settlements of Padashkhvârgar were given; *where* they travel nomadically, and *there are* the forming of sheep-folds, prolificness, easy procreation, and continual triumph over enemies. 41. From Dastân proceeded Rûdastâm[4] and Hûzavârak[5].]

Chapter XXXII[6].

1. On the kindred of Pôrûshasp[7], *son* of Paîtirâsp[8], *son* of Aurvadasp[9], *son* of Hâêkadâsp[10], *son* of

[1] He would seem not to have been a son of Sâm, as he is not mentioned before. The reading of all these names is uncertain.

[2] The Pahlavi form of Ispahân.

[3] Av. Ragha of Yas. XIX, 51, Vend. I, 60, whose ruins are near the modern Teherân.

[4] The usual Pahlavi form of Rustam.

[5] Or Aûzvârak; Rustam's brother is called Zavârah in the Shâhnâmah.

[6] This chapter, which is numbered XXXIII by previous translators, is found in all MSS., but in TD it forms a continuation of the preceding chapter, beginning with the name Pôrûshasp.

[7] Av. Pourushaspa of Yas. IX, 42, 43, Vend. XIX, 15, 22, 143, Âbân Yt. 18, &c.

[8] K20 has Pâz. Spitarsp, and M6 has Pâz. Pirtrasp (see note on Chap. XXXIII, 1). The reading in the text is doubtful.

[9] Omitted in K20 and TD.

[10] Av. Haêkadaspa of Yas. XLV, 15, LII, 3.

*K*akhshnûs[1], *son* of Pâitîrasp, *son* of Hardarsn[2], *son* of Hardâr[3], *son* of Spîtâmân[4], *son* of Vîdast[5], *son* of Ayazem, *son* of Ragan[6], *son* of Dûrâsrôb[7], *son* of Mânûs*k*îhar[8]. 2. As Paîtirâsp *had* two sons, one Pôrûshasp *and* one Ârâsti[9], by Pôrûshasp was Zaratûst begotten for a sanctuary of good religion[10], *and* by Ârâsti was Mê*d*yôk-mâh[11] begotten. 3. Zaratûst, when he brought the religion, first celebrated

[1] Windischmann suggests Av. *K*âkhshnôis (gen.) of Fravardîn Yt. 114.

[2] K20 has Pâz. Harsn and TD has Haraki*d*âr*s*nŏ.

[3] TD has Harâî*d*âr, or Arâî*d*âr.

[4] Or Spîtâm (as the last syllable is the patronymical suffix), Av. Spitâma, the usual patronymic of Zaratûst.

[5] May be read Vâdist in TD.

[6] Possibly the same person as Râk in Chap. XXXI, 31; but see XXXIII, 3.

[7] So in TD, but Pâz. Durâsrun in K20, M6.

[8] This genealogy is somewhat differently given in the Vagarkar*d*-i Dînîk (pp. 28, 29), as published in Bombay by Dastur Peshotanji Behramji Sanjânâ in 1848; and is extended back, through the generations mentioned in Chap. XXXI, 1, 2, 7, 14, to Gâyômar*d*, as follows: 'Pôrûshâspô *son* of Paîtîrâsp, *and* Arâspô son of Paîtîrâsp, Urvan*d*asp, Haê*k*a*d*asp, *K*îkhshnus, Paêtirasp, Hardrsn, Haridâr, Spîtâmânŏ, Vaêdist, Nayâzem, Ragisn, Dûrâsrôb, Mânûs*k*îhar sovereign of Iran, Mânus-khûrnar, Mânus-khûrnâk, Nêryôsang, Varsî*d*-dîn, Vîzak, Airyak, Aithritak, Ibitak, Frazîsak, Zisak, Frasizak, Izak, Aîrî*k*, Frê*d*ûn lord of Khvanîras, Pûr-tôrâ the Âspîkân, Nêvak-tôrâ the Âspîkân, Sôg-tôrâ the Âspîkân, Gêfar-tôrâ the Âspîkân, Vanô-i-fravisn the Âspîkân, Yim lord of the seven regions, Vîvanghâû, Ayangha*d*, Anangha*d*, Takhmôrup, Hôshâng the Pêsdâ*d*, lord of the seven regions, Fravâk, Sîyâmak, Mashyô whose wife was Mashyâk, Gâyôkmar*d* the first man, and father of all mankind in the material world.'

[9] Av. Ârâstaya of Fravardîn Yt. 95; TD has Ârâstih.

[10] The Pâzand words dargâ hidainis appear to be merely a misreading of Pahl. dargâs-i hûdînôîh.

[11] Av. Maidhyô-maungha of Yas. L, 19, Fravardîn Yt. 95, 106. He is said to have been Zaratûst's first disciple.

worship[1] *and* expounded in Aîrân-vêg, and Mêdyôkmâh received the religion from him. 4. The Môbads[2] of Pârs are all *traced* back to this race of Mânûskîhar.

5. Again, I say, by Zaratûst[3] *were* begotten three sons and three daughters[4]; one *son was* Isadvâstar[5], one Aûrvatad-nar[6], *and* one Khûrshêd-kîhar[7]; as Isadvâstar *was* chief of the priests he became the Môbad of Môbads, *and* passed away in the hundredth year of the religion; Aûrvatad-nar *was* an agriculturist, *and* the chief of the enclosure formed by Yim[8], which is below the earth; Khûrshêd-kîhar *was* a warrior, commander of the army of Pêshyôtanû, *son* of Vistâsp, *and* dwells in Kangdez[8]; *and* of the three daughters the name of one was Frên, of one Srît, *and* of one Pôrukîst[9]. 6. Aûrvatad-nar and Khûrshêd-kîhar were from a serving (kakar) wife[10], the rest were from a privileged (pâdakhshah) wife.

[1] Reading frâg yast; but it may be frâg gast, 'wandered forth.'

[2] The class of priests whose special duty is to perform all religious rites and ceremonies.

[3] This paragraph is quoted, with a few alterations, in the Vagarkard-i Dînîk, pp. 21–23.

[4] K20 omits the 'three daughters' here, by mistake.

[5] Av. Isad-vâstra of Yas. XXIII, 4, XXVI, 17, Fravardîn Yt. 98.

[6] Av. Urvatad-nara of Vend. II, 143, Fravardîn Yt. 98. K20 and M6 have Aûrvartad-nar, and TD has Aûrvâtad-nar.

[7] Av. Hvare-khithra of Fravardîn Yt. 98; TD has Khûr-kîhar.

[8] See Chap. XXIX, 5. Windischmann and Justi consider the clause about Pêshyôtanû as inserted by mistake, and it is omitted in the Vagarkard-i Dînîk (p. 21); it is found, however, in all MSS. of the Bundahis.

[9] These daughters are the Av. Freni, Thriti, and Pouru-kista of Fravardîn Yt. 139; the last is also mentioned in Yas. LII, 3.

[10] The following is a summary of the Persian descriptions of the five kinds of marriage, as given in the Rivâyats :—

A pâdshâh ('ruling, or privileged') wife is when a man marries,

7[1]. By Isa*d*vâstar was begotten a son *whose* name was Ururviga[2], and they call him Arang-i Birâ*d*ân[3] ('fore-arm of brothers') for this reason, that, as they

with the parents' consent, an unbetrothed maiden out of a family, and she and her children remain his in both worlds.

A yûkan or ayûk ('only child') wife is an only child, married with the parents' consent, and her first child belongs to them; after its birth she becomes a pâdshâh wife. She is entitled to one-third of her parents' property for giving up the child.

A satar ('adopted') wife is when a man over fifteen years of age dies childless and unmarried, and his relatives provide a maiden with a dowry, and marry her to another man; when half her children belong to the dead man, and half to the living, and she herself is the dead man's wife in the other world.

A *k*akar or *k*âkar ('serving') wife is a widow who marries again; if she had no children by her first husband she is acting as a satar wife, and half her children by her second husband belong to her first one; and she herself, in any case, belongs to her first husband in the other world.

A khûd-*s*arâî or khûd-sarâî ('self-disposing') wife is one who marries without her parents' consent; she inherits no property from her parents until her eldest son has given her as a pâdshâh wife to his father.

[1] Instead of this sentence the Va*g*arkar*d*-i Dînîk (pp. 21, 22) has the following, which appears to rest upon a misinterpretation of the text:—

'And Zaratûst the righteous had three wives; all three were in the lifetime of Zaratûst, and all three wives were living throughout the lifetime of Zaratûst; the name of one was Hvôv, of the second Urvi*g*, of the third Arni*g*-baredâ. And from Urvi*g*, who was a privileged wife, four children were born; one was the son Isa*d*-vâstar, and the three daughters, namely, Frên, Srîtak, and Pôru*k*ist; these four were from Urvi*g*. And from the wife Arni*g*-baredâ two sons were born, one Aûrvart-nar, and the second Khûrshê*d*-*k*îhar; and Arni*g*-baredâ was a serving wife, and the name of the former husband of Arni*g*-baredâ was Mitrô-ayâr. And from Hvôv, who was a privileged wife, *were* three sons, namely, Hûshê*d*ar, Hûshê*d*ar-mâh, and Sôshâns, as it says,' &c. (as in § 8).

[2] TD has Pahl. Aûrvarvîgak or Khûrûrûpak.

[3] So in TD.

were from a serving wife, *she* then delivered them over to Isa*d*vâstar through adoption. 8. This, too, *one* knows, that three sons of Zaratûst, namely, Hûshê*d*ar, Hûshê*d*ar-mâh[1], and Sôshyans[2], were from Hvôv[3]; as it says, that Zaratûst went near unto Hvôv three times, *and* each time the seed went to the ground; the angel Nêryôsang[4] received the brilliance and strength of that seed, delivered *it* with care to the angel Anâhî*d*[5], *and* in time will blend *it* with a mother. 9. Nine thousand, nine hundred, and ninety-nine, and nine myriads[6] of the guardian spirits of the righteous are intrusted with *its* protection, so that the demons may not injure *it*[7].

10. The name of the mother of Zaratûst was Dughdâ[8], *and* the name of the father of the mother of Zaratûst was Frahimravâ[9].

---

[1] Av. Ukhshya*d*-ereta and Ukhshya*d*-nemangh of Fravardîn Yt. 128.

[2] Av. Saoshyãs of Vend. XIX, 18, Fravardîn Yt. 129, &c. See Chaps. XI, 6, XXIX, 6, XXX, 3, 4, 7, 17, 25, 27.

[3] Av. Hvôvi of Fravardîn Yt. 139, Dîn Yt. 15; the Pahlavi form of the name, as given once in TD, is Hûvâôbŏ.

[4] See Chap. XV, 1.

[5] Av. anâhita of Âbân Yt. 1, &c.; a female personification of 'unsullied' water, known generally by the epithet ardvî sûra (the Arêdvîvsûr of Chap. XIII), and whose name is also applied to the planet Venus (see Chap. V, 1).

[6] So in M6; other MSS. have '9,999 myriads,' but see Fravardîn Yt. 62.

[7] This last phrase, about the demons, is omitted in TD and the Vagarkar*d*-i Dînîk.

[8] The Avesta word for 'daughter.'

[9] TD has Pâz. Fereâhimruvânâ.

[CHAPTER XXXIII[1].

0. The family of the Môbads ('priests').

1. Bahak[2] *was* son of Hûbakht, *son* of Âtarô-bôndak, *son* of Mâhdad, *son* of Mêdyôk-mâh, *son* of Frâh-vakhsh-vindâd[3], *son* of Mêdyôk-mâh, *son* of Kâd[4], *son* of Mêdyôk-mâh, *son* of Ârâstîh, *son* of Paîtirâsp[5]. 2. As Bahak was Môbad of Môbads (high-priest) unto Shâhpûhar[6], son of Aûharmazd, *so* Kâd was the great preceptor (farmâdâr) unto Dârâî[7].

3. Âtarô-pâd[8] *was son* of Mâraspend, *son* of Dâdardâ, *son* of Dâdîrâd, *son* of Hûdînô, *son* of Âtarôdâd, *son* of Mânûskîhar, *son* of Vohûman-kîhar, *son* of Fryânô[9], *son* of Bâhak[10], *son* of Frêdûn, *son* of Fra-

[1] This chapter is found only in TD, where it forms a continuation of the preceding, and affords a means (see §§ 10, 11) for determining the age of the recension of the text contained in that MS. As nearly all the names are written in Pahlavi letters, the pronunciation of many of them is merely a matter of guess.

[2] Here written Bôhak, but it is Bahak or Bâk in § 2; compare Bâhak in § 3, and Av. Baungha of Fravardîn Yt. 124.

[3] Compare Av. Frashâvakhsha of Fravardîn Yt. 109.

[4] Compare Av. Kâta of Fravardîn Yt. 124.

[5] See Chap. XXXII, 2, for the last three generations; TD has Pîrtarâsp here, like the variant of M6 in Chap. XXXII, 1.

[6] The Sasanian king Shâpûr II, who reigned A.D. 309–379.

[7] According to the chronology of the Bundahis (Chap. XXXIV, 8, 9), Dârâî lived only some four centuries before Shâpûr II, for which period only seven generations of priests are here provided. This period, moreover, is certainly about three centuries less than the truth.

[8] This priest was prime minister of Shâpûr II.

[9] Compare Av. Fryâna of Yas. XLV, 12.

[10] This name is repeated in TD, probably by mistake (compare Bahak in §§ 1, 2).

shâîtar[1], *son* of Pôrushasp, *son* of Vînâsp, *son* of Nivar, *son* of Vakhsh, *son* of Vahidhrôs, *son* of Frast, *son* of Gâk[2], *son* of Vakhsh, *son* of Fryân, *son* of Ragan, *son* of Dûrâsrôb, *son* of Mânûs*k*îhar[3].

4. Mitrô-varâ*z* *was* *son* of Nîgâs-afzû*d*-dâk, *son* of Shîrtashôsp, *son* of Parstva, *son* of Urva*d*-gâ, *son* of Tâham, *son* of Zarîr, *son* of Dûrâsrôb, *son* of Mânûs[4]. 5. Dûrnâmîk *was* *son* of Zâgh, *son* of Masvâk, *son* of Nô*d*ar[5], *son* of Mânûs*k*îhar.

6. Mitrô-akâvî*d* *is* *son* of Mar*d*ân-vêh[6], *son* of Afrôbag-vindâ*d*, *son* of Vindâ*d*-i-pê*d*âk, *son* of Vâê-bûkht[7], *son* of Bahak, *son* of Vâê-bûkht. 7. The mother from whom I was born is Hûmâî, daughter of Freh-mâh, who also *was* the righteous daughter[8]

---

[1] This is probably a semi-Huzvâris form of Frashôstar.

[2] Perhaps this name should be read along with the next one, so as to give the single Pâzand name Skinas or Skivas.

[3] See Chap. XXXII, 1, for the last three generations. According to this genealogy Âtarôpâ*d*-i Mâraspendân was the twenty-third in descent from Mânûs*k*îhar, whereas his contemporary, Bahak (§ 1), was twenty-second in descent from the same.

[4] No doubt Mânûs*k*îhar is meant; if not, we must read Mânûs-dûrnâmîk in connection with § 5.

[5] Here written Nî*d*ar, but see Chaps. XXIX, 6, XXXI, 13.

[6] Here written Mar*d*-vêh, but see § 8.

[7] Here written Aê-vûkht, but see § 8; it may be Vîs-bûkht, or Vês-bûkht.

[8] The text is amî*d*ar mûnas li agas zerkhûn*d* Hûmôî dûkht-i Freh-mâh-i*k* aharôb vûkht (dûkht?). We might perhaps read 'Freh-mâh *son* of Ahârôb-bûkht,' but it seems more probable that §§ 7, 8 should be connected, and that the meaning intended is that Hûmâî was daughter of Freh-mâh (of a certain family) and of Pûyisn-shâ*d* (of another family); she was also the mother of the editor of that recension of the Bundahis which is contained in TD; but who was his father? The singularly unnecessary repetition of the genealogy of the two brothers, Mitrô-akâvî*d* and Pûyisn-shâ*d*, in §§ 6, 8, leads to the suspicion that if the latter

of Mâh-ayâr *son* of Mâh-bôndak, *son* of Mâh-bûkht. 8. Pûyisn-shâ*d is son* of Mar*d*ân-vêh, *son* of Afrôbag-vindâ*d*, *son* of Vindâ*d*-i-pê*d*âk, *son* of Vâê-bûkht, *son* of Bahak, *son* of Vâê-bûkht.

9. All the other Môbads who have been renowned in the empire (khû*d*âyîh) *were* from the same family it is said, *and* were of this race of Mânûs-*k*îhar[1]. 10. Those Môbads, likewise, who now exist are all from the same family they assert, and I, too, they boast, whom they call[2] 'the administration of perfect rectitude' (Dâ*d*akîh-i Ashôvahistô)[3]. 11. Yûdân-Yim *son* of Vâhrâm-shâ*d*, *son* of Zaratûst Âtarô-pâ*d* son of Mâraspend, *son* of Zâ*d*-sparham[4],

were his mother's father, the former was probably his own father or grandfather. Unfortunately the text makes no clear statement on the subject, and § 10 affords further material for guessing otherwise at his name and connections.

[1] Compare Chap. XXXII, 4.

[2] Reading va lî*k* laband-i karîtûnd.

[3] This looks more like a complimentary title than a name, and if the editor of the TD recension of the Bundahi*s* were the son or grandson of Mitrô-akâvî*d* (§ 6) we have no means of ascertaining his name; but if he were not descended from Mitrô-akâvî*d* it is possible that §§ 10, 11 should be read together, and that he was the son of Yûdân-Yim. Now we know, from the heading and colophon of the ninety-two questions and answers on religious subjects which are usually called the Dâ*d*istân-i Dînîk, and from the colophons of other writings which usually accompany that work, that those answers were composed and certain epistles were written by Mânûs*k*îhar, son of Yûdân-Yim, who was high-priest of Pârs and Kirmân in A.Y. 250 (A.D. 881), and apparently a more important personage than his (probably younger) brother Zâ*d*-sparham, who is mentioned in § 11 as one of the priests contemporary with the editor of the TD recension. If this editor, therefore, were a son of Yûdân-Yim (which is a possible interpretation of the text) he was most probably this same Mânûs*k*îhar, author of the Dâ*d*istân-i Dînîk (see the Introduction, § 4).

[4] The last name is very probably superfluous, Zâ*d*-sparham

Zâd-sparham *son* of Yûdân-Yim [1], Âtarô-pâd son of Hâmîd [2], Ashôvahist *son* of Freh-Srôsh, *and* the other Môbads have sprung from the same family.

12. This, too, it says, that 'in one winter I *will* locate (*g*âkînam) the religion of the Mazdayasnians, *which* came out into the other six regions.']

---

having been written twice most likely by mistake. This Âtarô-pâd son of Mâraspend was probably the one mentioned in the following extract from the old Persian Rivâyat MS., No. 8 of the collection in the Indian Office Library at London (fol. 142 a):—

'The book Dînkard which the dastûrs of the religion and the ancients have compiled, likewise the blessed Âdarbâd son of Mahrasfend, son of Asavahist of the people of the good religion, in the year three hundred of Yazdagard Shahryâr, collected some of the more essential mysteries of the religion as instruction, and of these he formed this book.' That is, he was the last editor of the Dînkard, which seems to have remained unrevised since his time, as the present copies have descended from the MS. preserved by his family and first copied in A.Y. 369.

[1] Zâd-sparham was brother of the author of the Dâdistân-i Dînîk; he was high-priest at Sîrkân in the south, and evidently had access to the Bundahis, of part of which he wrote a paraphrase (see Appendix). His name is usually written Zâd-sparam.

[2] In the history of the Dînkard, given at the end of its third book (see Introd. to Farhang-i Oîm-khadûk, p. xxxiv), we are told as follows:—

'After that, the well-meaning Âtarô-pâd son of Hêmîd, who was the leader of the people of the good religion, compiled, with the assistance of God, through inquiry, investigation, and much trouble, a new means of producing remembrance of the Mazdayasnian religion.' He did this, we are further told, by collecting all the decaying literature and perishing traditions into a work 'like the great original Dînkard, of a thousand chapters' (mânâk-i zak rabâ bûn Dînô-kartô 1000-darakŏ). We thus learn from external sources that the group of contemporary priests, mentioned in the text, was actively employed (about A.D. 900) in an attempted revival of the religious literature of the Mazdayasnians, to which we owe either the revision or compilation of such works as the Dînkard, Dâdistân-i Dînîk, and Bundahis.

CHAPTER XXXIV[1].

0. On the reckoning of the years[2].

1. Time was *for* twelve thousand years; *and* it says in revelation, that three thousand years was the duration of the spiritual *state*, where the creatures were unthinking, unmoving, *and* intangible[3]; *and* three thousand years[4] was the duration of Gâyômar*d*, with the ox, in the world. 2. As *this* was six thousand years the series of millennium reigns[5] of Cancer, Leo, and Virgo had elapsed, because it was six thousand years when the millennium reign came to Libra, the adversary rushed in, and Gâyômar*d* lived thirty years in tribulation[6]. 3. After the thirty years[7] Mâshya *and* Mâshyôî grew up; it was fifty years while they were not wife *and* husband[8], *and* they were ninety-three years together *as* wife *and* husband till the *time* when Hôshyang[9] came.

4. Hôshyang *was* forty years[10], Takhmôrup[11] thirty years, Yim till *his* glory[12] departed six hundred and

[1] This chapter is found in all the MSS.

[2] TD adds 'of the Arabs (Tâzîkân).'

[3] See Chap. I, 8. [4] See Chaps. I, 22, III, 1.

[5] This system of a millennium reign for each constellation of the zodiac can hardly have any connection with the precession of the equinoxes, as the equinoxes travel backwards through the zodiac, whereas these millennium reigns travel forwards.

[6] See Chap. III, 21–23.

[7] That is, forty years after the thirty (see Chap. XV, 2).

[8] See Chap. XV, 19, 20. [9] See Chaps. XV, 28, XXXI, 1.

[10] K20 omits, by mistake, from 'together' in § 3 to this point.

[11] See Chap. XXXI, 2.

[12] So in K20, but M6 has nismô, 'soul, reason,' as in Chap. XXIII, 1; the word 'glory' would refer to the supposed divine glory of the Iranian monarchs (see Chap. XXXI, 32).

sixteen years and six months, *and* after that he was a hundred years in concealment. 5. Then the millennium[1] reign came to Scorpio, and Dahâk[2] ruled a thousand years. 6. After the millennium reign came to Sagittarius, Frêdûn[3] *reigned* five hundred years; in the same five hundred years of Frêdûn *were* the twelve years of Aîrîk; Mânûskîhar[4] *was* a hundred and twenty years, *and* in the same reign of Mânûskîhar, when he was in the mountain fastness (dûshkhvâr-gar)[5], *were* the twelve years of Frâsîyâv; Zôb[6] the Tûhmâspian *was* five years.

7. Kaî-Kabâd[7] *was* fifteen years; Kaî-Kâûs, till he went to the sky, seventy-five years, *and* seventy-five years after that, altogether a hundred and fifty years; Kaî-Khûsrôv sixty years; Kaî-Lôrâsp[8] a hundred and twenty years; Kaî-Vistâsp, till the coming of the religion, thirty years[9], altogether a hundred and twenty years.

8. Vohûman[10] *son* of Spend-dâd a hundred and

---

[1] The seventh millennium, ruled by Libra, is computed by Windischmann as follows: $30 + 40\frac{1}{2} + 50 + 93 + 40 + 30 + 616\frac{1}{2} + 100 = 1000$. The eighth millennium, ruled by Scorpio, is the thousand years of Dahâk.

[2] See Chap. XXXI, 6.

[3] See Chap. XXXI, 7–11.

[4] See Chap. XXXI, 12–14.

[5] See Chap. XXXI, 21.

[6] Written Aûzôbô in Chap. XXXI, 23, 24.

[7] Usually written Kaî-Kavâd in Pahlavi (see Chap. XXXI, 24, 25).

[8] Also written Kaî-Lôharâsp (see Chap. XXXI, 28, 29).

[9] This is the end of the ninth millennium, ruled by Sagittarius, which is computed by Windischmann as follows: $500 + 120 + 5 + 15 + 150 + 60 + 120 + 30 = 1000$.

[10] See Chap. XXXI, 29, 30, where he is said to have been also called Artakhshatar, which seems to identify him with Artaxerxes Longimanus and his successors down to Artaxerxes Mnemon; so that Hûmâî may perhaps be identified with Parysatis, and Dârâî Kîhar-âzâdân with Artaxerxes Ochus, as Dârâî Dârâyân must be

twelve years; Hûmâî, who *was* daughter of Vohûman, thirty years; Dârâî son of Ârîhar-âzâd[1], that is, *of the daughter* of Vohûman, twelve years; Dârâî son of Dârâî fourteen years; Alexander the Rûman[2] fourteen years.

9. The Askânians bore the title in an uninterrupted (a-arûbâk) sovereignty two hundred and eighty-four years[3], Ardashîr son of Pâpak *and* the number of the Sâsânians four hundred and sixty years[4], *and* then it went to the Arabs.

Darius Codomannus, while the reign of Kaî-Vistâsp seems intended to cover the period from Cyrus to Xerxes.

[1] A surname of Hûmâî.

[2] Sikandar-i Arûmâk, that is, Alexander the Roman (of the eastern or Greek empire), as Pahlavi writers assume.

[3] This period is nearly two centuries too short.

[4] The actual period of Sasanian rule was 425 years (A. D. 226–651). According to the figures given in the text, the tenth millennium, ruled by Capricornus, must have terminated in the fourth year of the last king, Yazdakard. This agrees substantially with the Bahman Yast, which makes the millennium of Zaratûst expire some time after the reign of Khûsrô Nôshirvân; probably in the time of Khûsrô Parvîz, or some forty years earlier than the fourth year of Yazdakard. According to the text we must now be near the end of the first quarter of the twelfth and last millennium.

APPENDIX TO THE BUNDAHIS.

SELECTIONS OF ZÂD-SPARAM,

BROTHER OF THE DASTÛR OF

PÂRS AND KIRMÂN,

A. D. 881.

PART I, CHAPTERS I–XI.

(PARAPHRASE OF BUNDAHIS, I–XVII.)

OBSERVATIONS.

1–5. (The same as on p. 2.)

6. Abbreviations used are:—Av. for Avesta. Bund. for Bundahiś, as translated in this volume. B. Yt. for Bahman Yaśt, as translated in this volume. Haug's Essays, for Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsis, by Martin Haug, 2nd edition. Mkh. for Mainyô-i-khard, ed. West. Pers. for Persian. Vend. for Vendîdâd, ed. Spiegel. Yas. for Yasna, ed. Spiegel. Yt. for Yaśt, ed. Westergaard.

7. The MS. mentioned in the notes is K35 (written probably A.D. 1572), No. 35 in the University Library at Kopenhagen.

SELECTIONS

OF

ZÂD-SPARAM.

THEY call these memoranda *and* writings the Selections (*kîdakîhâ*) of Zâd-sparam, son of Yûdân-Yim.

CHAPTER I.

0. In propitiation of the creator Aûharmazd and all the angels—who are the whole of the heavenly and earthly sacred beings (yazdân)—*are* the sayings of Herbad Zâd-sparam, son of Yûdân-Yim, who is of the south[1], about the meeting of the beneficent spirit *and* the evil spirit.

1. It is in scripture thus declared, that light *was* above and darkness below, and between those two was open space. 2. Aûharmazd *was* in the light, and Aharman in the darkness[2]; Aûharmazd *was* aware of the existence of Aharman and of *his* coming for strife; Aharman was not aware of the existence of light *and* of Aûharmazd[3]. 3. It happened to Aharman, in the gloom *and* darkness, *that*

---

[1] Zâd-sparam appears to have been dastûr of Sîrkân, about thirty parasangs south of Kirmân, and one of the most southern districts in Persia (see Ouseley's Oriental Geography, pp. 138, 139, 141, 143–145).

[2] See Bund. I, 2–4.

[3] Or 'of the light of Aûharmazd' (compare Bund. I, 8, 9).

he was walking humbly (frô-tanû) on the borders, *and* meditating other *things* he came up to the top, and a ray of light was seen by him; and because of *its* antagonistic nature to him he strove that he might reach it, so that it might also be within his absolute power. 4. And as he came forth to the boundary, accompanied by certain others[1], Aûharmazd came forth to the struggle for keeping Aharman away from His territory; and He did it through pure words, confounding witchcraft, and cast him back to the gloom.

5. For protection from the fiend (drûg) the spirits rushed in, the spirits of the sky, water, earth, plants, animals, mankind, and fire He *had* appointed, and they maintained it (the protection) three thousand years. 6. Aharman, also, ever collected means in the gloom; and at the end of the three thousand years he came back to the boundary, blustered (patîstâd), and exclaimed thus: 'I *will* smite thee, I *will* smite the creatures which thou thinkest *have* produced fame for thee—thee who art the beneficent spirit—I will destroy everything about them.'

7. Aûharmazd answered thus: 'Thou art not a doer of everything, O fiend[2]!'

8. And, again, Aharman retorted thus: 'I will seduce all material life into disaffection to thee and affection to myself[3].'

9. Aûharmazd perceived, through the spirit of wisdom, thus: 'Even the blustering of Aharman is capable of performance, if I do not allow disunion

[1] Reading pavan *k*atârânŏ ham-tanû, but the phrase is somewhat doubtful, and rather inconsistent with Bund. I, 10.

[2] Bund. I, 16. [3] Bund. I, 14.

(lâ barînînam) during a period of struggle.' 10. And he demanded of him a period for friendship [1], for it was seen by him that Aharman does not rely upon the intervention of any vigorous ones, *and* the existence of a period is obtaining the benefit of the mutual friendship *and* just arrangement of both; and he formed it into three periods, each period being three millenniums. 11. Aharman relied upon *it*, and Aûharmazd perceived that, though it is not possible to have Aharman sent down, ever when he wants he goes back to his own requisite, which is darkness; *and* from the poison which is much diffused endless strife arises [2].

12. And after the period was appointed by him, he brought forward the Ahûnavar *formula* [3]; and in his Ahûnavar these [4] kinds of benefit were shown:— 13. The first is that, of all things, that is proper which is something declared *as* the will of Aûharmazd; so that, whereas that is proper which is declared the will of Aûharmazd, where anything exists which is not within the will of Aûharmazd, it is created injurious from the beginning, a sin of a distinct nature. 14. The second is this, that whoever shall do that which is the will of Aûharmazd, his reward *and* recompense are his own; and of him who shall not do that which is the will of Aûharmazd, the punishment at the bridge [5] owing thereto

[1] Bund. I, 17, 18.

[2] Or 'the poison of the serpent, which is much diffused, becomes endless strife.'

[3] Bund. I, 21.

[4] The word ân, 'those,' however, is probably a miswriting of the cipher for 'three.'

[5] The *K*înva*d* or *K*învar bridge (see Bund. XII, 7).

is his own; which is shown from this[1] *formula; and* the reward of doers of good works, the punishment of sinners, and the tales of heaven *and* hell are from it. 15. Thirdly, *it is* shown that the sovereignty of Aûharmazd increases that which is for the poor, *and* adversity is removed; by which *it* is shown that there are treasures for the needy *one*, *and* treasures are to be *his* friends; as the intelligent creations *are* to the unintelligent, so also *are* the treasures of a wealthy *person* to a needy *one*, treasures liberally given which are his own. 16. And the creatures of the trained hand of Aûharmazd are contending *and* angry (âr*d*îk), one with the other, as the renovation *of the universe* must occur through these three things. 17. That is, first, true religiousness in oneself, *and* reliance upon a man's original hold on the truly glad tidings (nav-barhâm), that Aûharmazd is all goodness without vileness, and his will is a will altogether excellent; *and* Aharman is all vileness without goodness. 18. Secondly, hope of the reward *and* recompense of good works, serious fear of the bridge *and* the punishment of crime, strenuous perseverance in good works, *and* abstaining from sin. 19. Thirdly, the existence of the mutual assistance of the creatures, or along with and owing to mutual assistance, *their* collective warfare; it is the triumph of warfare over the enemy which is one's own renovation[2].

[1] The MS. has hûman, 'well-meditating,' instead of denman, 'this;' but the two words are much alike in Pahlavi writing.

[2] This commentary on the Ahûnavar, or Yathâ-ahû-vairyô formula, is rather clumsily interpolated by Zâd-sparam, and is much more elaborate than the usual Pahlavi translation and explanation of this formula, which may be translated as follows:—

20. By this formula he (Aharman) was confounded, *and* he fell back to the gloom[1]; *and* Aûharmazd produced the creatures bodily for the world; first, the sky; the second, water; the third, earth; the fourth, plants; the fifth, animals; the sixth, mankind[2]. 21. Fire was in all, diffused originally through the six substances, of which it was as much the confiner of each single substance in which it was established, it is said, as an eyelid when they lay one down upon the other.

22. Three thousand years the creatures were possessed of bodies and not walking on *their* navels; *and* the sun, moon, *and* stars stood still. 23. In the mischievous incursion, at the end of the period, Aûharmazd observed thus: 'What advantage is there from the creation of a creature, although thirstless, which is unmoving *or* mischievous?' 24.

'As is the will of the living spirit (as is the will of Aûharmazd) so should be the pastor (so excellent should he be) owing to whatsoever are the duties and good works of righteousness (the duties and good works should be as excellent as the will of Aûharmazd). Whose is the gift of good thought (that is, the reward *and* recompense good thought gives, it gives also unto him) which among living spirits is the work of Aûharmazd (that is, they would do that which Aûharmazd requires); there are *some* who say it is thus: Whose gift is through good thought (that is, the reward *and* recompense which they will give to good thought, they would give also unto him); Âtarô-pâd son of Zaratûst said that by the gift of good thought, when among living spirits, they comprehend the doing of deeds. The sovereignty is for Aûharmazd (that is, the sovereignty which is his, Aûharmazd has kept with advantage) who gives necessaries [or comfort, or clothing] to the poor (that is, they would make intercession for them).'

Additional phrases are sometimes inserted, and some words altered, but the above is the usual form of this commentary.

[1] Bund. I, 22. [2] Bund. I, 28.

And in aid of the *celestial* sphere he produced the creature Time (zôrvân)[1]; and Time is unrestricted, so that he made the creatures of Aûharmazd moving, distinct from the motion of Aharman's creatures, for the shedders of perfume (bôî-dâdân) were standing one opposite to the other while emitting *it*. 25. And, observantly of the end, he brought forward to Aharman a means out of himself, the property of darkness, with which the extreme limits (vîrûnakŏ) of Time *were* connected by him, an envelope (pôstô) of the black-pated and ash-coloured kind. 26. And in bringing it forward he spoke thus: 'Through their weapons the co-operation of the serpent (azŏ) dies away, *and* this *which* is thine, indeed thy own daughter, *dies* through religion; and if at the end of nine thousand years, as it is said *and* written, is a time of upheaval (madam kardanŏ), *she is* upheaved, not ended.'

27. At the same time Aharman came from accompanying Time out to the front, out to the star station; the connection of the sky with the star station *was* open, which showed, since it hung down into empty space, the strong communication of the lights and glooms, the place of strife in which is the pursuit of both. 28. And having darkness with himself he brought it into the sky, *and* left the sky so to gloom that the internal deficiency in the sky extends as much as one-third[2] over the star station.

[1] This is the Av. zrvâna akarana, 'boundless time or antiquity,' of Vend. XIX, 33, 44. He is a personification of duration and age, and is here distinctly stated to be a creature of Aûharmazd. This throws some doubt upon the statements of Armenian writers, who assert that the two spirits sprang from Zrvâna.

[2] Compare Bund. III, 11.

Chapter II.

1. On the coming in of Aharman to the creatures it is thus declared in revelation, that *in* the month Fravard*î*n *and* the day Aûharmazd, at noon [1], he came forth to the frontier of the sky. 2. The sky sees *him* and, on account of *his* nature, fears as much as a sheep trembles at a wolf; *and* Aharman came on, scorching *and* burning into it. 3. Then he came to the water which was arranged below the earth [2], and darkness without an eyelid was brought on by him; and he came on, through the middle of the earth, as a snake all-leaping comes on out of a hole; and he stayed within the whole earth. 4. The passage where he came on is his own, the way to hell, through which the demons make the wicked run.

5. Afterwards, he came to a tree, such as was of a single root, the height of which *was* several feet, and *it was* without branches and without bark, juicy *and* sweet; and to keep the strength of all kinds of trees in its race, it was in the vicinity of the middle of the earth; and at the self-same time *it became* quite withered [3].

6. Afterwards, he came to the ox, the sole-created [4], as it stood as high as Gâyômar*d* on the

[1] Bund. III, 12.

[2] Bund. III, 13.

[3] Bund. III, 14, 16.

[4] The primeval ox, or first-created representative of animals, as Gâyômar*d* was of mankind; from which two representatives all mankind and animals are said to have been afterwards developed. There seems to have been some doubt as to the sex of this mythological ox; here it is distinctly stated to have been a female, but from Bund. X, 1, 2, XIV, 3, it would appear to have been a male, and this seems to be admitted by Zâd-sparam himself, in Chap. IX, 7.

bank of the water of Dâîtih[1] *in* the middle of the earth; and its distance from Gâyômar*d* being as much as its own height, it was also distant from the bank of the water of Dâîtih by the same measure; and it was a female, white *and* brilliant as the moon. 7. As the adversary came upon *it* Aûharmazd gave *it* a narcotic, which is also called 'bang,' to eat, and to rub the 'bang' before the eye[2], so that the annoyance from the assault of crimes may be less; it became lean and ill, *and* fell upon its right breast[3] trembling.

8. Before the advance to Gâyômar*d*, who was then about one-third the height of Zaratûs*t*, *and* was brilliant as the sun, Aûharmazd forms, from the sweat[4] on the man, a figure of fifteen years, radiant *and* tall, and sends it on to Gâyômar*d*; and he also brings his sweat[5] on to him as long as one Yathâ-ahû-vairyô[6] is *being* recited. 9. When he issued from the sweat, and raised his eyes, he saw the world when it was dark as night[7]; on the whole earth were the snake, the scorpion, the lizard (vazak), and noxious creatures of many kinds; *and* so the other kinds of quadrupeds stood among the

[1] The Dâîtîk river (see Bund. XX, 13).

[2] This is a misunderstanding of the corresponding phrase in Bund. III, 18. The narcotic here mentioned is usually prepared from the hemp plant, and is well known in India and the neighbouring countries.

[3] See Bund. IV, 1.

[4] The word which, as it stands in the MS., looks like hômanâe, is here taken as a transposition of min khvâe, in accordance with Bund. III, 19; but it may be a variant of anumâe, 'embryo,' in which case the translation should be, 'forms an embryo into the shape of a man of fifteen years.'

[5] Or it may be 'sleep,' both here and in § 9.

[6] See Bund. I, 21.

[7] Bund. III, 20.

reptiles; every approach of the whole earth was as though not as much as a needle's point remained, in which there was no rush of noxious creatures. 10. *There were* the coming of a planetary *star* into planetary conjunction, and the moon and planets at sixes and sevens[1]; many dark forms with the face and curls of Az-i Dahâk suffered punishment in company with certain non-Iranians; *and* he was amazed at calling the wicked out from the righteous.

11. Lastly, he (Aharman) came up to the fire, and mingled darkness and smoke with it[2].

Chapter III.

1. And Gôsûrvan, as she was herself the soul of the primeval ox, when the ox passed away, came out from the ox, even as the soul from the body of the dead, and kept up the clamour of a cry to Aûharmazd in such fashion as that of an army, a thousand strong, when they cry out together[3]. 2. And Aûharmazd, in order to be much more able to keep watch over the mingled creatures than in front of Gâyômard, went from the earth up to the sky. 3. And Gôsûrvan continually went after him crying, and she kept up the cry thus: 'With whom may the guardianship over the creatures be left by thee?'

Chapter IV.

1. This was the highest predominance of Aharman, for he came on, with all the strength which he

[1] Literally, 'in fours and fives.'

[2] Bund. III, 24.

[3] Bund. IV, 2.

had, for the disfigurement of the creatures; and he took as much as one-third of the base of the sky[1], in a downward direction, into a confined *and* captive state, so that it was all dark *and* apart from the light, for it was itself, at the coming of the adversary, *his* enemy among the struggles for creation. 2. And this is opposing the renovation *of the universe*, for the greatest of all the other means of the fiend, when he *has* come in, are of like origin and strength this day, in the sleep[2] of the renovation, *as on* that when the enemy, who is fettered on coming in, is kept back.

3. Amid all this struggling were mingled the instigations of Aharman, *crying* thus: 'My victory *has* come completely, for the sky is split and disfigured by me with gloom and darkness, and taken by me as a stronghold; water is disfigured by me, and the earth, injured by darkness, is pierced by me; vegetation is withered by me, the ox is put to death by me, Gâyômard is made ill by me, and opposed to those revolving[3] are the glooms and planets arranged by me; no one *has* remained for me to take *and* pervert in combat except Aûharmazd, and of the earth *there* is only one man, who is alone, what is he able to do?'

4. And he sends Astô-vîdâd[4] upon him with the thousand decrepitudes (aûzvârânŏ) *and* diseases

[1] Compare Bund. III, 11. The involved style of Zâd-sparam is particularly conspicuous in this chapter.

[2] The word seems to be khvâpisnŏ.

[3] Meaning probably the zodiacal signs, but the word is doubtful, being spelt vardisnânŏ instead of vardisnânŏ. A very small alteration would change it into varôisnânŏ, 'believers,' but there were no earthly believers at the time alluded to.

[4] See Bund. III, 21, and XXVIII, 35.

which are his own, sicknesses of various kinds, so that they may make him ill *and* cause death. 5. Gâyômar*d* was not secured by them, and the reason was because it was a decree of appointing Time (zôrvânŏ) in the beginning of the coming in of Aharman, that: 'Up to thirty winters I appoint Gâyômar*d* unto brilliance and preservation of life.' 6. And his manifestation in the *celestial* sphere was through the forgiveness of criminals *and* instigators of confusion by *his* good works, and for that reason no opportunity was obtained by them during the extent of thirty years.

7. For in the beginning it was so appointed that the star Jupiter (Aûharmazd) was life towards the creatures, not through its own nature, but on account of *its* being within the control (band) of the luminaries[1]; and Saturn (Kêvân) was death towards the creatures. 8. Both were in their supremacy (bâlîst)[2] at the beginning of the crea-

[1] These luminaries are the fixed stars, especially the signs of the zodiac, to whose protection the good creation is committed (see Bund. II, 0–4); whereas Jupiter and all other planets are supposed to be, by nature, disturbers of the creation, being employed by Aharman for that purpose (see Mkh. VIII, 17–21, XII, 7–10, XXIV, 8, XXXVIII, 5).

[2] The most obvious meaning of bâlîst is 'greatest altitude,' and this is quite applicable to Jupiter when it attains its highest northern declination on entering Cancer, but it is not applicable to Saturn in Libra, when it has only its mean altitude. At the vernal equinox, however, which was the time of the beginning mentioned in the text, when Aharman invaded the creation (see Chap. II, 1), Libra is in opposition to the sun, and Saturn in Libra would be at its nearest approach to the earth, and would, therefore, attain its maximum brightness; while Jupiter in Cancer would be at its greatest altitude and shining with four-fifths of its maximum brightness. Both planets, therefore, were near their most conspicuous position (which would seem to be the meaning of bâlîst

tures, as Jupiter was in Cancer on rising, that which is also called *Gîvân* ('living')[1], for it is the place in which life is bestowed upon it; *and* Saturn was in Libra, in the great subterranean, so that its own venom and deadliness *became* more evident and more dominant thereby. 9. And it was when both shall not be supreme *that* Gâyômar*d* was to complete his own life, which is the thirty years[2] Saturn came not again to supremacy, that is, *to* Libra. 10. And at the time when Saturn came into Libra, Jupiter was in Capricornus[3], on account of whose own lowness[4], and the victory of Saturn over Jupiter, Gâyômar*d* suffered through those very defects which came and are to continue advancing, the continuance of that disfigurement which Aharman can bring upon the creatures of Aûharmazd.

---

here), and might each be supposed to be exercising its maximum astrological influence, so that the presumed deadly power of Saturn would be neutralised by the supposed reviving influence of Jupiter.

[1] This reading suits the context best, but the name can also be read Snahan, and in many other ways. It may possibly be the tenth lunar mansion, whose name is read Nahn in Bund. II, 3, by Pâzand writers, and which corresponds to the latter part of Cancer.

[2] Saturn revolves round the sun in about 29 years and 167 days, so it cannot return into opposition to the sun (or to its maximum brightness), at or near the vernal equinox, in less than thirty years.

[3] That is, while Saturn performs one revolution round the sun, Jupiter performs two and a half, which is very nearly correct, as Jupiter revolves round the sun in about 11 years and 315 days. Therefore, when the supposed deadly influence of Saturn has returned to its maximum, the supposed reviving influence of Jupiter is at its minimum, owing to the small altitude of Capricornus, and no longer counterbalances the destructive power of Saturn.

[4] There seems to be no other reasonable translation, but the MS. has lâ instead of râî, and niskasp instead of nisîv.

Chapter V.

1. When in like manner, and equally oppressively, as his (Aûharmazd's) creatures were disfigured, then through that same deterioration his own great glory was exhibited; for as he came within the sky[1] he maintains the spirit of the sky, like an intrepid warrior who has put on metal armour[2]; and the sky in its fortress[3] spoke these hasty, deceitful words to Aharman, thus: 'Now when thou shalt have come in I *will* not let thee back;' *and* it obstructed *him* until Aûharmazd prepared another rampart, that is stronger, around the sky, *which* is called 'righteous understanding' (ashôk âkâsîh). 2. And he arranged the guardian spirits[4] of the righteous who are warriors around that rampart, mounted on horses and spear in hand, in such manner as the hair on the head; and they acquired the appearance of prison guards who watch a prison from outside, and would not surrender the outer boundaries *to* an enemy descended from the inside.

3. Immediately, Aharman endeavours that he may go back to his own complete darkness, but he found no passage; and he recapitulated, with seeming misgiving, his fears of the worthiness which is to arise at the appearance of the renovation *of the universe at* the end of the nine thousand years.

4. As it is said in the Gâthas, thus[5]: 'So also

[1] See Chap. III, 2. [2] Compare Bund. VI, 2

[3] Or 'zodiacal signs,' for bûrgŏ means both.

[4] Bund. VI, 3, 4.

[5] This quotation from the Gâthas is from the Pahlavi Yas. XXX, 4, and agrees with the Pahlavi text, given in Dastûr Jâm-

both those spirits have approached together unto that which was the first creation—that is, both spirits have come to the body of Gâyômard. Whatever is in life *is so* through this purpose of Aûharmazd, that is: So that I may keep it alive; whatever is in lifelessness *is so* through this purpose[1] of the evil spirit, that is: So that I may utterly destroy it; and whatever is thus, is so until the last in the world, so that they (both spirits) come also on to the rest of mankind. And on account of the utter depravity of the wicked *their* destruction is fully seen, *and* so is the perfect meditation of him who is righteous, the hope of the eternity of Aûharmazd.'

5. And this was the first contest[2], *that of* the sky with Aharman.

Chapter VI.

1. And as he (Aharman) came secondly to the water, together with him rushed in, *on* the horse Cancer, he who is the most watery Tîstar; the equally watery *one*, that is called Avrak[3], gave forth a cloud *and* went down in the day; that is

âspji's old MS. of the Yasna in Bombay, very nearly as closely as Spiegel's edition does. It appears, therefore, that Zâd-sparam used the same Pahlavi translation of the Yasna as the Parsis do at the present day.

[1] The MS. here omits the words 'through this purpose,' by mistake.

[2] The word âr*d*îk, which Zâd-sparam uses instead of the kharah, 'conflict,' of Bund. V, 6, VI, 1, &c., may be connected with Pers. ârd, 'anger.'

[3] The ninth lunar mansion (see Bund. II, 3, VII, 1).

declared as the movement of the first-comers of the creatures. 2. Cancer became a zodiacal constellation (akhtar); it is the fourth constellation *of the zodiac* for this reason, because the month Tîr is the fourth month of the year[1].

3. And as Tîstar begged for assistance, Vohûman and Hôm are therefore co-operating with him in command, Bûrg of the waters and the water in mutual aid, and the righteous guardian spirits in keeping the peace. 4. He was converted into three forms, which are the form of a man, the form of a bull, *and* the form of a horse; and each form was distinguished in brilliance for ten nights, and lets its rain fall on the night for the destruction of noxious creatures. 5. The drops became each separately *like* a great bowl in which water is drawn; and as to that on *which* they are driven, they kill all the noxious creatures except the reptiles[2], who entered into the muddiness of the earth.

6. Afterwards, the wind spirit, in the form of a man, became manifest on the earth; radiant *and* tall he had a kind of wooden boot (mûkvŏ-aê-i dârînô) on *his* feet; *and* as when the life shall stir the body, the body is advancing with like vigour, *so* that spirit of the wind stirs forth the inner nature of the atmospheric wind, the wind pertaining to the whole earth is forth, and the water in its grasp is flung out from it to the sides of the earth, and its wide-formed ocean arose therefrom.

7. It (the ocean) keeps one-third of this earth[3],

[1] Bund. VII, 2–6 is paraphrased in §§ 2–6.

[2] Reading neksûnd barâ min khasandakânŏ instead of the MS. barâ nasûnd min khasandakânŏ.

[3] Compare Bund. XIII, 1, 2.

and among its contents are a thousand sources *and* fountains, such as are called lakes (var); a thousand water-fountains, whose water is from the ocean, come up from the lakes *and* are poured forth into it. 8. And the size of some of all the lakes and all the fountains of water is as much as a fast rider on an Arab horse, *who* continually compasses *and* canters around *them*, will attain in forty days, which is 1900[1] long leagues (parasang-i akarîk), each league *being* at least 20,000 feet.

9. And after the noxious creatures died[2], and the poison therefrom was mixed up in the earth, in order to utterly destroy that poison Tîstar went down into the ocean; and Apâôsh, the demon, hastened to meet him, and *at* the alarm of the first contest Tîstar was in terror (pard). 10. And he applied unto Aûharmazd, *who* brought such power unto Tîstar *as* arises through propitiation and praise and invoking by name[3], and they call forth such power unto Tîstar as *that of* ten vigorous horses, ten vigorous camels, ten vigorous bulls, ten mountains when hurled, and ten single-stream rivers when together. 11. And without alarm he drove out Apâôsh, the demon, and kept him away from the sources of the ocean.

12. And with a cup and measuring bowl, which possessed the diligence even of a guardian spirit (fravâhar), he seized many more handfuls of water,

[1] Bund. XIII, 2 has 1700, but as neither number is a multiple of forty in round numbers, it is probable that both are wrong, and that we ought to read 1600.

[2] Bund. VII, 7–14 is paraphrased in §§ 9–14.

[3] The Av. aokhtô-nâmana yasna of Tîstar Yt. 11, 23, 24.

and made *it* rain down[1] much more prodigiously, for destruction, drops as large as men's heads and bulls' heads, great and small. 13. And in that cloud and rain were the chastisement *and* beating which Tîstar and the fire Vâzist *inflicted* on the opposition of Apâôsh; the all-deciding (vispô-vi*k*îr) fire Vâzist struck down with a club of fire, all-deciding among the malevolent (kêbarânŏ).

14. Ten days *and* nights there was rain, and its darting[2] *was* the shooting of the noxious creatures; afterwards, the wind drove *it* to the shore of the wide-formed ocean, and it is portioned out into three, and three seas arose from it; they are called the Pûitîk, the Kamirî*d*, and the Gêhân-bûn[3]. 15. Of these the Pûitîk itself is salt water, in which is a flow *and* ebb[4]; and the control of its flow and ebb is connected with the moon, and by its continual rotation, in coming up *and* going down, that of the moon is manifested. 16. The wide-formed *ocean* stands forth on the south side as to (pavan) Albûr*z*[5], and the Pûitîk stands contiguous to it, and amidst it is the gulf (var) of Satavês, whose connection is with Satavês, which is the southern quarter. 17. In the activity of the sea, and in the increase and decrease of the moon, whose circuit is the whole of Iran, are the flow *and* ebb; of the

[1] Or perhaps 'made the cloud rain,' if madam vârânini*d* stands for a*v*ar vârânînî*d*.

[2] Reading partâ*v* instead of the MS. patûtâ*r*, 'powerful fury.'

[3] This is a variant of the *S*ahî-bûn or *G*âhî-bûn of Bund. XIII, 7, 15; the other two names differ but little from those given in Bund. XIII. In the MS. Pûîtîk occurs once, and Puitîk twice.

[4] Compare §§ 15–18 with Bund. XIII, 8–14.

[5] Compare Bund. XIII, 1.

curving tails in front of the moon two issue forth, *and* have an abode in Satavês; one is the up-drag *and* one the down-drag; through the up-drag occurs the flood, *and* through the down-drag occurs the ebb[1]. 18. And Satavês itself is a gulf (var) and side *arm* of the wide-formed ocean, for it drives back the impurity *and* turbidness which *come* from the salt sea, when they are continually going into the wide-formed ocean, with a mighty high wind[2], while that which is clear through purity goes into the Arêdvisûr sources of the wide-formed ocean. 19. Besides these four[3] there are the small seas[4].

20. And, afterwards, *there* were made to flow from Albûrz, out of its northern border, two rivers[5], which *were* the Arvand[6]—that is, the Diglît, *and* the flow

[1] This is even a more mechanical theory of the tides than that detailed in Bund. XIII, 13. Whether the 'curving tails' (gagak dunbak) are the 'horns' of the crescent moon is uncertain.

[2] By an accidental transposition of letters the MS. has âtarô, 'fire,' instead of vâtô, 'wind.'

[3] The ocean and three principal seas.

[4] Said to be twenty-three in number in Bund. XIII, 6.

[5] Bund. VII, 15, 16, XX, 1.

[6] This appears to be a later identification of the Arag, Arang, or Arêng river of Bund. XX with the Tigris, under its name Arvand, which is also found in the Bahman Yast (III, 21, 38) and the Âfrîn of the Seven Ameshâspends (§ 9). The Bundahis (XX, 8) seems to connect the Arag (Araxes?) with the Oxus and Nile, and describes the Diglat or Tigris as a distinct river (Bund. XX, 12). This difference is one of the indications of the Bundahis having been so old a book in the time of Zâd-sparam that he sometimes misunderstood its meaning, which could hardly have been the case if it had been written by one of his contemporaries. As the Persian empire has several times included part of Egypt, the Nile must have then been well known to the Persians as the great western river of their world. The last time they had possession of part of Egypt was, for about half a century, in the reigns of Khusrô

of that river *was* to those of the setting *sun* (val frôd-yehevundânŏ)—*and* the Vêh[1] was the river of the first-comers to the sun; formed as two horns they went on to the ocean. 21. After them eighteen[2] great rivers came out from the same Albûrz; *and* these twenty rivers, whose source is in Albûrz, go down into the earth, and arrive in Khvaniras.

22. Afterwards, two fountains of the sea are opened out for the earth[3], which are called the *Kêkast*[4]—a lake which has no cold wind, *and* on whose shore rests the triumphant fire Gûsnasp[5]—and, secondly, the Sôvar[6] which casts on *its* shores all turbidness, and keeps its own salt lake clear *and* pure, for it is like the semblance of an eye which casts out to *its* edges every ache and every impurity; and on account of its depth it is not reached to the bottom, for it goes into the ocean; and in its vicinity rests the beneficial fire Bûrzin-Mitrô[7].

23. And this was the second contest, which was with the water.

Chapter VII.

1. And as he (Aharman) came thirdly to the earth, which arrayed the whole earth against him—

Nôshirvân, Aûharmazd IV, and Khusrô Parviz; but since the early part of the seventh century the Tigris has practically been their extreme western limit; hence the change of the old Arag or Arang into the very similarly written Arvand, a name of the Tigris.

[1] See Bund. XX, 9.

[2] Bund. XX, 2, 7.

[3] Bund. VII, 14.

[4] Bund. XXII, 2.

[5] Written Gûsasp in Bund. XVII, 7, and Gûsnâsp in B. Yt. III, 30, 40, while the older form Visnâsp occurs in B. Yt. III, 10.

[6] The Sôvbar of Bund. VII, 14, XII, 24, XXII, 3.

[7] Bund. XVII, 8.

since *there was* an animation of the earth through the shattering — Albûrz grew up[1], which is the boundary of the earth, *and* the other[2] mountains, which are amid the circuit of the earth, come up 2244 in number[3]. 2. And by them the earth *was* bound together and arranged, and on them *was* the sprouting *and* growth of plants, wherefrom *was* the nourishment of cattle, and therefrom was the great advantage of assistance to men.

3. Even so it is declared that before the coming of the destroyer to the creatures, for a thousand years the substance of mountains was created in the earth—especially as antagonism came on the earth, *and* settled on *it* with injury—*and* it came up over the earth just like a tree *whose* branch *has* grown at the top and its root at the bottom. 4. The root of the mountains is passed on *from* one to the other, *and* is arranged in connection *with them*, and through it is produced the path *and* passage of water *from* below to above, so that the water may flow in it in such manner as blood in the veins, from all *parts* of the body to the heart, the latent vigour which they possess. 5. And, moreover, in six hundred years[4], at first, all the mountains apart from Albûrz were completed. 6. Albûrz was growing during eight hundred years[5]; in two hundred years it grew up to

[1] Bund. VIII, 1–4 is paraphrased in §§ 1–4.

[2] The MS. has âvânŏ, 'waters,' instead of avârîk, 'other,' which alters the meaning into, 'which is the boundary of the waters of the earth, *and* the mountains,' &c.

[3] Bund. XII, 2.

[4] Bund. VIII, 5, and XII, 1, have 'eighteen years.' As both numbers are written in ciphers it would be easy for either to be corrupted into the other.

[5] Bund. XII, 1.

the star station, in two hundred years up to the moon station, two hundred years up to the sun station, *and* two hundred years up to the sky. 7. After Albûrz the Aparsên mountain[1] is the greatest, as it is also called the Avar-rôyisn[2] ('up-growth') mountain, whose beginning is in Sagastân and its end unto Pârs *and* to *K*înistân[3].

8. This, too, is declared, that after the great rain in the beginning of the creation[4], *and* the wind's sweeping away the water to the ocean, the earth is in seven portions[5] a little above *it*, as the compact earth, after the rain, is torn up by the noise and wind *in* various places. 9. One portion, moreover, as much as one-half the whole earth, is in the middle, and in *each of* the six portions around is as much as Sagastân; moreover, as much as Sagastân is the measure *of what* is called a kêshvar ('region') for the reason that one was defined from the other by a kêsh ('furrow'). 10. The middle *one* is Khvaniras, of which Pârs is the centre, and those six regions are like a coronet (a*v*îsar) *around it*. 11. One part of the wide-formed ocean wound around it, among those six regions; the sea and forest seized upon the south side, *and* a lofty mountain grew up on the north, so that they might become separate, one from the other, *and* imperceptible.

12. This is the third contest, about the earth.

---

[1] The Apârsên of Bund. XII, 9.

[2] Written Apû-rôyisn, as if it were an Arabic hybrid meaning 'father of growth.'

[3] Bund. XII, 9. XXIV, 28, have Khûgîstân instead of *K*înistân; the latter appears to be an old name of the territory of Samarkand (see note to Bund. XII, 13).

[4] Literally, 'creature.'

[5] Bund. XI, 2–4 is paraphrased in §§ 8–11.

Chapter VIII.

1. As he (Aharman) came fourthly to the plants—which have struggled (kûkhshî-aîtŏ) against him with the whole vegetation—because the vegetation *was* quite dry [1], Amerôda*d*, by whom the essence of the world's vegetation [2] was seized upon, pounded it up small, and mixed *it* up with the rain-water of Tîstar. 2. After the rain the whole earth is discerned sprouting, and ten thousand [3] special species and a hundred thousand [4] additional species (levatman sar*d*akŏ) so grew as if *there were* a species of every kind; and those ten thousand species are provided for [5] keeping away the ten thousand [3] diseases.

3. Afterwards, the seed was taken up from those hundred thousand species of plants, *and* from the collection of seed the tree of all germs, amid the wide-formed ocean, was produced, from which all species of plants continually grow. 4. And the griffon bird (sênô mûrûvŏ) has his resting-place upon it; when he wanders forth *from* within it, he scatters the dry seed into the water, *and* it is rained back to the earth with the rain.

5. And in its vicinity the tree was produced *which is* the white Hôm, the counteractor of decrepitude,

---

[1] This chapter is a paraphrase of Bund. IX.

[2] Or, perhaps, 'the worldly characteristics of vegetation.'

[3] Written like 'one thousand,' but see the context and Bund. IX, 4.

[4] In Bund. IX, 4, the MSS. have '120,000,' which is probably wrong, as Bund. XXVII, 2, agrees with the text above.

[5] The MS. has barâ instead of pavan, a blunder due probably to some copyist reading the Huzvâris in Persian, in which language bih (= barâ) and bah (= pavan) are written alike. In Pâzand they are usually written b*e* and pa, respectively.

the reviver of the dead, *and* the immortalizer of the living.

6. This was the fourth contest, about the plants.

Chapter IX.

1. As he (Aharman) came fifthly to cattle—which struggled against him with all the animals—and likewise as the primeval ox[1] passed away, from the nature of the vegetable principle it possessed, fifty-five[2] species of grain and twelve species of medicinal plants grew from *its* various members; *and* forasmuch as they should see from which member each one *proceeds*, it is declared in the Dâmdâd *Nask*[3]. 2. And every plant grown from a member

[1] See Chaps. II, 6, III, 1, and Bund. IV, 1, X, 1, XIV, 1.

[2] The MS. has 'fifty-seven' in ciphers, but Bund. X, 1, XIV, 1, XXVII, 2, have 'fifty-five' in words.

[3] This was the fourth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard, which gives a very short and superficial account of its contents. But, according to the Dînî-vagarkard and the Rivâyats of Kâmah Bahrah, Narîmân Hôshang, and Barzû Qiyâmu-d-dîn, it was the fifth nask, and was called Dvâzdah-hâmâst (or homâst). For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkard, see Haug's Essays, p. 127. The Rivâyat of Kâmah Bahrah, which has a few more words than the other Rivâyats, gives the following account (for the Persian text of which, see 'Fragmens relatifs à la religion de Zoroastre,' par Olshausen et Jules Mohl):—

'Of the fifth the name is Dvâzdah-homâst, and the interpretation of this is "the book about help" (dar imdâd, but this is probably a corruption of dâmdâd). And this book has thirty-two sections (kardah) that the divine and omnipotent creator sent down, in remembrance of the beginning of the creatures of the superior world and inferior world, and *it is* a description of the whole of them and of that which God, the most holy and omnipotent, mentioned about the sky, earth, and water, vegetation and

promotes that member, as it is said that there *where* the ox scattered *its* marrow [1] on to the earth, grain afterwards grew up, corn [2] and sesame, vetches [3] *and* peas; so sesame, on account of [4] *its* marrow quality, is itself a great thing for developing marrow. 3. And it is also said that from the blood is the vine [5], a great vegetable thing—as wine itself is blood—for more befriending the sound quality of the blood. 4. And it is said that from the nose is the pulse (mây*s* or mâsah) which is called dônak, and was a variety of sesame (*s*amagâ) [6], *and it is* for other noses.

---

fire, man and quadrupeds, grazing and flying *animals*, and what he produced for their advantage and use, and the like. Secondly, the resurrection and *heavenly* path, the gathering and dispersion, and the nature of the circumstances of the resurrection, as regards the virtuous and evil-doers, through the weight of every action they perform for good and evil.'

This description corresponds very closely with what the Bundahi*s* must have been, before the addition of the genealogical and chronological chapters at the end; and Zâ*d*-sparam mentions in his text here, and again in § 16, particulars regarding the Dâmdâ*d* which also occur in the Bundahi*s* (XIV, 2, 14–18, 21–24). There can be very little doubt, therefore, that the Bundahi*s* was originally a translation of the Dâmdâ*d*, though probably abridged; and the text translated in this volume is certainly a further abridgment of the original Bundahi*s*, or Zand-âkâs. Whether the Avesta text of the Dâmdâ*d* was still in existence in the time of Zâ*d*-sparam is uncertain, as he would apply the name to the Pahlavi text. At the present time it is very unusual for a copyist to write the Pahlavi text without its Avesta, when the latter exists, but this may not always have been the case.

[1] Or 'brains.'

[2] Supposing the MS. galôlag is a corruption of gallak (Pers. ghallah).

[3] Assuming the MS. alûnŏ or arvanŏ to be a corruption of alûm or arzanŏ.

[4] Reading râî instead of lâ. [5] Compare Bund. XIV, 2.

[6] Either this sentence is very corrupt in the MS. or it cannot be

5. And it is also said that from the lungs are the rue-like herbs[1] *which* heal, and are for the lung-disease of cattle. 6. This, rooted amid the heart, is thyme, from which is Vohûman's thorough withstanding of the stench of Akôman[2], and *it is* for that which *proceeds* from the sick and yawners.

7. Afterwards, the brilliance of the seed, seized upon, by strength, from the seed *which* was the ox's, they would carry *off* from it, *and* the brilliance was intrusted to the angel of the moon[3]; in a place therein that seed was thoroughly purified by the light of the moon, and was restored in its many qualities, and made fully infused with life (gânvarhômand). 8. Forth from there it produced for Aîrân-vêg, first, two oxen, a pair, male and female[4], *and*, afterwards, other species, until the completion of the 282 species[5]; and they were discernible as far as two long leagues *on* the earth. 9. Quadrupeds walked forth on the land, fish swam in the water, *and* birds flew *in* the atmosphere; *in* every two, at the time good eating is enjoyed, a longing (âvdahân) arose therefrom, and pregnancy and birth.

10. Secondly, their subdivision is thus:—First, they are divided into three, that is, quadrupeds walking on the earth, fish swimming in the water,

reconciled with the corresponding clause of Bund. XIV, 2. Altering dônak and gûnak into gandanak, and *s*amagâ into *s*amas*d*ar, we might read, 'from the nose is mây*s*, which is called the leek, and the leek was an onion;' but this is doubtful, and leaves the word mây*s* unexplained.

[1] The MS. has gôspendânŏ, 'cattle,' instead of sipandânŏ, 'rue herbs.'

[2] See Bund. I, 24, 27, XXVIII, 7, XXX, 29.

[3] Bund. X, 2, XIV, 3.

[4] Bund. X, 3, XIV, 4.

[5] Bund. X, 3, XIV, 13.

and birds flying in the atmosphere. 11. Then, into five classes[1], that is, the quadruped which is round-hoofed, the double-hoofed, the five-clawed, the bird, *and* the fish, whose dwellings are in five places, *and* which are called aquatic, burrowing, oviparous, wide-travelling, *and* suitable for grazing. 12. The aquatic are fish *and* every beast of burden, cattle, wild beast, dog, *and* bird which enters the water; the burrowing are the marten (samûr) and musk *animals*, and all other dwellers and movers in holes; the oviparous are birds of every kind; the wide-travelling sprang away for help, and are also those of a like kind; those suitable for grazing are whatever are kept grazing in a flock.

13. And, afterwards, they were divided into genera, as the round-hoofed are one, *which* is all called 'horse;' the double-hoofed are many, as the camel and ox, the sheep and goat, *and* others double-hoofed; the five-clawed are the dog, hare, musk *animals*, marten, *and* others; then are the birds, and then the fish. 14. And then they were divided into species[2], as eight species of horse, two species of camel, ten[3] species of ox, five species of sheep, five species of goat, ten of the dog, five of the hare, eight of the marten, eight of the musk *animals*, 110 of the birds, and ten of the fish; some are counted for the pigs, and with all those declared *and* all those undeclared *there were*, at first, 282 species[4]; *and* with the species within species *there were* a thousand varieties.

[1] Bund. XIV, 8–12.

[2] Bund. XIV, 13–23, 26, 27.

[3] Bund. XIV, 17 says 'fifteen,' which is probably correct.

[4] Only 181 species are detailed or 'declared' here.

15. The birds are distributed[1] into eight groups (rîstakŏ), and from that which is largest to that which is smallest *they* are so spread about as *when* a man, who is sowing grain, first scatters abroad *that of* heavy weight, then that which is middling, *and* afterwards that which is small.

16. And of the whole of the species, as enumerated a second time in the Dâmdâd *Nask*[2], and written by me in the manuscript (nipîk) of 'the summary enumeration of races[3]'—this is a lordly[4] summary—the matter which is shown is, about the species of horses, the first is the Arab, and the chief of them[5] is white *and* yellow-eared, and secondly the Persian, the mule, the ass, the wild ass, the water-horse, *and* others. 17. Of the camel *there are* specially two, *that for* the plain, *and* the mountain *one which* is double-humped. 18. Among the species of ox are the white, mud-coloured, red, yellow, black, and dappled, the elk, the buffalo, the camel-leopard[6], the ox-fish, *and* others. 19. Among sheep are those having tails and those which are tailless, also the wether and the Kûrisk *which*, because of its trampling the hills, *its* great horn, and also being suitable

[1] Bund. XIV, 25.

[2] See § 1; the particulars which follow are also found in Bund. XIV, 14–18, 21–24, showing that the Bundahis must be derived from the Dâmdâd.

[3] The title of this work, in Pahlavi, is Tôkhm-aûsmarisnîh-i hangardîkŏ, but it is not known to be extant.

[4] Reading marâk (Chaldee מָרָא), but this is doubtful, though the Iranian final k is often added to Semitic Huzvâris forms ending with â. It may be minâk, 'thinking, thoughtful,' or a corruption of manîk, 'mine,' in which last case we should translate, 'this is a summary of mine.'

[5] Bund. XXIV, 6.

[6] Literally, 'camel-ox-leopard.'

for ambling, became the steed of Mânûskîhar. 20. Among goats are the ass-goat, the Arab, the fawn (varîkŏ), the roe, *and* the mountain goat. 21. Among martens are the white ermine, the black marten, the squirrel, the beaver (khaz), and others. 22. Of musk *animals* with a bag, one is the Bîsh-musk—which eats the Bîsh poison and does not die through it, and it is created for the great advantage that it should eat the Bîsh, *and* less *of it* should succeed in poisoning the creatures—*and* one is a musk *animal* of a black colour which they desired (ayûftŏ) who were bitten *by* the fanged serpent—as the serpent of the mountain water-courses (makŏ) is called—which is numerous on the river-banks; *one* throws the same unto it for food, which it eats, *and* then the serpent enters its body, when his[1] serpent, at the time *this* happens, feeds upon the same belly in which the serpent is, and he will become clear from that malady. 23. Among birds two were produced of a different character from the rest, and those are the griffon bird *and* the bat, which have teeth *in* the mouth, *and* suckle *their* young with animal milk from the teat.

24. This is the fifth contest, as to animals.

Chapter X.

1. As he (Aharman) came sixthly *to* Gâyômar*d* there was arrayed against *him*, with Gâyômar*d*, the

[1] This appears to be the meaning here of amat zak garzakŏ, but the whole sentence is a fair sample of Zâd-sparam's most involved style of writing. By feeding the black musk animal with snakes the effect of a snake-bite, experienced by the feeder, is supposed to be neutralized.

pure propitious liturgy (mânsarspend), as heard from Gâyômard; *and* Aûharmazd, in pure meditation, considered that which is good and righteousness as destruction of the fiend (drûgô). 2. And when he (Gâyômard) passed away eight kinds of mineral of a metallic character arose from *his* various members; they are gold, silver, iron, brass, tin, lead, quicksilver (âvgînakŏ), and adamant; *and* on account of the perfection of gold it is produced from the life and seed.

3. Spendarmad received the gold of the dead Gâyômard[1], *and* it was forty years in the earth. 4. At the end of the forty years, *in* the manner of a Rîvâs-*plant*, Mashya *and* Mashyôî[2] came up, and, one joined to the other, *were* of like stature *and* mutually adapted[3]; and its middle, on which a glory came, through their like stature[4], *was* such that it was not clear which is the male and which the female, and which is the one with the glory which Aûharmazd created. 5. This is that glory for which man is, indeed, created, as it is thus said in revela-

[1] Compare Bund. XV, 1.

[2] The MS. has Mashâî Mashâyê, but see Bund. XV, 6. The Avesta forms were probably mashya mashyôi (or mashyê), which are regular nominatives dual, masculine and feminine, of mashya, 'mortal,' and indicate that they were usually coupled together in some part of the Avesta which is no longer extant. Pâzand writers have found it easy to read Mashyanî instead of Mashyôî.

[3] Reading ham-basnŏ ham-dakhîk, but whether this is more likely to be the original reading than the ham-badisn va ham-dasak of Bund. XV, 2, is doubtful. The last epithet here might also be read ham-sabîk, 'having the same shirt,' but this is an improbable meaning.

[4] It is evident that ham-bandisnîh, 'mutual connection,' in accordance with Bund. XV, 3, would be preferable to the ham-basnŏîh, 'like stature,' of this text.

tion: 'Which existed before, the glory[1] or the body?' And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'The glory was created by me before; afterwards, for him who is created, the glory is given a body so that it may produce activity, and its body is created only for activity.' 6. And, afterwards, they changed from the shape of a plant into the shape of man[2], *and* the glory went spiritually into them.

Chapter XI.

1. As he (Aharman) came seventhly to fire, which was all together *against* him, the fire *separated* into five kinds[3], which are called the Propitious, the Good diffuser, the Aûrvâzîst, the Vâzîst, *and* the Supremely-*benefiting*. 2. And it produced the Propitious fire itself in heaven (garô*d*mân); its manifestation is in the fire which is burning on the earth, and its propitiousness is this, that all the kinds are of its nature. 3. *The Good diffuser* is that which is in men and animals[4], and its business *consists* in the digestion of the food, the sleeping of the

[1] The old word nismô, 'soul' (see Bund. XV, 3, 4), has become corrupted here (by the omission of the initial stroke) into gadman, 'glory.' This corruption may be due either to Zâd-sparam not understanding the word (in which case the Bundahis must have been an old book in his time), or else to some later copyist confounding the old word for 'soul' with the better-known 'glory' of the Iranian sovereigns.

[2] Bund. XV, 5.

[3] Bund. XVII, 1. Three of the Avesta names are here translated, the first two being the Spênist and Vohu-fryân, which are the fifth and second in the Bundahis, and the fifth being the Berezisavang, which is the first in the Bundahis.

[4] See Bund. XVII, 2.

body, *and* the brightening of the eyes. 4. The Aûrvâzîst is that which is in plants, in whose seed *it* is formed, and its business *consists* in piercing the earth, warming the chilled water[1] and producing the qualities and fragrance of plants and blossoms therefrom, and elaborating the ripened produce into many fruits. 5. And the Vâzîst is that which has its motion in a cloud, and its business *consists* in destroying the atmospheric gloom and darkness, and making the thickness of the atmosphere fine and propitious in quality, sifting the hail, moderately warming the water which the cloud holds, *and* making sultry weather showery. 6. The Supremely-benefiting, like the sky, is that glory whose lodgment is in the Behrâm fire[2], as the master of the house is over the house, *and* whose propitious power *arises* from the growing brightness of the fire, the blazing forth in[3] the purity of the place, the praise of God (yazdânŏ), *and* the practice of good works. 7. And its business is *that* it struggles with the spiritual fiend, it watches the forms of the witches—who walk up from the river[4], wear woven clothing, disturb the luminaries by the concealment of stench, *and* by witchcraft injure the creatures—and the occurrences of destruction, burning, and celebration of witchcraft, especially at night; being an assistant of Srôsh the righteous.

---

[1] Reading mayâ-i afsar*d*înî*d*ŏ tâftanŏ instead of the seemingly unmeaning mayâ asar*d*înî*d*ŏ âftanŏ of the MS.

[2] The Verehrânŏ âtâsh, or sacred fire of the fire-temples.

[3] Reading pavan instead of barâ (see p. 176, note 5).

[4] Or 'sea' (darîyâ*v*ŏ). This long-winded sentence is more involved and obscure in the original than in the translation.

8. And in the beginning of the creation[1] the whole earth was delivered over into the guardianship of the sublime Frôbak fire, the mighty Gûsnasp fire, and the beneficial Bûrzîn-Mitrô fire[2], *which* are like priest, warrior, and husbandman. 9. The place of the fire Frôbak was formed *on* the Gadman-hômand ('glorious') mountain in Khvârizem[3], the fire Gûsnasp *was* on the Asnavand mountain in Âtarô-pâtakân, *and* the fire Bûrzîn-Mitrô on the Rêvand mountain which is in the Ridge *of* Vistâsp, and its material manifestation in the world was the most complete.

10. In the reign of Hôshâng[4], when men were continually going forth to the *other* regions (kêshvar) on the ox Srûvô[5], one night, half-way, while admiring the fires, the fire-stands which were prepared in three places on the back of the ox, *and* in which the fire was, fell into the sea, and the substance of that one great fire *which* was manifest, is divided into three, *and* they established *it* on the three fire-stands, and it became itself three glories whose lodgments are in the Frôbak fire, the Gûsnasp fire, and the Bûrzîn-Mitrô[6].

---

[1] Literally, 'creature.'

[2] The epithets of these three sacred fires are, respectively, vargân, tagîkŏ, and pûr-sûdŏ in Pahlavi.

[3] See Bund. XVII, 5, 7, 8.

[4] Bund. XVII, 4 says, 'in the reign of Takhmôrup,' his successor.

[5] Sarsaok or Srisaok in the Bundahis.

[6] The remainder of 'the sayings of Zâd-sparam, about the meeting of the beneficent spirit *and* the evil spirit,' have no special reference to the Bundahis. They treat of the following matters:—

The coming of the religion, beginning in the time of Frâsîyâv and Mânûskîhar, with an anecdote of Kâî-ûs and the hero Srîtô (Av. Thrita). The manifestation of the glory of Zaratûst

before his birth. The begetting of Zaratûśt through the drinking of hôm-juice and cow's milk infused, respectively, with his guardian spirit and glory, as declared in the manuscript on 'the guidance of worship.' The connection of Zaratûśt with Aûharmazd, traced back through his genealogy as far as Gâyômard. The persistent endeavours of the fiends to destroy Zaratûśt at the time of his birth, and how they were frustrated. His receiving the religion from Aûharmazd, with another anecdote of Kâi-ûs and Śritô, and of Zaratûśt's exclamation on coming into the world. The enmity borne to him by five brothers of the Karapân family, and how it was frustrated; his own four brothers, and some of his wonderful deeds. The worthiness of his righteousness; his compassionate and liberal nature; his giving up worldly desires; his pity; his good selection of a wife; and what is most edifying for the soul. What occurred when he was thirty years old, and his being conducted by the archangel Vohûman to the assembly of the spirits. The questions asked by Zaratûśt, and Aûharmazd's replies thereto. The seven questions he asked of the seven archangels in seven different places, in the course of one winter. [Westergaard's MS. K35 ends in the middle of the second of these questions.] The five dispositions of priests, and the ten admonitions. The three preservatives of religion, with particulars about the Gâthas and the connection of the Ahunavar with the Nasks. Zaratûśt's obtaining one disciple, Mêdyôk-mâh, in the first ten years, and the acceptance of the religion by Vistâsp two years afterwards.

The second of the writings of Zâd-sparam consists of his 'sayings about the formation of men out of body, life, and soul;' and the third (which is imperfect in all known MSS.) contains his 'sayings about producing the renovation *of the universe*.'

BAHMAN YAST,

OR

ZAND-I VOHÛMAN YASNO,

OF WHICH ZAND, OR COMMENTARY,

THIS WORK SEEMS TO BE AN EPITOME

OBSERVATIONS.

1–5. (The same as on p. 2.)

6. Abbreviations used are:—Av. for Avesta. Bund. for Bundahiś, as translated in this volume. Dâd. for Dâdistân-i Dînîk. Gr. for Greek. Haug's Essays, for Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsis, by Martin Haug, 2nd edition. Huz. for Huzvâriś. Pahl. for Pahlavi. Pâz. for Pâzand. Pers. for Persian. Sans. for Sanskrit. Sls. for Shâyast lâ-shâyast, as translated in this volume. SZS. for Selections of Zâd-sparam, as translated in this volume. Vend. for Vendîdâd, ed. Spiegel. Yas. for Yasna, ed. Spiegel. Yt. for Yaśt, ed. Westergaard.

7. The manuscripts mentioned in the notes are:—

K20 (about 500 years old), No. 20 in the University Library at Kopenhagen.

Pâz. MSS. (modern), No. 22 of the Haug Collection in the State Library at Munich, and a copy of one in the library of the high-priest of the Parsis at Bombay.

Pers. version (composed A.D. 1496, copied A.D. 1679) in a Rivâyat MS., No. 29 of the University Library at Bombay.

BAHMAN YAST.

Chapter I.

0. *May* the gratification of the creator Aûharmazd, the beneficent, the developer, the splendid, and glorious, and the benediction of the archangels, which *constitute* the pure, good religion of the Mazdayasnians, *be* vigour of body, long life, and prosperous wealth for him whose writing I am [1].

1. As [2] it is declared by the Stûdgar *Nask* [3] that

[1] Or, possibly, '*for* whom I am written,' the meaning of mûn yektîbûnîhêm being not quite clear. In fact, the construction of the whole of this initial benediction is rather obscure.

[2] It is possible that this is to be read in connection with Chap. II, 1, with the meaning that 'as it is declared by the Stûdgar *Nask* that Zaratûst asked for immortality from Aûharmazd, *so* in the Vohûman Yast commentary it is declared that he asked for it a second time.' This introductory chapter is altogether omitted in both the Pâz. MSS. which have been examined, but it is given in the Pers. version. It is also omitted in the epitome of the Bahman Yast contained in the Dabistân (see Shea's translation, vol. i. pp. 264–271).

[3] This was the first nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard, which calls it Sûdkar; but according to the Dînî-vagarkard and the Rivâyats it was the second nask, called Stûdgar or Istûdgar. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkard (which agrees with the account in the Rivâyats), see Haug's Essays, p. 126. In the Dînkard, besides a short description of this Nask, given in the eighth book, there is also a detailed account of the contents of each of its fargards, or chapters, occupying twenty-five quarto pages of twenty-two lines each, in the ninth book. From this detailed statement it appears

Zaratûst asked for immortality from Aûharmazd, then Aûharmazd displayed the omniscient wisdom to Zaratûst, and through it he beheld the root of a tree, on which were four branches, one golden, one of silver, one of steel, and one was mixed up with iron. 2. Thereupon he reflected in this *way*, that this was seen in a dream, and when he arose from sleep Zaratûst spoke thus: 'Lord of the spirits and earthly existences! it appears that I saw the root of a tree, on which were four branches.'

3. Aûharmazd spoke to Zaratûst the Spîtâmân[1] thus: 'That root of a tree which thou sawest, and those four branches, are the four periods which *will*

---

that the passage mentioned here, in the text, constituted the seventh fargar*d* of the Nask, the contents of which are detailed as follows:—

'The seventh fargar*d*, Tâ-ve-ratŏ (Av. tâ v*e* urvâtâ, Yas. XXXI, 1), is about the exhibition to Zaratûst of the nature of the four periods in the Zaratûstian millennium (hazangrôk zim, "thousand winters"). First, the golden, that in which Aûharmazd displayed the religion to Zaratûst. Second, the silver, that in which Vistâsp received the religion from Zaratûst. Third, the steel, the period within which the organizer of righteousness, Âtarô-pâ*d* son of Mârspend, was born. Fourth, the period mingled with iron is this, in which is much propagation of the authority of the apostate *and* other villains (sarîtarânŏ), along with destruction of the reign of religion, the weakening of every kind of goodness *and* virtue, *and* the departure of honour *and* wisdom from the countries of Iran. In the same period is a recital of the many perplexities and torments of the period for that desire (girâyîh) of the life of the good which consists in seemliness. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness (Av. ashem vohû vahistem astî, Yas. XXVII, 14, W.).'

If this be a correct account of the contents of this fargar*d*, the writer was evidently consulting a Pahlavi version of the Nask, composed during the later Sasanian times.

[1] Generally understood to mean 'descendant of Spitama,' who was his ancestor in the ninth generation (see Bund. XXXII, 1).

come. 4. That of gold is when I and thou converse, *and* King Vistâsp shall accept the religion, and shall demolish the figures of the demons, *but* they *themselves* remain for[1] . . . concealed proceedings. 5. And that of silver is the reign of Ard*a*khshîr[2] the Kayân king (Kai shah), and that of steel is the reign of the glorified (anôshakrûbân) Khûsrô son of Kêvâ*d*[3], and that which was mixed with iron is the evil sovereignty of the demons with dishevelled hair[4] of the race of Wrath[5], and when it is the end of the tenth hundredth winter (satô zim) of thy millennium, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân!'

6. It is declared in the commentary (zand)[6] of the Vohûman Yast, Horvada*d* Yast, and Âstâ*d* Yast

[1] A word is lost here in K20 and does not occur in the other copies and versions, nor can it be supplied from the similar phrase in Chap. II, 16. The meaning of the sentence appears to be that Vistâsp destroyed the idols, but the demons they represented still remained, in a spiritual state, to produce evil.

[2] See Chap. II, 17.

[3] Khusrô Nôshirvân son of Qubâd, in modern Persian, who reigned in A. D. 531–579. Kêvâ*d* is usually written Kavâ*d*.

[4] The epithet vigâr*d*-vars may also mean 'dressed-hair,' but the term in the text is the more probable, as the Persian version translates it by kushâdah muî, 'uncovered hair.' That it is not a name, as assumed by Spiegel, appears clearly from the further details given in Chap. II, 25.

[5] Or, 'the progeny of Aêshm,' the demon. Wrath is not to be understood here in its abstract sense, but is personified as a demon. It is uncertain whether the remainder of this sentence belongs to this § or the next.

[6] If there were any doubt about zand meaning the Pahlavi translation, this passage would be important, as the Avesta of the Horvada*d* (Khordâd) and Âstâ*d* Yasts is still extant, but contains nothing about the heretic Mazdîk or Mazdak (see Chap. II, 21). No Avesta of the Vohûman Yast is now known.

that, during this time, the accursed Mazdîk son of Bâmdâd, who is opposed to the religion, comes into notice, and is to cause disturbance among those in the religion of God (yazdân). 7. *And* he, the glorified *one*[1], summoned Khûsrô son of Mâh-dâd and Dâd-Aûharmazd of Nishâpûr, who were high-priests of Âtarô-pâtakân, and Âtarô-frôbâg the undeceitful (akadbâ), Âtarô-pâd, Âtarô-Mitrô, and Bakht-âfrîd to *his* presence, and he demanded of them a promise[2], thus: 'Do not keep these Yasts in concealment, *and* do not teach the commentary except among your relations[3].' 8. *And* they made the promise unto Khûsrô.

Chapter II.

1. In the Vohûman Yast commentary (zand) it is declared[4] that Zaratûst asked for immortality from

[1] That is, Khusrô Nôshirvân. As the names of his priests and councillors stand in K20 they can hardly be otherwise distributed than they are in the text, but the correctness of the MS. is open to suspicion. Dâd-Aûharmazd was a commentator who is quoted in Chap. III, 16, and in the Pahl. Yas. XI, 22; Âtarô-frôbâg was another commentator mentioned in Sls. I, 3; and Âtarô-pâd and Bakht-âfrîd are names well known in Pahlavi literature, the former having been borne by more than one individual (see Sls. I, 3, 4).

[2] The Pers. version says nothing about this promise, but states that Khûsrô sent a message to the accursed Mazdak, requiring him to reply to the questions of this priestly assembly on pain of death, to which he assented, and he was asked ten religious questions, but was unable to answer one; so the king put him to death immediately.

[3] A similar prohibition, addressed to Zaratûst, as regards the Avesta text, is actually found in the Horvadad Yt. 10.

[4] This seems to imply that this text is not the commentary

Aûharmazd a second time, *and* spoke thus: 'I am Zaratûst, more righteous and more efficient among these thy creatures, O creator! when *thou* shalt *make* me[1] immortal, as the tree opposed to harm[2], and Gôpatshah, Gôst-i Fryân, *and* Ḱîtrôk-miyân son of Vistâsp, who is Pêshyôtanû, were made[3]. 2. When thou shalt make me immortal they in thy good religion *will* believe that the upholder of religion, who receives from Aûharmazd his pure *and* good religion of the Mazdayasnians, will become immortal; then those men *will* believe in thy good religion.'

3. Aûharmazd spoke[4] thus: 'When I shall make thee immortal, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! then Tûr-i Brâdarvash the Karap[5] will become immortal, and

itself, but merely an epitome of it. The Pâz. MSS. which have been examined, begin with this chapter.

[1] Or, 'when I shall *become*;' the verb is omitted by mistake in K20.

[2] Three of these immortals are mentioned in Bund. XXIX. 5, and Gôst-i Fryân is included in a similar enumeration in Dâd. (Reply 89). The tale of Gôst-i Fryân (Av. Yôistô yô Fryananãm, of Âbân Yt. 81 and Fravardîn Yt. 120) has been published with 'The Book of Ardâ-Vîrâf,' ed. Hoshangji and Haug.

[3] Or, 'became;' most of this verb is torn off in K20.

[4] The verb is placed before its nominative in the Pahlavi text, both here and in most similar sentences, which is an imitation of the Avesta, due probably to the text being originally translated from an Avesta book now lost, or, at any rate, to its author's wish that it might appear to be so translated. In such cases of inverted construction, when the verb is in a past tense, the Pahlavi idiom often requires a pronominal suffix, corresponding to the nominative, to be added to the first word in the sentence; thus, gûftŏs Aûharmazd, or afas gûft Aûharmazd, does not mean 'Aûharmazd spoke to him (or said it),' but merely 'Aûharmazd spoke' (lit. 'it was said by him, Aûharmazd').

[5] According to an untranslated passage in the Selections of Zâd-sparam, mentioned in the note on p. 187, this is the name of

when Tûr-i Brâdarvash the Karap shall become immortal the resurrection *and* future existence are not possible.'

4. Zaratûst seemed uneasy about *it* in *his* mind[1]; *and* Aûharmazd, through the wisdom of omniscience, knew what was thought by Zaratûst the Spîtâmân with the righteous spirit, and he[2] took hold of Zaratûst's hand. 5. And he, Aûharmazd the propitious spirit, creator of the material world, the righteous *one*, even he put the omniscient wisdom, in the shape of water, on the hand of Zaratûst, and said to him thus: 'Devour it.'

---

one of the five brothers in the Karapân family of sorcerers, who were enemies of Zaratûst during his childhood. Their names, as written in SZS., may be read as follows, 'Brâdarvakhsh, Brâdrôyisnŏ, Tûr Brâgrêsh, Azânŏ, and Nasm,' and the first is also called 'Tûr-i Brâdarvakhsh;' they are described as descendants of the sister of Manûskîhar. In the seventh book of the Dînkard a wizard, who endeavours to injure Zaratûst in his childhood, is called 'Tûr-i Brâdrôk-rêsh, the Karapŏ,' and was probably the third brother, whose name (thus corrected) indicates brâthrô-raêsha as its Avesta form. Karap or Karapân in all these passages is evidently the name of a family or caste, probably the Av. karapanô which Haug translates by 'performers of (idolatrous) sacrificial rites,' in connection with Sans. kalpa, 'ceremonial ritual' (see Haug's Essays, pp. 289–291).

[1] K20 has 'among the spirits;' the word mînisn having become maînôkân by the insertion of an extra stroke.

[2] Reading afas instead of minas (Huz. of agas, 'from or by him,' which is written with the same letters as afas, 'and by him'), not only here, but also in §§ 5, 7, 9. The copyist of K20 was evidently not aware that afas is a conjunctive form, but confounded it with the prepositional form agas, as most Parsis and some European scholars do still. The Sasanian inscriptions confirm the reading afas for the conjunctive form; and Nêryôsang, the learned Parsi translator of Pahlavi texts into Pâzand and Sanskrit some four centuries ago, was aware of the difference between the two forms, as he transcribes them correctly into Pâz. vas and azas.

6. And Zaratûst devoured *some* of it; thereby the omniscient wisdom was intermingled with Zaratûst, and seven days and nights Zaratûst was in the wisdom of Aûharmazd. 7. And Zaratûst beheld the men and cattle in the seven regions of the earth, where the many fibres of hair of every one are, and whereunto the end of each fibre holds on the back. 8. And he beheld whatever trees and shrubs *there were*, and how many roots of plants were in the earth of Spendarmad, where *and* how they had grown, *and* where they were mingled.

9. And the seventh day and night he (Aûharmazd) took back the omniscient wisdom from Zaratûst, and Zaratûst reflected in this *way*, that I have seen *it* in a pleasant dream produced by Aûharmazd, *and* I am not surfeited with the dream. 10. And he took both hands, rubbed his body (kerp) again, *and spoke*[1] thus: 'I have slept a long time, *and* am not surfeited with this pleasant dream produced by Aûharmazd.'

11. Aûharmazd said to the righteous Zaratûst thus: 'What was seen in the pleasant dream produced by Aûharmazd?'

12. Zaratûst spoke thus: 'O Aûharmazd, propitious spirit! creator of the material world, righteous creator! I have seen a celebrity (khunîd) with much wealth, whose soul, infamous in the body, was hungry (gurs)[2] and jaundiced and in hell, and he did not seem to me exalted; and I saw a beggar with no wealth and helpless, and his soul was thriving (farpîh) in paradise, and[3] he seemed to me exalted.

[1] This verb is omitted in K20 by mistake.

[2] Or else 'dirty.'

[3] Reading afam instead of minam, both here and in § 14; the

13. [And I saw a wealthy *man* without children, and he did not seem to me exalted;][1] and I saw a pauper with many children, and he seemed to me exalted. 14. And I saw a tree on which were seven branches, one golden, one of silver, one brazen, one of copper, [one of tin][2], one of steel, and one was mixed up with iron.'

15. Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'O Zaratûšt the Spîtâmân! this is what I say beforehand, the one tree which thou sawest is the world which I, Aûharmazd, created; and those seven branches thou sawest are the seven periods which *will* come. 16. And that which was golden is the reign of King Vištâsp, when I and thou converse about religion, *and* Vištâsp shall accept that religion and shall demolish the figures of the demons, and the demons desist from demonstration into concealed proceedings; Aharman and the demons rush back to darkness, and care for water, fire, plants, and the earth of Spendarmad[3] becomes apparent. 17. And that which was of silver[4] is the reign of Ardashîr[5] the

---

copyist of K20 having confounded these two words, like those mentioned in the note on § 4.

[1] The passage in brackets is omitted in K20, but is supplied from the Pâz. MSS., being evidently necessary to complete the contrast. It occurs also in the Pers. version.

[2] Supplied from the Pâz. and Pers. versions, being omitted here in K20, though occurring in § 20.

[3] The female archangel who has charge of the earth (see Bund. I, 26).

[4] The Pâz. MSS. omit the description of the silver age.

[5] Usually identified with Artaxerxes Longimanus, but his long reign of 112 years may include most of the Achæmenian sovereigns down to Artaxerxes Mnemon, several of whom are called Ahasuerus or Artaxerxes in the biblical books of Ezra and Esther. See Bund. XXXI, 30, XXXIV, 8.

Kayân (Kaî), whom[1] they call Vohûman son of Spend-dâd[2], who is he who separates the demons from men, scatters *them* about, and makes the religion current *in* the whole world. 18. And that which was brazen[3] is the reign of Ardakhshîr[4], the arranger and restorer of the world, and that of King Shahpûr, when he arranges the world which I, Aûharmazd, created; he makes happiness (bûkhtakîh)[5] prevalent in the boundaries of the world, and goodness shall become manifest; and Âtarô-pâd of triumphant destiny, the restorer of the true religion, with the prepared brass[6], brings this religion, together with the transgressors, back to the truth. 19. And that which was of copper is the reign of the Askânian king[7], who removes from the world

[1] Reading mûn, 'whom,' instead of amat, 'when' (see the note on Bund. I, 7).

[2] Contracted here into Spendâd, as it is also in Bund. XXXIV, 8 in the old MSS. This name of the king is corrupted into Bahman son of Isfendiyâr in the Shâhnâmah.

[3] This brazen age is evidently out of its proper chronological order. The Pâzand and Persian versions correct this blunder by describing the copper age before the brazen one here, but they place the brazen branch before the copper one in § 14, so it is doubtful how the text stood originally.

[4] Artakhshatar son of Pâpakî and Shahpûharî son of Artakhshatar are the Sasanian forms of the names of the first two monarchs (A.D. 226–271) of the Sasanian dynasty, whose reigns constitute this brazen age.

[5] Literally, 'deliverance *from sin*' or 'salvation' by one's own good works, and, therefore, not in a Christian sense.

[6] Referring to the ordeal of pouring molten brass on his chest, undergone by Âtarô-pâd son of Mâraspend, high-priest and prime minister of Shâpûr-II, for the purpose of proving the truth of his religion to those who doubted it.

[7] It is uncertain which of the Askânian sovereigns is meant, or whether several of the dynasty may not be referred to. The Greek

the heterodoxy (*gavîd*-rastakîh) which existed, and the wicked Akandgar-i Kilisyâkîh[1] is utterly destroyed by this religion, *and* goes unseen and unknown from the world. 20. And that which was of tin is the reign of King Vâhrâm Gôr[2], when he

successors of Alexander were subdued in Persia by Ask (Arsaces I), who defeated Seleucus Callinicus about B.C. 236. But the third book of the Dînkard (in a passage quoted by Haug in his Essay on the Pahlavi Language) mentions Valkhas (Vologeses) the Askânian as collecting the Avesta and Zand, and encouraging the Mazdayasnian religion. This Valkhas was probably Vologeses I, a contemporary of Nero, as shown by Darmesteter in the introduction to his translation of the Vendidad.

[1] I am indebted to Professor J. Darmesteter for pointing out that Nêryôsang, in his Sanskrit translation of Yas. IX, 75, explains Kalasiyâkâh as 'those whose faith is the Christian religion;' the original Pahlavi word in the oldest MSS. is Kilisâyâîk, altogether a misunderstanding of the Avesta name Keresâni, which it translates, but sufficiently near the name in our text to warrant the assumption that Nêryôsang would have translated Kilisyâkîh by 'Christianity;' literally it means 'ecclesiasticism, or the church religion' (from Pers. kilisyâ, Gr. ἐκκλησία). Akandgar is probably a miswriting of Alaksandar or Sikandar; though Darmesteter suggests that Skandgar (Av. skendô-kara, Pers. sikandgar), 'causer of destruction,' would be an appropriate punning title for Alexander from a Persian point of view. The anachronisms involved in making Alexander the Great a Christian, conquered by an Askânian king, are not more startling than the usual Pahlavi statement that he was a Roman. To a Persian in Sasanian times Alexander was the representative of an invading enemy which had come from the countries occupied, in those times, by the eastern empire of the Christian Romans, which enemy had been subdued in Persia by the Askânian dynasty; and such information would naturally lead to the anachronisms just mentioned. The name Kilisyâkîh is again used, in Chap. III, 3, 5, 8, to denote some Christian enemy.

[2] This Sasanian monarch (A. D. 420–439), after considerable provocation, revived the persecution of the heretics and foreign creeds which had been tolerated by his predecessor, and this conduct naturally endeared him to the priesthood.

makes the sight[1] of the spirit of pleasure manifest, and Aharman with the wizards rushes back to darkness *and* gloom. 21. And that which was of steel is the reign of King Khûsrô son of Kêvâ*d*[2], when he keeps away from this religion the accursed Mazdîk[3], son of Bâmdâ*d*, who remains opposed to the religion along with the heterodox. 22. And that which was mixed with iron [is the reign of the demons with dishevelled hair[4] of the race of Wrath, when it is the end of the tenth hundredth winter of thy millennium], O Zaratûst the Spitâmân!'

23. Zaratûst said thus: 'Creator of the material world! O propitious spirit! what token would you give of the tenth hundredth winter?'

24. Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Righteous Zaratûst! I *will* make *it* clear: the token that it is the end of thy millennium, and the most evil period is coming, is *that* a hundred kinds, a thousand kinds, a myriad of kinds of demons with dishevelled hair, of the

[1] Reading vênâp (Pers. bînâb), but it may be va davâg, in which case the phrase must be translated as follows: 'when he makes the spirit of pleasure and joy manifest.'

[2] See Chap. I, 5. The characteristic of the steel age, like that of the tin one, was the persecution of heretics who had been tolerated by the reigning monarch's predecessor.

[3] Generally written Mazdak, a heretic whose teaching was very popular in the time of King Kêvâ*d* (or Kavâ*d*, A. D. 487–531). His doctrine appears to have been extreme socialism built upon a Mazdayasnian foundation. He was put to death by Khûsrô I, as hinted in the text. It is remarkable that none of the successors of Khûsrô Nôshirvân are mentioned in the Bahman Yast, so that a Parsi, who even did not believe in the verbal inspiration of the book, might possibly consider the remainder of it as strictly prophetical.

[4] The passage in brackets is omitted in K20 by mistake, and is here supplied from Chap. I, 5, in accordance with the Pâz. and Pers. versions.

race of Wrath, rush into the country of Iran (Aîrân shatrô) from the direction of the east[1], which *has* an inferior race and race of Wrath. 25. They have uplifted banners, they slay those living in the world[2], they have *their* hair dishevelled on the back, and they are mostly a small and inferior (nîtûm) race, forward in destroying the strong doer; O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! the race of Wrath is miscreated (vishûd) and its origin is not manifest. 26. Through witchcraft they rush into these countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created, since they burn and damage many things; and the house of the house-owner, the land of the land-digger, prosperity, nobility, sovereignty, religion[3], truth, agreement, security, enjoyment, and every characteristic which I, Aûharmazd, created, this pure religion of the Mazdayasnians, and the fire of Vâhrâm, which is set in the appointed place, encounter annihilation, and the direst destruction and trouble will come into notice. 27. And that which is a great district will become a town; that which is a great town, a village; that

[1] Or 'of Khûrâsân.' It is difficult to identify these demons with the Arabs, who came from the west, though a dweller in Kirmân might imagine that they came from Khûrâsân. In fact, hardly any of the numerous details which follow, except their long-continued rule, apply exclusively to Muhammadans. It appears, moreover, from § 50 and Chap. III, 8, that these demons are intended for Tûrks, that is, invaders from Turkistân, who would naturally come from the east into Persia.

[2] Reading gêhân-zîvŏ zektelûnd, but the beginning of the latter word is torn off in K20, and the other versions have no equivalent phrase. The Pâzand substitutes the phrase 'black banners and black garments.'

[3] This word, being torn off in K20, is supplied from the Pâz. MSS.

which is a great village, a family; and that which is a [great][1] family, a single threshold. 28. O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! they will lead these Iranian countries of Aûharmazd into a desire for evil, *into* tyranny *and* misgovernment, those demons with dishevelled hair who are deceivers, so that what they say they do not do, and they are of a vile religion, so that what they do not say they do. 29. And their assistance and promise have no sincerity, there is no law, they preserve no security, and on the support they provide no one relies; with deceit, rapacity, and misgovernment they will devastate these my Iranian countries, *who am* Aûharmazd.

30. 'And at that time, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! all men will become deceivers, great friends will become of different parties, and respect, affection, hope[2], and regard for the soul will depart from the world; the affection of the father will depart from the son; and *that of* the brother from *his* brother; the son-in-law will become a beggar (kidyak or kasîk) from his father-in-law[3], and the mother will be parted and estranged from the daughter.

31. 'When it is the end of thy tenth hundredth winter, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! the sun is more unseen and more spotted (vasangtar); the year, month, and day are shorter; and the earth of Spendarma*d* is more barren, and fuller of highway-

[1] This word is omitted in K20, but supplied from the Pâzand. The whole section is omitted in the Pers. version.

[2] This word, being torn off in K20, is doubtfully supplied from the Pers. paraphrase. The Pâz. MSS. omit §§ 30–32.

[3] Or, perhaps, 'parents-in-law;' the original is khûsrûînê, followed by some word (probably nafsman) which is torn off in K20. The Pers. version gives no equivalent phrase.

men[1]; and the crop will not yield the seed, *so* that of the crop of the corn-fields in ten *cases* seven will diminish and three[2] will increase, and that which increases does not become ripe[3]; and vegetation, trees, and shrubs will diminish; when one shall take a hundred, ninety will diminish and ten will increase, and that which increases gives no pleasure and flavour. 32. And men are born smaller, and their skill and strength are less; they become more deceitful and more given to vile practices; they have no gratitude and respect for bread and salt, and they have no affection for their country (dêsak).

33. 'And in that most evil time a boundary has most disrespect[4] where it is the property of a suffering man of religion; gifts are few among their deeds, and duties and good works proceed but little from their hands; and sectarians of all kinds are seeking mischief for them[5]. 34. And all the world will be burying *and* clothing the dead, and burying the dead *and* washing the dead *will be* by law; the burning, bringing to water and fire, and eating of dead matter they practise by law and do not abstain from. 35. They recount largely about duties and good works, and pursue wickedness and the road to hell; and through the iniquity, cajolery, and craving of wrath and avarice they rush to hell.

36. 'And in that perplexing time, O Zaratûst the

---

[1] Or, 'tax-collectors;' Pahl. tangtar va râs-vânagtar.

[2] In K20 'va 3' is corrupted into the very similar va vâi, 'and a portion.'

[3] Literally, 'white.'

[4] Reading anâzarm instead of hanâ âzarm.

[5] That is, for the Iranians in general, who are the 'they' in §§ 32–35.

Spîtâmân!—the reign of Wrath with infuriate spear[1] and the demon with dishevelled hair, of the race of Wrath,—the meanest slaves walk forth with the authority of nobles of the land; and the religious, who wear *sacred thread*-girdles on the waist, are then not able *to perform* their ablution (pâdîyâvîh), for in those last times dead matter and bodily refuse become so abundant, that *one who* shall set step to step walks upon dead matter; or when he washes in the barashnûm *ceremony*, and puts down a foot from the stone *seat* (magh)[2], he walks on dead matter; or when he arranges the *sacred* twigs (baresôm) and consecrates the sacred cakes (drônô) in their corpse-chamber (nasâî katak)[3] it is allowable.

[1] The Av. Aêshmô khrvîdrus, 'Aêshma the impetuous assailant' (see Bund. XXVIII, 15–17); this demon's Pahlavi epithet is partly a transcription, and partly a paraphrase of the Avesta term.

[2] According to Dastûr Hoshangji (Zand-Pahlavi Glossary, p. 65) the term magh is now applied to the stones on which the person undergoing purification has to squat during ablution in the barashnûm ceremony. Originally, however, Av. magha appears to have meant a shallow hole dug in the earth, near or over which the person squatted upon a seat, either of stone or some other hard material (see Vend. IX). The term for the hole was probably extended to the whole arrangement, including the seat, which latter has thus acquired the name of magh, although magh and maghâk still mean 'a channel or pit' in Persian.

[3] The Av. kata of Vend. V, 36–40; a special chamber for the temporary reception of the corpse, when it was impossible to remove it at once to the dakhma, owing to the inclemency of the weather. It should be large enough for standing upright, and for stretching out the feet and hands, without touching either walls or ceiling; that is, not less than six feet cube. The text means that those times will be so distressing, that it will be considered lawful to perform the sacred ceremonies even in a place of such concentrated impurity as a dead-house not actually occupied by a corpse.

37. Or, in those last times, it becomes allowable to perform a ceremonial (yazisn) with two men, so that this religion may not come to nothing and collapse[1]; there *will* be only one in a hundred, in a thousand, in a myriad, who believes in this religion, and even he does nothing of it though *it be* a duty[2]; and the fire of Vâhrâm, which will come to nothing and collapse, *falls* off from a thousand to one care-taker, and even he does not supply it properly with fire-wood and incense; or when a man, *who* has performed worship and does not know the Nîrangistân[3] ('code of religious formulas'), shall kindle *it* with good intentions, it is allowable.

38. 'Honourable[4] wealth will all proceed to those of perverted faith (kêvîd-kêshân); it comes to the transgressors, and virtuous doers of good works, from the families of noblemen even unto the priests (môg-mardân), remain running about uncovered; the lower orders take in marriage the daughters of nobles, grandees, *and* priests; and the nobles, grandees, and priests come to destitution *and* bondage. 39. The misfortunes of the ignoble will overtake greatness and authority, and the helpless and ignoble will come to the foremost place *and* advancement; the words of the upholders of religion, and the seal and decision of a just judge will become the

[1] The Pâz. MSS. add, 'and helplessness.'

[2] The Pâz. MSS. add, 'and the prayers and ceremonies that he orders of priests and disciples they do not fulfil.'

[3] The name of a work which treats of various ceremonial details, and appears to be a portion of the Pahlavi translation of the seventeenth or Hûspâram Nask, containing many Avesta quotations which are not now to be found elsewhere.

[4] The Pâz. MSS. have misread azîr damîk, 'underground,' instead of âzarmîk.

words of random speakers (ar.dêzŏ-gôkân) *among* the just *and* even the righteous; and the words of the ignoble and slanderers, of the disreputable *and* mockers, and of those of divers opinions they consider true and credible, about which they take [1] an oath, although with falsehood, and thereby give false evidence, and speak falsely and irreverently about me, Aûharmazd. 40. They who bear the title of priest and disciples wish evil concerning [2] one another; he speaks vice and they look upon vice; and the antagonism of Aharman and the demons is much brought on by them; of the sin which men commit, out of five [3] sins the priests and disciples commit three sins, and they become enemies of the good, so that they may thereby speak of bad faults relating to one another; the ceremonies they undertake they do not perform, and they have no fear of hell.

41. 'And in that tenth hundredth winter, *which* is the end of thy millennium, O righteous Zaratûst! all mankind will bind torn hair, disregarding revelation [4], so that a willingly-disposed cloud and a

[1] Literally, 'devour an oath,' which Persian idiom was occasioned by the original form of oath consisting in drinking water prepared in a particular manner, after having invoked all the heavenly powers to bear witness to the truth of what had been asserted (see the Saûgand-nâmah).

[2] Reading râî instead of lâ, 'not.' The whole section is omitted by the Pâz. MSS., possibly from politic motives, as the language is plain enough.

[3] The Persian paraphrase has 'eight.'

[4] Referring probably to the injunctions regarding cutting the hair and paring the nails, with all the proper precautions for preventing any fragments of the hair or nails from lying about, as given in Vend. XVII. One of the penalties for neglecting such precautions is supposed to be a failure of the necessary rains. The

righteous wind are not able to produce rain in its proper time and season. 42. And a dark cloud makes the whole sky night, and the hot wind and the cold wind arrive, and bring along fruit and seed of corn, even the rain in its proper time; and it does not rain, *and* that which rains also rains more noxious creatures than water; and the water of rivers and springs will diminish, and there will be no increase. 43. And the beast *of burden* and ox *and* sheep bring forth more painfully[1] and awkwardly, and acquire less fruitfulness; and *their* hair is coarser *and* skin thinner; the milk does not increase and has less cream (*k*arbi*s*t); the strength of the labouring ox is less, and the agility of the swift horse is less, and it carries less in a race.

44. 'And on the men in that perplexing time, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! who wear the *sacred thread*-girdle on the waist, the evil-seeking of misgovernment and much of its false judgment have come as a wind in which their living is not possible, and they seek death as a boon; and youths and children will be apprehensive, and gossiping chitchat and gladness of heart do not arise among them. 45. And they practise the appointed feasts (*g*a*s*nŏ) of *their* ancestors, the propitiation (aûsôfrî*d*) of angels, *and* the prayers and ceremonies of the season festivals and guardian spirits, in various places, yet that which they practise they do not believe in unhesitatingly; they do not give rewards lawfully, and

words anâstak dînô can also be translated by 'despising the religion.'

[1] The word appears to be dar*d*aktar, but is almost illegible in K20; it may possibly be kûtaktar, 'more scantily,' as the Pâz. MSS. have kôdaktar bahô*d*, 'become smaller.'

bestow no gifts and alms, and even those [they bestow][1] they repent of again. 46. And even those men of the good religion, who have reverenced the good religion of the Mazdayasnians, proceed in conformity with (bar-hamakŏ rûbisn) those ways and customs[2], and do not believe their own religion. 47. And the noble, great, and charitable[3], who are the virtuous of their own country and locality, will depart from their own original place and family[4] as idolatrous; through want they beg something from the ignoble and vile, and come to poverty and helplessness; through them[5] nine in ten of these men will perish in the northern quarter.

48. 'Through their way of misrule everything comes to nothingness and destitution, levity and infirmity; and the earth of Spendarmad opens *its* mouth wide, *and* every jewel and metal becomes exposed, such as gold and silver, brass, tin, and lead. 49. And rule *and* sovereignty come to slaves, such as the Tûrk and non-Tûranian (Atûr) of the army[6], and are turbulent as among the moun-

[1] This verb is omitted in K20.

[2] It is rather doubtful whether their own customs are meant, or those of their conquerors.

[3] Or dahâkân may mean 'the skilful.'

[4] Reading dûdak instead of rûdak. At first sight the miswriting of r for d seems to indicate copying from a text in the modern Persian character, in which those two letters are often much alike; but it happens that the compounds dû and rû also resemble one another in some Pahlavi handwriting.

[5] Whether through poverty and helplessness, or through the conquerors, is not quite clear.

[6] Very little reliance can be placed upon the details of this sentence, but it is difficult to make any other complete and consistent translation. Darmesteter suggests the reading hênô, 'army,' but another possible reading is Khyôn (Av. *Hvyaona*), the old name

taineers [1]; and the *K*înî [2], the Kâ*v*ûlî, the Sôftî, the Rûman (Arûmâyak), and the white-clothed Karmak [3] then attain sovereignty in my countries of Iran, *and* their will and pleasure will become current in the world. 50. The sovereignty will come from those leathern-belted ones [4] and Arabs (Tâ*z*îgân) and Rûmans to them, *and* they will be so misgoverning that when they kill a righteous man who is virtuous and a fly, it is all one [5] in their eyes. 51. And the security, fame, and prosperity, the country and families, the wealth and handiwork, the streams, rivers, and springs of Iran, and of those of the good religion, come to those non-Iranians; and the army and standards of the frontiers come to them, and a rule with a craving for wrath advances in the world. 52. And their eyes of avarice are not sated with wealth, and they form hoards of the world's wealth, and conceal *them* underground; and through wickedness they commit sodomy, hold much intercourse with menstruous *women*, and practise many unnatural lusts.

---

of some country probably in Turkistân, as Argâsp, the opponent of Vistâsp, is called 'lord or king of Khyôn' in the Yâ*d*kâr-i Zarîrân (see also Gô*s* Yt. 30, 31, Ashi Yt. 50, 51, Zamyâd Yt. 87).

[1] Or, 'as the mountain-holding Khûdarak.' Darmesteter suggests that Khûdarak may be an 'inhabitant of Khazar.'

[2] Probably the people of Samarkand, which place was formerly called *K*în according to a passage in some MSS. of Tabarî's Chronicle, quoted in Ouseley's Oriental Geography, p. 298. See also Bund. XII, 22.

[3] The Kâbulî and Byzantine Rûman are plain enough; not so the Sôftî and Karmak (Kalmak or Krimak).

[4] That is, the Tûrks, as appears more clearly from Chap. III, 8, 9. The Arabs are mentioned here, incidently, for the first time, and again in Chap. III, 9, 51.

[5] Literally, 'both are one.'

53. 'And in that perplexing time the night is brighter[1], and the year, month, and day will diminish one-third; the earth of Spendarmad arises, and suffering, death, and destitution become more severe in the world.'

54. Aûharmazd said to Zaratûst the Spitâmân: 'This is what I foretell: that wicked evil spirit, when it shall be necessary *for him* to perish, becomes more oppressive and more tyrannical.'

55. So Aûharmazd spoke to Zaratûst the Spitâmân thus: 'Enquire fully and learn by heart[2] thoroughly! teach *it* by Zand, Pâzand, and explanation! tell *it* to the priests and disciples *who* speak forth in the world, *and* those who are not aware of the hundred winters, tell *it* then to them! so that, for the hope of a future existence, *and* for the preservation of their own souls, they may remove the trouble, evil, and oppression which those of other religions cause in the ceremonies of religion (dînô yêsnân). 56. And, moreover, I tell thee this, O Zaratûst the Spitâmân! that whoever, in that time, appeals for the body is not able to save the soul, for *he is* as it were fat, and *his* soul is hungry *and* lean in hell; whoever appeals for the soul, *his* body is hungry *and* lean through the misery of the world, and destitute, and his soul is fat in heaven.'

57. Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmazd thus: 'O Aûharmazd, propitious spirit! creator of the material world who art righteous!'—He is Aûharmazd through righteous invocation, and the rest through

[1] The Pâz. version adds, 'the motion of the sun is quicker.'

[2] Literally, 'make easy.'

praise; some say 'righteous creator[1]!'—'O creator! in that perplexing time are they righteous? and are there religious people who wear the *sacred thread*-girdle (kûstîk) on the waist, and celebrate religious rites (dînô)[2] with the *sacred* twigs (baresôm)? and does the religious practice of next-of-kin marriage (khvêtûk-das) continue in their families?'

58. Aûharmazd said to Zaratûst thus: 'Of the best men is he who, in that perplexing time, wears the *sacred thread*-girdle on the waist, and celebrates religious rites with the *sacred* twigs, *though* not *as* in the reign of King Vistâsp. 59. Whoever in that perplexing time recites Itâ-â*d*-yazam (Av. ithâ â*d* yazamaidê, Yas. Vand XXXVII)[3] *and* one Ashem-vohû[4], *and* has learned *it* by heart, is as though, in the reign of King Vistâsp, *it were* a Dvâzdah-hômâst[5] with holy-water (zôhar). 60. And by

[1] This interpolated commentary is a pretty clear indication that the writer is translating from an Avesta text.

[2] Both Pâz. and Pers. have drônô, 'sacred cakes.'

[3] The third hâ or chapter of the Yasna of seven chapters. It worships Aûharmazd as the creator of all good things.

[4] See Bund. XX, 2.

[5] For the following explanation of the various kinds of hômâst I am indebted to Dastûr Jâmâspji Minochiharji Jâmâsp-Âsâ-nâ of Bombay:—

There are four kinds of hômâst recited by priests for the atonement of any sin that may have been committed by a woman during menstruation, after her purification:—

1. Hômâst consists of prayers recited for 144 days, in honour of the twelve following angels: Aûharmazd, Tistar, Khûrshêd, Mâh, Âbân, Âdar, Khurdâd, Amerdâd, Spendarmad, Bâd, Srôsh, and Ardâ-fravash. Each angel, in turn, is reverenced for twelve days successively, with one Yasna each day.

2. Khadûk-hômâst, 'one hômâst,' differs from the last merely in adding a Vendidad every twelfth day, to be recited in the Ush-

whomever prayer is offered up, *and* the Gâtha *hymns* are chanted, *it is* as though the whole ritual had been recited, *and* the Gâtha-*hymns* consecrated by him *in* the reign of King Vistâsp. 61. The most perfectly righteous of the righteous is he who remains in the good religion of the Mazdayasnians, and continues the religious practice of next-of-kin marriage in his family.'

62. Aûharmazd said to the righteous Zaratûst: 'In these nine thousand years which I, Aûharmazd, created, mankind become most perplexed in that perplexing time; for in the evil reigns of Az-i Dahâk and Frâsiyâv of Tûr mankind, in those perplexing times, were living better and living more

ahin Gâh (12 P. M. to 6 A. M.) in honour of the angel whose propitiation ends that day.

3. Dah-hômâst, 'ten hômâsts,' differs from the preceding merely in having a Vendidad, in addition to the Yasna, every day.

4. Dvâzdah-hômâst, 'twelve hômâsts,' are prayers recited for 264 days in honour of twenty-two angels, namely, the twelve aforesaid and the following ten: Bahman, Ardibahist, Shahrivar, Mihir, Bahrâm, Râm, Dîn, Rashnû, Gôs, and Âstâd. Each angel, in turn, is reverenced as in the last.

The celebration of hômâst costs 350 rûpîs, that of khadûk-hômâst 422 rûpîs, that of dah-hômâst 1000 rûpîs, and that of dvâzdah-hômâst 2000 rûpîs; but the first and third are now no longer used. The merit obtained by having such recitations performed is equivalent to 1000 tanâpûhars for each Yasna, 10,000 for each Visparad, and 70,000 for each Vendidad recited. A tanâpûhar is now considered as a weight of 1200 dirhams, with which serious sins and works of considerable merit are estimated; originally it must have meant a sin which was 'inexpiable' by ordinary good works, and, conversely, any extraordinary good work which was just sufficient to efface such a sin.

The amount of merit attaching to such recitations is variously stated in different books, and when recited with holy-water (that is, with all their ceremonial rites) they are said to be usually a hundred times as meritorious as when recited without it.

numerously, and their disturbance by Aharman and the demons was less. 63. For in their evil reigns, within the countries of Iran, there were not seven[1] towns which *were* desolate as they *will be* when it is the end of thy millennium, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! for all the towns of Iran *will* be ploughed up by their horses' hoofs, and their banners *will* reach unto Pa*d*ashkhvârgar[2], and they *will* carry away the sovereignty of the seat of the religion I approve from there; and their destruction comes from that place, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! this is what I foretell.'

64. Whoever[3] of those existing, thus, with reverence unto the good, performs much worship for Aûharmazd, Aûharmazd, aware of *it* through righteousness, gives *him* whatsoever Aûharmazd is aware of through righteousness, as remuneration *and* reward of duty *and* good works, and *such* members of

[1] So in the Pâzand, but 'seventeen' in Persian; in K20 the word is partly illegible, but can be no other number than *s*ibâ, 'seven.'

[2] The mountainous region south of the Caspian (see Bund. XII, 2, 17).

[3] This section is the Pahlavi version of an Avesta formula which is appended to nearly two-thirds of the hâs or chapters of the Yasna, and, therefore, indicates the close of the chapter at this point. The version here given contains a few verbal deviations from that given in the Yasna, but none of any importance. The Avesta text of this formula is as follows:—

Yênhê hâtãm âa*d*, yêsnê paitî,
vanghô mazda*u* ahurô vaêthâ, ashâ*d* ha*k*â,
*y*aunghãm*k*â, tãs*k*â *t*aus*k*â yazamaidê.

And it may be translated in the following manner:—

'Of whatever male of the existences, therefore, Ahuramazda was better cognizant, through righteousness in worship, and of whatever females, both those males and those females we reverence.'

the congregation, males and females, I reverence; and the archangels, who are also male and female, they are good.

CHAPTER III.

1. Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmazd thus: 'O Aûharmazd, propitious spirit! creator of the material world, righteous *one!* whence do they restore this good religion of the Mazdayasnians? and by what means will they destroy these demons with dishevelled hair[1], of the race of Wrath? 2. O creator! grant me death! and grant my favoured ones death! that they may not live in that perplexing time; grant *them* exemplary living! that they may not prepare wickedness and the way to hell.'

3. Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'O Zaratûst the Spitâmân! after the ill-omened[2] sovereignty of those of the race of Wrath[3] there is a fiend, Shêdâspih[4] of the Kilisyâkîh, from the countries of Salmân[5];' Mâh-

[1] The Pâz. MSS. insert, 'and black clothing' here.

[2] Literally, 'black-marked,' or possibly, 'black standard.'

[3] The Pâz. MSS. add, 'the leathern-belted Tûrks,' that is, people of Turkistân.

[4] This fiend appears to be a personification of Christianity or 'ecclesiasticism' (Kilisyâkîh, see Chap. II, 10), and the writer seems to place his appearance some time in the middle ages, probably before the end of the thirteenth century (see the note on § 44). Darmesteter suggests that Shêdâsp may have been intended as a modern counterpart of Bêvarâsp (Az-i Dahâk), the ancient tyrant; and that this Christian invasion may be a reminiscence of the crusades.

[5] I have formerly read Mûsulmân instead of min Salmân, and hence concluded that the text must have been written long

vand-dâd said that *these people* are Rûman (Arûmâyîk), and Rôshan[1] said that they have red weapons, red banners, *and* red hats (kûlâh). 4. 'It is when a symptom of them appears, as they advance, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! the sun and the dark show signs, and the moon becomes manifest of various colours; earthquakes (bûm-guzand), too, become numerous, and the wind comes more violently; in the world want, distress, and discomfort come more into view; and Mercury and Jupiter advance the sovereignty for the vile[2], *and* they are *in* hundreds and thousands and myriads. 5. They have the red banner of the fiend Shêdâspîh of Kilisyâkîh, and they hasten much their progress to these countries of Iran *which* I, Aûharmazd, created, up to the bank of the Arvand[3],' some have said[4] the Frât[5] river, 'unto the Greeks (Yûnân) dwelling in Asûristân;' they are Greeks by strict reckoning[6],

after the Muhammadan conquest of Persia; but this reading is irreconcileable with the context. The position of Salmân (Av. Sairima) is defined by Bund. XX, 12, which places the sources of the Tigris in that country.

[1] The name of a commentator, or commentary, often quoted in the Pahlavi Vendidad, and other texts. Mâhvand-dâd is mentioned in the Pahlavi Yasna (see Sls. I, 4).

[2] The Pâz. MSS. state that 'Mercury and Jupiter beat down the strength of Venus.'

[3] Here written Arang, Arand, or Arvad, but as it is Arvand in §§ 21, 38, that reading seems preferable, the difference between the two names in Pahlavi being merely a single stroke. The Arvand is the Tigris, and the Arang probably the Araxes (see SZS. VI, 20, Bund. XX, 8).

[4] Literally, 'there are *and* were *some* who said;' this phrase occurs several times in the latter part of this text.

[5] The Euphrates.

[6] Or, 'of strict reckoning,' reading sâkht amâr, but both reading and meaning are very uncertain. As it stands in K20 it

and their Assyrian dwelling is this, that they slay the Assyrian people therein, and thus they will destroy their abode, some have said the *lurking*-holes (grêstak) of the demons.

6. 'They turn back those of the race of Wrath[1] in hundreds and thousands and myriads; *and* the banners, standards, and an innumerable army of those demons with dishevelled hair will come to these countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created. 7. And the army of the invader[2] is an extending enemy of the Tûrk[3] and even the Karm[4], be it with banners aloft when he shall set up a banner, be it through the excessive multitude which will remain—like *hairs in* the mane of a horse—in the countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created.

8. 'The leathern-belted Tûrk *and* the Rûman Shêdâspîh of Kilisyâkîh come forth with simultaneous movement[5], and in three places, with similar strife, there was and *will* be three times a great contest (âr*d*ih), O Zaratûst the Spitâmân! 9. One in the reign of Kaî-Kâûs[6], when through

---

may be sâkht *g*umâl, 'extreme beauty,' or Sâkhtimâr (the name of a place), or this may stand for sâkht timâr, 'severe misfortune;' and other readings are possible.

[1] It is not quite clear which party will turn the other back.

[2] Literally, 'extender,' that is, one engaged in extending his own dominions.

[3] The remainder of this § (except the verb 'remain') is Pâzand written in Persian characters in K20.

[4] Possibly the Karmak of Chap. II, 49. In § 20 the Kur*d* and Karmân (or Karms) may refer to the Tûrk and Karm of this §, so it is doubtful whether Tûrk or Kur*d* is meant.

[5] Or, 'for the encounter,' pavan ham-rasisnîh.

[6] See Bund. XXXI, 25, XXXIV, 7. The letters are here joined together, so as to become Kaî-gâûs, and this form of the name is

the assistance of demons *it was* with the archangels; and the second when thou, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! receivedst the religion and *hadst* thy conference, *and* King Vistâsp and Argâsp[1], miscreated by wrath, *were*, through the war of the religion, in the combat of Spêd-razûr ("the hoary forest[2]"),' some have said *it was* in Pârs; 'and the third when it is the end of thy millennium, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! when all the three, Tûrk, Arab, and Rûman, come to this[3] place,' some have said the plain of Nîsânak[4]. 10. 'And all *those of* the countries of Iran, which I, Aûharmazd, created, come from their own place unto Padashkhvârgar[5], owing to those of the race of Wrath, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! so that a report of something of the cave dwellings, mountain dwellings, and river dwellings of these people will remain at Padashkhvârgar and Pârs; some have *said* the fire Visnâsp[6], on the deep Lake Kêkast which has medicinal water opposed to the demons, is there (in Padashkhvârgar?) as it were conspicuous,' some have said 'originating[7],' 'so that

often read Kâhûs or Kahôs in Pâzand (see Mkh. VIII, 27, XXVII, 54, LVII, 21). The Pâz. MSS. omit § 9.

[1] See Bund. XII, 32, 33.

[2] See Bund. XXIV, 16.

[3] Perhaps 'one' is meant, as hanâ, 'this,' is sometimes substituted for aê, 'one,' both being read *e* in Pâzand.

[4] The reading of this name is quite uncertain.

[5] See Chap. II, 63. The whole of the final clause of this section, about the fire Visnâsp, is inserted parenthetically at this point in the Pahlavi text.

[6] Elsewhere called Gûsnasp, Gûsnâsp, or Gûsasp (see SZS. VI, 22).

[7] The most obvious reading of this word is mâhîk, 'fish,' which can hardly be reconciled with the context. The view here taken is that the writer was translating from an Avesta text, and met

they may use *it* anew, *and* the fire may become shining in these countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created.' 11. For when one shall be able to save his own life, he has then no recollection of wife, child, and wealth, that they may not live, *in* that perplexing time, O Zaratûst! yet the day when the hundredth winter becomes the end of thy millennium, which is *that* of Zaratûst, is so that nothing wicked may go from this millennium into that millennium[1].'

---

with the word *k*ithra, which means both pê*d*îk, 'clear,' and tôkhmak, 'originating,' but to express the latter meaning he used the synonym mâyakîk, which can be written exactly like mâhîk. Owing to the involved character of this section it is not very clear in English, but it is still more obscure in the Pahlavi text, in which the whole of this clause about the fire is inserted parenthetically after the first mention of Pa*d*ashkhvârgar.

[1] This last clause may be read several ways, and it is by no means easy to ascertain clearly the chronological order of the events which are jumbled together in this last chapter. But it would appear that Zaratûst's millennium was to end at a time when the religion was undisturbed, and just before the incursion of the demons or idolators, the details of which have been given in Chap. II, 22–III, 11, and which is the first event of Hûshêdar's millennium (see § 13). Now according to Bund. XXXIV, 7–9, the interval from 'the coming of the religion,' in the reign of Kaî-Vistâsp, to the end of the Sasanian monarchy was 90 + 112 + 30 + 12 + 14 + 14 + 284 + 460 = 1016 years. If by 'the coming of the religion' be meant the time when Zaratûst received it, as he was then thirty years old, he must have been born 1046 years before the end of the Sasanian monarchy (A. D. 651), and the end of his millennium must have been in A. D. 603, the sixteenth year of Khûsrô Parvîz, when the Sasanian power was near its maximum, and only a score of years before it began suddenly to collapse. This close coincidence indicates that the writer of the Bahman Yast must have adopted the same incorrect chronology as is found in the Bundahi*s*. If, however, 'the coming of the religion' mean its acceptance by Vistâsp, which occurred in Zaratûst's fortieth or

12. Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmazd thus: 'O Aûharmazd, propitious spirit! creator of the material world, righteous *one!* when they are so many in number, by what means will they be able to perish[1]?'

13. Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! when the demon with dishevelled hair of the race of Wrath comes into notice in the eastern quarter, first a black token becomes manifest, *and* Hûshêdar *son* of Zaratûst is born on Lake Frazdân[2]. 14. It is when he comes to his conference *with* me[3], Aûharmazd, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân!' *that in* the direction of *K*înistân[4], *it* is said—some have said among the Hindus—'is born a prince (kaî); it is his father, a prince of the Kayân race, approaches the

forty-second year, his birth must have been ten or twelve years earlier, and his millennium must have ended A. D. 593–595. But according to the imperfect chronology of Bund. XXXIV the tenth millennium of the world, that of Capricornus, commenced with 'the coming of the religion,' and ended, therefore, in A. D. 635, the fourth year of Yazdakard, the last Sasanian king, when the Muhammadans were just preparing for their first invasion; so the millennium of Aquarius is very nearly coincident with that of Hûshêdar, and may probably be intended to represent it. It appears, therefore, that the millennium of Hûshêdar is altogether past, having extended from A. D. 593–635 to A. D. 1593–1635.

[1] The Pâz. MSS. omit § 12. The writer having detailed the evils of the iron age, now returns to its commencement in order to describe the means adopted for partially counteracting those evils.

[2] See Bund. XXII, 5, XXXII, 8. The Pâz. MSS. add, 'they bring him up in Zâvulistân and Kâvulistân;' and the Pers. version says, 'on the frontier of Kâbulistân.' With regard to the time of Hûshêdar's birth, see § 44. His name is always written Khûrshêdar in K20.

[3] The Pâz. and Pers. versions say, 'at thirty years of age,' as in § 44.

[4] Possibly Samarkand (see Chap. II, 49, note 2).

women, and a religious prince is born to him; he calls *his* name Vâhrâm the Vargâvand[1],' some have said Shahpûr. 15. 'That a sign may come to the earth, the night when that prince is born, a star falls from the sky; when that prince is born the star shows a signal.' 16. It is Dâd-Aûharmazd[2] *who* said that the month Âvân and day Vâd[3] is his father's end; 'they rear *him* with the damsels of the king, *and* a woman becomes ruler.

17. 'That prince when he is thirty years old'—some have told the time—'*comes* with innumerable banners *and* divers armies, Hindu and Âînî[4], having uplifted banners—for they set up *their* banners—having exalted banners, and having exalted weapons; they hasten up with speed[5] as far as the Vêh river'—some have said the country of Bambô[6]—'as far as Bukhâr and the Bukhârans within *its* bank,

[1] Bahrâm the illustrious or splendid (Av. vare*k*anghan*d*, compare Pers. var*g*), an epithet applied, in the Avesta, to the moon, Tistrya, the scriptures, the royal glory of the Kayânians, the Kayânians themselves, and the hero Thrita. This personage may possibly be an incarnation of the angel Bahrâm, mingled with some reminiscences of the celebrated Persian general Bahrâm Âûpin; but see §§ 32, 49.

[2] A commentator who is quoted in the Pahlavi Yas. XI, 22; see also Chap. I, 7.

[3] The 22nd day of the eighth month of the Parsi year, corresponding to October 7th when the year began at the vernal equinox, as the Bundahi*s* (XXV, 6, 7, 20, 21) describes.

[4] That is, Bactrian and Samarkandian.

[5] Or, 'light up with glitter,' according as we read tâ*g*end or tâ*v*end. The Pâz. MSS. omit §§ 17–44, except one or two isolated phrases.

[6] Spiegel was inclined to identify this name with Bombay, but this is impossible, as the MS. K20 (in which the name occurs) was written some two centuries before the Portuguese invented the name of Bombay. Its original name, by which it is still called by

O Zaratûšt the Spîtâmân! 18. When the star Jupiter comes up to *its* culminating point (bâlist)[1] and casts Venus down, the sovereignty comes to the prince. 19. Quite innumerable are the champions, furnished with arms *and* with banners displayed,' some have said from Sagastân, Pârs, and Khûrâsân, some have said from the lake of Pa*d*ashkhvârgar[2], some have said from the Hirâtîs[3] and Kôhistân, some have said from Taparistân[4]; and from those directions '*every* supplicant for a child[5] comes into[6] view. 20. It is concerning the displayed banners and very numerous army, which were the armed men, champions, and soldiers from the countries of Iran *at* Pa*d*ashkhvârgar—whom *I* told thee[7] that they call both Kur*d* and Karmân—it is declared

its native inhabitants, being Mumbaî. The locality mentioned in the text is evidently to be sought on the banks of the Oxus near Bukhârâ; the Oxus having been sometimes considered the upper course of the Arag, and sometimes that of the Veh (see Bund. XX, 22, note 5). It is hardly probable that either Bâmî (Balkh) or Bâmiyân would be changed into Bambŏ, and the only exact representative of this name appears to be Bamm, a town about 120 miles S. E. of Kirmân; this is quite a different locality from that mentioned in the text, but it is hazardous to set bounds to the want of geographical knowledge displayed by some of the Pahlavi commentators.

[1] Compare SZS. IV, 8. Here the triumph of Jupiter over Venus appears to be symbolical of the displacement of the queen dowager by her son.

[2] That is, from the southern shore of the Caspian.

[3] Reading Hiriyân, but this is doubtful, as it may be 'from the citadels (arigânŏ), or defiles (khalakânŏ), of Kôhistân.'

[4] See Bund. XII, 17, XIII, 15.

[5] That is, every man able to bear arms.

[6] Reading pavan, 'into,' instead of barâ, 'besides' (see SZS. VIII, 2, note 5).

[7] See § 10, but as nothing is said there about Kur*d* or Karmân, it is possible that the writer meant to say, 'of whom I told thee,

that they will slay an excessive number, in companionship *and under* the same banner, for these countries of Iran.

21. 'Those of the race of Wrath and the extensive army[1] of Shêdâspîh, *whose* names are the two-legged wolf and the leathern-belted demon on the bank of the Arvand[2], wage three battles, one in Spêd-razûr' and one in the plain of Nisânak;' some have said that *it was* on the lake of the three races, some have said that *it was* in Marûv[4] the brilliant, *and* some have said in Pârs. 22. 'For the support of the countries of Iran is the innumerable army of the east; its having exalted banners[5] is that they have a banner of tiger skin (bôpar pôst), and their wind banner is white cotton[6]; innumerable are the mounted troops, and they ride up to the *lurking*-holes[7] of the demons; they will slay so that a thousand women can afterwards see and kiss *but* one man.

---

and whom they call both Kurd and Karmân.' It is more probable, however, that he is referring to § 7.

[1] Compare § 7. The 'extensive army' and 'two-legged wolf' are terms borrowed apparently from Yas. IX, 62, 63.

[2] That is, 'the rapid' (Av. aurvand). The other names of this river, Tigris and Hiddekel, have the same meaning. See §§ 5, 38.

[3] See § 9, of which this is a recapitulation, but the first of the three battles is here omitted by mistake.

[4] Marv in the present Turkistân.

[5] Referring to § 17.

[6] Supposing that bandôk may be equivalent to Pers. bandak, but the usual Pahlavi term for 'cotton' is pumbak (Pers. punbah).

[7] Reading grestak as in § 5, but the word can also be read dar ḍîdak, 'gate watch-tower.' It is possible that the drugô geredha, 'pit of the fiend,' of Vend. III, 24, may be here meant; the gate of hell, whence the demons congregate upon the Arezûr ridge (Bund. XII, 8).

23. 'When it is the end of the time[1], O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! those enemies will be as much destroyed as the root of a shrub when *it is* in the night on which a cold winter arrives, and in this night it sheds *its* leaves; and they *will* reinstate these countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created[2].

24. 'And with speed rushes the evil spirit, with the vilest races of demons and Wrath with infuriate spear[3], *and* comes on to the support and assistance of those demon-worshippers and miscreations of wrath, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! 25. And I, the creator Aûharmazd, send Nêryôsang the angel and Srôsh the righteous[4] unto Kangdez[5], which the illustrious Sîyâvakhsh[6] formed, *and to* Kîtrô-mîyân[7] *son* of Vistâsp, the glory of the Kayâns, the just restorer of the religion, *to speak* thus: "Walk forth, O illustrious Pêshyôtanû! to these countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created; consecrate the fire *and* waters for the Hâdôkht[8] *and* Dvâzdah-hômâst!

[1] Compare, 'and at the time of the end' (Dan. xi. 40). The writer appears to be here finally passing from a description of the past into speculations as to the future, which he has hitherto only casually indulged in.

[2] The supernatural means supposed to be employed for the destruction of the wicked and the restoration of the good are detailed in the following paragraphs.

[3] See Chap. II, 36.

[4] The two angels who are the special messengers of Aûharmazd to mankind (see Bund. XV, 1, XXX, 29). This message was expected to be sent to Pêshyôtanû near the end of Hûshêdar's millennium (see § 51).

[5] See Bund. XXIX, 10.

[6] See Bund. XXXI, 25.

[7] A title of Pêshyôtanû, written Kîtrô-maînô in Bund. XXIX, 5.

[8] This was the twentieth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard; but the Dînîvagarkard and the Rivâyats make it the twenty-first, and say very

that is, celebrate *them* with the fire *and* waters, and such *as* is appointed about the fire and waters!"

little about its contents (see Haug's Essays, pp. 133, 134). The Dînkard, in its eighth book, gives the following account of this Nask :—

'The Hâdôkht as it exists *has* three divisions among its 133 sections. The first *has* thirteen (twelve?) sections, treatises upon the nature of the recital of the Ahunavar, which is the spiritual benefit from chanting it aloud, and whatever is on the same subject. Admonition about selecting *and* keeping a spiritual and worldly high-priest, performing every duty as to the high-priest, *and* maintaining even those of various high-priests. On the twenty-one chieftainships of the spirits in Aûharmazd, and of the worldly existences in Zaratûst, among which are the worship of God *and* the management of the devout. On the duty *requisite* in each of the five different periods of the day and night, and *the fate at* the *celestial* bridge of him who shall be zealous in the celebration of the season-festivals; he who does not provide the preparations for the feast of the season-festivals, and who is yet efficient in the other worship of God. On how to consider, *and* what to do with, a leader of the high-priest class *and* a man of the *inferior* classes; he who atones for unimportant sin, and he who does not atone even for *that which* is important, *and* whatever is on the same subject. On the apparatus with which ploughed land (?) is prepared. On the manifestation of virtuous manhood, and the merit and advantage from uttering good words *for blessing* the eating and drinking of food and drink, and rebuking the inward talk of the demons. On the recitations at the five periods of the day, and the ceremonial invocation by name of many angels, each separately, *and* great information on the same subject; the worthiness of a man restrained by authority, the giving of life and body to the angels, the good rulers, and their examination and satisfaction; the blessing and winning words which are most successful in carrying off the affliction which *proceeds* from a fiend. On all-pleasing creativeness and omniscience, and all precedence (?), leadership, foresight (?), worthy liberality, virtue (?), and every proper cause and effect of righteousness; the individuality of righteousness, the opposition to the demons of Aûharmazd's opinion, and also much other information in the same section.

'The middle *division has* 102 sections, treatises on spiritual and worldly diligence, the leadership of the diligent, and their mighty

26. 'And Nêryôsang proceeds, *with* Srôsh the righteous, from the good *K*akâ*d*-i-Dâîtîk[1] to Kangdez, which the illustrious Sîyâvakhsh formed, and cries out from it thus: "Walk forth, O illustrious Pêshyôtanû! O *K*îtrô-mîyân son of Vistâsp, glory of the Kayâns, just restorer of the religion! walk forth to these countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created! restore again the throne of sovereignty of the religion!"

27. 'Those spirits move on, and they propitiate them; with holy-water the illustrious Pêshyôtanû celebrates the Dvâzdah-hômâst, with a hundred and fifty righteous who are disciples of Pêshyôtanû, in black marten fur, and they have garments as it were of the good spirit. 28. They walk up with *the words:* "Hûmat, hûkht, hûvarst[2]," and consecrate

means, all former deeds of righteousness; righteousness kindling the resolution is the reward of merit, each for each, and is adapted by it for that *of* which it is said that *it is* the Hâdôkht which is the maintaining of righteousness, so that they may make righteousness more abiding in the body of a man.

'The last *division has* nineteen sections of trusty remedies, that is, remedies whose utterance aloud by the faithful is a chief resource among the creatures of God; also the nature of sayings full of humility, well-favoured, most select, *and* adapted for that *of* which it is said that I reverence that chief, the excellent and eminent Hâdôkht, of which they trust in the sustaining strength of every word of Zaratûst. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness (Av. ashem vohû vahistem astî).'

According to tradition three chapters of this Nask are still extant, being the Yast fragments XXI, XXII of Westergaard's edition of the Avesta Texts; but they do not correspond to any part of the description in the Dînkard. For a description of Dvâzdah-hômâst see Chap. II, 59.

[1] See Bund. XII, 7.

[2] That is, 'good thoughts, good words, and good deeds,' a formula often uttered when commencing an important action.

the fire of the waters; *with* the illustrious Hâdôkht they bless me, Aûharmazd, with the archangels; and after that it demolishes one-third of the opposition. 29. And the illustrious Pêshyôtanû walks forth, with the hundred and fifty men who wear black marten fur, and they celebrate the rituals (yasnân) of the Gadman-hômand ("glorious") fire, which they call the Rôshanô-kerp ("luminous form")[1], which is established at the appointed place (dâtô-gâs), the triumphant ritual of the Frôbâ fire, Horvadad, *and* Amerôdad, and the ceremonial (yazisn) with his priestly co-operation; they arrange and pray over the *sacred* twigs; *and* the ritual of Horvadad *and* Amerôdad, in the chapter of the code of religious formulas (nîrangistân)[2] demolishes three-thirds of the opposition. 30. Pêshyôtanû son of Vistâsp walks forth, with the assistance of the Frôbâ *fire*, the fire Gûsnâsp, and the fire Bûrzîn-Mitrô[3], to the great idol-temples, the abode of *the demons*[4]; and the wicked evil spirit, Wrath with infuriate spear[5], and all demons and fiends, evil races and wizards, arrive at the deepest *abyss* of hell; *and* those idol-temples are extirpated by the exertions of the illustrious Pêshyôtanû.

31. 'And I, the creator Aûharmazd, come to Mount Hûkaîryâd[6] with the archangels, and I issue

[1] See Bund. XVII, 5, 6. This appears to be an allusion to the removal of the sacred fire by Vistâsp, from the 'glorious' mountain in Khvârizem to the 'shining' mountain in Kâvulistân.

[2] See Chap. II, 37.

[3] Regarding these three manifestations of the sacred fire, see Bund. XVII, 3–9, SZS. XI, 8–10.

[4] Supplying the word sêdâân, 'the demons,' in accordance with §§ 36, 37; there being clearly some word omitted in K20.

[5] See Chap. II, 36. [6] Hûgar the lofty in Bund. XII, 2, 5.

orders to the archangels that they should speak to the angels of the spiritual existences thus: "Proceed to the assistance of the illustrious Pêshyôtanû!" 32. Mitrô of the vast cattle-pastures, Srôsh the vigorous, Rashn the just, Vâhrâm[1] the mighty, Âstâd the victorious, *and* the glory of the religion of the Mazdayasnians, the stimulator of *religious* formulas (nîrang), the arranger of the world, *proceed*[2] to the assistance of the illustrious Pêshyôtanû, through the order of which I, the creator, have just written[3].

33. 'Out of the demons of gloomy race the evil spirit cries to Mitrô of the vast cattle-pastures thus: "Stay above in truth[4], thou Mitrô of the vast cattle-pastures!"

34. 'And then Mitrô of the vast cattle-pastures cries thus: "Of these nine thousand years' support, which during its beginning produced Dahâk of evil religion, Frâsîyâv of Tûr, *and* Alexander[5] the Rûman, the period of one thousand years of those leathern-belted demons with dishevelled hair is a more than moderate reign to produce[6]."

35. 'The wicked evil spirit becomes confounded when he heard this; Mitrô of the vast cattle-pastures will smite Wrath of the infuriate spear with

[1] The fact that the angel Vâhrâm goes in his spiritual form to the assistance of Pêshyôtanû, rather militates against the idea that he also goes in the form of Vâhrâm the Vargâvand.

[2] This verb is omitted by mistake in K20.

[3] Literally, 'arrive at the writing.'

[4] Or, 'stand up with honesty!'

[5] The latter two names are here written Frâsâv and Alasandar.

[6] From this it appears that the writer expected the evil reign of the unbelievers to last a thousand years, that is, till the end of Hûshêdar's millennium, about A.D. 1593–1635, which corresponds very closely with the reign of the great Shâh 'Abbâs.

stupefaction; *and* the wicked evil spirit flees, with the miscreations and evil progeny he flees back to the darkest *recess* of hell. 36. And Mitrô of the vast cattle-pastures cries to the illustrious Pêshyôtanû thus: "Extirpate *and* utterly destroy the idol-temples, the abode of the demons! proceed to these countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created! restore again the throne of sovereignty of the religion over the wicked! when they see thee they will be terrified."

37. 'And the illustrious Pêshyôtanû advances, and the fire Frôbâ, the fire Gûsnasp, and the triumphant fire Bûrzîn-Mitrô will smite the fiend of excessive strength; he will extirpate the idol-temples that are the abode of demons; and they celebrate the ceremonial (yazisn), arrange the *sacred* twigs, solemnize the Dvâzdah-hômâst, and praise me, Aûharmazd, with the archangels; this is what I foretell[1]. 38. The illustrious Pêshyôtanû walks forth to these countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created, to the Arvand and Vêh river[2]; when the wicked see him they will be terrified, those of the progeny of gloom and those not worthy.

39. 'And regarding that Vâhrâm the Vargâvand it is declared that he comes forth in full glory, fixes upon Vandîd-khîm[3] ("a curbed temper"), and *having* intrusted *him* with the seat of mobadship of the

[1] Or, perhaps, 'what I said before,' being already narrated in § 29 as performed by Pêshyôtanû before advancing far into Iran.

[2] The Tigris and the Oxus—Indus (see §§ 5, 21).

[3] Probably a title of Pêshyôtanû; a more obvious translation would be, 'restrains a curbed temper, and is intrusted,' &c., but it is hardly probable that the warrior prince Vâhrâm could become a priest. It is Vâhrâm's business to restore the empire, leaving Pêshyôtanû to restore the religion.

mobads[1], and the seat of true explanation of the religion, he restores again these countries of Iran which I, Aûharmazd, created; and he drives[2] away from the world covetousness, want, hatred, wrath, lust, envy, and wickedness. 40. And the wolf period goes away, and the sheep period comes on; they establish the fire Frôbâ, the fire Gûsnâsp, *and* the fire Bûrzîn-Mitrô again at their proper places, and they will properly supply the firewood and incense; and the wicked evil spirit becomes confounded and unconscious, with the demons and the progeny of gloom. 41. And so the illustrious Pêshyôtanû speaks thus: "Let the demon be destroyed, and the witch be destroyed! let the fiendishness and vileness of the demons be destroyed! and let the gloomy progeny of the demons be destroyed! The glory[3] of the religion of the Mazdayasnians prospers, and let it prosper! let the family[4] of the liberal and just, who are doers of good deeds, prosper! and let the throne of the religion and sovereignty have a good restorer!" 42. Forth comes the illustrious Pêshyôtanû, forth he comes with a hundred and fifty men of the disciples who wear black marten fur, and they take the throne of their own religion and sovereignty.'

43. Aûharmazd said to Zaratûst the Spîtâmân: 'This is what I foretell, when it is the end of thy millennium it is the beginning of *that* of Hûshêdar[5].

[1] The supreme high-priesthood, or primacy.

[2] Merely a guess, as the verb varafsêd is difficult to understand.

[3] K20 has nismô, 'soul,' but the very-similarly written gadman, 'glory,' is a more likely reading here (see § 32).

[4] Reading dûdak instead of rûdak, as in Chap. II, 47.

[5] The writer having detailed the supernatural means employed for restoring the religion, now returns to the birth of Hûshêdar

44. Regarding Hûshêdar it is declared that he will be born in 1600[1], and at thirty years of age he comes to a conference with me, Aûharmazd, *and* receives the religion. 45. When he comes away from the conference he cries to the sun with the swift horse[2], thus: "Stand still!"

46. 'The sun with the swift horse stands still ten

(§ 13) for the purpose of mentioning some of his actions, and making the chronology of his millennium rather more clear. Nothing is said here about his miraculous birth, the details of which are given in the seventh book of the Dînkard very much as they are found in the Persian Rivâyats. The Dînkard states that thirty years before the end of Zaratûst's millennium a young maiden bathing in certain water, and drinking it, becomes pregnant through the long-preserved seed of Zaratûst (see Bund. XXXII, 8, 9), and subsequently gives birth to Hûshêdar.

[1] There seems to be no other rational way of understanding this number than by supposing that it represents the date of Hûshêdar's birth, counting from the beginning of Zaratûst's millennium. According to this view Hûshêdar was to be born in the six hundredth year of his own millennium, and not at its beginning, as § 13 seems to imply, nor nearly thirty years earlier, as the Dînkard asserts. As the beginning of his millennium may be fixed about A.D. 593–635 (see note on § 11), the writer must have expected him to be born about A.D. 1193–1235; a time which was probably far in the future when he was writing. And as Vâhrâm the Vargâvand was to be born when Hûshêdar was thirty years of age (compare §§ 14, 44), and was to march into Iran at the age of thirty (§ 17), the great conflict of the nations (§§ 8, 19–22) was expected to begin about A.D. 1253–1295, and to continue till near the end of the millennium, about A.D. 1593–1635, when Pêshyôtanû was expected to appear (§ 51) and to restore the 'good' religion (§§ 26, 37, 42). An enthusiastic Parsi interpreter of prophecy might urge that though this period did not witness any revival of his religion, it did witness a restoration of the Persian empire under Shâh 'Abbâs, and also the first beginning of British power in India, which has been so great a benefit to the scanty remnant of his fellow-countrymen.

[2] The usual epithet of the sun in the Avesta.

days and nights; and when this happens all the people of the world abide by the good religion of the Mazdayasnians. 47. Mitrô of the vast cattle-pastures cries to Hûshêdar, *son* of Zaratûst, thus: "O Hûshêdar, restorer of the true religion! cry to the sun with the swift horse thus: 'Move on!' for it is dark in the regions of Arzâh and Savâh, Fradadafsh *and* Vîdadafsh, Vôrûbarst *and* Vôrûgarst, and the illustrious Khvanîras[1]."

48. 'Hûshêdar *son* of Zaratûst cries, to the sun he cries, thus: "Move on!" 49. The sun with the swift horse moves on, *and* Vargâvand[2] and all mankind fully believe in the good religion of the Mazdayasnians.'

50. Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! this is what I foretell, that this one brings the creatures back to their proper state. 51. When it is near the end of the millennium Pêshyôtanû[3] son of Vistâsp comes into notice, who is a Kayân that advances triumphantly; and those enemies who relied upon fiendishness, such as the Tûrk, Arab, and Rûman, and the vile ones who control[4] the Iranian sovereign with insolence and oppression and enmity to the sovereignty, destroy the fire and make the religion weak; and they convey *their* power and success to him and every one who accepts the law and religion willingly; if he

[1] The seven regions of the earth (see Bund. XI, 2, 3).

[2] It is just possible to read, 'the sun with the swift horse, the splendid, moves on, and all mankind fully believe,' &c. But if the reading in the text be correct it effectually disposes of the idea of Vâhrâm being an incarnation of the angel, as an angel would require no miracle to make him believe in the religion.

[3] See §§ 25–30.

[4] This verb is doubtful, as most of the word is torn off in K20.

accept it unwillingly the law and religion ever destroy *him*[1] till it is the end of the whole millennium.

52. 'And, afterwards, when the millennium of Hûshêdar-mâh comes, through Hûshêdar-mâh[2] the creatures become more progressive, and he utterly destroys the fiend of serpent origin[3]; *and* Pêshyôtanû son of Vistâsp becomes, in like manner, high-priest and primate (rad) of the world[4]. 53. In that millennium of Hûshêdar-mâh mankind become so versed in medicine, and keep and bring physic and remedies so *much* in use, *that* when they are confessedly at the point of death they do not thereupon die, nor when they smite and slay *them* with the sword and knife[5].

54. 'Afterwards, *one* begs a gift of *any* description out of the allowance of heretics, *and* owing to depravity *and* heresy they do not give *it*. 55. And Aharman rises through that spite[6] on to the moun-

[1] This appears to be the meaning, but the latter part of the sentence is not very clear.

[2] See Bund. XXXII, 8. The name is written Khûrshêd-mâh in K20. The Dînkard gives the same account of the miraculous birth of Hûshêdar-mâh as of the first Hûshêdar (see note on § 43); it also repeats the legend of the sun standing still, but for the longer period of twenty days; all which details are also found in the Persian Rivâyats.

[3] Av. azikithra; such creatures are mentioned in Ardavahist Yt. 8, 10, 11, 15; but Az-i Dahâk, 'the destructive serpent,' is probably meant here (see §§ 56–61).

[4] As in the previous millennium. According to the chronology deduced from § 44 the millennium of Hûshêdar-mâh, which corresponds to the twelfth and last millennium of Bund. XXXIV, is now near the middle of its third century.

[5] The sentence is either defective or obscure, but this appears to be its meaning.

[6] The evil spirit is encouraged, by an act of religious toleration, apparently, to recommence his manœuvres for injuring mankind.

tain of Dimâvand[1], which is the direction of Bêvarâsp, *and* shouts thus: "Now it is nine thousand years, *and* Frêdûn is not living; why do you not rise up, although these thy fetters are not removed, when[2] this world is full of people, and they have brought them from the enclosure which Yim formed[3]?"

56. 'After that apostate shouts like this, *and* because of it, Az-i Dahâk[4] stands up before *him*, *but*, through fear of the likeness of Frêdûn in the body of Frêdûn, he does not first remove those fetters and stake from *his* trunk until Aharman removes *them*. 57. And the vigour of Az-i Dahâk increases, the fetters being removed from *his* trunk, *and his* impetuosity remains; he swallows down the apostate on the spot[5], and rushing into the world to perpetrate sin, he commits innumerable grievous sins; he swallows down one-third of mankind, cattle, sheep, and other creatures of Aûharmazd; he smites the water, fire, and vegetation, and commits grievous sin.

58. 'And, afterwards, the water, fire, and vegetation stand before Aûharmazd the lord in lamentation, and make this complaint: "Make Frêdûn alive again! so that he may destroy Az-i Dahâk; for if thou, O Aûharmazd! dost not do this, we cannot

[1] Here written Dimbhâvand (see Bund. XII, 31).

[2] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'which' (see the note on Bund. I, 7).

[3] The var-i Yim kard (see Bund. XXIX, 14). The men and creatures who are supposed to be preserved in this enclosure are expected to replenish the world whenever it has been desolated by wars and oppression.

[4] Whose surname is Bêvarâsp (see Bund. XXIX, 9).

[5] The Pâz. MSS. end here.

exist in the world; the fire says thus: I *will* not heat; and the water says thus: I *will* not flow."

59. 'And then I, Aûharmazd the creator, say to Srôsh and Nêryôsang the angel: "Shake the body of Keresâsp the Sâmân, till he rises up!"

60. 'Then Srôsh and Nêryôsang the angel go to Keresâsp[1]; three times they utter a cry, and the fourth time Sâm rises up with triumph, and goes to meet Az-i Dahâk. 61. And[2] Sâm does not listen to his words, and the triumphant club strikes him on the head, and smites and kills *him*; afterwards, desolation *and* adversity depart from this world, while I make a beginning of the millennium[3]. 62. Then Sôshyans[4] makes the creatures again pure, and the resurrection and future existence occur.'

63. May the end be in peace, pleasure, and joy, by the will of God (yazdânŏ)! so may it be! even more so may it be!

---

[1] Also called Sâm in this same section; he was lying in a trance in the plain of Pêsyânsaî (see Bund. XXIX, 7–9).

[2] Reading afas instead of minas (see Chap. II, 4, note 2).

[3] The thirteenth millennium, or first of the future existence, when Sôshyans appears. The Dînkard and the Persian Rivâyats recount the same legends regarding the miraculous birth of Sôshyans, and of the sun standing still (for thirty days), as they do with regard to Hûshêdar (see note on § 43).

[4] See Bund. XXXII, 8.

SHÂYAST LÂ-SHÂYAST

OR

THE PROPER AND IMPROPER.

AN OLD

PAHLAVI RIVÂYAT

OR

MISCELLANY OF TRADITIONAL MEMORANDA.

OBSERVATIONS.

1–5. (The same as on p. 2.)

6. Abbreviations used are:—Âf. for Âfrîngân. Av. for Avesta. AV. for the Book of Ar*d*â-Vîrâf, ed. Hoshangji and Haug. Bund. for Bundahi*s*, as translated in this volume. B. Yt. for Bahman Ya*s*t, as translated in this volume. Chald. for Chaldee. Farh. Okh. for Farhang-i Oîm-khadûk, ed. Hoshangji and Haug. Haug's Essays, for Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsis, by Martin Haug, 2nd edition. Huz. for Huzvâri*s*. Lev. for Leviticus. Mkh. for Mainyô-i-khar*d*, ed. West. Nîr. for Nîrangistân. Pahl. for Pahlavi. Pâz. for Pâzand. Pers. for Persian. Sls. for Shâyast lâ-shâyast, as here translated. SZS. for Selections of Zâ*d*-sparam, as translated in this volume. W. for Westergaard. Vend. for Vendîdâd, ed. Spiegel. Visp. for Visparad, ed. Spiegel. Yas. for Yasna, ed. Spiegel. Yt. for Ya*s*t, ed. Westergaard.

7. The manuscripts mentioned in the notes are:—

B29 (written A.D. 1679), a Rivâyat MS., No. 29 of the University Library at Bombay.

K20 (about 500 years old), No. 20 in the University Library at Kopenhagen.

L7, L15, L22, &c. are MSS. No. 7, 15, 22, &c. in the India Office Library at London.

M5 (written A. D. 1723), No. 5 of the Haug Collection in the State Library at Munich.

M6 (written A. D. 1397), No. 6 of the same Collection.

M9 (modern), No. 9 of the same Collection.

TD (written about A. D. 1530), a MS. of the Bundahi*s* belonging to Mobad Tehmuras Dinshawji Anklesaria at Bombay.

SHÂYAST LÂ-SHÂYAST.

PART I.—*The Original Treatise.*

CHAPTER I.

0. In the name of God (yazdân) and the good creation may there be the good health, long life, and abundant wealth of all the good and the right-doers specially for him whose writing I am [1].

1. As revealed by the Avesta, it is said in the Vendidad [2] that these seven degrees (pâyak) of sin

---

[1] See the note on B. Yt. I, 0.

[2] Referring to Vend. IV, 54–114, where seven classes of assault and their respective punishments are detailed. In our text eight classes of sin are named, although only seven degrees are mentioned; the second and third classes being apparently arranged together, as one degree of sin in § 2. Or the inconsistency may have arisen from the addition of the Farmân, a class of sin or crime not mentioned in the Vendidad, unless, indeed, it be the farmân spôkhtanŏ, 'neglect of commandment' (referring probably to priest's commands), of Pahl. Vend. VI, 15. The other seven classes are thus described in Pahl. Vend. IV, 54–57, 79, 85, 93, 99, 106 :—

'By the man whose weapon (or blow) is upraised for striking a man, that which is his Âgerept is thus implanted in *him*. When it *has* moved forward—that is, he makes *it* advance—*it* is thus his Avôirîst, that is, Avôirîst is implanted in him *and* the Âgerept merges into it, some say that it does not exist. When he comes on to him *with* thoughts of malice—that is, he places a hand upon him—*it* is thus his Aredûs, that is, Aredûs is implanted in him and the Avôirîst merges into it, some say that it does not exist. *At* the fifth Aredûs the man even becomes a Tanâpûhar; *things* at

are mentioned in revelation, *which* are Farmân, Âgerept, Avôirîst[1], Aredûs, Khôr, Bâzâî, Yât, and Tanâpûhar[2]. 2. A Farmân is the weight of four

sunrise (avar-khûrshêdîh) and in the forenoon (kâîtîh = kâstîh) are no more apart. . . . Whoever inflicts the Aredûs blow on a man *it is* one-fifth of a wound (rêsh). . . . Whoever inflicts that which is a cruel Khôr ('hurt') on a man *it is* one-fourth of a wound. . . . Whoever inflicts that which is a bleeding Khôr on a man *it is* one-third of a wound. . . . Whoever shall give a man a bone-breaking Khôr *it is* half a wound. . . . Whoever strikes a man the blow *which puts him* out of consciousness shall give a whole wound.'

This description does not mention Bâzâî and Yât, unless they be the two severer kinds of Khôr; but Bâzâî occurs in Pahl. Vend. IV, 115, V, 107, XIII, 38, though Yât seems not to be mentioned in the Vendidad. Aredûs occurs again in Pahl. Vend. III, 151, and Khôr in Pahl. Vend. III, 48, XIII, 38, and Yas. LVI, iv, 2.

[1] Also written avôîrist, avîrist, aîvîrist, avôkîrist, and avakôrist in other places.

[2] Five of these names are merely slight alterations of the Av. âgerepta, avaoirista, aredus, *hv*ara, and tanuperetha (peretôtanu or peshôtanu). The last seven degrees are also noticed in a very obscure passage in Farh. Okh. pp. 36, 37 (correcting the text from the old MSS. M6 and K20) as follows:—

'Âgerept, "seized," is that when they shall take up a weapon for smiting an innocent *person;* Avôirîst, "turning," is that when *one* turns the weapon upon an innocent *person;* when through sinfulness *one* lays the weapon on a sinner the name is Aredûs; for whatever reaches the source of life the name is Khôr; *one* explains Bâzâî *as* "smiting," *and* Yât *as* "going to," *and* the soul of man ought to be withstanding, *as* a counterstroke is the penalty for a Yât when it *has* been so much *away* from the abode of life. *In* like manner Âgerept, Avôirîst, Aredûs, Khôr, Bâzâî, and Yât are also called good works, *which* are performed in like proportions, *and* are called by the names of weights and measures *in* the same manner. Of peshôtanus tanûm pairyêitê the meaning is a Tanâpûhar; as they call a good work of three hundred a Tanâpûhar, on account of the three hundred like proportions of the same kind, the meaning of its name, Tanâpûhar, thereupon enters into sin. . . . A Khôr is just that description of wound from which

stîrs, and each stîr is four dirhams (*gûgan*)[1]; of Âgerept and Avôirîst that which is least is a scourging (tâzâněŏ), and the amount of them which was specially *that* which is most is said *to be* one dirham[2]; an Aredûs is thirty *stîrs*[3]; a Khôr is sixty stîrs; a Bâzâî is ninety stîrs; a Yât is a hundred and eighty stîrs; and a Tanâpûhar is three hundred stîrs[4].

---

the blood comes, irrespective of where, how, how much, *and* wherewith it is inflicted; *it is* that which is a wound from the beginning, *and* that which will result therefrom.'

The application of this scale of offences is, however, not confined to these particular forms of assault, but has been extended (since the Avesta was compiled) to all classes of sins, and also to the good works which are supposed to counterbalance them.

[1] The dirham has been variously estimated, at different times, as a weight of forty-five to sixty-seven grains, but perhaps fifty grains may be taken as the meaning of the text, and the stîr may, therefore, be estimated at 200 grains. The Greeks used both these weights, which they called δραχμή and στατήρ.

[2] The amounts of these first three degrees of sin are differently stated in other places (see Chaps. XI, 2, XVI, 1–3, 5). It is difficult to understand why the amounts of Âgerept and Avôirîst should here be stated as less than that of Farmân, and some Parsis, therefore, read vîhast (as an irregular form of vîst, 'twenty') instead of vês-ast, 'is most,' so that they may translate the amount as 'twenty dirhams;' but to obtain this result they would have to make further alterations in the Pahlavi text. In a passage quoted by Spiegel (in his Traditionelle Literatur der Parsen, p. 88) from the Rivâyat MS. P12, in the Bibliothèque Nationale at Paris, it is stated that Farmân is seven stîrs, Âgerept twelve stîrs, and Avôirîst fifteen stîrs. Another Rivâyat makes the Farmân eight stîrs.

[3] All MSS. have Aredûs sî 30, 'an Aredûs is thirty (30),' leaving it doubtful whether dirhams or stîrs are meant; and the same mode of writing is adopted in Chap. XI, 2.

[4] All authorities agree about the amounts of the last five degrees of sin. These amounts are the supposed weights of the several sins in the golden scales of the angel Rashnû (see AV. V, 5), when the soul is called to account, for its actions during life, after the

3. In the administration of the primitive faith[1] there are *some* who have been of different opinions

---

third night after death (see Mkh. II, 114–122). Its sins are supposed to be then weighed against its good works, which are estimated by the same scale of degrees (see the passage already quoted from Farh. Okh. in p. 240, note 2), and it is sent direct to heaven, or hell, or an intermediate place, according as the good works or sins preponderate, or are both equal. In the Avesta of the Vendidad, however, whence these degrees are derived, we find them forming merely a graduated scale of assaults, extending from first lifting the hand to smite even unto manslaughter; and for each of these seven degrees of assault a scale of temporal punishments is prescribed, according to the number of times the offence has been committed. These punishments consist of a uniform series of lashes with a horse-whip or scourge, extending from a minimum of five lashes to a maximum of two hundred (see Vend. IV, 58–114); each degree of assault commencing at a different point on the scale of punishments for the first offence, and gradually rising through the scale with each repetition of the offence, so that the more aggravated assaults attain the maximum punishment by means of a smaller number of repetitions. Thus, the punishments prescribed for Âgerepta, from the first to the eighth offence, are 5, 10, 15, 30, 50, 70, 90, and 200 lashes respectively; those for Avaoirista, from the first to the seventh offence, extend on the same scale from 10 to 200 lashes; those for Aredus, from the first to the sixth offence, are from 15 to 200 lashes; those for a bruised hurt (*hv*ara), from the first to the fifth offence, are from 30 to 200 lashes; those for a bleeding hurt, from the first to the fourth offence, are from 50 to 200 lashes; those for a bone-breaking hurt, from the first to the third offence, are from 70 to 200 lashes; and those for a hurt depriving of consciousness or life, for the first and second offences, are 90 and 200 lashes. The maximum punishment of 200 lashes is prescribed only when the previous offences have not been atoned for, and it is to be inflicted in all such cases, however few or trifling the previous assaults have been.

[1] In M6 pôryô*d*kêshîh, but pôryô*d*kêshân, 'of those of the primitive faith,' in K20; from the Av. paoiryô*d*kaêsha of Yas. I, 47, III, 65, IV, 53, XXII, 33, Fravardîn Yt. 0, 90, 156, Âf. Rapithwin, 2. It is a term applied to what is considered as the

about it, for Gôgôsasp[1] spoke otherwise than the teaching[2] (*kâstak*) of Âtarô-Aûharmazd[3], and Sôshyans[4] *otherwise* than the teaching of Âtarô-frôbâg Nôsâî[5], and Mê*d*ôk-mâh[6] *otherwise* than the teaching of Gôgôsasp[7], and Afarg[8] *otherwise* than the teaching

---

true Mazdayasnian religion in all ages, both before and after the time of Zaratûst.

[1] One of the old commentators whose opinions are frequently quoted in Pahlavi books, as in Chap. II, 74, 82, 119, Pahl. Vend. III, 48, 138, 151, IV, 35, V, 14, 121, VI, 9, 64, VII, 6, 136, VIII, 64, 236, XV, 35, 48, 56, 67, XVI, 5, XVIII, 98, 124, and thirteen times in the Nîrangistân. His name is sometimes written Gôsasp (as it is here both in M6 and K20) and sometimes Gôgôsôsp.

[2] Probably a written exposition or commentary is meant.

[3] This commentator is mentioned once in the Nîrangistân as Âtarô Aûharmazdân.

[4] This commentator is mentioned in Chaps. II, 56, 74, 80, 118, 119, III, 13, VI, 4, 5; also in Pahl. Vend. III, 64, 69, 151, IV, 6, V, 48, 80, 107, 121, 146, 153, VI, 15, 64, 73, VII, 4, 136, 168, VIII, 28, 59, 303, IX, 184, XIII, 20, XVI, 7, 10, 17, 20–22, 27, XVIII, 98, and forty-six times in the Nîrangistân. He was a namesake of the last of the future apostles and sons of Zaratûst (see Bund. XXXII, 8), and his name is often written Sôshâns and read Saoshyôs or Sôsyôs by Pâzand writers.

[5] This commentator is mentioned once in the Nîrangistân, and may probably be the Âtarô-frôbâg of B. Yt. I, 7; compare also Nôsâî Bûrz-Mitrô, the name of another commentator, in Chap. VIII, 18.

[6] This commentator is mentioned in Chaps. II, 1, 11, 12, 89, V, 5, 6; also in Pahl. Vend. III, 151, V, 6, 58, 107, VIII, 48, 110, IX, 132, XIII, 99, XIV, 37, and four times in the Nîrangistân. His name is sometimes written Mê*d*yôk-mâh or Mâi*d*ôk-mâh, and he was a namesake of Zaratûst's cousin and first disciple (see Bund. XXXII, 2, 3). The Vagarkar*d*-i Dînîk professes to have been compiled by Mê*d*yôk-mâh, but there appear to have been several priests of this name (see Bund. XXXIII, 1).

[7] Gôsasp in M6.

[8] This commentator is mentioned in Chaps. II, 2, 64, 73, 88, 115, V, 5, 6: also in Pahl. Vend. III, 48, 115, V, 6, 14, 22, 58,

of Sôshyans. 4. And all those of the primitive faith rely upon these six[1] teachings, and there are *some* who rely more weakly and some more strongly *upon some* of them.

146, VI, 9, VII, 6, 61, 93, 136, VIII, 48, 64, 110, 250, IX, 132, XIII, 99, XIV, 14, 37, XIX, 84, Pahl. Yas. LXIV, 37, once in Farh. Okh., and thirty-eight times in the Nîrangistân.

[1] Both MSS. have 'three,' although four teachings and six commentators are mentioned in the previous section, and a fifth 'teaching' is mentioned in Chap. II, 2. The original reading was more probably 'six' than 'four,' as a Pahlavi 'six' requires merely the omission of a cipher to become 'three,' whereas a Pahlavi 'four' must be altered to produce the same blunder.

Several other commentators are mentioned in Pahlavi books, such as Âtarô-pâ*d*, son of Dâ*d*-farukh, twice in the Nîrangistân; Âzâ*d*-mar*d* nine times in Nîr.; Barôshand Aûharmazd once in Nîr.; Dâ*d* Aûharmazd in B. Yt. I, 7, III, 16, Pahl. Yas. X, 57, XI, 22; Dâ*d*-farukh in Pahl. Vend. V, 112, VI, 64, and twice in Nîr.; Dâ*d*-i-vêh seventeen times in Nîr.; Farukhŏ thrice in Nîr.; Kîrâtanŏ-bûgê*d* in Pahl. Vend. V, 80, VI, 15, IX, 184, XIII, 20, he is called the Kirmânîk in Pahl. Vend. IV, 35, and Dastûr Hoshangji thinks his name is merely a variant of the next; Kûshtanŏ-bûgê*d* in Sls. II, 57, 81, 118, VI, 6, VIII, 17, Pahl. Vend. III, 64, 69, IV, 6, V, 48, VI, 53, 64, 73, VIII, 28, XVI, 17, 21, 22, 27, and twenty-two times in Nîr.; Mâh-Aûharmazd in Pahl. Vend. VII, 82; Mâh-gôsaspŏ, Mâh-gôsôspŏ, Mâh-gôspŏ, or Mâh-vasp in Pahl. Yas. IX, 33, Pahl. Vend. III, 138, and ten times in Nîr.; Mâhvand-dâ*d* or Mâh-vindâ*d* in B. Yt. III, 3, Pahl. Yas. IX, 33, X, 57, XI, 22, XIX, 27; Mar*d*-bû*d* in Sls. II, 86, and twice in Nîr., where he is called the son of Dâ*d*-gun; Nêryôsang in Sls. VIII, 13, Pahl. Vend. V, 22; Nikhshâ-pûhar, or Nîshapûhar in Pahl. Vend. III, 151, V, 112, VI, 71, VIII, 64, XVI, 10, 17, AV. I, 35, and twenty-four times in Nîr.; Nôsâi Bûrz-Mitrô in Sls. VIII, 18; Parîk or Pîrîk in Pahl. Vend. III, 138, V, 14, 134, VII, 82, 93, VIII, 64, and once in Nîr.; Rôshan or Rôshanô (which, as the Sîkand-gûmânî states, was the name of a commentary written by Rôshan son of Âtarô-frôbâg) in Sls. II, 39, 86, 107, B. Yt. III, 3, Pahl. Yas. IX, 5, 14, Pahl. Vend. III, 48, V, 112, 134, 176, VII, 93, XVII, 11, and eleven times in Nîr.; disciples of Vakht-âfrî*d*ŏ (possibly the Bakht-âfrî*d* of Sls. XX, 11, B. Yt. I, 7) are mentioned once in Nîr.; Vand-Aûharmazd in Sls. II, 2, 6, 44, XIV, 5, Pahl. Vend. VI, 73; and Vêh-dôst once in

Chapter II.

1. For in the third fargar*d* ('chapter') of the Vendidad of Mê*d*ôk-mâh[1] *it* is declared that when life is resigned without effort[2], at the time when the life departs, when a dog is tied to his foot, even then the Nasûs[3] rushes upon it, and afterwards, when seen by it, the Nasûs is destroyed by it. 2. This is where *it is stated* which is the dog which destroys the Nasûs[4], the shepherd's dog, the village-dog, the blood-hound, the slender hound[5], and the rûkûnîk[6]:

the Nîrangistân. It must, however, be observed that the reading of some of these names is very uncertain.

[1] Alluding probably to Mê*d*ôk-mâh's complete commentary on the Vendidad (now no longer extant), as the commentary on Pahl. Vend. III, 48, which treats of Sag-di*d* or dog-gaze, does not mention Mê*d*ôk-mâh or any of the details described here in the text; these details, however, are to be found in Pahl. Vend. VII, 4.

[2] Reading amat barâ zôr *g*ân dâ*d*. This phrase occurs only in M6 (as a marginal note) and in the text of its descendants. Assuming that barâ may be a miswriting of pavan (see p. 176, note 5), we might read amat pavan zôr shûyâ*d*, 'when he shall wash with holy-water.'

[3] The 'corruption' which is supposed to enter a corpse shortly after death, whence it issues in the form of a fiend and seizes upon any one who touches the corpse, unless it has been destroyed, or driven away, by the gaze of a dog, as mentioned in the text (compare Vend. VIII, 38–48). The carcase of a dog is considered equally contagious with the corpse of a human being, and when the fiend of corruption (Nasûs or Nas of Bund. XXVIII, 29) has seized upon any one, it can be driven out only by a long and troublesome form of purification described in Vend. VIII, 111–228, IX, 4–117.

[4] This statement is now to be found in Pahl. Vend. VII, 4.

[5] See Bund. XIV, 19. The Persian Rivâyats of Kâmah Bahrah and Kâûs Kâmân (quoted in B29) describe these dogs as 'the shepherd's dog, the house-dog, the strange or tame (gharîb) dog, and the puppy.'

[6] Probably the Av. sukuruna of Vend. V, 100, XIII, 48, which

and as to the rûkûnîk there have been divers opinions, *as* Vand-Aûharmazd[1] asserted, from the teaching of Afarg, that it does not destroy *it*. 3. The dog destroys the Nasûs at the time when it sees the flesh, and when it sees the hair or nails it does not destroy *it*[2]. 4. A blind dog also destroys *it*, at the time when it places a paw[3] on the corpse; and when it places *it* upon the hair or nails it does not destroy *it*[4]. 5. The birds which destroy the Nasûs are three: the mountain kite, the black crow, and the vulture[5]; the bird, moreover, destroys *it* at the time when *its* shadow falls upon it; when it sees it in the water, a mirror, or a looking-glass, it does not destroy *it*[6].

is translated by hûkar or hûkûr in the Pahlavi version. This fifth kind of dog is called 'the blind (kûr) dog' in the Persian Rivâyats; but Pahl. Vend. VII, 4 asserts that 'Sôshâns said the rûkunîk also destroys it,' and then speaks of the blind dog as in § 4.

[1] See the note on Chap. I, 4.

[2] This is also stated in Pahl. Vend. III, 138.

[3] See Pahl. Vend. VII, 4.

[4] The Persian Rivâyats say this is because the Nasûs is concealed beneath the hair and nails (compare Vend. VII, 70).

[5] These are the birds 'created for devouring dead matter (see Bund. XIX, 25). Pahl. Vend. VII, 4 substitutes an eagle (dâlman) for the vulture.

[6] This sentence is probably defective, as the last clause evidently refers to the dog's gaze (see Pahl. Vend. III, 138), and not to the bird's shadow; the rule, however, is applicable to both. Thus the Persian Rivâyats state that if the bird's shadow falls upon the hair or the nails of the corpse, or if the bird's shadow, or the dog's gaze falls upon a corpse in the water, or upon its reflection in a mirror, the Nasûs is not destroyed. Dastûr Jâmâspji is of opinion that the utility of the bird's shadow is intended to apply only to cases of death in uninhabited places, where a dog is not procurable. As all three birds are such as feed upon corpses, it seems probable that the rule as to their utility was intended to pre-

6. Vand-Aûharmazd said, where a pregnant woman is to be carried by two men[1], both are to be cleansed by the Bareshnûm *ceremony*[2], and the head of the corpse, when they carry it away, is to be set towards the Dakhma[3]. 7. And on account of contamination

vent any neglect of corpses found in wild places, where some of these birds would be sure to approach and let their shadows fall upon the dead, after which the finder of the corpse would suppose that the Nasûs was destroyed or driven away, and the corpse safer to approach.

[1] This is an exceptional case, when not more than two men are available; the usual custom (see Chap. X, 10) is to employ four men and two dogs (double the usual number) in disposing of the corpse of a pregnant woman, on account of the double risk of contamination, owing to the Nasûs, or fiend of corruption, having seized upon two corpses at once. In consequence of the exceptional nature of the case, the mode of purification is also exceptional.

[2] A long purification ceremony lasting nine nights, and described in Vend. IX, 1–145. Its name, according to Dastûr Hoshangji, is derived from the first word of the instructions for sprinkling the unclean person, which commence (Vend. IX, 48) as follows: Bareshnûm hê vaghdhanem paourum paiti-hiṅkôis, 'sprinkle in front on the top of his head.' As it is usual to quote chapters by their initial words, the initial word of these instructions for the ceremony became a name for the ceremony itself.

[3] The building in which the dead are finally deposited; here called by its Huzvâris name, khazân. The Dakhmas used by the Parsis in India are like low circular towers in external appearance, and consist of a high wall enclosing a larger or smaller circular space which is open to the sky. The only opening in the wall is a small doorway, closed with an iron door. In the centre of the circular area is a circular well a few feet in depth, and the space around it is paved so as to slope gently downwards from the enclosing wall to the brink of the well. This paved annular area is divided (by shallow gutters grooved into its surface) into spaces, each large enough for one corpse to be laid upon it, with the head towards the wall and the feet towards the well. These spaces are arranged in two or more concentric rings around the well, and the gutters (which isolate each space on all four sides) drain into the

(pa*d*vîshak)[1] two are not to be carried at one time, and two by one person are not proper; one dog and one person are proper[2]. 8. Every one who understands the care of a corpse is proper; two boys of eight years old, who understand the care, are proper; a woman free from menstruation, or free from dead

---

well. After a sufficient time has elapsed the dry bones are said to be thrown into the well, and when the well is full the Dakhma ought to be finally closed, and another one brought into use. These Dakhmas are erected upon some dry and barren spot, remote from habitations and water; upon the summit of a hill, if possible, as prescribed in Vend. VI, 93, and usually more than a mile from the town. In Bombay the town has gradually approached the Dakhmas, and to some extent surrounded them, but has been kept away from their immediate vicinity by the judicious measures of influential Parsis, who have acquired all the neighbouring land, and refrain from building on it. The reason for thus exposing their dead to the sun and carnivorous birds is that the Parsis consider fire, water, and earth too sacred to be defiled by corp es; and they have less consideration for the air. Next to burning, the Parsi mode of disposing of the dead is the most rapid and effectual, as it avoids most of the concentrated evils which must accumulate in crowded cemeteries in the course of time, and which require ages to dissipate. As it is, most of the offensive effluvium in the immediate vicinity of a Dakhma arises not from direct contamination of the air, but indirectly through the ground, which becomes polluted, in the course of time, by impure filtrations.

[1] Dastûr Jâmâspji prefers reading patôshak, and thinks it means 'necessity,' as in cases where two deaths occur nearly simultaneously in the same house, when both corpses cannot be removed the same day. Such a meaning might suit this passage, but the word occurs again, in § 33 and Chap. IX, 7, where it can refer only to 'contamination,' and the etymology of pa*d*vîshak (Av. paiti + vish) is plain enough.

[2] That is, when two persons cannot be found to carry a corpse, one can do it alone, provided he holds a dog by a string. This course is adopted, Dastûr Jâmâspji says, when a person happens to die in a p'ace where only one Parsi is available.

matter[1], or a man, with a woman or a child of eight years old, is proper.

9. It is not to be carried all covered up[2], for *that* is burying the corpse; to carry *it* in the rain is worthy of death[3]. 10. When clouds have been around[4], it is allowable to carry *it* away from the house; and when rain sets in upon the road it is not allowable to carry *it* back to the house; *but* when it is before a veranda (dâhliz) *one* should put *it* down there; that is allowable when he who owns the veranda is apprehensive, *and* when he does not allow *it* inside; and, afterwards, it is to be carried away to its place, and when the water stands the height of a javelin (nîzak) inside[5], *one* puts *it* down *and* brings *it* away yet again. 11. Mêdôk-mâh[6] says that there should be a shelter (var)[7] *one* should

[1] In the terms arî-dashtânô and arî-nasâi the compound arz is written in an obsolete manner, both in M6 and K20. The meaning of the text is that either or both of the corpse-carriers may be any Parsi man, woman, or child who understands the proper precautions. Compare Pahl. Vend. VIII, 28.

[2] K20 has 'when curved it is not to be carried.'

[3] That is, it is a mortal sin to allow rain to fall upon a corpse before it is deposited in the Dakhma.

[4] Or 'withheld,' or 'continuous,' according as we compare hâmûn with Pers. âmûn (âman), amân, or hâmân.

[5] Inside the Dakhma apparently. The meaning seems to be, that when the Dakhma is flooded the corpse is to be laid down in some dry place in its vicinity until the flood has abated. But according to Pahl. Vend. VIII, 17, it is allowable to throw the corpse in when the Dakhma is full of water.

[6] See Chaps. I, 3, II, 1. Here, again, the quotation must be from his complete commentary, as it is not extant in the present Pahlavi Vendidad.

[7] From Av. var, 'to cover, to shelter;' compare Pers. gullah, 'a bower or shed.' Nowadays the Parsis have a permanent shelter near the Dakhma. Pahl. Vend. VIII, 17 says, 'to carry

fasten above that place, *and* it would make *it* dry below[1]; *one* should place the corpse under that shelter, and they may take the shelter *and* bring *it* away.

12. From the fifth fargar*d* of the Vendidad of Mê*d*ôk-mâh[2] they state thus, that at the place where one's life goes forth, when he shall die upon a cloth, and a hair or a limb remains upon the bed-place and the ground[3], the ground conveys the pollution, even not originating with *itself* (ahambûni*k*), in like manner down unto the water[4]. 13. And when *he is* on a bedstead, and *its* legs are not connected with the ground, when a hair or a limb remains behind on the bedstead, it does not convey *the pollution* down. 14. When he shall die on a plastered floor the plaster is polluted, and when they dig up that plaster and spread *it* again afterwards, it is clean. 15. When he shall die on a stone, and the stone is connected with the ground, the stone will become clean, *along* with the ground, in the length of a year; and when they dig up the place, the stone *being* polluted is to be washed at the time. 16. When a stone is connected with the ground, or is separated, and *one* shall die upon it, so much space of the stone as the corpse occupied is polluted[5];

---

an umbrella (a*v*argash) from behind, *or* to hold up a shelter, is of no use.'

[1] Or, 'it would make *it* very dry,' if we read a*v*îr, 'very,' instead of agîr, 'below;' these two words being written alike in Pahlavi.

[2] Quoting again from his lost commentary.

[3] Or, perhaps, 'floor.'

[4] This translation is somewhat doubtful, but the text seems to imply that the ground is polluted as deep as it contains no water.

[5] K20 has had, 'the stone is all polluted, *and* will become clean at the time when they dig *it* up, the stone is all polluted, in so

when they shall leave it, in the length of a year it will become clean *along* with the ground; and when they dig *it* up, the stone is all polluted, *and* is to be washed at the time; when the stone is not made *even* with the ground, above the ground the stone is all polluted, *and* is to be washed at the time.

17. Dung-fuel *and* ashes, when the limbs of a menstruous woman come upon them, are both polluted; and the salt and lime for washing *her* shift (kartak-shûî) are *to be treated* just like stone[1].

18. If *one* shall die on a terrace roof (bân)[2], when one of his limbs, or a hair, remains behind at the edge of the roof, the roof is polluted *for* the size of the body as far as the water; and they should carry down all the *sacred* twigs (baresôm)[3] in the house, from the place where the pollution is, until there are thirty steps of three feet[4] to the *sacred* twigs, so that the *sacred* twigs may not be polluted; and when his hair or limb has not come to the eaves (parakân) the roof is polluted to the bottom (tôhik).

19. And when *one* shall die on a rîtâ[5] *it* is polluted

much space as the corpse occupied *it is* polluted;' but the additional matter seems to be struck out. Something analogous to the details in this paragraph will be found in Pahl. Vend. VI, 9.

[1] This section would be more appropriate in Chap. III.

[2] Or 'an upper floor;' Pahl. Vend. VI, 9 has, 'when he shall die on an upper floor, when nothing of him remains behind at the partitions (pardakân), the floor is polluted as far as the balcony (âskûp) *and* the balcony alone is clean; when anything of him remains behind at the partitions, the floor is polluted as far as the balcony, the ground is polluted as far as the water, *about* the balcony alone it is not clear.'

[3] See note on Chap. III, 32.

[4] The gâm, 'step,' being 2 feet $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches (see note on Bund. XXVI, 3) these thirty steps are about 79 English feet.

[5] Meaning uncertain; the word looks like Huzvâris, but it is possible to read rîd-aê instead of rîtâ-1.

for the size of the body as far as the water; *in* the length of a year it will become clean *along* with the ground. 20. A built bridge is *liable* just like a terrace roof. 21. When *one* shall die on the terrace roof of a trellised *apartment* (varam), that is also *liable* just like a terrace roof. 22. When he shall die in a trellised *apartment*, when one of his limbs, or a hair, does not remain on the borders (parakân), it does not convey the pollution down, but when *any* of him remains behind it conveys *it* down; it is allowable when they dig *it* up [1], and *one* also spreads *it* again afterwards, and *it* is clean.

23. When *one* shall die by strangulation and a rope in a crowd, when *there* is no fear of his falling down they should not carry *him* down; and when *there* is a fear of his falling down, when that fear is as regards one side of him, they should carry *him* down on that side; and when *he has* fallen down they should carry *him* down *in* such *place* as *he has* fallen. 24. When *one* is seated upright *and* shall die, when *there* is fear of his falling on one side they should carry *him* down *on* that one side, and when there is fear on all four sides, *then* on all four sides; and when *he has* fallen down they should carry *him* down *in* such place as *he has* fallen [2].

25. And when *one* shall die on a tree, when its

[1] That is, the floor of the apartment; which would probably be formed of earth beaten down, which, in India, is nearly always overspread with diluted cow-dung to hinder cracks in the smooth surface. A better class of floor is spread with lime plaster on a stony surface.

[2] The object of these rules is evidently to avoid disturbing the corpse more than is absolutely necessary, provided there be no fear of its polluting more of the ground by falling upon it.

bark is green and *there* is no fear of falling off, they should not carry *him* down; and when *there* is fear of it, they should carry down the whole of the body (tanû masâi). 26. And when the bark of the tree is withered, when *there* is fear of it and when *there* is no fear of it, they should carry *it* down. 27. When he shall die on a branch of a tree which is green, when *there* is no fear of his falling off they should not carry *him* down. 28. And when *there* is fear of it, or *it is* a branch of a withered tree, when also, a hair originating with him, or a limb, remains behind on the particular tree, they should carry down the whole of the body [1]. 29. And when it does not remain behind him on the particular tree, but when *there* is fear of its falling off, they should not carry it below (vad frôd)[2].

30. When a corpse (nasâi-1)[3], from outside of it, remains behind on a jar (khûmbŏ) in which *there* may be wine, the jar is polluted, *and* the wine is clean. 31. And when *one* shall die inside, in the wine in the jar, if not even a hair or a curl originating with him remains behind on the jar, the wine is polluted and the jar not polluted [4]. 32. When *it is*

[1] K20 has a portion of § 30 inserted here by mistake.

[2] The object of these rules is likewise to prevent the risk of the corpse defiling more of the ground than is absolutely necessary by falling upon it, as it might do by the breaking of a dead branch.

[3] Nasâî (Av. nasu) means not only a corpse or carcase of a human being, dog, or other animal of the good creation, but also any portion of such corpse or carcase; that is, *solid* 'dead matter' in general, as distinguished from dirt or refuse from the living body, or any *liquid* exudation from a corpse or carcase, which is called hîkhar (Av. hikhra).

[4] Pahl. Vend. VI, 9 states, that 'when *one* shall die on a jar of wine, the jar is useless, and the wine becomes just as though *its*

a jar in which *there* is oil [1], and dead matter (nasâî), from outside of it, remains behind on it, this is even *as* though it remains inside it, because the oil comes outside and goes back to the inside, *and* both are polluted, the jar and the oil; and even on making the jar dry [2] it is not fit to put anything in.

33. When a serpent (garzak) is in a jar in which *there* is wine, both are useless and polluted, for it makes *them* contaminated (padvîshak). 34. And when corn shall be in *it*, the jar is polluted and the corn clean; and when nothing originating with *the serpent* inside the jar remains behind on the jar, so much of the corn as includes the serpent, and upon *which* the touch (mâlisn) of the serpent has gone—because the touch of the serpent's seed might be the death of one—is to be taken out *and* to be thrown away. 35. And when hair or dead matter, even not originating with *the serpent*, remains behind on the jar, the jar is polluted, but is serviceable (shâyad) on making *it* dry [3].

36. Brick, earth, and mortar are separated by

course (ravisn) had been within three steps *of the corpse*. And when he shall die in the wine, when nothing of him remains behind on the jar, the jar is proper on making *it* dry' (or, perhaps, 'the jar is fit for bran-flour').

[1] Or 'clarified butter;' in this case the 'jar' is probably a globular vessel, or carboy, made of hide, through which the oil, or liquid butter, penetrates so far as to keep the outer surface greasy, which accounts for the remark about the oil passing in and out. Such vessels, called dabar, are commonly used for oil and liquid butter in India.

[2] Assuming that khûskar stands for khûsk-kar, as it does in Pahl. Vend. VI, 71; otherwise we should have to read thus: 'and the jar is not even fit to put any bran-flour in.'

[3] Again assuming as in § 32; otherwise we must read thus: 'but is fit for bran-flour (khûskar).'

their own substance (pavan mindavam-i nafs-man), and are connected with the ground; being separated by their own substance is this, that so much space as dead matter[1] comes upon is polluted; being connected with the ground is this, that they would convey the pollution down unto the water. 37. Dung-fuel, ashes, flour, and other powdered things are connected with their own substance, and are separated from the ground; being connected with their own substance is this, that when dead matter comes upon them the whole of them is polluted; and being separated from the ground is this, that when dead matter comes upon them it does not make the ground polluted[2].

38. *At* a house *in* which the *sacred* ceremony (yazisn) is prepared, and a dog or a person passes[3] away in it, the first business to be done is this, that the fire is to be preserved from harm; moreover, if it be only possible to carry the fire so that they would carry *it* away within three steps of the corpse[4], even then it is to be carried away, *and* the

[1] Or 'a corpse;' K20 has 'stands upon.' The meaning is that these substances do not communicate the contamination throughout their own substance, but only downwards to the ground, which conveys it farther down, so far as it contains no water.

[2] That is, these substances communicate the contamination throughout their own substance, but not down to the ground.

[3] The verb vidardanŏ (Huz. vabrûntanŏ), 'to cross over, to pass away' (Av. vi + tar, Pers. gudhastan), can only be used when referring to the death of *good* people or animals; but the verb mûrdanŏ (Huz. yemîtûntanŏ), 'to die, to expire' (Av. mar, Pers. murdan), can be used generally, though usually applied to the wicked and to evil creatures. Pahl. Vend. V, 134 contains nearly the same text as §§ 38, 39.

[4] Under ordinary circumstances fire must not be brought within thirty steps, or about 79 English feet, of a corpse (see Vend. VIII,

wall is not to be cut. 39. Rôshan[1] said that an earthen *one* is to be cut into, *but* a mortar *one* is not to be cut; below and above no account *is taken* of damaging (bôdôzêdîh)[2] the wall[3]. 40. To bring the fire within[4] the three steps from the corpse is a Tanâpûhar sin; and when exudation happens to the corpse, it is worthy of death[5]. 41. The prepared food in that house is all useless, and that which is not prepared is usable in the length of nine nights

17). But the spirit of the Mazdayasnian law is reasonable, and, although strict, it allows for practical difficulties and chooses the least of two evils in a more judicious manner than might be expected (a fact which it would be well for Parsis and others to observe in doubtful cases). Here, breaking through the wall of a house is considered a greater evil than the possible pollution of the fire by passing at a distance of three steps, or eight English feet, from a corpse.

[1] The name of a commentator, or commentary, often quoted in Pahlavi translations (see the note on Chap. I, 4).

[2] Literally, 'destroying the consciousness,' or 'injuring the existence.' Bôdôzêd or bôdyôzad is a particular kind of sin which appears to consist chiefly of the ill-treatment of animals and injury of useful property. It is mentioned in Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 1b, Pahl. Vend. V, 107, XIII, 38, Farh. Okh. pp. 32, 33; and in some editions of the Khurdah Avesta it is defined as selling stolen men or animals into misery, or one's own domestic cattle to the butcher, also spoiling and tearing up good clothing, or wasting and spoiling good food.

[3] The meaning is, that if it became necessary to break through the wall in order to remove the fire unpolluted, the sin committed through damaging the wall will not be punished either in this world or the next.

[4] That is, nearer than three steps, which is considered to be the minimum distance at which any degree of purity can be maintained.

[5] A marg-argân sin, on committing which the sinner is required to place his life at the disposal of the high-priest (see Chap. VIII, 2, 5, 6, 21). It is usually considered equivalent to fifteen Tanâpûhars (see Chap. I, 1, 2).

or a month[1]. 42. Clothing also *in* like manner, except that which *one* wears on the body; that, even in that time, is not clean, since it remains in use. 43. And the holy-water (zôhar)[2], too, which is taken and remains *in* that place, is to be carried away immediately to the water; also the sacred milk (gîv)[3] *and* butter (gum)[4] *in* like manner. 44. Of the prayer[5] clothing Vand-Aûharmazd[6] said that it is usable in the length of nine nights *or* a month; the writer[7] (dapîr) said that it is when they perform the washing of hands, and wash *it* thoroughly, it will become clean at the time.

45. If in a house there are three rooms (gungînak), and *one* shall die in the entrance place (dargâs), if *it be* so that they may set the door open, and the corpse comes to this side, only this

[1] According to the season of the year, the period of uncleanness being nine nights in the five winter months, and a month in the seven summer months (see Vend. V, 129).

[2] Av. zaothra; this holy-water is consecrated by the priest reciting certain prayers while holding the empty metal cups in his hands, while filling them with water, and after filling them (see Haug's Essays, p. 397).

[3] The Av. gâus gîvya, '*product of* the living cow,' which is kept in a metal saucer during the ceremonies, and used for sprinkling the sacred twigs (baresôm), and for mixing with the holy-water and Hôm-juice in the mortar (see Haug's Essays, pp. 403, 405, 406).

[4] Compare Pers. kûm, 'fat;' it is the Av. gâus hudhau, '*product of* the well-yielding cow,' a small piece of which is placed upon one of the sacred pancakes, or wafers (drôn), during the ceremonies (see Haug's Essays, pp. 396, 407).

[5] Reading yast; but it may be gast, 'changed.'

[6] See the note on Chap. I, 4.

[7] There appear to be, as yet, no means of ascertaining the name of the writer of the Shâyast lâ-shâyast, who gives his own opinion here.

side is polluted; and if the corpse comes to that side, only that side is polluted; when it comes to both sides at once (aêvâ*k*), only the entrance place is polluted alone, both the dwelling-rooms (khânak) are clean.

46. And the vault of the sacred fires[1] alone does not become polluted.

47. If *one* shall die in a wild spot (vaskar), prepared food which is within three steps is all useless, and beyond four steps it is not polluted. 48. Prepared food is this, such as bread, boiled and roast meat, and prepared broth[2].

49. And the ashes (var) of the sacred fire[3] become in a measure polluted.

50. Should they carry in the fire into that house in which the length of nine nights *or* a month is requisite for becoming clean, *there* is a sin of one Tanâpûhar[4] through carrying *it* in, and one Tanâpûhar through kindling *it;* and every trifling *creature* (khûr or khûl) which shall die and shall remain *causes* a sin of one Tanâpûhar. 51. Also through carrying water in, *there* is a sin of one Farmân; and to pour water on the place where *any* one's life departs is a sin of one Tanâpûhar, and to pour *it* on a different place is a sin of one Yât. 52. And to

[1] Literally, 'the vault of the fires of Vâhrâm.' Pahl. Vend. V, 134 says 'the vault of the fires is *liable* just like an empty house.' Both this section and § 49 seem out of place.

[2] See Pahl. Vend. V, 134.

[3] Literally, 'the produce of the fire of Vâhrâm,' a term for 'ashes,' which is used in Pahl. Vend. V, 150 along with the equivalent phrase, 'clothing of the fire' (see Chap. III, 27).

[4] See Chap. I, 1, 2 for the degrees of sin mentioned in §§ 50, 51, 53.

undergo ablution[1] inside *the unclean house* is all non-ablution. 53. And whoever goes into it needlessly, *his* body *and* clothes are to be every time thoroughly washed, and his sin is one Tanâpûhar; and when he goes in needfully *it* is neither good work nor sin[2].

54. And this pollution is all in the sharp account (tîkhak amâr) when the life departs[3]; the only *thing* which amounts to polluting is contact with the flesh, and even with the hair and nails. 55. Of the contact which is stated in the Avesta[4], the account is *that it is* from one side, and it ever cleaves to *one;* the curse (gazisn)[5] which is stated in the Avesta advances from all four sides. 56. Sôshyans[6] said it is, until its exhibition to a dog, just as it becomes at the time when its life departs[7]; a priest, a

[1] That is, the ceremonial ablution (pâdîyâvîh), or 'washing, with water, the hands and arms up to the elbows, the face as far as behind the ears, and the feet up to the ankles,' whilst a certain form of prayer is recited (see AV. p. 148, note).

[2] Here again, as in § 38, the strict letter of the law is relaxed in case of necessity.

[3] Meaning, apparently, that any pollution is taken into account, as a sin, in the investigation the soul has to undergo upon entering the other world. Much of this paragraph will be found in Pahl. Vend. V, 107.

[4] Referring to Vend. V, 82–107, which gives an account of the number of persons through whom the pollution of a corpse or carcase will pass, which is in proportion to the importance of the dead individual. The statement here made is that the infection, passing from one to the other, enters each person only on one side, but the demon of corruption attacks them on all sides.

[5] Meaning, probably, the Nasûs, or demon of corruption (see § 1), who is said to rush upon all those polluted as detailed in Vend. V, 82–107.

[6] See Chap. I, 3.

[7] That is, until seen by the dog the corpse remains pervaded by the demon of corruption and hazardous to approach (see §§ 1–4).

warrior, and a husbandman are no use, for merely a dog is stated. 57. Kûshtanŏ-bûgêd[1] said the account is at the time when its life departs; and that which Kûshtanŏ-bûgêd specially said is, 'when anything is inside it (the place) the pollution is as far as to the place where that thing stands.' 58. When a dog, or a goat, or a pig is requisite (dârvâî)[2] it is proper, for *the pollution* does not attack further there; and the pollution of a child in the womb is *along* with the mother.

59. The direct pollution of a hedgehog[3] cleaves to *one*, and not the indirect pollution. 60. Direct pollution (hamrêd)[4] is that when the body is in contact with a corpse, and indirect pollution (paît-

[1] See Chap. I, 4, note. This name is nearly always written Kushtanŏ-bûgêd in Sls. in K20 and M6; it is not mentioned in Pahl. Vend. V, 107, although the details here quoted are there given in part.

[2] The meaning is not quite clear, but this sentence is probably to be read in connection with the preceding one, as implying that where such domestic animals are kept they can be used for stopping the infection, as effectually as any inanimate object. The pig is here mentioned as a common domestic animal, but Parsis have long since adopted the prejudices of Hindus and Muhammadans as regards the uncleanness of the pig.

[3] As Vend. V, 108–112 says the same of the dog urupi, it would seem that the writer of our text considered the urupi to be a hedgehog (zûzak); the Pahlavi translation of the Vendidad renders it by rapuk or rîpûk, which appears to be merely an approximate transcript of the Avesta word; traditionally, this is read raspûk and compared with Pers. râsû, 'ichneumon;' its identification with the hedgehog is certainly doubtful, although it appears to be admitted in Pahl. Vend. V, 112, where the same words are used as in this section.

[4] The technical terms hamrêd and paîtrêd, for contagion and infection, are merely corruptions of Av. hãm-raêthwayêiti and paiti-raêthwayêiti. The definition of the latter one is omitted in K20 by mistake.

rêd) is that when[1] *one* is in contact with him who touched the corpse; and from contact with him who is the eleventh[2] indirect pollution cleaves to *one it* the same manner. 61. The indirect pollution of an ape[3] and a menstruous woman, not acting the same *way*, remains. 62. The shepherd's dog, and likewise the village-dog, and others also of the like kind carry contamination to eight[4]; and when they shall carry *the carcase* down on the ground *the place*[5] is clean immediately; and that, too, which dies on a balcony (âskûp), until they shall carry *it* down to the bottom, is polluted *for* the length of a year.

63. Whoever brings dead matter (nasâi) on any person is worthy of death; he is thrice worthy of

[1] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'which' (see note to Bund. I, 7).

[2] Vend. V, 86, 87 limits the pollution to the eleventh person infected, in the extreme case of the corpse having been a priest; but Pahl. Vend. V, 107 quotes the opinion of Sôshâns that until a dog has gazed at the corpse the pollution extends to the twelfth, but only the first ten require the ceremonial purification of the bareshnûm, the others being cleansed by ordinary washing with bull's urine and water.

[3] Pahl. Vend. V, 107 states, however, that 'everything of the ape (kapîk) is just like mankind.' The meaning of § 61 is very uncertain, as the text can be both read and translated several ways, and none of them are very satisfactory.

[4] That is, in the case of the shepherd's dog (see Vend. V, 92, 93); the carcases of other dogs occasion the indirect pollution of fewer persons, in proportion to their inferior importance; but Pahl. Vend. V, 107 states, with regard to this importance, that when 'in doubt, every man is to be considered as a priest, and every dog as a shepherd's dog,' so as to be on the safe side, by exacting the maximum amount of purification in all doubtful cases.

[5] The Pahlavi text leaves it doubtful whether the place, the people, or the carcase becomes clean, but the first is the most probable.

death[1] at the time when a dog *has* not seen the corpse (nasâî); and *if* through negligence of appliances and means (*k*âr va tûbânŏ) he disturbs *it*, and disturbs *it* by touching it, he knows that *it is* a sin worthy of death; and *for* a corpse that a dog *has* seen, and *one that* a dog *has* not seen, the accountability is to be understood *to be* as much[2], and *for* the death and sickness[3] of a feeble man *and* a powerful *one*. 64. Afarg has said there is no account of appliances and means[4], for *it* is not allowable to commit a sin worthy of death in *cases of* death and sickness.

65. When they move a corpse which a dog *has* not seen with a thousand men, even then the bodies of the whole *number* are polluted[5], and are to be washed for them with ceremony (pîsak)[6]. 66. And *for* that which a dog *has* seen, except that one only when a man shall move *it* all[7] by touching *it*, his washing is then not *to be* with ceremony. 67. And when he is in contact *and* does not move *it*, he is to be washed with bull's urine *and* water. 68. And

---

[1] That is, he has committed a sin equivalent to three mortal sins (marg-argân).

[2] Reading ves as equivalent to vês.

[3] Reading râkhtakîh (compare Pers. rakhtah, 'sick, wounded').

[4] This opinion of Afarg (see Chap. I, 3) is also quoted in Pahl. Vend. III, 48.

[5] This statement is repeated in Chap. X, 33.

[6] That is, with the Bareshnûm ceremony.

[7] This exception (which is repeated in §§ 68, 71) seems to imply that §§ 66, 68, 71 refer to the collection of any fragments of a corpse found in the wilderness, or in water; and the exemption from the troublesome purification ceremony in such cases, is probably intended to encourage people to undertake the disagreeable duty of attending to such fragments.

when he shall move with a stake (dâr)[1] a corpse which a dog *has* not seen, except that one only when he shall move *it* all, the washing for him is not *to be* with ceremony.

69. And when a man shall move a corpse, which a dog *has* not seen, by the hand of another man, *he* who moves it by the hand of a man, *and* he also whose own hand's strength *does it* are polluted in the bodies of both; and it is the root of a Tanâpûhar[2] *sin* for him himself and of a Tanâpûhar for the other one, for this *reason*, because his own body and that also of the *other* are both made polluted through sinfulness. 70. And when there is not in him, nor even originating with *him* (ahambûnik), the strength of him whose own hand *it is*, it is just as though he would move it (the corpse) with a stake[3]; and he who held *it* in the way of contact with his hand is to be washed with ceremony; and it is the root of a Tanâpûhar sin for him whose own hand *it is*, and of a Khôr[4] for himself. 71. When he shall move a corpse by the hand of a man, and the corpse is of those which a dog *has* seen—except that one only when he shall move it all[5]—the washing for him is not *to be* with ceremony.

[1] The interposition of the stake, or piece of wood, prevents the direct attack of the Nasûs, or demon of corruption, which has not been driven away by a dog. That inanimate objects are supposed to stop the progress of the pollution appears from § 57.

[2] See Chap. I, 1, 2. A sin is figuratively said to take root in the body, when it has to be eradicated, or figuratively dug up.

[3] See § 68. If he employs another man to move the corpse merely because he is physically unable to do it himself, he escapes with less pollution than when he is able to do the work himself; but the man employed suffers the same in both cases.

[4] See Chap. I, 1, 2.

[5] See § 66.

72. When *one* is going *by* a place at night, and comes back there *on* the morrow, and a corpse lies there, and he does not know whether the evil (dûs) was there when he came by[1], or not, it is to be considered by him that it was not there.

73. Of a flock in which is a sheep by whom dead matter is eaten, of a forest in which is a tree with which dead matter is mingled, and of a firewood-stand (aesamdân) in which is a stick of firewood with which grease is mingled, Afarg said that it is not proper to make the flock and the forest fruitful, and the firewood is useless[2].

74. *About* a door on which a corpse impinges; as to the door of a town and city they have been of the same opinion, that *it* is to be discarded by *his* comrades (hamkâr)[3]; as to a door which is mostly closed (badtûm)[4] they have been of different opinions,

[1] Literally, 'when I came by;' the usual Persian idiom in such phrases.

[2] This statement of Afarg's, so far as it relates to greasy firewood, will be found in Pahl. Vend. V, 14.

[3] Or, 'by the community.' The same rule is mentioned in Pahl. Vend. V, 14.

[4] There is some uncertainty about this word. It is not the Pers. badtum, 'worst, vilest,' because that is written va*d*tûm or vatûm in Pahlavi; besides, the rule must apply to other than the vilest doors, otherwise it would not harmonize with § 75. It is not a miswriting of nîtûm, 'lowest, most debased,' for the same reason, and because it occurs elsewhere. It is not a miswriting of bêtman, a possible variant of bêtâ, 'a house' (although 'a house-door' would suit the context very well), because it occurs also in Pahl. Vend. V, 14, XI, 10, in which latter place it is clearly an adjective partially translating Av. bendvô. And it would be hazardous to connect it with Pers. bîdûn, 'outside,' which seems merely a corruption or misreading of bîrûn. The view taken here is that badtûm stands for bandtûm, 'most shut up,' the nasal being often dropped in Pahlavi, as in sag for sang, 'stone,' &c.

Gôgôsasp[1] said that discarding *it* by *his* comrades is likewise proper, and Sôshyans said that it is not proper; and as to other doors they have been of the same opinion, that it is not proper. 75. The door of one's own chief apartment (shah-gâs) is fit for that of the place for menstruation (dastân-istân), and that of the place for menstruation is fit for that of the depository *for the dead* (khazânô)[2], and that of the depository of the dead is not fit for any purpose whatever[3]; that of the more pleasant is fit for that of the more grievous.

76. Any one who, through sinfulness, throws a corpse into the water, is worthy of death on the spot[4]; when he throws only one *it is* one *sin* worthy of death, *and* when he throws ten at one time *it is* then one *sin* worthy of death; when he throws *them* separately *it is* a *sin* worthy of death for each one. 77. Of the water, into which *one* throws dead matter, the extent of pollution is three steps of three feet *in* the water advancing, nine steps of three feet *in* the water *passed* over, and six steps of three feet *in* the water alongside[5]; six steps of three feet in the depth of the water, and three steps of three feet in the water pouring over the dead matter are polluted as regards the depth[6]. 78. When it is thrown *into* the midst of a great standing water, in like manner, the proportion it comes is ever as much as it goes, *and*

[1] See Chap. I, 3.

[2] The Huz. equivalent of Pâz. dakhmak (see § 6).

[3] See Pahl. Vend. V, 14.

[4] Compare Pahl. Vend. VII, 66. [5] See Vend. VI, 80.

[6] That is, the pollution extends about eight English feet up-stream and upwards, sixteen feet sideways and downwards, and twenty-four feet down-stream. Some of the latter part of the sentence is omitted in K20 by mistake.

is the proportion of it they should always carry *away* with *the dead matter* [1].

79. And when a man comes forth, and a corpse lies in the water, when he is able to bring it out, and it is not an injury to him, it is not allowable to abandon *it* except when he brings *it* out [2]. 80. Sôshyans [3] said that, when it is an injury, it is allowable when [4] he does not bring *it* out; and when it is not an injury, and he does not bring *it*, his sin is a Tanâpûhar [5]. 81. Kûshtanŏ-bûgêd [6] said that even in *case of* injury it is not allowable to abandon *it*, except when he brings *it* out; when he does not bring *it he* is worthy of death. 82. And Gôgôsasp [7] said that it is even in *case of* injury not allowable, except when he brings *it* out; and when, in *case of* injury, he does not bring *it* out his sin is a Tanâpûhar; and when it is no injury to him, and he does not bring *it*, *he* is worthy of death.

83. And when he shall wish to bring *it* his clothing is to be laid aside [8], for it makes the clothing

[1] The sentence is obscure, but this seems to be the meaning; that is, when a corpse or any dead matter is thrown into a pond or tank, the pollution extends sixteen feet from it in all directions; and that quantity of water ought to be drawn off, in order to purify the tank (see Vend. VI, 65–71). As the corpse, in nearly all cases, must be either at the bottom or on the surface, the quantity of polluted water to be drawn off must be a hemispherical mass sixteen feet in radius, or about forty-eight tons of water.

[2] See Pahl. Vend. VI, 64, where it states that bringing it out is a good work of one Tanâpûhar, and leaving it is a sin of the same amount.

[3] See Chap. I, 3.

[4] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'which' (see Bund. I, 7, note).

[5] See Chap. I, 1, 2.

[6] See Chap. I, 4, note.

[7] See Chap. I, 3.

[8] See Pahl. Vend. VI, 64.

polluted, and whatever *he* is first able *and* best able *to bring* is to be brought out by him. 84. When, too, he is able to bring *it* out through the breadth of the water, then also it is to be brought out so[1]; and when he is not able, it is to be brought out through the length of the water; and showing *it to* a dog *and* the two men are not to be waited for[2].

85. And it is to be carried by him so much away from the neighbourhood of the water that, when he puts *it* down, the water which comes out dropping from the corpse does not reach back to the water; for when the water which comes out from the corpse reaches continuously back to the water *he* is worthy of death; and after that (min zak frâg) it is to be shown *to* a dog, and it is to be carried away by two men. 86. And when he wishes to throw *it* out from the water, Mard-bûd[3] said it is allowable to throw *it* out thus, so that the water of the dripping corpse does not reach continuously back to the water; Rôshan said it would be allowable to throw *it* out far.

87. To drag *it* over the water is allowable, to grasp and relinquish *it* is not allowable[4]; and when it is possible to act so that he may convey *it* from a great water to a small water, when the water is

[1] So that less water may be polluted by the corpse taking the shortest route through it; but if that be impossible it must come out quickly, at any rate.

[2] That is, the otherwise indispensable dog's gaze and two bearers must be dispensed with, if not at hand, in order to save time, until the corpse is out of the water (see § 85).

[3] It might be, 'there was a man *who* said,' but Mard-bûd occurs in the Nîrangistân as the name of a commentator (see Chap. I, 4, note).

[4] See Pahl. Vend. VI, 64 for this prohibition.

connected *it* is allowable, and when separated *it* is not allowable. 88. Afarg[1] said it is allowable to drag *it* below through the water, but to drag *it* over is not allowable, for this has come *on* the water *as* a danger[2], and that has not come on *it as* a danger. 89. Mêdôk-mâh[1] said it is allowable to drag *it* above, *but* to drag *it* below is not allowable, for the danger has gone out across the water, and the danger is not now to be brought upon it; and on that which is below, *on* which the danger has not come, the danger will at last arrive.

90. When he goes into the water he is to go into it with this idea, that 'should there be many below, then I will even bring all;' for whoever goes in not with this idea, and shall disturb any other one which lies there, will become polluted[3]. 91. And if the corpse be heavy *and* it is not possible to bring *it* out by one person, *and* he goes out with this idea, that 'I *will* go and prepare means, and bring this corpse out of the water;' and when through sinfulness[4] he does not go back his body is polluted *and* worthy of

[1] See Chap. I, 3.

[2] Or 'fear.' The difference of opinion between the two commentators on this question in casuistry, appears to have arisen from Afarg regarding the water merely as the representative of a spirit, who might be endangered or frightened by the source of impurity becoming more visible when above the water, while Mêdôk-mâh considered the water in its material aspect, and wished to save it from the further pollution consequent upon drawing the corpse through more of it.

[3] See Pahl. Vend. VI, 64.

[4] These rules generally distinguish clearly between offences committed 'through sinfulness,' that is, wilfully, and those arising from accidental inability; more stress being laid upon the intention than upon the action.

death, and when he is unable to go back he is not polluted.

92. When the corpse is so decomposed (pûdak), when *it* is thus necessary to bring it out, that he must cut off various fragments, even after he cuts *them* off *they* are to be brought out; and for every fragment his hands and knife are to be washed with bull's urine (gômêz), and with dust and moisture (nambŏ) *they* are clean[1]. 93. And *they* are to be torn off[2] by him, and for every single fragment which he brings out his good work is one Tanâpûhar.

94. And when rain is falling the corpse lies in the water; to take *it* from the water to deposit *it* in the rain is not[3] allowable.

95. Clothing which is useless[4], this is that in which they should carry a corpse, and that even when very much *or* altogether useless; of that on which they shall decompose[5] (barâ vishûpênd), and of that on which the excretions (hîkhar) of the dead come, so much space is to be cut away[6], and the rest is to be

[1] See Pahl. Vend. VI, 64 for §§ 92, 93.

[2] Or 'twisted off;' the Huz. neskhûntanŏ must be traced to Chald. נְסַח 'to pluck out, to tear away,' and seems to have a similar meaning in Pahlavi; its Pâz. equivalent vîkhtanŏ (Av. vig) ought to be compared rather with Pers. kîkhtan, 'to bruise or break,' than with bêkhtan or pêkhtan, 'to twist.'

[3] This negative is omitted in M6 by mistake.

[4] Compare Pahl. Vend. VII, 32.

[5] Or 'go to pieces;' that this is the meaning of vishûpênd appears clearly from Pahl. Vend. VII, 123, but a Persian gloss in the modern MS. M9 explains it as 'deposit fragments from the beak of a bird,' meaning, of course, fragments of dead matter dropped by a carrion bird.

[6] As useless, being incapable of purification; such cuttings are to be buried, according to the Avesta of Vend. VII, 32, though the Pahlavi commentary explains that they are to be thrown away.

thoroughly washed for the six-months' *period*[1]. 96. That which a menstruous woman has in wear (mahmânîh)[2] is to be discarded in like fashion.

97. The clothing which is to be washed for the six-months' *period* is such as is declared in the Avesta[3]. 98. If the clothing be leathern it is to be thoroughly washed three times with bull's urine (gômêz), every time to be made quite dry with dust, and to be thoroughly washed three times with water, and to be laid out three months in a place to be viewed by the sun[4]; and then it is proper for an unclean person (armêst)[5] who has not performed

[1] Khshvâs-mâûgôk is merely a corruption of the Av. khshvas maunghô, 'six months,' of Vend. VII, 36, where this form of cleansing is thus described: 'If (the clothing) be woven, they should wash *it* out six times with bull's urine, they should scour *it* six times with earth, they should wash *it* out six times with water, they should fumigate *it* six months at the window of the house.'

[2] See Pahl. Vend. VII, 32.

[3] That is, woven clothing, as declared in Vend. VII, 36 (quoted above in note 1).

[4] See Vend. VII, 35.

[5] A Persian gloss defines armêst as 'a woman who has brought forth a dead child,' and this is the general opinion; but that seems to be only a particular example of an unclean person who would be included under the general term armêst, for according to Pahl. Vend. IX, 133, 137, 141 a man when only partially purified must remain apart in the place for the armêst (Av. airima, compare Sans. il or rî) for a certain time. Nêryôsang, in his Sanskrit translation of Mkh. (XXXVII, 36, XXXIX, 40, LI, 7), explains armêst as 'lame, crippled, immobility;' it also means 'stagnant,' when applied to water; and its primitive signification was, probably, 'most stationary,' an appropriate term for such unclean persons as are required to remain in a particular place apart from all others, as well as for helpless cripples, and insane persons under restraint (see Chap. VI, 1). The meaning 'most polluted' would hardly apply to tank water.

worship, or it is proper for a menstruous woman. 99. Other clothing, when hair is on *it*[1], is *liable* just like woven *cloth* (tadâk); all the washing of wool, floss silk, silk, hair, and camel's hair is just like *that of* woven *cloth;* and woven clothing is to be washed six times[2].

100. Wool which is connected together, when one *part* is twisted over another, and a corpse rests[3] upon it, is all polluted on account of the connection; and when fleece (mêsh) rests upon fleece, then so much space as the corpse rests upon is polluted. 101. When *one* shall die upon a rich carpet (bûp) when the carpet is on a coarse rug (namad) *and* is made connected, the rug and carpet are both polluted, and when separated the rug is clean. 102. When several cushions are heaped (nikîd) one upon the other, and are not made connected, and dead matter comes upon them, they have been unanimous that only that one is polluted on which the dead matter came. 103. A cushion *together* with wool[4] is *liable* just like a carpet with a rug[5]. 104. Of several cushions which are tied down together, when dead matter comes to the tie, both are polluted, the cord *and* the cushions; and when the dead matter comes to a cushion, and does not come to the tie, the cushions are all polluted on account of the connection, and the tie is clean[6].

[1] Pahl. Vend. VII, 35 says 'when a single hair is on it.'

[2] As mentioned in a note on § 95.

[3] Literally, 'impinges.' Here, as in many other places, 'dead matter' may be read instead of 'corpse,' as nasâî means both or either of them.

[4] That is, laid upon wool.

[5] See § 101.

[6] See Pahl. Vend. VII, 27.

105. A pregnant woman who devours dead matter through sinfulness is polluted *and* worthy of death, and there is no washing for her[1]; and *as for* the child, when it *has* become acquainted with duties (pîsak-shinâs), ashes[2] and bull's urine are for its eating and for its washing. 106. *As for* a child who is born of solitary carriers *of the dead*[3], although its father and mother may both have devoured dead matter through sinfulness, that which is born is clean on the spot, for it does not become polluted *by* birth.

107. Rôshan[4] said that every one, who, through sinfulness, has become polluted by means of dead matter, is worthy of death, and his polluted body never becomes clean; for this *one* is more wretched than the fox which *one* throws into the water living, and in the water it will die. 108. *One* worthy of death never becomes clean; *and* a solitary carrier *of the dead* is to be kept at thirty steps from *ceremonial* ablution (pâdîyâvîh).

109. Whichsoever of the animal species has eaten their dead matter[5], its milk, dung, hair, *and* wool are polluted the length of a year; and *if* pregnant when it has eaten *it*, the young one has also eaten *it*, and the young one is clean after the length of a year from being born of the mother. 110. When a male which has eaten *it* mounts a female, the female is not polluted. 111. When dead matter is eaten by it,

[1] That is, she cannot be purified.

[2] Reading var (see note on § 49).

[3] Carrying a corpse by a single person being prohibited (see §§ 7, 8); but why he is supposed to devour it is not clear.

[4] See Chap. I, 4, note.

[5] Compare Pahl. Vend. VII, 192.

and even while it is not digested it shall die, it is *liable* just like a leathern bag (anbân) in which is dead matter.

112. Gold, when dead matter comes upon it, is to be once thoroughly washed with bull's urine (gô-mêz), to be once made quite dry with dust, and to be once thoroughly washed with water, and *it is* clean[1]. 113. Silver is to be twice thoroughly washed with bull's urine, and to be made quite dry with dust, and is to be twice thoroughly washed with water, and *it is* clean[2]. 114. And iron, *in like manner*, three times, steel four times, and stone six times[3]. 115. Afarg said: 'Should it be quicksilver (âvgînak)[4] it is *liable* just like gold, and amber (kahrupâî) just like stone, and all jewels just like iron.' 116. The pearl (mûrvârîd)[5], amber, the

[1] The purification here detailed is prescribed for golden vessels in Vend. VII, 186.

[2] This is the purification prescribed for silver vessels in Vend. VII, 74 W.; it is found in the Vendidad Sâdah, but is omitted (evidently by mistake) in the Vendidad with Pahlavi translation, and has, therefore, been omitted in Spiegel's edition of the texts. By this accidental omission in the MSS. silver is connected with the purification for stone (see § 114).

[3] See Vend. VII, 75 W., much of which is omitted in the Vendidad with Pahlavi translation, and in Spiegel's edition (see the preceding note), the sixfold washing of stone being erroneously applied to silver (see Vend. VII, 187 Sp.), owing to this omission of the intervening text. It appears from this section that the Av. haosafna, which has usually been translated as 'copper,' was understood to be pûlâvd, 'steel,' by the Pahlavi translators.

[4] Or 'a mirror' (Pers. âbgînah), but the word is evidently used for a metal in SZS. X, 2, and very likely here also.

[5] Most of the substances mentioned in §§ 115, 116 are detailed in Pahl. Vend. VII, 188, where it is stated that 'as to the pearl *there* have been different opinions, some say that it is *liable* just like gold, some say that it is just like the other jewels, *and* some say that there is no washing *for it*.'

ruby (yâkand) gem, the turquoise[1], the agate (shapak), coral-stone (vasadîn sag), bone, and other substances (gôhar) which are not particularly mentioned, are to be washed just like wood[2]; and when they are taken into use there is no washing[3], and when they are not taken their washing is once. 117. Of earthen *and* horny *articles* there is no washing; and of other substances which are not taken for use the washing is once, and *they are* declared out of use.

118. Firewood, when green, is to be cut off the length of a span (vitast), one by one, as many *sticks* as there are—and when dry one span and two finger-*breadths*[4]—and is to be deposited *in* some place the length of a year, and water is not to be dropped upon *it;* and *it is* drawn out *after* the length of a year; Sôshyans[5] said that it is proper as firewood for *ordinary* fires, and Kûshtanŏ-bûgêd[6] said that *it is* just as declared in the Avesta: 'The

[1] This is doubtful; the word can be read pirînak, and has the Pers. gloss pîrûzah, 'turquoise,' in some MSS. If read pilînak it might perhaps be taken for 'ivory.' But in Pahl. Vend. VII, 188 it is vafarinô, 'snowy,' and the reading there seems to be 'jet-black *and* snow-white stone-coral;' so here the original meaning may have been 'snow-white and jet-black coral-stone.'

[2] Vend. VII, 188 says that 'earthen or wooden or porcelain *vessels* are impure for everlasting.'

[3] Meaning, apparently, that they cannot be purified for immediate use.

[4] That is, one-sixth longer than when green, the vitast being twelve finger-*breadths*, or nine inches (see Bund. XXVI, 3, note). The purification of firewood, here prescribed, is simply drying it for a year in short lengths; but Vend. VII, 72–82 requires it also to be sprinkled once with water, and to be cut into longer pieces.

[5] See Chap. I, 3.

[6] See Chap. I, 4, note.

washed *one*, even then, is proper in dried clothing[1].'

119. About corn[2] they have been unanimous that so much space is polluted as the dead matter comes upon; and of that which is lowered into pits[3], or is wanted *to be so*, and of that which is scattered (afsîd) at such a place *there are* different opinions; Sôshyans said: 'Should it be of such a place *it* is polluted as much as the dead matter *has* come upon it;' and Gôgôsasp[4] said: 'Should it be *so it* is all polluted, *and* the straw is all polluted.'

120. A walnut[5], through *its* mode of connection, is all polluted, and the washing of both its shell and kernel (pôst va mazg) is just like *that of* wood. 121. A pomegranate also is of such nature as a walnut. 122. *As to* the date, when its stalk[6] is not connected the date is polluted and the stalk *and* stone (âstak) are clean; the washing of the date is just like *that of* corn; and when it is touched upon the stalk, when the stalk, stone, and date are connected, the whole is polluted; *as to* the date when not connected with the stalk, *and* touched at the

[1] Something similar is said in Pahl. Vend. VI, 71.

[2] According to Vend. VII, 83–93 polluted corn and fodder are to be treated like polluted firewood, but to be cut into pieces of about double the length.

[3] Reading dên gôpân farôstak; the practice of storing corn in dry pits underground is common in the East and in some parts of Europe. In Pahl. Vend. VII, 93 it is dên gôpân âvist, 'concealed in pits.'

[4] See Chap. I, 3.

[5] Pahl. Vend. VII, 93 classes the almond with the walnut as a connected fruit, and the date with the pomegranate as a separated one.

[6] The word is kûrâpak or kûrâzak, but its meaning is doubtful.

stalk, the date is clean, and the washing of the stone is just like *that of* wood. 123. The pomegranate, citron, quince, apple, pear, and other fruit, when in bearing and the rind (pazâ*v*is*n*ŏ) is perceptible on it, when dead matter comes upon it *there* is no pollution of it; and when the rind (pazâmis*n*ŏ) is not perceptible on it, its washing is just like *that of* corn; and rind is ever with the citron[1]. 124. *For* meat, butter, milk, cheese, and preserves (rî*k*âr) there is no washing[2].

Chapter III.

1. The clothing of a menstruous woman which they shall take new for her use is polluted, and that which is in use is not polluted[3]. 2. When a bedchamber (sh â*d*-a û r v â n) is overspread, and a carpet (b û p) is laid upon it and a cushion *on* the two[4], *and*

[1] Pahl. Vend. VII, 93 says, 'fruit whose rind (pazâ*v*) exists is also just like that in a pod (kûvak), and *for* that which does not remain in a rind, when *pollution* shall come upon it, *there* is no *cleansing* whatever. Afarg said that *there* is ever a rind (pazâ*v*is*n*ŏ) with the citron.'

[2] Pahl. Vend. VII, 93 says, '*for* everything separated *there* is a washing, except meat *and* milk.' Articles for which there is no washing cannot be purified.

[3] Pahl. Vend. XVI, 5 says, 'when in the place she remains in for the purpose, she does not make the clothing she wears on *her* body polluted, it remains for use within the place.' The meaning is, probably, that clothing already set apart for the purpose does not become further polluted, so as to be unfit for her use. It appears also (Pahl. Vend. XVI, 5) that on the spot where menstruation first appears, not even the twigs uplifted in the sacred ceremony are polluted, unless the circumstances are abnormal.

[4] This phrase, about the carpet and cushion, is omitted in K20 by mistake.

a woman sits upon *it* and menstruation occurs, when she puts a foot from the cushion on to the carpet, and from the carpet out into the bed-chamber, the carpet and bed-chamber are both polluted, for *they are* taken newly for her use, *but* of the cushion *there* is no pollution for this reason, because *it is* in use. 3. And when she sits on the cushion so that she shall have both the carpet and cushion in use, the bed-chamber is polluted by itself; and when all three shall be in use *there* is no pollution whatever [1].

4. Just as she knows that *it is* menstruation, in the place *she is* in for the purpose [2], first the necklace, then the ear-rings, then the head-fillet (*k*ambar), and then the *outer* garments (gâmak) are to be put off by her. 5. When in the place she remains in for the purpose, even though she may remain a very long time for that purpose, yet then the *outer* garments are clean, *and there* is no need of leather covering and leather shoes [3].

6. When she knows for certain (aêvar) that *it is* menstruation, until the complete changing (gûhari-*d*anŏ) of all *her* garments, and she shall *have* sat down in the place for menstruation [4], a prayer is to

---

[1] §§ 2, 3 are merely corollaries from § 1.

[2] Or, possibly, 'on the spot *she is* in on the occasion;' although it would appear from § 5 that the place referred to is the dashtânistân, or place of retirement for the unclean.

[3] Reading mask va salmîhâ, but both reading and meaning are doubtful. The first word may be muskŏ, 'musk,' and the other can be read sharmgâh, but, if so, the construction of the sentence is defective, as it stands in the MSS.

[4] The dashtânistân, a comfortless room or cell provided in every Parsi house for unclean persons to retire to, where they can see neither sun, moon, stars, fire, water, sacred vessels, nor righteous men; it ought to be fifteen steps (39½ feet) from fire,

be retained *inwardly*[1]. 7. When worship is celebrated a prayer is to be retained[2] *inwardly*, and should menstruation occur the prayer is to be spoken out by her. 8. When in speaking *out* the prayer should menstruation occur, both afterwards, when the time was certain (a*v*îgûmân), and now *she* is certain[3]. 9. When she retains a prayer *inwardly*, *and* a call of nature arises, there is no need for her to speak *out* the prayer, for the formula for the call is to be spoken by her[4].

10. Hands sprinkled in *ceremonial* ablution (pâ*d*îyâ*v*), when a menstruous woman sees *them*, become quite unclean (apâ*d*îyâ*v*) by *her* look[5], and even when she looks hastily, and does not see the *sacred* twigs (baresôm), it is the same. 11. And *on* the subject of a house (khânak-ı babâ), when a menstruous *woman* is above *in* it, and the *sacred* twigs

---

water, and the sacred twigs, and three steps (8 feet) from righteous men (see § 33 and Vend. XVI, 1–10).

[1] This kind of prayer (Av. vâ*k*, 'a word or phrase,' Pahl. vâ*g*, Pers. bâ*z*) is a short formula, the beginning of which is to be muttered in a kind of whisper, or (according to the Pahlavi idiom) it 'is to be taken' and 'retained' inwardly (as a protection while eating, praying, or performing other necessary acts) by strictly abstaining from all conversation, until the completion of the act, when the prayer or vâ*g* 'is to be spoken out,' that is, the conclusion of the formula is to be uttered aloud, and the person is then free to speak as he likes. Different formulas are used on different occasions.

[2] K20 has, 'she retains a prayer.' See Pahl. Vend. XVI, 5.

[3] The meaning is, however, uncertain.

[4] The Pahlavi text is as follows: Amat vâ*g* yakhsenunê*d*, pê*s*înkâr (Pers. pê*s*yâr) barâ yâtûnê*d*, a*s* vâ*g* gûftanŏ kâr lôît mamana*s* nask-i pavan *k*ami*s*n yemaleluni*s*nŏ. Compare Pahl. Vend. XVI, 5.

[5] See Pahl. Vend. XVI, 10.

stand right below, if even fully fifteen steps below, even then the *sacred* twigs are unclean (apâdîyâr)[1]; but when not right *below* fifteen steps are plenty.

12. Prepared food which is within three steps of a menstruous woman is polluted by her, and food which she delivers up (barâ pardazêd) from her morning meal (kâsht) is not fit for the evening meal (sâm), nor that which she delivers up from her evening meal for the morning meal; it is not fit even for the same woman[2]; and water which is within three steps of her, when they shall put *it* into a pail (dûbal) or ablution-vessel (pâdîyâvdân), and shall do *it* without handling (ayadman), is *fit* for the hands in *ceremonial* ablution. 13. When she touches the bedding[3] and garments of any one, Sôshyans[4] said that so much space is to be washed with bull's urine (gômêz) and water; her bedding which touches the bedding of any one does not make *it* polluted.

14. A menstruous woman who becomes clean in three nights is not to be washed till the fifth day; from the fifth day onwards to the ninth day, when-

[1] Pahl. Vend. XVI, 10 says, 'everything, when at the right distance, is proper, except only that one *case*, when uncleanness is above and cleanness also right below; although it be even much below, yet it is not proper.' In such a case the prescribed distance of fifteen steps is not sufficient; therefore, the dashtânistân should be on the ground floor, not over an underground water-tank, nor within fifteen steps of the water in such a tank.

[2] Or, possibly, ham nêsman may mean 'a companion woman,' when two or more are secluded at the same time. Pahl. Vend. XVI, 17 says, 'food delivered up by a menstruous woman is of no use whatever, it is not proper; in *parts* free from pollution (gavidvasnŏ), in those likewise it is not proper;' the reading gavidvasnŏ (proposed by Dastûr Hoshangji) is, however, doubtful.

[3] Or 'clothing,' vistarg.

[4] See Chap. I, 3.

ever she becomes clean, *she* is to sit down in cleanliness one day for the sake of her depletion (tihîk), and then *she* is *fit* for washing; and after nine nights the depletion is no matter[1].

15. A woman who *has* brought forth or miscarried (nasâî), during forty days sees whenever *she* is polluted; but when she knows for certain that *she* is *free* from menstruation *she* is, thereupon, to be associated with meanwhile (vadas), from the forty days[2] onward; but when she knows for certain that *there is something* of it, she is to be considered meanwhile as menstruous.

16. A menstruous woman when she *has* sat one month as menstruous, and becomes clean on the thirtieth day, when at the very same time she became quite clean she also becomes again menstruous, her depletion (tîhîk) is from *its* beginning, and till the fifth day washing is not allowable. 17. And when she is washed from the menstruation, *and has* sat three days in cleanliness, and again becomes menstruous as from the beginning, four days are to be watched through by her, and the fifth day is for washing[3]. 18. When she *has* become *free*

[1] See Pahl. Vend. XVI, 22. The Hebrew law (Lev. xv. 19) prescribes a fixed period of seven days, except in abnormal cases.

[2] The same period of seclusion as appointed by the Hebrew law, after the birth of a man child (see Lev. xii. 2–4). The Avesta law (Vend. V, 135–159) prescribes only twelve nights' seclusion, divided into two periods of three and nine nights respectively, as the Hebrew woman's seclusion is divided into periods of seven and thirty-three days.

[3] The substance of §§ 16, 17 is given in Pahl. Vend. XVI, 22, but in language even more obscure than here. The washing mentioned here is merely for the first menstruation; that for the second one being prescribed in § 18.

from the second menstruation she is not in cleanliness *for* nine days *and* nights,—these days *and* nights are for watching,—*and* then *she* is to be washed; when the nine days *and* nights are completed, on the same day washing is good [1].

19. Of leucorrhœa (*k*iharak)[2], when it *has* quite changed colour, that which comes on before *and* also that which is after menstruation, the pollution is just like *that of* menstruation.

20. When she *has* become so completely clean from menstruation that her washing may be as usual (dastôbarag hâe), she does not make the *sacred* twigs (baresôm), *nor* even other things, polluted *when* beyond three steps.

21. On account of severe cold it is allowable *for her* to sit out towards [3] the fire; and while she washes a prayer (vâg) is to be taken *inwardly* by her [4], and the washing of her hands, except with bull's urine (gômêz), is not proper till *then*; and when *they are* washed by her, two hundred noxious creatures are to be destroyed by her as atonement for sin.

22. A woman who goes beyond the period of menstruation [5], and, afterwards, sees *she* is polluted, when her pregnancy is certain—except when her

[1] In such abnormal cases the Hebrew law (Lev. xv. 25–28) prescribes seven days' seclusion after recovery.

[2] Av. *k*ithra, see explanation of *k*iharak-hômand (Av. *k*ithravan*d*) in Pahl. Vend. XVI, 1, 34.

[3] Dastûr Jâmâspji reads val bavan-i âtâsh, 'to the part of the fire.' From what follows it would seem doubtful whether this distant approach to the fire is allowable until she is ready for washing.

[4] See § 6, note.

[5] Or, 'goes up from the place of menstruation.'

miscarriage (nasâî yehevûntanŏ) is evident—is then to be washed with bull's urine and water; when her pregnancy is not certain *she* is to be considered as menstruous. 23. Some say[1], moreover, that when miscarriage is certainly manifest *she* is, meanwhile, to be considered as menstruous. 24. Some say that when *she* is doubtful about the miscarriage she is to be washed with ceremony[2].

25. And for any one[3] who comes in contact with a menstruous woman, or with the person whom it is necessary to wash with water and bull's urine, *it* is the root of a sin of sixty stîrs[4]. 26. And for whomever knowingly has sexual intercourse with a menstruous woman *it* is the root of a sin of fifteen Tanâpûhars and sixty stîrs[5].

27. Of a menstruous *woman* who sees a fire the sin is one Farmân[6], and when she goes within three steps *it* is one Tanâpûhar, and when she puts a hand on the fire itself[7] *it* is a sin of fifteen Tanâpûhars; and *in* like manner *as to* the ashes[8] and *water* goblet[9]. 28. When she looks at water *it* is a

[1] Literally, 'there is *one* who says thus.'

[2] See Chap. II, 65.

[3] Reading aîs instead of adînas, 'then for him.'

[4] That is, the sin is a Khôr (see Chap. I, 2).

[5] According to the Avesta (Vend. XV, 23, 24) he becomes a peshôtanu (Pahl. tanâpûhar). The Hebrew law (Lev. xv. 24) makes him unclean for seven days.

[6] See Chap. I, 2. That it was sinful for her to look at fire, even in Avesta times, appears from Vend. XVI, 8.

[7] Literally, 'on the body of the fire.'

[8] That libûsyâ means 'ashes' appears from Pahl. Vend. V, 150; literally it is Huzvâris for 'clothing or covering,' and is so used in Pahl. Vend. VI, 106, VII, 122. Metaphorically, ashes are the clothing of the fire.

[9] Reading dûbalak; but the word is doubtful. Possibly it

sin of one Farmân; when she sits in water *it* is a sin of fifteen Tanâpûhars; and when through disobedience she walks out in the rain every single drop is a sin of fifteen Tanâpûhars for her. 29. And the sun and other luminaries are not to be looked at by her, and animals and plants are not to be looked at by her, and conversation with a righteous man is not to be held by her; for a fiend so violent is that fiend of menstruation[1], *that*, where another fiend does not smite anything with a look (akhsh), it smites with a look.

30. *As to* a house[2] in which is a menstruous woman, the fire of that house is not to be kindled; food which is delivered up from before a menstruous woman is not proper for the same woman[3]. 31. A tray-cloth (khvânŏ *gâmak*) which stands before *her*, when it is not in contact with her, is not polluted; a table-napkin (pataskhûr) when apart from *her* thigh, *and* contact does not occur, is proper[4].

32. When *one*[5] wishes to consecrate the sacred cakes (drôn)[6], when *one* holds up the *sacred* twigs

should be read gôbarak for gâv-bar, 'bull's produce,' referring to the bull's urine which, with ashes, is prescribed (Vend. V, 148) as the first food for a woman after miscarriage.

[1] The demoness *Gêh* (see Bund. III, 3–9).

[2] By khânak, 'house, abode,' must here be understood merely the woman's place of seclusion. K20 inserts âtâs dên after mûn, which renders it possible (by assuming another preposition) to translate as follows: '*As to* a house in which is a fire, the fire in that house is not to be kindled by a menstruous woman.'

[3] See § 12.

[4] Fit to use again.

[5] Perhaps we should read '*she*' throughout this section, as a woman can perform these rites among women (see Chap. X, 35).

[6] The drôn (Av. draona, corrupted into drûn or darûn by

(baresôm)[1] from the twig-stand (baresôm-dân), and menstruation occurs, and just as it came to *one's* knowledge *one* puts down the *sacred* twigs and goes out, the *sacred* twigs are not polluted.

Pâz. writers) is a small round pancake or wafer of unleavened bread, about the size of the palm of the hand. It is made of wheaten flour and water, with a little clarified butter, and is flexible. A drôn is converted into a frasast by marking it on one side, before frying, with nine superficial cuts (in three rows of three each) made with a finger-nail while thrice repeating the words humat hûkht huvarst, 'well-thought, well-said, well-done,' one word to each of the nine cuts. Any drôn or frasast that is torn must not be used in any ceremony. In the drôn ceremony two drôns are placed separately by the priest upon a very low table before him, on its left side, the nearer one having a small piece of butter (gâus hudhau) upon it; two frasasts are similarly placed upon its right-hand side, the farther one having a pomegranate twig (urvarãm) upon it; and between this and the farther drôn an egg is placed. The sacred twigs (baresôm) must also be present on their stand to the left of the priest, and a fire or lamp must stand opposite him, on the other side of the table. The priest recites a certain formula of consecration (chiefly Yas. III, 1–VIII, 9), during which he uplifts the sacred twigs, and mentions the name of the angel, or of the guardian spirit of a deceased person, in whose honour the ceremony is performed. After consecration, pieces are broken off the drôns by the officiating priest, and are eaten by himself and those present, beginning with the priests (see Haug's Essays, pp. 396, 407, 408, AV. p. 147).

[1] The baresôm (Av. baresma) consists of a number of slender rods or tâî (Pahl. tâk), formerly twigs of some particular trees, but now thin metal wires are generally used. The number of these twigs varies according to the nature of the ceremony, but is usually from five to thirty-three. These twigs are laid upon the crescent-shaped tops of two adjacent metal stands, each called a mâh-rû, 'moon-face,' and both together forming the baresôm-dân or 'twig-stand.' The baresôm is prepared for the sacred rites by the recital of certain prayers by the officiating priest, during which he washes the twigs with water, and ties them together with a kûstîk or girdle formed of six thread-like ribbons split out of a leaflet of the date-palm and twisted together; this girdle, being

33. And during her menstruation *she* is to be so seated that, from her body, *there* are fifteen steps of three feet to water, fifteen steps to fire, fifteen steps to the *sacred* twigs, and three steps to a righteous man[1]. 34. And her food is to be carried forth in iron or leaden *vessels;* and the person (valman) who shall carry forth the food stands at three steps away from her[2]. 35. When worship is celebrated, every time at the dedication (shnûmanê)[3] of the consecration of sacred cakes (drôn yast) *it* is to be uttered aloud *by her;* some say the Ithâ *and* Ashem-vohû[4].

Chapter IV.

1. A *sacred thread*-girdle (kûstik), should it be made of silk (parvand), is not proper; the hair (pashm) of a hairy goat and a hairy camel is

passed twice round the twigs, is secured with a right-handed and left-handed knot on one side, and is then passed round a third time and secured with a similar double knot on the other side, exactly as the kûstîk or sacred thread-girdle is secured round the waist of a Parsi man or woman (see Haug's Essays, pp. 396–399).

[1] See Vend. XVI, 9, 10. All the ceremonial apparatus must be kept as far removed as the sacred twigs.

[2] See Vend. XVI, 11–14, which states that the food is to be carried forth on iron, lead, or the basest metal.

[3] This is the time when the name of the angel or spirit is mentioned, in whose honour the cakes are consecrated (see § 32, note on drôn, and Chap. VII, 8).

[4] The Ithâ is Yas. V (so called from its first word), which forms a part of the drôn yast or formula of consecration (see § 32, note on drôn). The Ashem-vohû is probably that in Yas. VIII, 9, which concludes the consecration. The same details are given in Pahl. Vend. XVI, 17. These prayers also form a portion of all ceremonial worship, including the Yazisn.

proper, and from *other* hairy *creatures* (mûyînô) it is proper among the lowly (nakhêzîk). 2. The least fulness[1] necessary for *it* is exactly three finger-*breadths;* when *it* is exactly three finger-*breadths* altogether[2] from one side, *and* when the rest is cut off, it is proper. 3. When *one* retains the prayer *inwardly*[3] and has tied his girdle, and ties *it* anew once again, he will untie that which he has tied, *and* it is not proper[4].

4. Cloth of thick silk brocade (dîpâkŏ) and figured silk (parnîkânŏ) is not good for girdling[5]; and *cloth* of hide when the hair is stripped from it, of wool, of hair, of cotton, of dyed silk, and of wood[6] is proper for shirting (sapîkîh). 5. Four finger-*breadths* of shirt[7] is the measure of *its* width *away*

[1] Literally, 'width;' that is, *extra* width, or slackness round the waist, as the girdle sits very loosely over a loose shirt; or, as the text implies, the slackness ought to admit three fingers together, projecting edgeways from the waist. After tying it so loosely, any unnecessary length of string may be cut off, when the girdle is put on for the first time. The necessary looseness is again mentioned in Chap. X, 1.

[2] Literally, 'extreme to extreme;' rôêsman-â-rôêsman being Huzvâris for sarâsar.

[3] That is, has begun the prayer formula (requisite while tying on the girdle) with a bâz or muttered prayer (see Chap. III, 6, note).

[4] The meaning appears to be that he must not tie the girdle a second time without recommencing the prayer formula.

[5] This word, ayîbyâêghânîh, is chiefly a transcript from the Avesta name of the kûstîk or girdle, aiwyaunghana. Probably garments in general are meant.

[6] Perhaps dârîn may mean cloth of bark, hemp, or flax here.

[7] The sacred shirt, worn by Parsis of both sexes (young children excepted) in India, is a very loose tunic of white muslin, with very short loose sleeves covering part of the upper arm. It is called sadaro (Pers. sudarah) in Gugarâti, and shapîk (Pers. shabî) in Pahlavi.

from each side, from the neck to the skirt (parîk); and *as to* the length before and behind, as much as is proper to covér up is good. 6. So much length and breadth, when it is double or thickened [1], are not proper; when on the separation (dûrmânak) of the two folds *one* remains clothed on one side, both when he wears the girdle (kûstîk), *and* when he does not wear the girdle, even then it is not undress (vishâdakîh) [2].

7. When a shirt of one fold is put on, *and* the skirt has concealed both sides, the girdle is tied over it, *and* it is proper. 8. When two shirts are put on, and they shall tie the girdle over that which is above, then *it* is for him a root of the sin owing to [3] running about uncovered [4].

9. By a man and woman, until fifteen years of age, *there* is no committal of *the sin of* running about uncovered [5]; *and* the sin of unseasonable

[1] Assuming that aîtabarîd stands for astabarîd; the Huz. aît being substituted for the Pâz. ast. The text appears to refer to lined or stuffed shirts, such as would be very suitable for the cold winters of Persia, like the clothing padded with cotton wool used by natives of the cooler parts of India in the cold season.

[2] That is, the degree of nakedness which is sinful (see §§ 8–10).

[3] K20 has lâ, 'not,' instead of râî, 'owing to;' this would reverse the meaning of the sentence, but it is not the usual place for the negative particle.

[4] This sin is called vishâd-dûbârisnîh; it is mentioned in Pahl. Vend. V, 167, VII, 48, but not described there. The usual definition of the sin is 'walking about without the sacred thread-girdle;' and it is generally classed with the two other Parsi sins of 'walking with one boot' and 'making water on foot' (see AV. XXV, 5, 6); sometimes a fourth Parsi sin, 'unseasonable chatter,' is associated with them, as in the text, but this is supposed to be punished in a different manner in hell (see AV. XXIII).

[5] Indicating that it is not absolutely necessary to wear the sacred thread-girdle till one is fifteen years old (see Chap. X, 13).

chatter[1] arises after fifteen years of age[2]. 10. The sin of running about uncovered, as far as three steps, is a Farmân each step; at the fourth step *it* is a Tanâpûhar[3] *sin.*

11. A girdle to which *there* is no fringe is proper; and when they shall tie a woman's ringlet (gurs)[4] *it* is not proper.

12. Walking with one boot[5] as far as four steps is

[1] This sin is called drâyân-*g*ûyi*s*nîh, literally, 'eagerness for chattering,' and consists in talking while eating, praying, or at any other time when a prayer (vâ*g*) has been taken inwardly and is not yet spoken out; many details regarding it are given in the next chapter. The sin consists in breaking the spell, or destroying the effect, of the vâ*g*.

[2] This is modified by Chap. V, 1, 2.

[3] See Chap. I, 1, 2. These particulars are deduced by the Pahlavi commentator from Vend. XVIII, 115, which refers, however, to a special case of going without girdle and shirt. He says (Pahl. Vend. XVIII, 116), 'so that as far as the fourth step it is not more than (aî) a Srôshô-*k*aranâm, and at the fourth step it amounts to the root of a Tanâpûhar within him; some say that *he* is within what is allowed him in going three *steps*. When he walks on very many steps it is also not more than a Tanâpûhar, *and* when he stops again *it is counted* from the starting-point' (compare § 12).

[4] Probably referring to the possibility of tying the girdle over a woman's hair, when hanging loose down to her waist. The present custom among Parsi women in India is to cover up the whole of their hair with a white handkerchief tied closely over the head; but whether this is an ancient custom is uncertain.

[5] This sin, which is mentioned in Bund. XXVIII, 13, is called aê-mûk-dûbârisnîh or khadû-mûk-dûbârisnîh, literally, 'running in one boot,' and is usually so understood, but how there can be any risk of the committal of so inconvenient an offence is not explained. Dastûr Hoshangji thinks that aê-mûk, 'one boot,' was formerly written avî-mûk, 'without boots;' and no doubt avî is sometimes written exactly like khadû, 'one,' (indicating, possibly, a phonetic change of avî into agvi). Perhaps, however, the word alludes to the Persian practice of wearing an outer boot

a Tanâpûhar *sin*, when with one[1] movement; and after the fourth ştep as much as *one* shall walk is a Tanâpûhar; and when he sits down and walks on the sin is the same that *it would be* from his starting-point (bûnîh); and *there* were *some* who said *it* is a Tanâpûhar for each league (parasang).

13. At night, when they lie down, the shirt *and* girdle are to be worn, for *they are* more protecting for the body, and good for the soul. 14. When they lie down with the shirt and girdle, before sleep *one* shall utter one Ashem-vohû[2], and with every coming and going of the breath (vayô) is a good work of three Srôshô-*k*aranâms[3]; and if in that

(mûk) over an inner one of thinner leather, when walking out of doors; so that the sin of 'running in one pair of boots' would be something equivalent to walking out in one's stockings; and this seems all the more probable from the separate account of walking 'without boots or stockings,' avîmûgak, given in Chap. X, 12. But whatever may have been the original meaning of the word, Parsis nowadays understand that it forbids their walking without shoes; this should be recollected by any European official in India who fancies that Parsis ought to take off their shoes in his presence, as by insisting on such a practice he is compelling them to commit what they believe to be a serious sin.

[1] Assuming that hanâ, 'this,' stands for aê, 'one' (see p. 218, note 3). The amount of sinfulness in walking improperly shod appears to be deduced from that incurred by walking improperly dressed (see § 10).

[2] See Bund. XX, 2. The same details are given in Chap. X, 24.

[3] The Av. sraoshô-*k*arana appears to have been a scourge with which offenders were lashed by the assistant priests (see Vend. III, 125, 129, IV, 38, &c.), and a Srôshô-*k*aranâm was, therefore, originally one lash with a scourge. As the gravity of an offence was measured by the number of lashes administered, when this term was transferred from the temporal to the spiritual gravity of sin, it was considered as the unit of weight by which sins were estimated; and, by a further process of reasoning, the good works

sleep decease occurs, his renunciation *of sin* is accomplished [1].

Chapter V.

1. Of unseasonable chatter [2] that of children of five years of age has no root; and from five years till seven years, when *one* is under the tuition of his

necessary for counterbalancing sins were estimated by the same unit of weight. Regarding the amount of a Srôshô-*k*aranâm there is much uncertainty; according to Chap. XVI, 5 and Pahl. Vend. VI, 15 it is the same as a Farmân, and this appears to be the case also from a comparison of § 10 with Pahl. Vend. XVIII, 116 (see note on § 10); but according to Chap. XI, 2 it is half a Farmân, and the Farmân is also probably the degree meant by the frequent mention of three Srôshô-*k*aranâms as the least weight of sin or good works that will turn the scale in which the soul's actions are weighed after death (see Chap. VI, 3). This uncertainty may perhaps have arisen from aê, 'one,' and the cipher 3 being often written alike in Pahlavi. But, besides this uncertainty, there is some discordance between the various accounts of the actual weight of a Srôshô-*k*aranâm, as may be seen in Chaps. X, 24, XI, 2, XVI, 5. As a weight the Srôshô-*k*aranâm is not often mentioned in the Pahlavi Vendidad, for wherever it translates the Av. sraoshô-*k*arana it means 'lashes with a scourge;' but the weight of one Srôshô-*k*aranâm is mentioned in Pahl. Vend. VI, 15, three Srôshô-*k*aranâms in IV, 142, VII, 136, XVII, 11, XVIII, 55, 116, and five Srôshô-*k*aranâms in XVI, 8.

[1] Patîtîkîh, 'the dropping' or renunciation of sin, is effected by confessing serious offences to a high-priest, and also by the recitation of a particular formula called the Patit, in which every imaginable sin is mentioned with a declaration of repentance of any such sins as the reciter may have committed. The priest ordains such atonement as he thinks necessary, but the remission of the sins depends upon the after performance of the atonement and the effectual determination to avoid such sins in future (see Chap. VIII, 1, 2, 8).

[2] See Chap. IV, 9.

father *and* innocent[1], it has no root *in* him, and when sinful it has root *in* the father[2]. 2. And from eight years till *they are* man and woman of fifteen years, if even *one* is innocent during the performance of the ritual (yastô), but is able to say its Ithâ and Ashem-vohû[3], and does not say *them*, *it* is the root of unseasonable chatter for him[4]; and when *he* is able to perform *his* ritual by heart (narm), and says *only* the Ithâ *and* Ashem-vohû, some *have* said that such is as when his ritual is not performed *and there* is no offering (yastôfrîd), and some *have* said that it is not unseasonable chatter.

3. Unseasonable chatter *may* occur at every ceremonial (yazisnŏ); *for* him who has performed the ritual *it* is a Tanâpûhar *sin*[5]; *for* him who has not performed the ritual *it* is less, some *have* said three Srôshô-*k*aranâms[6]. 4. The measure of unseasonable chatter is a Tanâpûhar *sin*; this is where every ceremony, or every morsel, or every *drop of* urine is not completed[7]. 5. Of the unseasonable chatter of

[1] That is, intending no harm, as contrasted with sinful or wilful chatter in defiance of instruction.

[2] Because the father is supposed to be responsible, in the next world, for the sins of the child, even as he will profit by its good works (see Chaps. X, 22, XII, 15).

[3] See Chap. III, 35.

[4] Inattention to prayers evinced by improper silence is thus put upon the same footing as inattention evinced by improper talking. This portion of the sentence is omitted in K20.

[5] See Chap. I, 1, 2. It is a greater sin in the officiating priests than in the other persons present at the ceremony.

[6] Probably a Farmân sin (see Chap. IV, 14, note).

[7] Referring to the three principal occasions when a prayer (vâg) is taken inwardly and retained until the completion of the action; during which time it is unlawful to say anything but the prescribed prayers (see Chap. III, 6, note).

him who has not performed the ritual Afarg[1] said this degree is slighter; Mêdôk-mâh[1] said both are alike, and he spoke further of this, since for him who has not performed the ritual, and does not attend to[2] saying its Ithâ and Ashem-vohû, it is more severe than for him who has performed the ritual, and does not attend to consecrating its sacred cake (drôn). 6. Mêdôk-mâh said that it (the ceremonial)[3] does not become Gêtô-kharîd[4]; Afarg said that it amounts to an offering (yastôfrîd)[5] for every one, except for that person who *knows* the ritual by heart, and through sinfulness will not perform *it;* and it becomes *his* at the time when, during his life *and* by his command, it is recited with this intention, namely: 'I wish to do *it*, my faith (astôbânîh) is in the religion[6].'

7. The deaf and dumb when it is not possible for him to say an Ashem does not commit unseasonable chatter[7]; and when it is possible for him to say an Ashem he shall three times say of it, 'Ashem, ashem, ashem;' and if it be possible for him to say

[1] See Chap. I, 3.

[2] Literally, 'believe or trust to.'

[3] During which unseasonable chatter occurs.

[4] Generally written Gêtî-kharîd (see Bund. XXX, 28); but, perhaps, we should here read yastôfrîd, 'offering,' though gêtôkharîd occurs in Chap. XII, 30.

[5] The MSS. have merely stôfrîd, which differs from the foregoing gêtô-kharîd only in one Pahlavi letter, so we should probably read the same word in both cases, but which of them it ought to be is uncertain.

[6] Meaning, apparently, that he can obtain the benefit of any past ceremony, forfeited by wilful negligence, by repentance and a repetition of the ceremony during his lifetime.

[7] By omitting to say it (see § 2). This clause of the sentence is omitted in K20.

'ithâ' and 'ashem-vohû' it is well, and when it is only possible for him to say 'ithâ' it matters not[1].

CHAPTER VI.

1. The deaf and dumb and helpless (armêst)[2], though of unblemished conduct and proper disposition, is incapable of doing good works, and from the *time* when he is born till the *time* when he shall die, all the duty and good works which they may perform in the world become his property (nafsman) as much as his even by whom *they* are performed; some say that it is thus: as much as they belong to Zaratûst[3]. 2. Though he does not do the good works not really originating with (ahambûnik) him, and does not commit the sin not really originating with *him*, *it* is better than though *he were* able to do the good works not really originating with him, *and* should not do *them*; but should commit the sin not really originating with *him*; when, afterwards, he passes away, and then also comes to *his* account as to sin and good works, when the good works not really originating with him are more *he is* in heaven (vahist), when the sin

[1] That is, any one barely able to speak must repeat so much of the indispensable prayers as he is able to pronounce, otherwise he will commit sin.

[2] That is, any one compelled to remain stationary or secluded, owing to bodily or mental infirmity (see Chap. II, 98); an idiot, or insane person, is probably meant here.

[3] This comment seems to imply that its writer was translating from an Avesta text, and here met with a word which some persons thought contained a reference to Zar..st, but which he first translated so as to suit the context; perhaps Av. zarazdâiti may be suggested.

not really originating with *him* is more *he is* in hell, and when both are equal *he is* among the ever-stationary (hamîstakân)[1]. 3. When the good works are three Srôshô-*k*aranâms[2] more than the sins *he is* in heaven (vahi*s*t), when the good works are one Tanâpûhar more he attains to the best existence (pâhlûm ahvân)[3], when his ceremony (ya*s*t) is per-

[1] That is, he is treated, with regard to the actions merely imputed to him, precisely as all others are with regard to their own actions. With reference to the hamîstakân, Ard*â*-Vîrâf states (AV. VI, 2, 5–12) that on his journey to the other world he 'saw the souls of several people who remain in the same position,' and he was informed that 'they call this the place of the Hamîstakân ("those ever-stationary"), and these souls remain *in* this place till the future existence; and *they are* the souls of those people whose good works and sin were equal. Speak out to the worldlings thus: "Consider not the easier good works with avarice and vexation! for every one whose good works are three Srôshô-*k*aranâms more than *his* sin is for heaven, *they* whose sin is more are for hell, they *in* whom both are equal remain among these Hamîstakân till the future existence." And their punishment is cold or heat from the changing of the atmosphere; and they have no other adversity.'

[2] Probably equivalent to a Farmân sin (see Chaps, I, 1, 2, IV, 14, note).

[3] This appears to be another name for Garô*d*mân, 'the abode of song,' which is the highest heaven, or dwelling of Aûharmazd. The lower heaven is here called Vahi*s*t, which is a general term for heaven in general. AV. VII–X, XVII, 27, and Mkh. VII, 9–12, 20, 21 describe four grades in heaven and four in hell, besides the intermediate neutral position of the Hamîstakân (AV. VI, Mkh. VII, 18, 19). The four grades of heaven, proceeding upwards, are Hûmat for good thoughts in the station of the stars, Hûkht for good words in the station of the moon, Hûvar*s*t for good deeds in the station of the sun, and Garô*d*mân where Aûharmazd dwells (Vend. XIX, 121). And the four grades of hell, proceeding downwards, are Dû*s*-hûmat for evil thoughts, Dû*s*-hûkht for evil words, Dû*s*-hûvar*s*t for evil deeds, and the darkest hell (Vend. XIX, 147) where the evil spirit dwells. The pâhlûm ahvân of

formed[1]. 4. Sôshyans[2] said that to come into that best existence it is not necessary to perform the ceremony, for when his good works are one[3] Tanâpûhar more than the sin he attains to the best existence, and no account is *taken* of performing his ceremony; because in the heavenly existence (garôdmânîkîh) it is not necessary to perform a ceremony, for an excess of good works must attain Garôdmân[4]. 5. As Sôshyans said, in heaven (vahist) he who is below is elevated to him who is above; *and* it says thus: 'Happy indeed art thou, O man! who art in any way near unto that imperishable existence[5].'

6. Kûshtanŏ-bûgêd[6] said that an infidel (akdînô)[7], when *his* good works are one Tanâpûhar more than *his* sin, is saved from hell.

---

the text is merely the Pahlavi form of Av. vahistem ahûm (Vend. VII, 133, XVIII, 69, XIX, 120, Yas. IX, 64), whence the term vahist (Pers. bahist) is also derived.

[1] That is, when his surviving relatives have performed the proper religious ceremonies after his death.

[2] See Chap. I, 3.

[3] Reading aê, 'one,' and supposing that this Pâz. form has been substituted for an original Huz. khadûk, 'one.' This supposition being necessary to account for the aê preceding its noun, instead of following it; and without it we ought to read 'three' instead of 'one,' which seems, however, hardly reconcileable with the context (but compare Pahl. Vend. VII, 136). This is an instance of the ambiguity occasioned by aê, 'one,' and the cipher 3 being often written alike in Pahlavi, as already noticed in p. 289, note 3. The word might also be taken as the conditional verbal form aê, 'shall be,' but in that case it is likewise misplaced.

[4] See note on pâhlûm ahvân in § 3.

[5] A somewhat similar exclamation to that in Vend. VII, 136.

[6] See Chap. I, 4, note.

[7] That is, one of another religion; not an apostate, nor an atheist.

7. Of a pure law (dâd) are we of the good religion, and we are of the primitive faith; of a mixed law are *those of* the Sînîk congregation[1]; of a vile

[1] It is not easy to identify this Sînîk vaskardîh, but Professor J. Darmesteter suggests that the term may have been applied to the Manicheans settled in eastern Turkistân and western China, whence they may have been called Sînîk (the country of the Sênî, Av. Sâini, being identified with *K*înîstân or China in Bund. XV, 29, because *TS*în is the Arabic name of the latter). This is confirmed, to some extent, by a passage in the Dînkard (see Dastûr Pêshôtan's edition of the Pahlavi text, p. 27), where three foreign religions are mentioned, that of the Jews from Arûm, that of the Messiah from the west, and that of Mânih from Turkistân. Darmesteter further points out the following passages in Barbier de Meynard's French translation of Mas'aûdî, which show that the Manicheans had considerable influence in eastern Turkistân as late as A.D. 944:—

(Meynard, I, 268): '. . . the Turks, the Khuzlug, and the Taghazghaz, who occupy the town of Kûsân, situated between Khurâsân and China, and who are now (A.D. 944) the most valiant, most powerful, and best governed of all the Turkish races and tribes. Their kings bear the title of îrkhân ("sub-khân?"), and they alone, among all these nations, profess the religion of Mânî.'

Again, after stating that the Chinese were at first Samanians (Buddhists), it is added (Meynard, II, 258): 'Their kingdom is contiguous to that of the Taghazghaz, who, as we have said above, are Manicheans, and proclaim the simultaneous existence of the two principles of light and darkness. These people were living in simplicity, and in a faith like that of the Turkish races, when there turned up among them a demon of the dualist sect, who showed them, in tempting language, two opposing principles in everything that exists in the world, such as life and death, health and sickness, riches and poverty, light and darkness, union and separation, connection and severance, rising and setting, existence and non-existence, night and day, &c. Then, he spoke to them of the various ailments which afflict rational beings, animals, children, idiots, and madmen; and he added that God could not be responsible for this evil, which was in distressing contradiction to the excellence which distinguishes his works, and that he was

law are the Zandîk[1], the Christian (Tarsâk), the Jew (Yahûd), and others of this sort (sanŏ)[2].

Chapter VII.

1. The morning sun it is necessary to reverence (yastanŏ) till midday, and that of midday it is necessary to reverence till the afternoon time, and that of the afternoon time it is necessary to reverence till night[3]; whenever *one* is quite prepared

above any such imputation. By these quibbles, and others like them, he carried away their minds, and made them adopt his errors.'

The tenets of the Manicheans ought, no doubt, to have been considered by the Zoroastrians as a mixture of truth and error, just as those of the Sînîk congregation are represented to be in our text; but such tenets being an heretical offshoot of Zoroastrianism, it argues unusual liberality in the priests if they preferred Manicheans to Christians, that is, heretics to infidels.

K20 has altered sînîk vaskardîh into nisînîk (or vîdînîk) sikaftîh, which appears to be an attempt to bring the words within the limits of the writer's knowledge, without paying much attention to their collective meaning.

[1] A sect which (according to its name) probably adhered to a certain heretical interpretation (zand) in preference to the orthodox Avesta and Zand. Nêryôsang, in his Sanskrit version of Mkh. XXXVI, 16, explains a Zandîk as one who 'thinks well of Aharman and the demons.'

[2] Unless this paragraph be a continuation of the quotation from Kûshtanŏ-bûgêd's commentary, which seems unlikely, its contents have an important bearing upon the age of the Shâyast lâ-shâyast. As it does not mention Muhammadanism by name it could hardly have been written after the fall of the Sasanian dynasty, when that new faith had become much more important, in Persia, than those of the Christians and Jews.

[3] Referring to the recitation of the Khûrshêd Nyâyis, or 'salutation of the sun,' which should be performed thrice a day, in the Hâvan, Rapîtvîn, and Aûzêrîn Gâhs, or periods of the day (see

for activity (khvêskârîh), and shall then do reverence, it is proper. 2. And when anything of that happens which *indicates* when it is not proper to wash the hands, and about this he considers that when he does not reverence the sun it will stop[1], *at* the time previous *to that* in which it occurs the sun is to be fully reverenced by him, and, afterwards, when *his* hands are washed, it is to be reverenced again; and when he does not reverence *it*, except when innocent through not reverencing *it*[2], then it becomes irreverence (lâ yast) of the sun *for* him[3].

3. *As to* the sun it is better when *one* reverences *it* every time at the proper period (pavan gâs-i nafsman); when he does not reverence *it for* once *it* is a sin of thirty stîrs[4]. 4. Reverencing the sun is every time a good work of one Tanâpûhar[5]; and *so* of the moon and fire *in* like manner[6]. 5. When on account of cloudiness the sun is not visible (pêdâk), and *one* shall reverence *it*, it is proper.

Bund. XXV, 9); a few sentences in the Nyâyis, or formula of salutation, are altered to suit the particular Gâh in which it is recited.

[1] K20 has, 'it will protect *it*;' having read netrûnêd instead of ketrûnêd in its original. To pray with unwashed hands would be sinful (see Pahl. Vend. XIX, 84).

[2] That is, except when the omission is to avoid a worse evil, as in the instance just mentioned.

[3] Or, perhaps, 'it does not become a Khûrshêd Yast ("a formula of praise in honour of the sun") *for* him.' This Yast forms a part of the Nyâyis.

[4] That is, an Aredûs sin (see Chap. I, 2). M6 has, 'when he does not reverence *it* again.'

[5] That is, a good work sufficient to counterbalance a Tanâpûhar sin, which puts the performance of a Nyâyis on the same footing as the consecration of a sacred cake or drôn (see Chap. XVI, 6).

[6] The moon and fire have each a separate Nyâyis.

6. And while *one* does not reverence the sun, the good works which they do that day are not their own; some say that of the good works which they do within the law (dâ*d*) of the good religion he has no share. 7. While they do not wash dirty hands any good work which they do is not their own, for while *one* does not utterly destroy corruption (nasû*s*)[1] *there* is no coming of the angels to his body, and when *there* is no coming of the angels to his body he has no steadfastness in the religion, and when he has no steadfastness in the religion no good work whatever reaches unto him.

8. When *one* wishes to perform the propitiation (shnûman)[2] of fire, it is allowable to perform one 'âthrô' by itself, and, when two *and* the 'ma*d* vîspaêibyô âterebyô,' these three are thus the propitiation everywhere[3]; some say that it would be proper to perform *it* while allowable, except that of the heterodox.

---

[1] That is, the demon of corruption, who is supposed to enter and reside in all filth of the nature of dead matter, until expelled or destroyed by cleansing.

[2] A shnûman or khshnûmanŏ (Av. khshnûman) is a short formula of praise, reciting all the usual titles of the spirit intended to be propitiated by it, and is used for dedicating the prayers or ceremony specially to his service (see Chaps. III, 35, X, 2, XIV, 3). The propitiatory formulas for the thirty angels and archangels who preside over the days of the month constitute the Sîrôzah, or form of prayer 'relating to the thirty days.'

[3] The propitiation of fire (as given in Sîrôz. I, 9, Âtar Nyâyi*s* 5, 6) consists of five sentences, each beginning with the word âthrô, 'of the fire,' and the last sentence also contains the words ma*d* vîspaêibyô âterebyô, 'with all fires.' The meaning of the text appears to be that it is allowable to use only one of these sentences (probably the last), but if two are used besides the last they are amply sufficient for practical purposes.

9. Whoever shall extinguish[1] a fire, by him ten fires are to be gathered together, by him ten punishments are to be endured, by him ten ants are to be destroyed[2], and by him holy-water (zôhar) is to be presented to the sacred fire (âtâs-i Vâhrâm).

Chapter VIII.

1. Sin which *affects* accusers[3] is to be atoned for (vigârisn) among the accusers, and that *relating* to

[1] Literally, 'kill.'

[2] The ant being a creature of the evil spirit, on account of its carrying away corn.

[3] Vinâs-i hamêmâlân, 'sin *relating* to adversaries.' Sins appear to be divided into two great classes, hamêmâl and rûbânîk. A hamêmâl sin seems to be any secular offence which injures some person or animal who, thereupon, becomes a hamêmâl, 'accuser' (Av. hameretha, 'opponent,' Yas. LVI, x, 10), and who must first be satisfied by atonement, before confession to the high-priest, or renunciation of sin, can be of any avail for removing the sin (compare Matthew v. 23–26). The Rivâyats assert that if a person dies without atoning for a hamêmâl sin, his soul will be stopped at the Ä'invad bridge (see Bund. XII, 7) on its way to the other world, and kept in a state of torment until the arrival of the 'accuser,' and after he is satisfied the sinner's soul will be disposed of, in the usual manner, according to the balance of its good and bad actions. It is also probable that only a man of 'the good religion,' or an animal of the good creation, can be an 'accuser.' A rûbânîk sin, on the other hand, seems to be one which affects only the sinner's own soul, and for which the high-priest can prescribe a sufficient atonement. It is doubtful, however, whether the Parsis nowadays have any very clear notions of the exact distinction between these two classes of sins, although aware of their names, which are mentioned in their Patit, or renunciation of sin. The explanations given in some editions of their Khurdah Avesta, or prayer-book, are confined to mentioning certain special instances of each class of sin; thus,

the soul is to be atoned for among the high-priests (ra*d*ân), and when they do whatever the high-priests of the religion command the sin will depart, and the good works which they may thenceforth do will attain completion (avaspôrîk). 2. The sin of him who is worthy of death (marg-ar*g*ân) is to be confessed (gar*z*isnŏ) unto the high-priests, *and he* is to deliver up *his* body[1]; except *to* the high-priests he is not to deliver up *his* body.

3. On account of the dexterity (farhâng) of horsemen it is not *their* business to hunt (nakh*k*îr kar*d*anŏ); and it is not allowable for any one else to hunt for game, except *for him* whose wealth is less *than* three hundred stîrs[2].

---

murder, seduction, unnecessary slaughter of cattle, embezzlement, slander, seizing land by force, and a few other evil deeds are stated to be hamêmâl sins; while unnatural offences and intercourse with women of another race and religion are said to be rûbânîk sins. In the Pahlavi Vendidad these classes of sins are rarely mentioned, but hamêmâlân occurs in Pahl. Vend. III, 151, IV, 23, XIII, 38; hamêmâlîh in III, 119; and rûbânîk in XIII, 38; although, perhaps, not always in the sense of sin.

[1] By committing a marg-ar*g*ân or mortal sin, that is, a sin worthy of death, he has forfeited his life, and ought to place it at the disposal of the ra*d*, or high-priest.

[2] This section, intended to preserve game for the poor, is evidently out of place here, as it has no connection with the context. With reference to the property qualification for hunting, it appears, from a passage in the Persian MS. M5 about the proper dowry for a privileged wife, that 2000 dirhams of silver were worth 2300 rûpîs, and that 2 dirhams were $2\frac{1}{4}$ tolas; this was written in A. D. 1723, when neither the rûpî nor the tola were of uniform amount, though now the rûpî is exactly a tola weight of silver. As the stîr was four dirhams (see Chap. I, 2), three hundred stîrs would have been 1380 rûpîs or 1350 tolas of silver, according to the standards mentioned in M5; so that hunting was intended to be confined to those whose property was less than 1350–1380 rûpîs; but how

4. The ceremonial worship (yazisn) of those worthy of death, which they do not perform by way of renunciation *of sin* [1], is the ceremonial *which* is demon worship; and when the *officiating* priest (aêrpat) does not know *it* the merit (kirfak) of the ceremonial goes to the store (gang) of the angels, and they give the enjoyment which *arises* from that merit in the spiritual *existence* to the soul of that person who *has* at once (aêvâk) become righteous in mind.

5. When the mortal sinner (marg-argânŏ) *has* delivered his body and wealth at once to the high-priests, and engages mentally in renunciation as to the sin which *has* occurred, and the high-priests give him *their* decision (dastôbarîh) as to duty and good works, the duty and good works which *were* before performed by him come back *to him;* and when they inflict punishment for three nights [2], he does not enter hell. 6. And if the high-priest orders the cutting off of *his* head *he* is righteous on the spot [3], and the three *nights'* (satûîh) *ceremony* is to be celebrated for *him*, and the account of the

---

this limitation is to be reconciled with the fact that hunting was a favourite pursuit of kings and nobles does not appear, unless it be considered as a sacerdotal protest against that practice.

[1] That is, in those cases when they do not have the yazisn performed as an atonement for sin, by order of the high-priest after confession.

[2] This appears to refer to temporal punishment, inflicted by order of the high-priest, for the purpose of saving him from the 'punishment of the three nights' in the other world, mentioned in Bund. XXX, 16.

[3] Reading pavan gînâk; but M6 marks the phrase as pavan dînâk (for dînâ), 'through the decree,' which is probably an error.

three *nights* (satûîh) does not affect him [1]. 7. And if *he does* not *engage* in renunciation *he is* in hell till the future existence; and in *his* future body they will bring *him* from hell, and for every mortal *sin* they will cut off *his* head once, and the last time they *will* make *him* alive again, and will inflict (numâyend) three nights' severe punishment [2].

8. However a man engages in renunciation of sin the duty of his state of renunciation (patîtîh) is to be engaged therein openly and mentally in renunciation; the duty of openness is this, that the sin which he knows *has* assailed him [3], is to be specially confessed (barâ gôbisnŏ) by him; *and* the mental duty is this, that he engages in renunciation with this thought, that 'henceforth I *will* not commit sin.' 9. And that which occurs before the renunciation, except pious alms, it is well for him not to be overlooked [4] by him, *and* not to be kept [5] secret by him; for when he shall overlook [6], or shall keep secret, about sin committed, it becomes for him as

[1] That is, the usual ceremonies after death are not to be withheld in this world, and his soul is able to pass through the usual investigation, as to his sins and good works, on its way to the other world, without delay. This period of three nights (satûih, 'the triplet'), which Pâzand writers miscall sedôs or sadis, is the time during which the soul is supposed to hover about the body, before finally departing for the other world (see Mkh. II, 114, 158–160, AV. IV, 9–14, XVII, 2–9).

[2] The same statement is made in nearly the same words in Pahl. Vend. VII, 136. This is the future three nights' punishment for impenitent sinners, mentioned in Bund. XXX, 16.

[3] Literally, 'which he knows thus: "It assailed me."'

[4] Reading avênisnŏ, but the word can also be read khunînisnŏ, 'to be made celebrated, to be boasted of.'

[5] Literally, 'carried on, borne away.'

[6] Reading avênêd, but it may be khunînêd, 'boast of.'

much, some say, as three Srôshô-*k*aranâms[1]; some say that when he keeps secret about a sin of three Srôshô-*k*aranâms he is worthy of death; some say much otherwise[2]. 10. Âtarô-pâ*d* son of Zaratûst[3] had remarked (pê*d*âkînî*d*) *to* a disciple, about this duty, thus: 'Conform to the renunciation *of sin!*' and one[4] time a secret was kept by him, and he ordered him thus: 'Henceforth be thou never apparent in this duty!' and after that he looked upon the supplication (avakhshîh) and much repentance of that disciple, and even then he did not become the high-priest (dastôbar) over him.

11. *The rule is*[5] this, that *of those* who would be proper for this priestly duty (dastôbarîh), that person is proper who is perfect in (narm) the commentary (zand) of the law, and the punishment of sin is easy for him, and he has controlled himself; some say thus: 'By whom a course of priestly studies (aêrpatastân) is performed.' 12. And the punishment of sin *being* easy for him, and his *having* controlled himself are proper; and when, in danger before a menstruous woman, he engages in renunciation it is proper.

---

[1] Probably the same as a Farmân sin (see Chaps. I, 1, 2, IV, 14).

[2] Or 'many other *things*.'

[3] This Âtarô-pâ*d*-i Zaratûstân is mentioned in a manuscript about 500 years old, belonging to Dastûr Jâmâspji, in Bombay, as having lived for 160 years, and having been supreme high-priest for ninety years: he is also mentioned in the sixth book of the Dînkar*d*. He may, possibly, have been the Âtarô-pâ*d* mentioned in B. Yt. I, 7, but it is hazardous to identify an individual by a single name so common as Âtarô-pâ*d* used to be.

[4] Reading aê, 'one,' instead of hanâ, 'this' (see p. 218, note 3).

[5] Assuming that the word âînak has been omitted at the beginning of this section (see Chap. X, 1).

13. Nêryôsang[1] said thus: 'Thou deemest *it* most surprising that, of the renunciation *of sin* with energy, whatever may be its efficacy, they have been so *much* of the same[2] opinion, so that whenever they perform renunciation, however they perform *it*, and before whomever they perform *it*, whenever *a sin* is not even mentally originating with one[3] a renunciation should be performed by him; and when very many mortal sins (marg-argân) are committed by him, and he engages mentally in renunciation of every one separately, he is not on[4] the way to hell, owing to his renunciation; and if there be one of which he is not in renunciation the way to hell[5] is not closed to him, for he does not rely upon the beneficence (sûd) of Aûharmazd, and it is allowable to appoint a priestly retribution (rad tôgisn) to fully atone for it, and when thou appointest a priestly retribution for it, and dost not fully atone, it is allowable to inflict *it* justly and strongly (drûbô).'

14. When his sin is committed against (dên)

---

[1] This cannot be the learned Parsi translator of several Pahlavi texts into Sanskrit, who bore the same name, and is supposed to have lived in the fifteenth century. Being quoted in the Pahlavi Vendidad (see Chap. I, 4, note) he must have been one of the old commentators.

[2] K20 has hômanam, 'I am,' instead of ham, 'the same;' a mistake arising from reading am, 'I am,' for ham.

[3] This applies to all cases of merely imputed sin, such as those committed by children, which are imputed to the father, and for which he is spiritually, as well as temporally, responsible.

[4] Reading pavan, 'on,' instead of barâ, 'out of' (see p. 176. note 5).

[5] Most of this clause is omitted in K20 by mistake.

accusers[1] it will be necessary to act so that the head of the family (mîrak) shall not become evil-minded[2], and shall not divorce the wife from matrimony, and they shall not bring[3] *him* on unto him; before his accusers *he* is to be engaged in renunciation, and when not, *he* is to be engaged in renunciation *of the sin* before the high-priests (ra*d*ân), and it will become debts, and debt does not make a man wicked[4]; its effect is this, that in the future existence they may quite forsake him, and this becomes a great shame, and they disturb (kâ*v*ênd) his enjoyment. 15. *As to* the sin which *affects* the accusers, when the female *has* atoned for it, its stem (pâyak) is atoned for; some say that the stem (pâyakghîh) has no root; some say that *it is* just like a tree whose leaves wither away.

16. Sin *relating* to the soul[5], when *one* engages in renunciation, stays away *from* him; when it shall be fully atoned for *it* is well, and when he does not fully atone they will make him righteous by the three *nights'* (satûîh) punishment. 17. Kûshtanŏ-bûgêd[6] said that even that which *affects* accusers, when *one* engages in renunciation, stays away *from* him.

---

[1] Hamêmâlân (see § 1); the particular instance of hamêmâl sin here referred to is seduction.

[2] Reading dûsmînân instead of the unmeaning dûsmîyân of the MSS.

[3] Reading yâîtyûnã instead of the unmeaning yâîtam of the MSS.; ã being often written very much like m in Pahlavi.

[4] This clause about the hamêmâl sin becoming a debt, to be settled with the 'accuser,' either here or hereafter, is taken from Pahl. Vend. III, 151.

[5] That is, rûbânîk sin (see § 1, note).

[6] See Chap. I, 4, note.

18. Nôsâî Bûrz-Mitrô [1] spoke these three sayings, that is, 'Next-of-kin marriage will extirpate mortal sins (marg-argânân), and the *sacred* twigs when their ablution is *such* as *renders them* improper for firewood, and a man when his wife *becomes* pregnant by him.'

19. Whoever commits a sin against (dên) water, *and* kills a lizard, or other noxious water-creature, has atoned for it; also when thou atonest to (dên) fire for that *against* water it is proper [2], *and* when thou atonest to water for that *against* fire it is proper; some say that even a scorpion is proper *to be killed*. 20. And when a sin of one Tanâpûhar [3] is committed by him, and he shall consecrate a sacred cake (drôn), or shall accomplish a good work of one Tanâpûhar [4], it has atoned for it.

21. When he has committed a mortal *sin* (marg-argân), and engages mentally in renunciation, and the high-priest (rad) knows that, though he ought to give up his body, he *will* not give *it* up, it is allowable when he shall kill him; that is, because he relies upon the beneficence (sûd) of Aûharmazd. 22. Moreover, from the rule (mank) 'yazemna [5] kad nâ hakad' ('through being worshipped what then at

[1] See Chap. I, 4, note.

[2] A blank space is left for this verb in M6, indicating that that MS. was copied from an original already old and not very legible.

[3] See Chap. I, 1, 2.

[4] Consecrating a sacred cake is a Tanâpûhar good work (see Chap. XVI, 6). The theory of counterbalancing sins by good works of the same weight is here clearly enunciated.

[5] Written izimn in the MSS. This quotation appears to be, from some part of the Avesta, no longer extant, and being only the first words of the passage its exact meaning is very uncertain. The section, generally, seems to refer to the beneficence of Aûharmazd.

once,' &c.) it is evident, and it becomes his through *ceremonial* ablution of the hands; it amounts to a whole quarry (kânŏ) of good works, and the worship of God (yazisn-i yazdânŏ) is to be performed for him[1]. 23. Âtarô-pâd[2] son of Mâraspend said that it is always necessary to be more diligent in performing one's worship of God *at* the time that many mortal *sins* are committed; all sins *being* admissible into renunciation, when thou shalt atone by complete self-sacrifice (pûr-gân-dâdîhâ), *and* when *one* engages in renunciation of the sin from *its* root, he becomes *free* from the sin in renunciation of which sin he engaged; for Aûharmazd will not leave his own creatures unto the evil spirit, unless on the path of non-renunciation.

Chapter IX.

1. The greater Hâsar is one part in twelve parts of the day and night, and the lesser Hâsar is one part in eighteen parts[3].

[1] It seems that the execution of the sinner after repentance is here considered as furnishing him with a store of good works, so that it is allowable to perform such ceremonies for him, after death, as are usually performed for righteous men; the reason being given in § 23. The end of this section and beginning of the next are omitted in K20.

[2] Whether the prime minister of Shâpûr II, or the last editor of the Dînkard (see Bund. XXXIII, 3, 11), is not clear.

[3] The Hâsar is not only a measure of distance (see Bund. XXVI, 1), but also a measure of time (see Bund. XXV, 5). According to the text here the greater Hâsar must be two hours, and the lesser Hâsar (which is not mentioned in M6) must be one hour and twenty minutes. But Farh. Okh. (p. 43) says, 'dvadasang-hâthrem asti aghrem ayare, "of twelve Hâsars is the

2. The priest (âsrûk) who passes away in idolatry[1] (aûzdâyakîh) thou hast considered as desolate (vîrân)[2]; and there is a high-priest (dastôbar) who is of a different opinion, there is *one* who says *he is as* a non-Iranian (anâîrân) country[3]. 3. It is declared that, when a supreme high-priest (zaratûštrotûm) passes away in idolatry, an apostate (aharmôk) will be born in that dwelling, and a rumour of this calamity is uttered[4] by that supreme high-priest.

4. In order to be steadfast in the good religion it is to be discussed with priests *and* high-priests, and when *one* does not discuss it is proper that he do not teach it.

---

longest day;" the day and night in which is the longest day are twelve of the greatest Hâsars, eighteen of the medium, and twenty-four of the least;' according to which statement there are three kinds of Hâsar, that are respectively equivalent to two hours, one hour and twenty minutes, and one hour. As the longest day is said (Bund. XXV, 4) to be twice the length of the shortest day, and the greatest Hâsar is twice the length of the least one, it may be conjectured that the Hâsar varied with the length of the day, being a subdivision (one-eighth) of the time the sun was above the horizon; this would account for the greatest and least Hâsars, which are one-eighth of the longest and shortest days, respectively; but it does not account for the medium Hâsar, which is not a mean between the two extremes, but one-ninth (instead of one-eighth) of the mean day of twelve hours. If the Hâsar of distance were really a Parasang, as is sometimes stated, the connection between it and the Hâsar of time would be obvious, as the average Hâsar of one hour and twenty minutes is just the time requisite for walking a Parasang, which seems indeed to be stated in Farh. Okh. p. 42.

[1] Or it may be 'passes over into idolatry.'

[2] K20 has girân, 'grievous.'

[3] That is, he reads anâîrân instead of vîrân in the foregoing statement.

[4] Or, perhaps, 'this calamity is at once announced.'

5. The ceremonial worship (ya*z*i*s*n) which they perform in a fire-temple[1], when not *done* aright, does not reach unto the demons; *but* that which they perform *in* other places, when they do not perform *it* aright, does reach unto the demons; for there is no medium in worship, it reaches either unto the angels or unto the demons. 6. Of a man who has relinquished a *bad* habit, and through his good capabilities *engages* in renunciation *of sin*[2], the good work advances unto the future existence.

7. Any one who shall die in a vessel (ka*s*tîk) it is allowable, for fear of contamination (pa*d*vîshak), to throw into the water; some say that the water itself is the receptacle for the dead (khazânîh).

8. This, too, *is declared:* 'When in the dark it is not allowable to eat food; for the demons and fiends seize upon one-third of the wisdom and glory of him who eats food in the dark;' and it is declared by that passage (*g*înâk) which Aûharmazd spoke to Zaratû*s*t, thus: 'After the departure of the light let him not devour, with unwashed hands, the water and vegetables of Horvada*d* and Amerôda*d*[3]; for if after the departure of the light thou devourest, with unwashed hands, the water and vegetables of Horvada*d* and Amerôda*d*, the fiend seizes away from thee two-thirds of the existing original wisdom

[1] Literally, 'in the dwelling of fires.' The fire must always be sheltered from the sun's rays, and in a fire-temple it is kept in a vaulted cell, with a door and one or two windows opening into the larger closed chamber which surrounds it.

[2] K20 has, 'and it shall happen through his good capabilities.'

[3] The two archangels whose chief duties are the protection of water and plants, respectively (see Chap. XV, 5, 25–29, Bund. IX, 2).

which, when he seizes *it* away, is the glory and religion which are auspicious for thee that day, so that diligence becomes a vexation this day[1].'

9. In a passage of the fifth fargar*d* of the Pâzôn *Nask*[2] it is declared that *one* mentions these charac-

[1] This passage does not appear to be now extant in the Avesta.

[2] This was the sixth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkar*d*, which calls it Pâzî or Pâzag; but according to the Dînî-vagarkar*d* and the Rivâyats it was the seventh nask, called Pâgam. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkar*d*, see Haug's Essays, pp. 128, 129. The following is a short summary of the account of it given in the eighth book of the Dînkar*d* (that published in the Pahl.-Pâz. Glossary, pp. 184, 185, being taken from the fifteenth nask, whose contents were mixed up with those of the seventh through the abstraction of several folios from the Iranian MS. of the Dînkar*d* before M13, or any other copy, was written in India):—

The Pâzî (or Pâzag) is about the lawful slaughtering of animals in the ceremonial rites of fire and water at the season-festivals; also where, when, and how the festivals are to be celebrated, their advantages, and the duties of the officiating priests. The rotation of days, months, and years, summer and winter, the ten days at the end of the winter, when the guardian spirits visit the world, and the ceremonies to be then performed. The time for gathering medicinal plants. The retribution necessary for the various sins affecting the soul, the advantage of providing for such retribution, and the harm from not providing it. The thirty-three principal chiefs of the spiritual and worldly existences. The miracles of great good works, and the heinous sinfulness of apostasy. How far a wife can give away her husband's property, and when it is lawful for him to recover it. Whither winter flees when summer comes on, and where summer goes when winter comes on. The amount of disaster (vôighn) in one century, and the duration of everything connected with such disaster. The summer and winter months, the names of the twelve months, their meaning, and the angels they are devoted to; also the thirty days of the month, and the five Gâtha days at the end of the year, when the guardian spirits are to be reverenced.

The fifth fargar*d*, quoted in the text, was probably that portion of the Nask which described the duties of the officiating priests.

teristics of four kinds of worship of the celestial beings (yazdân):—one is that whose Avesta is correct, *but* the man is bad; the second is that whose Avesta is faulty (zîfânŏ)[1], *but* the man is good; the third is that whose Avesta is correct, *and* the man is good; *and* the fourth is that whose Avesta is faulty *and* the man is bad. 10. *That* whose Avesta is correct, *but* the man bad, the archangels will approach and will listen to, *but* do not accept; *that* whose Avesta is faulty, *but* the man good, the archangels *and* angels[2] will approach, *but* do not listen to, *and* will accept; *that* whose Avesta is correct, *and* the man good, the archangels *and* angels will approach, will come to, will listen to, and will accept; *that* whose Avesta is faulty, *and* the man bad, they do not approach, do not listen to, and do not accept.

11. In every ceremonial (yazisnŏ), at the beginning of the ceremony[3], and the beginning of the sacred-cake *consecration* (drôn)[4], the angels *and* guardian spirits of the righteous are to be invited to the ceremony. 12. When they invoke the angels they will accept the ceremony, and when they do

[1] K20 has hûzvân, 'tongue, speech,' for zîfân, 'faulty' (compare Pers. zîf, 'sin'), in all occurrences of the word.

[2] K20 omits from this word to 'will approach' in the next clause of the sentence.

[3] That is, shortly before beginning the regular recitation of the Yasna, the angels, in whose honour the ceremony is being performed, are invited to approach by reciting their proper Khshnûmans, or propitiatory formulas (see Chap. VII, 8, and Haug's Essays, p. 404).

[4] This begins with Yas. III, 1, and the spirits are to be invited by adding their proper Khshnûmans to those contained in Yas. III, 3–20 (see Haug's Essays, p. 408).

not invoke them, all the guardian spirits of the righteous are to be invoked at the beginning of 'staomi[1];' and when not, they watch until *the words* 'frashô-*k*arethrãm saoshya*n*tãm[2],' and when they shall invoke them there they will accept the ceremony; and when not, they will watch until *the words* 'vîspa*u* fravashayô ashaonãm yazamaidê[3],' *and* when they shall invoke *them* there they will accept[4] the ceremony; and when not, *they will watch* until *the words* 'tau*s*kâ yazamaidê[5];' and when they invoke them[6] *at* the threefold 'ashem vohû' and *the word* dâmanãm[7],' at the twice-*told* 'aokhtô-nâmanô[8],' the 'ashâ*d* ha*k*â[9],' *or* the 'yâtumanahê *g*asaiti[10],'

[1] This may be at the 'staomi' of Yas. XII, 6, which is recited before the Yasna is commenced; but K20 alters the meaning (by inserting the relative particle) into '*they* are to be invoked at "staomi," the beginning of "all the guardian spirits of the righteous" (Yas. XXVI, 1).'

[2] Yas. XXVI, 20.

[3] Yas. XXVI, 34.

[4] K20 has, 'shall not invoke,' and 'will not accept.'

[5] The concluding words of the yêxhê hâtãm formula, probably of that one at the end of Yas. XXVII, just preceding the recital of the Gâthas, up to which time the spirits wait, but, if not invoked, they are then supposed to ascend, away from the ceremony, as mentioned in the text.

[6] K20 has, 'when they do not invoke them.'

[7] Yas. VIII, 10; which is preceded by a thrice-told 'ashem vohû,' at which the officiating priest tastes the sacred cake, being the end of the Drôn ceremony (see Haug's Essays, pp. 404, 408).

[8] Yas. XXII, 33 (§§ 14–33 being recited twice). At this point the officiating priest brings out the mortar for pounding the Hôm twigs (see Haug's Essays, p. 405); Yas. XXII being called the beginning of the Hômâst in the Vistâsp Yast Sâdah.

[9] Yas. XXIV, 30, when the officiating priest turns the mortar right side upwards.

[10] Yas. VIII, 9, which is practically the same place as the threefold 'ashem vohû' before mentioned.

they will accept[1]; and when not, they go up the height of a spear (nîzak) and will remain. 13. And they speak thus: 'This man does not understand that it will be necessary even for him[2] to go from the world, and our prayer (apistân) is for reminding men; it is not *that* our uneasiness *arises* from this, that we are in want of their ceremony, but our uneasiness *arises* from this, that when they do not reverence and do not invoke us, when evil comes upon them it is not possible for us to keep *it* away.'

14. 'O creator! how much is the duration in life of him who is dead?' And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'As much as the wing of a fly, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! or as much as the hearing a wing unto a sightless *one*[3].'

Chapter X.

1. The rule[4] is this, that a *sacred thread*-girdle (kûstîk) be three finger-*breadths loose* transversely

[1] K20 has, 'they will not accept.'

[2] Literally, 'for me,' which seems to refer to the man, and not to the spirits.

[3] This appears to be the complete translation of the Avesta sentence partially quoted in Pahl. Vend. VIII, 64: 'yatha makhshyau perenem, yatha vâ perenahê,' &c. The last clause is doubtful; the reading adopted here is *k*and zak-i shinavâk-*i* par andarg avênâk, as nothing more satisfactory suggests itself; it might also be translated by 'as much as the sound of a wing in the invisible.'

[4] Reading âînak; Pâzand writers convert it into yak, which can, however, have the same meaning, though they evidently take the word to be Huz. khadûk, 'one,' which is written precisely like âînak in Pahlavi characters. Most of the miscellaneous statements, contained in the latter part of Sls., commence with this phrase.

(pavan targûn)[1], *as* is said in every teaching (*kâstak*)[2], and when it is less it is not proper.

2. The rule is this, that the sacred cake (drôn), set aside at the dedication *formula* (shnûmanê) *on the days devoted to* the guardian spirits[3], is to be used *at* the season-festivals, the Nônâbar[4], the three *nights' ceremony*[5], the Hôm-drôn, and other *rites of* the righteous guardian spirits; and when they shall not do *so*, according to some teachings, it is not proper.

3. In the exposition (*kâstak*) of the Nihâdûm Nask[6] it says that a man is going to commit rob-

[1] That is, round the waist (see Chap. IV, 1).

[2] That is, 'interpretation or exposition' (see Chap. I, 3, 4). K20 has, '*and* by every teaching it is proper.'

[3] These fravardîkân are, strictly speaking, the five supplementary days at the end of the Parsi year, but the last five days of the last month are usually added to them, so as to make a period of ten days at the end of the year, during which the guardian spirits of the departed are supposed to revisit their old homes, and for whom the sacred cake is set aside.

[4] The initiatory ceremony of a young priest (see Chap. XIII, 2).

[5] The ceremonies performed by the survivors for three nights after a death (see Chaps. VIII, 6, XVII, 3, 4).

[6] This was the fifteenth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard, which calls it Nikâdûm; but according to the Dînî-vagarkard and the Rivâyats it was the sixteenth nask, called Niyârum. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkard, see Haug's Essays, p. 132. The following is a brief summary of the account of it given in the eighth book of the Dînkard, where it occupies twenty-five quarto pages of that work:—

The beginning of the law (dâd) is the Nîkâdûm of thirty fargards. The section Patkâr-radistân ('the arbitrator's code') is about umpires and arbitration, contracts by words of four kinds and by signs of six kinds; and twelve sorts of arbitrators are described in four sub-sections, according as they decide by hearing or seeing, and with regard to women and children, foreigners and

bery, *and* a wall falls in upon him, *it is* his destroyer; when a man strikes at him *he is* his adversary, *and* both are in sinfulness; when he is going to perform the worship of God (yazisnŏ-i yazdânŏ) both of them are in innocence.

4. The rule is this, that when a woman becomes pregnant, as long as it is possible, the fire is to be maintained most carefully in the dwelling, because it is declared in the Spend *Nask*[1] that *towards*

those worthy of death. The second section, Zadamistân ('the assault code'), is a treatise on assault and the consequences of assault, pain, blood, and unconsciousness; on blows and conflicts, man with man, women with women, and child with child, with their proper penalties; also the murder of slaves and children. The third section, Rêshistân ('the wound code'), is a treatise on various kinds of wounds and their characteristics. The fourth section, Hamêmâlistân ('the accuser's code'), is a treatise on accusation and false accusation of various specified crimes, on lying and slander, the care of pregnant women, impenitence and various offences against priests and disciples, remitting penalties, abetting and assisting criminals, mediation, punishment of children, smiting foreigners, murder, medical treatment, and many other things (see Pahl.-Pâz. Glossary, p. 184, where they are erroneously ascribed to the Pâzôn Nask, owing to the defective text of the MS. M13). The fifth section contained twenty-four treatises on miscellaneous subjects connected with crime and sin (see Pahl.-Pâz. Glossary, pp. 184, 185).

The passage mentioned in the text cannot be recognised in any of the details supplied by the Dînkard.

[1] This was the thirteenth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to all authorities, but is called Sfend in the Rivâyats. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkard, see Haug's Essays, pp. 131, 132. The following is a summary of the short account of it given in the eighth book of the Dînkard:—

The Spend is a treatise on the origin and combination of the existence, guardian spirit, and glory of Zaratûst; on his generation and birth; on the coming of the two spirits, the good one to sustain, and the bad one to destroy him, and the victory of the good

Dûkdâv[1], the mother of Zaratûśt, when she was pregnant with Zaratûśt, *for* three nights, every night a leader (khûdâ)[2] with a hundred and fifty[3] demons rushed for the destruction of Zaratûśt, *but* owing to the existence of the fire in the dwelling they knew no means of accomplishing *it*.

5. The rule is this, that they have a tank (môg) for the disciples, when they are going to perform the worship of God, *and* are sprinkling the stone *seat* (magôk)[4]; and lest they should make a wet *place* by that sprinkling through taking *water* out from it, it is to be done sitting; for in the Vendidad[5] the high-priests *have* taught, about making

---

spirit; on his going, at thirty years of age, to confer with Aûharmazd, and his seven conferences in ten years; on the seven questions he proposed to the archangels on those occasions; on the conveyance of the omniscient wisdom into him, showing him heaven and hell, and the intermediate place of those 'ever-stationary,' the account taken of sin and good works, the future existence, and the fate of the religion on earth till the renovation of the universe, with the coming of his future sons, the last three apostles.

[1] The Pâz. Dughdâ of Bund. XXXII, 10 would indicate Pahl. Dûkdân, but the Dînkard has Dûkdâûbŏ and Dûkdâûbag (pointing to Av. Dughdhavan), and the Persian forms are Dughdû and Dughdavîh. Here the name is Dûkdâvŏ, which is transposed into Dûdkâv in Chap. XII, 11; it must have meant either 'milk-maid' or 'suckler' originally.

[2] K20 has sêdâ, 'a demon,' and in Chap. XII, 11, where this section is repeated, the word can be read either sêdâ, 'a demon,' or shâh, 'a king or ruler;' of course 'an arch-fiend' is meant.

[3] M6 appears to have 'sixty,' instead of 'fifty,' but see Chap. XII, 11.

[4] Or magh, on which they squat in the purification ceremony (see B. Yt. II, 36).

[5] Referring probably to Pahl. Vend. XVIII, 98; the ground is not to be wetted further than the length of the fore-part of the foot beyond the toes, that is, not more than a hand's breadth; this

water *when standing* on foot[1], that the measure it refers to applies to everything else, not even of a like origin; by him who makes water the Avesta[2] for making water is to be uttered, *and* then *it* is the root of a Tanâpûhar sin[3] for *him*, and when he does not utter *it he* is more grievously sinful.

6. The rule is this, that to recite the Gâthas over those passed away is not to be considered as beneficial, since it is not proper to recite the three Hâs[4] which are the beginning of the Aûstûvat Gâtha whenever *one is* on the road; whenever *one* recites *them* over a man in the house *they are* healing.

7. The rule is this, that in the night wine and aromatic herbs (sparam) and anything like food are not to be cast away towards the north quarter, because a fiend[5] *will* become pregnant; and when *one* casts *them* away one Yathâ-ahû-vairyô[6] is to be uttered.

---

measure is here extended to washing water, hence the necessity of squatting during such ablutions.

[1] This is a sin which is usually classed with 'running about uncovered' and 'walking with one boot' (see Chap. IV, 8, note).

[2] This Avesta is prescribed in Vend. XVIII, 97, and is still in constant use; it consists of three Ashem-vohûs (see Bund. XX, 2), two Humatanâms (Yas. XXXV, 4–6), three Hukhshathrôtemâis (Yas. XXXV, 13–15), four Ahunavars (see Bund. I, 21), and one Yênhê-hâtâm (see B.Yt. II, 64).

[3] See Chap. I, 1, 2.

[4] The three chapters (Yas. XLII–XLIV) which begin the Ustavaiti Gâtha (Yas. XLII–XLV).

[5] A drûg, or fiend, is usually considered as a female demon (see Vend. XVIII, 70–77); and the demons are supposed to come from the north, where they congregate on the summit of Arezûr, at the gates of hell (see Vend. XIX, 1, 140, 142, Bund. XII, 8).

[6] See Bund. I, 21. This statement is repeated in Chap. XII, 18.

8. The rule is this, that reverential *should be* the abstinence from unlawfully slaughtering of *any* species of animals; for in the Stûdgar *Nask*[1] it is said, concerning those who *have* unlawfully slaughtered animals, the punishment is such that *each* hair of those animals becomes like a sharp dagger (têkh), and he who is unlawfully a slaughterer is slain. 9. Of animals, the slaughtering of the lamb, the goat (vahîk), the ploughing ox, the war-horse, the hare, the bat (*k*îharâ*z*), the cock or bird of Vohûman, and the magpie (kâskînak) bird, and of birds *that of* the kite, eagle (hûmâî), and swallow is most to be abstained from.

10. A pregnant woman who passes away is not to be carried away by less than four men[2], who are at it constantly with united strength; for *with* other corpses, after a dog's gaze, when they carry *them* along by two men with united strength, they do not become polluted; *but* for a pregnant woman two dogs are necessary, to whose united power *she* is to be exposed; *and* they carry *her* along by four men with united strength, *and* they do not become polluted; *but* when they carry *her* along by two men *they* are to be washed with ceremony (pîsak)[3].

11. The rule is this, that when they beg forgiveness for a person (mar*d*ûm) who *has* passed away,

[1] See B.Yt. I, 1. The passage here referred to is probably one in the middle of the seventeenth fargar*d* of this Nask, which is mentioned as follows, in the ninth book of the Dînkar*d*: 'And this too, namely, those who unlawfully slay sheep and cattle, which diminishes their life and glory.'

[2] This is the usual custom, while that mentioned in Chap. II, 6 is the exceptional case, mentioned at the end of this section, which necessitates extraordinary purification.

[3] That is, with the Bareshnûm ceremony (see Chap. II, 6).

such *a prayer* is more significant when *one* says thus: 'Whenever a trespass (vinâs) of mine *has* occurred against him, you will take account *of it along* with those of his *which have* occurred against me, and the trespasses *have* passed away one through the other; *any* further trespasses of his *which have* occurred against me are then made a righteous gift by me[1].'

12. The rule is this, that *one* should not walk without boots[2]; and his advantage therefrom is even this, that when a boot (mûgak) is on *his* foot, *and* he puts the foot upon dead matter, and does not disturb the dead matter, he does not become polluted; when a boot is not on *his* foot, and he puts the foot upon dead matter, and does not disturb *it*, *he is polluted*[3], except when he knows for certain (aêvar) that a dog *has* seen *it*, or *if* not it is to be considered *as* not seen by a dog[4].

13. The rule is this, as revealed *in* the Dûbâsrûgêd *Nask*[5], where a day in the year is indicated,

[1] That is, I pardon them in charity.

[2] Or, perhaps, 'without stockings,' avîmûgak; this seems to be something different from the sin of aê-mûk-dûbârisnîh, 'running in one boot' (see Chap. IV, 12).

[3] Without these words, which do not exist in the MSS., the sentence seems to have no clear meaning.

[4] And, therefore, still containing the Nasûs, or fiend of corruption, who will enter into any one who merely touches the dead matter, without disturbing it, and can be driven out only by the tedious and troublesome Bareshnûm ceremony.

[5] This was the sixteenth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard, which calls it Dûbâsrûgd or Dûbâsrûd; but according to the Dînî-vagarkard, which calls it Dvâsrûzd, and the Rivâyats, which call it Dvâsrûgad, Dvâsrûngad, or Dvâsrûb, it was the eighteenth nask. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkard, see Haug's Essays, pp. 132, 133. The following is a brief summary of the account of it given

that the *sacred thread*-girdle of every one who shall be one day more than fourteen years *and* three months *old* is to be tied on—*it is* better so than when he remains unto fifteen years, *and then* ties on the girdle—who is more cared for, that way, than a five-months' child[1], on whom they should put *it* in the womb of *its* mother.

14. The rule is this, that when *one* retains a prayer *inwardly*[2], *and* wind shall come *from* below, *or* wind shall come from the mouth, it is all one[3].

---

in the eighth book of the Dînkard, which occupies ten quarto pages of that work:—

Of the first eighteen sections of the Dûbâsrûgd the first is a treatise on thieves, their arrest, imprisonment, and punishment, with the various kinds of robbery; the second section is about the irresponsibility of a father for the crimes of a grown-up son, and of a husband for those of a separated wife, about the time for instructing children, and when they first become responsible for sin, the crime of giving weapons to women, children, and foreigners, about warriors plundering, the various kinds of judges and their duties, and offences against accusers. Of the twelve next sections one, called Pasûs-hôrvistân ('the shepherd's dog code'), is about shepherd's dogs, their duties and rights. Of the last thirty-five sections the first, called Stôristân ('the beast of burden code'), is about the sin, affecting the soul, of unlawfully beating and wounding cattle and beasts of burden, birds and fish; the second section, Argistân ('the value code'), is a treatise on the value of animate and inanimate objects; the third section, Aratêstâristân ('the warrior code'), is a treatise on warriors, arms, armies, generals, battles, plunder, &c.; the fourth section is about warm baths, fires, clothing, winter stores, reaping fodder and corn, &c.

The passage mentioned in the text was probably in that part of the second section which referred to the responsibility of children. The words from 'as revealed' to 'indicated' are omitted in K20.

[1] K20 has 'nine-months' child.'

[2] See Chap. III, 6.

[3] Literally, 'both are one;' that is, in either case the spell of the vâg or prayer is broken.

15. Also this, that ten women are necessary for affording assistance *to* a woman who is in labour: five women for directing the making of the cradle (gavârak), one woman should be opposite the left shoulder, and one to hold the right shoulder, one woman to throw a hand on her neck, one woman to hold her waist, and one woman, when the infant shall be born, to take *it* up and cut the navel cord, and to make the fire blaze[1]. 16. Three days and three nights no one is to pass between the fire and the child, nor to show the child to a sinful man *or* woman; *they are* to triturate a little sulphur in the sap (mayâ) of a plant, *and* to smear it over the child; *and* the first food to give *it* is Hôm-juice (parâhôm) and aloes (shapyâr).

17. The rule is this, that in case any one shall beat an innocent man, until the pain shall cease it becomes every day the root of a Tanâpûhar sin[2] for him.

18. The rule is this, that when in a country they trust a false judge, and keep *him* among *their* superiors, owing to the sin and breach of faith which that judge commits, the clouds *and* rain, in that country, are deficient, a portion (bavan) of the deliciousness, fatness, wholesomeness, and milk of the cattle and goats diminishes[3], and many children become destroyed in the mother's womb.

19. The rule is this, that a man, when he does not wed a wife, does not become worthy of death; *but* when a woman does not wed a husband it

[1] Literally, 'make the fire high.'

[2] See Chap. I, 1, 2.

[3] Most of these evils are also ascribed (see B. Yt. II, 41–43) to neglect of the precautions prescribed with regard to hair-cuttings.

amounts to *a sin* worthy of death; because *for* a woman *there* is no offspring except by intercourse with men, and no lineage proceeds from her; *but for* a man without a wife, when he shall recite the Avesta, as it is mentioned in the Vendidad[1], *there may be* a lineage which proceeds onwards *to* the future existence.

20. The rule is this, that a toothpick is to be cut out clear of bark (pôst pâk)[2], for the high-priests *have* taught that when one's toothpick—made for the mouth with the bark—shall fall, and when a pregnant woman puts a foot upon it, *she* is apprehensive about *its* being dead matter[3].

21. The rule is this, that in accepting the child of a handmaid (*k*akar)[4] discrimination is to be exercised; for in the fourteenth *of the* Nask Hûspâram[5]

[1] This reference is probably to the circumstances detailed in Vend. XVIII, 99–112, but the Pahlavi commentary on §§ 111, 112 of that passage is missing in all MSS. The Avesta to be recited in such cases is precisely the same as that detailed in a note on § 5.

[2] This translation is in accordance with the seventeenth chapter of the prose Sad-dar Bûndahi*s*, or 'Bûndahi*s* of a hundred chapters,' a Pâzand work of later times; but the text here might be translated 'cut out of clean skin,' and in Chap. XII, 13, where the statement is repeated, the word used is also ambiguous.

[3] The Sad-dar Bûndahi*s* says, 'the fear arises that the infant may come to harm.' This section and the three which follow are repeated in Chap. XII, 13–16.

[4] This might mean a *k*akar, or 'serving' wife (see Bund. XXXII, 6), but the further details given in Chap. XII, 14, where this statement is repeated, make it more probable that a concubine is meant.

[5] As this was the seventeenth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to all authorities, it is probable that the word 'fourteenth,' in the text here, refers to some particular chapter or fargar*d*, most likely to the last group of fourteen

the high-priests *have* taught thus: 'My son is suitable also as thy son, *but* my daughter is not suitable also as thy daughter.'

---

sections, mentioned below, in the summary of its contents; and this is confirmed by another reference in Chap. XII, 7. This nask is called Aspâram in the Rivâyats, and Aspârûm in the Dînî-vagarkard; for its contents, as given by the latter, see Haug's Essays, p. 133. The following is a brief summary of the account of it given in the eighth book of the Dînkard, where it occupies sixteen quarto pages of that work :—

Of the first thirty sections of the Hûspâram, one is the Aêrpatistân ('the priest's code'), a treatise on priestly studies, priests, disciples, and their five dispositions. One section is the Nîrangistân ('religious formula code'), a treatise on the formulas of worship, the Avesta to be recited by the officiating priests twice, thrice, and four times, the five periods of the day and their proper ceremonies, the season-festivals, the sacred girdle and shirt, cutting the sacred twigs, reverencing water, the families of Zaratûst, Hvôv, and Vistâsp, &c. One section is the Gôharîkistân ('quality code'), a treatise on nobility and superiority, buying and selling, cattle, slaves, servants, and other property, houses where men or dogs have been sick, dealings with foreigners, &c. And other sections are about appropriating the property of others, obedient and disobedient wives, foreign wives, advantages of male and female offspring, breeding of cattle, treatment of labourers and children, the evil eye, judges, the origin and cultivation of corn, the degrees of crime and punishment, &c. Of the next twenty sections, one is about the treatment of furious cattle and mad dogs, and the damage they may do. One section on the means of accumulating wealth, the giving of sons and daughters in marriage, the goodness of charity and evil of waste, the five best actions and the five worst, unlawful felling of trees, the sin of burying the dead, &c. And one section on the begetting, birth, and treatment of children. Of the last fourteen sections, one is a treatise, in six fargards, on the ownership of property and disputes about it, on one's own family, acquiring wife and children, adoption, &c. And a section of seven fargards, at the end, is a treatise on the sufferings of men, women, children, and dogs, on the connection of owner and herds, priest and disciple, on various offences and sins, spiritual and worldly healing, physic and physicians, astrology,

22. The rule is this, that *one* perseveres much in the begetting of offspring, for the acquisition of abundance of good works at once; because, in the Nihâdûm Nask[1], the high-priests *have* taught that the duty and good works which a son performs are as much the father's as though they had been done by his own hand; and in the Dâmdâd *Nask*[2] it is revealed thus: 'Likewise, too, the good works, *in* like measure, which come into the father's possession.'

23. The rule is this, that they shall give to the worthy as much of anything as is proper for eating *and* accumulating; because in the Nihâdûm *Nask*[3] the high-priests *have* taught thus: 'A man gives a hungry *one* bread, *and it is* too much, yet all the good works, which he shall perform through that superabundance, become as much his *who gave it* as though they had been done by his own hand.'

24. The rule is this, where *one* lies down, in circumstances of propriety and innocence, one Ashemvohû is to be uttered[4], and *in* like manner when he

---

the proper feeding of cattle, horses, sheep, goats, and pigs, the duty of a frontier governor during a foreign invasion, &c.

The passage mentioned in the text was probably in that portion of the last group of fourteen sections which treated of wives, children, and adoption.

[1] See § 3; the passage mentioned here cannot be traced in the account of this Nask given in the Dînkard.

[2] See SZS. IX, 1. The passage here quoted cannot be traced in any of the short accounts of the contents of this Nask. This section is repeated, with a few verbal alterations, in Chap. XII, 15.

[3] See § 3; the passage here quoted is also not to be traced in the account of this Nask given in the Dînkard. This section is repeated, with a few verbal alterations, in Chap. XII, 16.

[4] Compare Chap. IV, 14, where much the same is stated as what occurs in this section.

gets up well; when he does so, every single drawing of the breath (vayô) becomes a good work of three Srôshô-*k*aranâms, that is, a weight of ten dirhams of the full weight of four mads[1].

25. The rule is this, that when an action or an opinion comes forward, and *one* does not know whether *it be* a sin or a good work, when possible it is to be abandoned *and* not executed by him; as it says in the Sakâ*d*ûm *Nask*[2] that Zaratûst *has*

[1] Reading i mad-4, instead of va maz-4; the word mad (see Pahl.-Pâz. Glossary, p. 21) being Huz. for the dâng or quarter-dirham. The amount of the Srôshô-*k*aranâm, as deduced from this statement, differs from those given in Chaps. XI, 2, XVI, 5, and must be awkwardly fractional, unless the sentence be altered into 10 *g*ûgan sang nêm zî*s* pûr sang yehevûnê*d*, 'a weight of ten dirhams *and* a half, which is its full weight;' in which case one Srôshô-*k*aranâm would be $3\frac{1}{2}$ dirhams, as in Chap. XVI, 5.

[2] This was the eighteenth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkar*d*; but according to the Dînî-vagarkar*d* and the Rivâyats it was the nineteenth nask, called Askârûm or Askâram. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkar*d*, see Haug's Essays, p. 133. The following is a brief summary of the account of it given in the eighth book of the Dînkar*d*, where it occupies twenty quarto pages of that work:—

Of the first thirty sections of the Sakâ*d*ûm one is a treatise on the necessity of obedience and understanding the laws, on newborn infants and their proper treatment, on the care of fire and sharp-pointed things, on race-courses, the use of water, salt and sweet, warm and cold, flowing and stagnant, &c. One section is the Ha*k*i*d*akânistân ('annoyances code'), a treatise on irritating words and ill-treatment of living creatures and trees, the finding of buried treasure at various depths and in different places, &c. And one section is the Zîyânakistân ('damage code'), a treatise on damage to animate and inanimate objects. Of the last twenty-two sections, one is the Vakhshistân ('increase code'), a treatise on the progress of growth, breeding of cattle and other animals, pleadings regarding debts, growth of corn, &c. One section is the Varistân ('ordeal code'), a treatise on the detection of witchcraft by ordeal, by heat and cold, &c. One section on asking assistance

not provided about everything whatever, but three times *it has been done* by Zaratûst about this duty, that is, so that the Avesta *and* Zand, when *one has* learned it thoroughly by heart[1], is for recitation, *and* is not to be mumbled[2] (*gûyisnŏ*), for in mumbling (*gûdanŏ*) the parts of the Ahunavar[3] are more chattering[4]. 26. As it says in the Bagh *Nask*[5]

and rewarding it, on the unjust judge and the sagacious one, on daughters given in marriage by mothers and brothers, on the disobedient son, &c. And one section on the spirits of the earthly existences, the merit of killing noxious water-creatures, the animal world proceeding from the primeval ox, the evil spirit not to be worshipped, and much other advice.

The passage mentioned in the text appears to have been in the first section of this Nask, as the Dînkard says it treated, among other matters, 'about a man's examining an action before doing it, *and* when he does not know whether *it be* a sin or a good work, when possible, *he* is to set it aside *and* not to do *it*.' But nothing is said there about Zaratûst, and what is said here seems to have very little connection with the 'rule' laid down in this section.

[1] Literally, 'made it quite easy.'

[2] Literally, 'not to be devoured or gnawed.'

[3] The formula commencing with the words Yathâ ahû vairyô (see Bund. I, 21); its parts or bagha are the phrases into which it may be divided (see Yas. XIX, 4, 6, 9, 12).

[4] Reading drâîtar, 'more clamourous or chattering;' but the word is ambiguous, as it may be darâktar, 'more rending,' or girâîtar, 'more weighty, more threatening,' &c.

[5] M6 has Bak. This was the third nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard, which calls it Bakô; but according to the Dînî-vagarkard and the Rivâyats it was the fourth nask. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkard, see Haug's Essays, p. 127. In the Dînkard, besides a very brief account of it, in the eighth book, which states that it was a treatise on the recitation of the revealed texts, there is, in the ninth book, a long description of the contents of each of its twenty-two fargards, occupying fifty quarto pages in the MSS. of the Dînkard. From this it appears that the passage quoted in our text probably occurred in the first

thus: 'Whoever shall mutter, O Zaratûśt! my allotment of the Ahunavar[1]—that is, shall softly take *it inwardly—and* shall let *it* escape[2] again—that is, shall utter *it aloud*—so much as a half, or one-third, or one-fourth, or one-fifth, his soul will I shield, I who am Aûharmazd, from the best existence—that is, I *will* keep it away—by so much of an interval as the width of this earth.'

27. The rule is this, that *one* is to proceed with great deliberation when he does not know whether *it be* a sin or a good work, that is, it is not to be done.

28. The rule is this, that an opinion (andâžak) of anything is to be formed through consultation

---

fargarḍ. It also occurs, in nearly the same words, in Pahl. Yas. XIX, 12–15, and as Yas. XIX is called 'the beginning of the Bakân' in some MSS., it is possible that the three Hâs (Yas. XIX–XXI) which relate to the three short Avesta formulas are really the first three farĝarḍs of the Bagh Nask, which are said to have treated of the same subjects.

[1] The text is corrupted into min zak-i li, Zaratûśt! bêśtârîh-i min Ahunavar drûgist, which might be translated, in connection with the following phrase, thus: 'Of my vexation, O Zaratûśt! from the Ahunavar, the most fiendish is that *one* shall softly take *it*,' &c. But very slight alterations of the Pahlavi letters (in accordance with Pahl. Yas. XIX, 12) convert min into mûn, bêśtârîh into bâkhtârîh, and drûgist into drenĝâḍ. Instead of 'allotment of the Ahunavar' we might read 'predestination, or providence, from the Ahunavar;' because the Pahlavi translator, by using the word bâkhtârîh or bakhtârîh, appears to have understood the Av. bagha in its sense of 'divinity, providence,' rather than in that of 'part, portion.'

[2] Reading râ nînêḍ or rahôînêḍ. The Pahlavi translator seems to think the sin consists in breaking the spell of the vâĝ or inward prayer (see Chap. III, 6) by speaking part of it aloud; but the original Avesta of this passage attributes the sin to obscuring the meaning by imperfect recitation.

with the good; even so it is revealed in the *Kîdrast Nask*[1] that Spendarmad spoke to Mânûskihar thus: 'Even the swiftest horse requires the whip (tâzâ-

[1] This was the twelfth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard, which calls it *Kîdrastô* or *Kîdrôstô*; but according to the Dînî-vagarkard and the Rivâyats it was the fourteenth nask called *Girast*. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkard, see Haug's Essays, p. 131. The following is a summary of the short account of it given in the eighth book of the Dînkard:—

The *Kîdrôstô* is a treatise on the race of man; how Aûharmazd produced the first man, Gâyômard, how the first pair, Mashya and Mashyôî, arose, with their progeny, till the region of Khvanîras was full, when they supplied the six surrounding regions, till they filled and cultivated the whole world. The Pêsdâdian dynasty of Hôshâng, Tâkhmôrupô, and Yim, the evil reign of Dahâk, descended from Tâz, the brother of Hôshâng and father of the Arabs, then Frêdûn who divided Khvanîras between his three sons, Salm, Tûg, and Aîrîk, who married the daughters of Pâtsrôbô (compare Pahl. Vend. XX, 4) king of the Arabs, then Mânûskihar, descendant (nâpô) of Aîrîk, the penal reign of Frâsîyâv ruler of Tûrân, then Aûzôbô the Tûmâspian, descendant of Mânûskihar, then Kai-Kavâd and the penal reign of Karsâspô. The Kayânian dynasty of Kâî-Us, Kaî-Khûsrôb son of Sîyâvakhsh, with many tales of the specially famous races of Iran, Tûrân, and Salmân, even to the reigns of Kaî-Lôharâsp and Kaî-Vistâsp. The apostle Zaratûst, and the progress of time and events from the reign of Frêdûn till Zaratûst's conference with Aûharmazd. The race of Mânûskihar, Nôdar, and others. Avarethrabau's (see Fravardîn Yt. 106) father, Âtarô-pâd son of Mâraspend. On future events and the reign of the renovation of the universe; the origin of the knowledge of occupation, and the care and industry of the period; the great acquaintance of mankind with the putting aside of injury from the adversary, the preservation of the body, and the deliverance of the soul, both before and after the time of Zaratûst.

As Mânûskihar is several times mentioned there are several places in this Nask where the statement, quoted in the text as a saying of Spendarmad, the female archangel who has special charge of the earth (see Chap. XV, 5, 20–24, and Bund. I, 26), may have occurred.

nak), the sharpest steel knife requires the whetstone (afsân), and the wisest man requires counsel (ham-pûrsîh).'

29. The rule is this, that when *one* laughs outright (barâ khandêd) the Avesta and Zand are not to be mumbled, for the wisdom of Aûharmazd is omniscient, *and* good works are a great exercise of liberality, but an extreme abstinence from producing irritation (hangîdâr-dahîsnîh); because in the Ratûstâîtîh *Nask*[1] many harsh things are said about the severe punishment of producers of irritation, in the spiritual *existence.*

30. The rule is this, that *as* there *may* be *some* even of those of the good religion *who*, through unacquaintance with the religion, when a female *fowl* crows in the manner of a cock, will kill the

[1] This was the seventh nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard, which calls it Ratûstâîtî; but according to the Dînî-vagarkard and the Rivâyats it was the eighth nask called Ratustâî. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkard, see Haug's Essays, p. 129. The following is a summary of the short account of it given in the eighth book of the Dînkard:—

The Ratûstâîtî is a treatise on indispensable religious practices, the reason of the worthiness and superexcellence in a purifying priest, and how to distinguish worthiness and superexcellence from unworthiness, in the priesthood of each of the seven regions of the earth; on the indication and manifestation of an assemblage of the archangels, the formulas and means to be employed in reverencing the angels, the position and duties of the two officiating priests in the ceremonies, and all the business of the orderers of ceremonies, with their various duties; on the greatness and voluntariness of good works, the kinds of voluntariness, and the proximity of Aûharmazd to the thoughts, words, and deeds of the material world.

It is uncertain under which of these heads the passage mentioned in the text may have occurred.

fowl, so those of the primitive faith[1] *have* said that there *may* be mischief (vinâstârîh) from wizards in that dwelling, *which* the cock is incapable of keeping away, and the female *fowl* makes that noise for the assistance of the cock[2], especially when the bringing of another cock into that dwelling is necessary.

31. The rule is this, that when *one* sees a hedgehog, then *along* with it[3] a place in the plain, free from danger, is to be preserved; for in the Vendidad[4] the high-priests *have* taught that it is when the hedgehog every day voids urine into an ant's nest that a thousand ants will die.

32. The rule is this, that in the Vendidad[5] seven kinds of things are mentioned, *and* when they are the cause of a man's death, until the forthcoming period *of the day* (gâs-i levîn) comes on, contami-

[1] See Chap. I, 3.

[2] The cock is considered to be an opponent of demons and wizards (see Bund. XIX, 33), and to warn men against the seductions of the demoness of lethargy (see Vend. XVIII, 33–42, 52).

[3] Assuming that levatman val means levatman valman, but the reading 'he takes *it* back to (lakhvâr val) the plain,' which occurs in the repetition of this section in Chap. XII, 20, seems preferable.

[4] The details which follow are to be found in Bund. XIX, 28, but they appear to be no longer extant in the Pahlavi Vendidad; though the hedgehog is called 'the slayer of the thousands of the evil spirit,' in Vend. XIII, 5, of which passage the statement in our text seems to be an illustration. The ant is considered noxious.

[5] Vend. VII, 5, 6, where, however, eight modes of death are mentioned, which delay the arrival of the Nasûs, or fiend of corruption, till the next period of the day; these are when the person has been killed by a dog, a wolf, a wizard, anxiety, falling into a pit, the hand of man as sentenced by law, illegal violence, or strangulation. In all other cases it is supposed that the fiend of corruption enters the corpse immediately after death (see Vend. VII, 2–4).

nation (nisrûst)[1] does not rush upon him; and for this reason, this, too, is well *for* the good, that is, to show a dog rightly again a previous corpse in the forthcoming period *of the day*[2].

33. The rule is this, that by those who attend to a corpse among the pure *it* is then to be shown *to* a dog very observant of the corpse; for when even a thousand persons shall carry away a corpse which a dog *has* not seen, they are all polluted[3].

34. The rule is this, that meat, when there is stench or decomposition not even originating with *it*, is not to be prayed *over*[4]; *and* the sacred cake (drôn) and butter (gâûs-dâk) which are hairy are also not to be prayed over[5].

35. A woman is fit for priestly duty (zôtîh) among women[6], and when she is consecrating[7] the sacred

---

[1] See Bund. XXVIII, 29.

[2] In order that there may be no risk of the fiend of corruption having entered the corpse after it was first exhibited to a dog.

[3] This statement has been already made in Chap. II, 65.

[4] That is, it is not to be used in any religious ceremony. Small pieces of meat are consecrated, along with the sacred cakes, in the Drôn and Âfrîngân ceremonies at certain festivals.

[5] So in K20; but M6 has, 'the sacred cake they present, even that is not to be prayed over.' Although M6 is more carefully written than K20, it seems to have been copied from an original which was hardly legible in some places, of which this is one. The presence of a hair in the cake or butter would render it useless for religious purposes.

[6] But only for some of the minor priestly offices, such as consecrating the sacred cake. According to Avesta passages, quoted in the Nîrangistân, any man who is not a Tanâpûhar sinner can perform certain priestly duties for virtuous men, and any woman who is not feeble-minded (kasu-khrathwa) can perform them for children.

[7] M6 has, 'when she does not consecrate.'

cake (drôn), and one Ashem-vohû[1] is uttered by her, she puts the *sacred* twigs (baresôm) back on the twig-stand, brings *them* away, and the utterance of another one is good; when she says it is not expedient to do *it* with attention before a meal, it is proper. 36. The sacred cake of a disreputable woman is not to be consecrated, but is to be rendered ineligible (avigînakŏ).

37. When *one* places a thing before the fire observantly, and does not see the splendour itself, 'tava âthrô[2]' is not to be said.

38. At night, when[3] *one* lies down, the hands are to be thoroughly washed. 39. That which comes from a menstruous woman to any one, or to anything, is all to be thoroughly washed with bull's urine (gômêz) and water[4].

[40. The rule is this, as Âtarô-pâd *son of* Mâraspend[5] said when every one passed away:—'The mouth-veil[6] and also the clothing are to be well

[1] See Bund. XX, 2; it is rather doubtful whether we should read 'one' or 'two.'

[2] These Avesta words, meaning 'for thee, the fire,' are used when presenting anything to the fire, such as firewood and incense (see Yas. VII, 3, XXII, 10, 22, &c.)

[3] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'who' (see Bund. I, 7, note).

[4] Here ends the original Shâyast lâ-shâyast. § 40 is found only in M6, and is evidently a later addition to that MS. by another hand. Then follows the Farhang-i Oîm-khadûk, both in M6 and K20; this is an old Avesta-Pahlavi Glossary which has no connection with Sls., although it may be of the same age, as it quotes many Avesta sentences which are no longer extant elsewhere, and amongst others passages from the Nihâdûm Nask (see Sls. X, 3) and the commentary of Afarg (see Sls. I, 3).

[5] See Bund. XXXIII, 3.

[6] The padâm (Av. paitidâna, Pâz. penôm) 'consists of two

set *apart* from the gifts (dâsarân), so that his soul may become easier.' Completed in peace and pleasure.]

PART II.—*A Supplementary Treatise*[1].

CHAPTER XI.

1. The degrees of sin are these[2], such *as* a Farmân, Srôshô-*k*aranâm, Âgerept, Aîvîrist, Aredûs, Khôr, Bâzâî, Yât, and Tanâpûhar, and I *will* mention each of them a second time. 2. A Farmân is the weight of three dirhams of four mads[3]; a

pieces of white cotton cloth, hanging loosely from the bridge of the nose to at least two inches below the mouth, and tied with two strings at the back of the head. It must be worn by a priest whenever he approaches the sacred fire, so as to prevent his breath from contaminating the fire. On certain occasions a layman has to use a substitute for the penôm by screening his mouth and nose with a portion of his muslin shirt.' (Haug's Essays, p. 243, note 1; see also Pahl. Vend. XVIII, 1–4.)

[1] This second part is evidently by another writer, for he not only repeats several passages (Chaps. XI, 1, 2, XII, 11, 13–16, 18, 20), which are given in the first part, but he also writes generally in a less simple style. In some MSS. of Sls. alone, such as M9, the second part immediately follows the first, as in this translation; indicating that it has been accepted as a part of the same work. But in M6 the two parts are separated by the Farh. Okh., occupying twenty folios; and in K20 there is an interval of ninety-two folios, containing the Farh. Okh., Bund., B. Yt., and several other texts.

[2] §§ 1, 2 are a repetition of Chap. I, 1, 2, with a few variations. The number of degrees is here raised to nine by the addition of the Srôshô-*k*aranâm (see Chap. X, 24), which is written Srôsha*k*aranâm in both these sections.

[3] Reading i mad-4, instead of va m-4; the mad being a quarter-dirham (see Chap. X, 24, note); or we can read 'weight and quantity (mâyah) of three dirhams.' The amount of the Farmân

Srôshô-*k*aranâm is one dirham *and* two mads; three Srôshô-*k*aranâms are the weight of four dirhams and two mads[1]; an Âgerept is thirty-three stîrs[2]; an Aîvîrist is the weight of thirty-three dirhams; an Aredûs is thirty *stîrs*[3]; a Khôr is sixty stîrs; a Bâzâî is ninety stîrs; a Yât is a hundred and eighty stîrs, and a Tanâpûhar is three hundred stîrs.

3. Every one ought to be unhesitating *and* unanimous about this, that righteousness is the one thing, and heaven (garô*d*mân)[4] the one place, *which* is good, and contentment the one thing more comfortable.

4. When a sheep[5] is slaughtered and divided, its meat-offering (gâvûs-dâk)[6] is to be thus presented:—the tongue, jaw, and left eye are the

here given appears to agree with that stated in Chap. XVI, 1, but differs very much from the sixteen dirhams mentioned in Chap. I, 2, and the twenty-eight dirhams quoted by Spiegel.

[1] That is, one Srôshô-*k*aranâm is one dirham and a half, and three of them, therefore, are four dirhams and a half; the mad being a quarter-dirham. This computation differs considerably from the amounts stated in Chaps. X, 24, XVI, 5, but corresponds better with the supposition (see Chap. IV, 14, note) that a Srôshô-*k*aranâm is one-third of a Farmân.

[2] Both this amount and the next are evidently wrong, and no doubt the Pahlavi ciphers have been corrupted. Chap. XVI, 5 gives 'sixteen' and 'twenty-five' stîrs, which are probably correct, though the computation in Chap. I, 2 is very different.

[3] Written Aredûs 30 sî, 'an Aredûs is 30 (thirty),' as in Chap. I, 2; with which also all the remaining amounts correspond.

[4] See note on pâhlûm ahvân in Chap. VI, 3.

[5] Or 'goat.'

[6] Av. gâus hudhau, which is generally represented by a small piece of butter placed upon one of the sacred cakes; but on certain occasions small pieces of meat are used. The object of this section is to point out what part of the animal is suitable for use in a ceremony dedicated to any one of the angels, or spirits, mentioned.

angel Hôm's[1] own; the neck is Ashavahist's[2] own; the head is the angel Vâê's[3] own; the right shoulder (arm) is Ardvîsûr's[4], the left is Drvâsp's[5]; the right thigh (hakht) is *for the guardian spirit*[6] *of* Vistâsp, and the left *for* the guardian spirit of Gâmâsp[7]; the back is *for* the supreme chief[8]; the loin is the spirits' own; the belly is Spendarmad's[9]; the testicles[10] are *for* the star Vanand[11]; the kidneys are

[1] Av. haoma, the angel of the Hôm plant (see Yas. IX–XI, Bund. XVIII, 1–3, XXVII, 4, 24), the juice of which is used in ceremonial worship by the Parsis.

[2] The same as Ardavahist (see Bund. I, 26).

[3] M6 has 'Râm' as a gloss; he is the Vayô of the Râm Yt., 'the good Vaê' of Mkh. II, 115, who assists the righteous souls in their progress to the other world; his name, Râm, is given to the twenty-first day of the Parsi month (see Chap. XXII, 21).

[4] Av. Ardvî sûra of the Âbân Yt., a title of Anâhita, the female angel of the waters (see Bund. XXXII, 8). This title is written Arêdvîvsûr in the Bundahis, and applied to the source of pure water (Bund. XIII); while the name Âvân, 'waters,' is given to the eighth month and the tenth day of each month in the Parsi year.

[5] Av. Drvâspa of the Gôs Yt., the name of the female angel of cattle, called Gôsûrvan in Bund. IV; her alternative name, Gôs, is given to the fourteenth day of the Parsi month.

[6] The word fravash-i, 'the guardian spirit of,' is evidently omitted here, as it occurs with the next name. For Vistâsp, see Bund. XXXI, 29, XXXIV, 7.

[7] Av. Gâmâspa of Yas. XIII, 24, XLV, 17, XLVIII, 9, L, 18, Âbân Yt. 68, &c., the prime minister of Vistâsp.

[8] Ratpôk berêzad stands for the Av. rathwô berezatô of Yas. I, 46, &c., a 'supreme chief' who is often associated with the chiefs of the various subdivisions of time, and seems to be Aûharmazd himself (see Yas. LVI, i, 10).

[9] The female archangel who has charge of the earth (see Chap. XV, 5, 20–24, and Bund. I, 26).

[10] The word gûnd has here, in most MSS., the usual Persian gloss dahân, 'mouth' (see Bund. XIX, 1), which is a very improbable meaning in this place.

[11] Probably Fomalhaut (see Bund. II, 7, note).

Haptôîring's[1]; the ventricle (naskadakŏ)[2] is *for* the guardian spirit of priests; the lungs are *for* the guardian spirit of warriors; the liver is *for* compassion and sustenance[3] of the poor; the spleen is Mânsarspend's[4]; the fore-legs (bâzâî) are *for* the waters; the heart is *for* the fires; the entrail fat is Ardâî-fravard's[5]; the tail-bone (dunb-gazakŏ) is *for* the guardian spirit of Zaratûst the Spîtâmân[6]; the tail (dunbak) is *for* Vâd[7] the righteous; the right eye is in the share of the moon[8]; and any[9] *that* may be left over from those is *for* the other archangels. 5. *There* have been *those* who may have spoken about protection, and *there have* been *those* who *may have done so* about meat-offerings; whoever *has* spoken about protection is such as *has*

[1] Ursa Major, called Haptŏk-rîng in Bund. II, 7.

[2] Translating in accordance with the Persian gloss *k*ustah, given in the modern MS. M9; but nas-kadakŏ may perhaps mean 'the womb.'

[3] Reading sar-âyisnŏ, 'maturity,' the usual equivalent of Av. thraosta (see Yas. XXXIV, 3), and not srâyisnŏ, 'chanting.'

[4] Av. mãthra spenta, 'the beneficent sayings, or holy word,' of which this angel is a personification; his name is often corrupted into Mahraspend or Mâraspend, and is given to the twenty-ninth day of the Parsi month (see Chap. XXII, 29).

[5] A personification of the Av. ashaonãm fravashayô, 'guardian angels of the righteous' (see Fravardîn Yt. 1, &c.), whence the first month, and the nineteenth day of each month, in the Parsi year, are called Fravardîn.

[6] This clause and the next are omitted in K20.

[7] The angel of the wind, whose name is given to the twenty-second day of the Parsi month (see Chap. XXII, 22).

[8] Or its angel, Mâh, whose name is given to the twelfth day of the Parsi month.

[9] M6 has va aê-maman = va aêk (Pers. îk, 'any'); K20 has kolâ maman, 'whatever,' and omits the words 'may be left over' and 'other.'

spoken well, and whoever *has* spoken about meat-offerings has not spoken everything which is noteworthy[1]. 6. When *one* shall offer up[2] *what* pertains to one (khadûkag) on account of another it is proper; except the tongue, jaw, and left eye, for *that* those are the angel Hôm's own is manifest from the passage: 'Hizvãm fr*e*renao*d*[3],' *&c.*

Chapter XII.

1. The rule is this, that when one's *form of* worship (ya*s*t)[4] is performed, and it is not possible for him to prepare *it*, the practice of those of the primitive faith[5] is, when the girdle (aîpiyâûng) is twined about a *sacred* twig-bundle (baresôm)[6] of seven twigs (tâk), to consecrate a sacred cake (drônô) thrice, which becomes his *form of* worship that is performed one degree better through the sacred cake; and of the merit of a threefold *consecration*

[1] Meaning, apparently, that to pray for protection as a favour is better than to pray for it as a return for an offering.

[2] K20 has 'shall give up.'

[3] It is doubtful if this passage can be found in the extant Avesta; but a passage of similar meaning, and containing the words fr*e*renao*d* and hizvô, occurs in Yas. XI, 16, which states that 'the righteous father, Ahuramazda, produced for me, Haoma, as a Draona, the two jaws, with the tongue and the left eye;' and it then proceeds (Yas. XI, 17–19) to curse any one 'who shall deprive me of that Draona, or shall himself enjoy, or shall give away what the righteous Ahuramazda gave me, the two jaws, with the tongue and the left eye.'

[4] A Yast is a formula of praise in honour of the sun, moon, water, fire, or some other angel, as well as a term for prayers and worship in general.

[5] See Chap. I, 3.

[6] See Chap. III, 32, note.

of the sacred cake the high-priests *have* specially taught, in the Hûspâram *Nask*[1], that *it* is as much as *that* of a lesser *form of* worship.

2. The rule is this, that he who is himself more acquainted with religion is he who considers him who is more acquainted with religion than himself as high-priest, and considers *him* as high-priest[2] so that he may not destroy the bridge of the soul[3]; as it says in the Sakâdûm *Nask*[4] that no one of them, that is an inattentive (asrûshdâr) man who has no high-priest, attains to the best existence[5], not though his recitations should be so many that they have made his duty and good works as much as the verdure (sapdak) of the plants when it shoots forth in spring, the verdure which Aûharmazd *has* given abundantly.

3. The rule is this, that they keep a fire[6] in the house, because, from not keeping the fire properly, *there* arise less pregnancy of women and a weeping (âv-dîdanŏ) for the loss of strength (tanû) of men[7]; and the chilled charcoal (angist) and the rest which are without advantage (bar) are to be

---

[1] See Chap. X, 21. The passage mentioned in the text was probably in the section called Nîrangistân.

[2] K20 omits this repetition.

[3] That is, may not render the passage of his soul to heaven, over the *Kinvad* bridge (see Bund. XII, 7), impossible, owing to the sin of arrogance in this world.

[4] See Chap. X, 25; the passage alluded to was probably at the beginning of the Nask, which treated of 'the reward of the precepts of religion, and the bridge of the destroyers of good preceptors, adapted to their destruction.'

[5] See Chap. VI, 3.

[6] K20 has 'that a fire is to be properly kept.'

[7] K20 has 'and a loss of the strength and wealth of men.'

carried away from the fire; and in the Spend *Nask*[1] *it* is revealed that a fire, when they shall make it quite clean from its chilled charcoal, *has* as much comfort as a man whose clothing they should make clean.

4. The rule is this, that when any one passes away it is proper to render useless[2] as much as the smallest mouth-veil[3], for it says in the Vendidad[4] that 'if even those Mazdayasnians should leave on him who is dead, in parting with him, as much as that which a damsel would leave in parting with the *food*-bowl (pa*d*mânakŏ)—that is, a bag (anbânakŏ-hanâ)[5]'—the decree is this, that *it* is a Tanâ-

[1] See Chap. X, 4; the passage mentioned was probably in that part of the Nask which described the protection afforded by the fire to the new-born Zaratûst.

[2] Probably a negative is omitted, or akârînî*d*anŏ should be translated 'to make no use of.'

[3] See Chap. X, 40. K20 has 'garment.'

[4] Always written Vadîkdâ*d* in this second part of Sls., except in Chap. XIII, 7; whereas in the first part it is written in its uncorrupted form *G*avî*d*-dêſ-dâ*d* or *G*avî*d*-*s*êdâ-dâ*d*, 'the law opposed to the demons.' The passage here quoted is Pahl. Vend. V, 171, 172, with one or two verbal variations.

[5] Standing for anbânak-aê, which is corrupted in the Vendidad MSS. into the unintelligible form andanakŏ-ı, so that this old quotation throws a rather unexpected light upon a passage in the Vendidad which translators would be almost certain to misunderstand. The allusion is to the bags used by a menstruous woman, when eating, to prevent contamination of the food. The Persian Rivâyats state that three bags (kîsah) are made of two thicknesses of strong linen, one bag to wear on each hand, and the third, which is larger, to hold the metal food-bowl and water-goblet. After thoroughly washing her hands and face, she puts the two bags on her hands, taking care that they do not touch her food, or clothes, or any other part of her body. She then feeds herself with a metal spoon, which must not touch her nose; and when the meal

pûhar *sin*[1] at root, which is hell; *and* in the Vendidad[2] it says that the clothing of the charitable (dahiśn-hômand) soul, and even the clothing which they will give *it*, are out of almsgivings (dâsarân)[3].

5. The rule is this, that when any one passes away, after keeping fasting the three *nights*[4], still the presentation of holy-water (zôhar) to the fire is to be performed, which is the presenting of the holy-water to the nearest fire; for in the Dâmdâd *Nask*[5] *it* is revealed that when they sever (tebrûnd) the consciousness of men it goes out to the nearest fire, then out to the stars, then out to the

---

is finished the food-bowl and water-goblet are placed on the large bag, and the two smaller bags inside it, till wanted again.

[1] See Chap. I, 1, 2.

[2] This passage does not appear to be now extant in the Vendidad, and it is possible to read Nask Dâd instead of Vadikdâd. The Dâdî or Dâdak Nask was the eleventh nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard, which merely says that its 'Avesta and Zand are not communicated to us by the high-priest.' According to the Dînî-vagarkard, which calls it Khûstô, and the Rivâyats, which call it Khast, it was the twelfth Nask, and they give its contents in more detail than usual (see Haug's Essays, pp. 130, 131).

[3] Meaning that the dead require no clothing, as their future bodies will be clothed out of the garments they have given away in charity. The resemblance of this statement to that contained in Bund. XXX, 28, which must have been abridged from the Dâmdâd Nask (see SZS. IX, 1), renders it possible that it may have been taken from that Nask.

[4] No fresh meat is to be cooked or eaten for the first three days after a death in the house, according to the Sad-dar Bundahiś, LXXVIII (compare Chap. XVII, 1–3).

[5] See SZS. IX, 1. The passage here quoted may perhaps be found in the complete text of the Bundahiś, as given in TD (Chap. 37; see Introduction, p. xxxvii).

moon, and then out to the sun[1]; and *it* is needful that the nearest fire, which is that to which it *has* come out, should become stronger (zôr-hômand-tar)[2].

6. The rule is this, that they should not leave a nail-*paring* unprayed over (anâfsûdak), for if it be not prayed over (afsând)[3] it turns into the arms *and* equipments of the Mâzanân demons[4]; *this* is explicitly shown in the Vendidad[5].

7. The rule is this, that the labour of child-birth[6] is not to be accomplished at night, except while with the light of a fire, or the stars and moon, upon *it*; for great opposition is connected with it, and in the twentieth of the Hûspâram *Nask*[7] it is shown *that* over the soul of him who works in the dark *there is* more predominance of the evil spirit.

8. The rule is this, that they should allow the egg and other food[8] for those gifts *and* favours of the

[1] A righteous soul is supposed to step out first to the star station, then to the moon station, and then to the sun station, on its way to Garôdmân, the highest heaven; but if its righteousness is imperfect it has to stop at one of these three stations, which are the three lower grades of heaven (see note on pâhlûm ahvân, Chap. VI, 3).

[2] Or 'more provided with zôr,' which may mean 'holy-water,' as the two words zôr and zôhar are occasionally confounded.

[3] Or, perhaps, 'if they shall not pray over *it*.'

[4] See Bund. III, 20, XIX, 19, 20.

[5] Vend. XVII, 29.

[6] Barman-zerkhûnisnîh may also mean 'begetting a son.'

[7] See Chap. X, 21. The word 'twentieth' appears to refer to the second group of twenty sections, one of which treated of the begetting, birth, and treatment of children.

[8] Referring to the egg, drôns, frasasts, and gâus hudhau or 'meat-offering' (which may be either butter or meat, see Chap. XI, 4) that are used in the drôn ceremony, or consecration of the sacred cakes (see note on drôn, Chap. III, 32). The object of

sovereign moon (mâh-i khûdâî) and the other angels; if so, it is to be allowed by them thus: 'I will consecrate so much food for such an angel,' and not thus: 'One sacred cake (drônô) in so much food.' 9. And the reason of it is this, that *they* who shall allow thus: 'One sacred cake out of so much food,' and of which *it* is one thing less, even though *one* shall consecrate *it* many times, still then he *has* not repaid; and *they* who should allow thus: 'I will consecrate so much food for such an angel,' though *one* shall reverence *him* with many sacred cakes, it is proper. 10. And in the twenty-two *sections* of the Sakâdûm *Nask*[1] grievous things are shown about those who do not make offerings (aûstôfrid) unto the angels.

11. The rule is this, that when a woman becomes pregnant, as long as it is possible, a fire *one* cares for well is to be maintained in the house, because it is revealed[2] in the Spend Nask that *to* Dûkdâv[3], the mother of Zaratûst, when she was pregnant with Zaratûst, for three nights, every night a leader (shâh)[4] with a hundred and fifty demons came for the destruction of Zaratûst, and yet, owing to the existence of the fire in the dwelling, they knew no means *for it*.

---

this paragraph is, evidently, to reprove niggardliness in such offerings, and to prevent their being mere pretexts for feasting.

[1] See Chap. X, 25. The passage alluded to here was probably in that section, of the last twenty-two, which treated of the spirits of the earthly existences, one portion of which was 'about preparing offerings (aûstôfrîtô) to the angels.'

[2] M6 has 'the fire of Aûharmazd is to be fully maintained, *and* it is revealed,' &c. This section is a repetition of Chap. X, 4, with a few variations.

[3] Here written Dûdkâv.

[4] Or it may be read sêdâ, 'a demon,' meaning 'an arch-fiend.'

12. The rule is this, where a child is born, *during* three days, for protection from demons, wizards, and witches, a fire is to be made at night until day*light*, and is to be maintained there in the day, and pure incense is to be put upon it, as is revealed in the thirtieth of the Sakâ*d*ûm *Nask*[1].

13. The rule is this[2], that from a toothpick the bark[3] is to be well cut off, for there are *some* of those of the primitive faith[4] who *have* said that, when[5] they shall make it for the teeth *with* the bark on, and they throw *it* away, a pregnant woman, who puts a foot upon it, is doubtful about *its* being dead matter.

14. The rule is this, that *it* is well *if any one of* those who have their handmaid (*k*akar) in cohabitation (zanîh), and offspring is born of her, shall accept all those who are male as sons; *but* those who are female are no advantage, because an adopted *son* (satôr) is requisite, and in the fourteenth of the Hûspâram *Nask*[6] the high-priests

[1] That is, in the first thirty sections of the Nask (see Chap. X, 25); the passage alluded to must have been in that portion which treated of new-born infants and their proper treatment.

[2] §§ 13–16 are a repetition of Chap. X, 20–23, with a few variations.

[3] The word appears to be tôpŏ or tûfŏ, which would rather mean 'scum' or 'gum' (see Bund. XXVII, 19), unless it be considered a miswriting of tôgŏ or tôzŏ, which would mean 'thin bark' or 'bast.' It can also be read tûpar, 'a leather bag,' and the sentence can be so translated as to imply that a toothpick should be cut out of a leather bag, an alternative similar to that suggested by the text of Chap. X, 20.

[4] See Chap. I, 3.

[5] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'who' (see Bund. I, 7, note).

[6] See Chap. X, 21.

have taught thus: 'My son is suitable also as thy son, *but* my daughter is not suitable also as thy daughter;' and *there* are many who[1] do not appoint an adopted *son with* this idea, that: 'The child of a handmaid may be accepted by us as a son.'

15. The rule is this, that *one is* to persevere much in the begetting of offspring, since *it is* for the acquisition[2] of many good works at once; because in the Spend[3] and Nihâdûm Nasks[4] the high-priests *have* taught that the duty and good works which a son performs are as much the father's as though they had been done by his own hand; and in the Dâmdâd *Nask*[5] it is revealed thus: 'Likewise, too, the good works, *in* like manner, which come *to* the father as his own.'

16. The rule is this, that what they shall give to the worthy is as much as is proper and beyond, for eating *and* accumulating; because in the Nihâdûm *Nask*[6] the high-priests *have* taught thus: 'When a man gives bread to a man, even though that man *has* too much bread, all the good works, which he shall perform through that superabundance, become as much his *who gave it* as though they had been done by his own hand.'

17. The rule is this, that in the night water is

[1] The writer of M6 evidently found his original illegible at this place, as he wrote . . . maman instead of mûn denman.

[2] M6 has 'performance,' which is probably a misreading, due to the original of that MS. being partially illegible.

[3] See Chap. X, 4. This Nask is not mentioned in Chap. X, 22, and the passage here alluded to is not to be traced in any of the short accounts of its contents.

[4] See Chap. X, 3, 22.

[5] See SZS. IX, 1, and Chap. X, 22.

[6] See Chap. X, 3, 23.

not to be drawn[1] from a well, as in the Bâg-yasnô[2] notice is given about the uncleanness (ayosdâsarîh) of well-water at night.

18. The rule is this, that in the night anything eatable is not to be cast away to the north, because a fiend *will* become pregnant; and when it is cast away one Yathâ-ahû-vairyô[3] is to be uttered. 19. Those of the primitive faith[4] who *used* to act more orthodoxically (hû-rastakîhâtar), when food *was* eaten by them in the night, for the sake of preservation from sin owing to the coming of strainings *and* sprinklings *on* to the ground, directed a man to chant the Ahunavar[5] from the beginning of the feast

[1] K20 has 'that water is not to be drawn on foot.'

[2] Probably the Bakân-yastô is meant, which was the fourteenth nask or 'book' of the complete Mazdayasnian literature, according to the Dînkard; but according to the Dînî-vagarkard and the Rivâyats it was the fifteenth nask, called Baghân-yast. For its contents, as given by the Dînî-vagarkard, see Haug's Essays, p. 132. The following is the account of it given in the eighth book of the Dînkard:—

'The Bakân-yastô is a treatise, first, on the worship (yastô) of Aûharmazd, the most pre-eminent of divinities (bakân avartûm), and, secondly, the worship of the angels of the other invisible and visible worldly existences, out of whom are even the names of the days, and the glory, power, triumph, and miraculousness of their life also is extreme; the angels who are invoked by name in their worship, and the attention *and* salutation *due* to them; the worthiness *and* dispensation of favour for worshippers, *and* the business of their many separate recitations unto the angels; the business of unlimited acquaintance with knowledge about the promoters of the treasures of the period, unto whom the creator Aûharmazd *is* to intrust them, *and* they remain to cause industry. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.'

[3] See Bund. I, 21. This section is a repetition of Chap. X, 7, with a few variations.

[4] See Chap. I, 3.

[5] That is, the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô (see Bund. I, 21).

(myazd) unto the end, more especially at the feast of the season-festivals; as it says in the Hâdôkht *Nask*[1], that of the sayings which are spoken out the Ahunavar is that *which is* most triumphant.

20. The rule is this, that when *one* sees a hedgehog he takes *it* back to the plain, and its own place is to be preserved free from danger; for in the Vendidad the high-priests *have* taught, that every day, when the hedgehog voids urine into an ant's nest, a thousand ants will die[2].

21. The rule is this, that some who are of the good religion *say*, where *one* is washing *his* face, one Ashem-vohû[3] is always to be uttered, *and* that Ashem-vohû is to be uttered before the *washing;* for when he utters *it* while washing *his* face, *he* is doubtful (var-hômand) about the water coming to *his* mouth.

22. The rule is this, that they select from the purifiers[4]—when their business (mindavam) is as important (rabâ) as purity and impurity—*him* with whom the control[5] of ablution (pâdîyâvih)[6] and non-ablution is connected; they select *him* especially

[1] See B.Yt. III, 25. The passage here quoted must have been in the first division of the Nask.

[2] This section is a repetition of Chap. X, 31.

[3] See Bund. XX, 2.

[4] The yôsdâsarân, 'purifiers' (Av. yaozdâthrya), are those priests who retain so much of the purifying effect of the Bareshnûm ceremony (see Chap. II, 6) as to be able to assist in purifying others by means of the same ceremony. When that effect has passed away a priest can no longer perform the sacred rites, until he has again undergone the nine nights' purification of the Bareshnûm.

[5] Reading band, but it may be bôd, 'vitality, essence.'

[6] See Chap. II, 52.

with regard to the good disposition and truthful speaking of the man, and *to* the particular work; and on account of *his being* in innocence *he* is to be considered more righteous. 23. As in the Vendidad[1] it says, about the two shares of righteousness, how *one* should tell that *he is* 'a righteous man, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! who is a purifier, who should be a speaker that speaks truly, an enquirer of the *sacred* texts—that is, he has performed his ritual (yast)—a righteous *one* who specially understands purification from the religion of the Mazdayasnians, that is, he understands its *religious* formulas (nîrang).' 24. When *it* is so that the control of their ablution is connected with him, so that they consider what *pertains* to the *purifying* bowl (zak-i tâstîk) as his, and ever abstain from it, though the angels hear and consider *them* as clean, and they select for him those who consecrate the water and bull's urine (gômêz) on account of *their* control of purification (yôsdâsarkarîh), *and it* is to be performed very observantly by the consecrators at the place which is to be measured with a measure and very exactly (khûptar)[2]. 25. And the purifier is so much the better when washed again, and when *it is* by some one through whose periodic (zamânîk)

[1] The passage here quoted is from Pahl. Vend. IX, 4–6.

[2] Referring to the Bareshnûm-gâh, or place prepared for the Bareshnûm ceremony of purification with bull's urine and water, which are handed to the person undergoing purification by an officiating priest (see Chap. II, 6). The place is marked out with furrows in the ground, and furnished with stones (magh) to squat upon during the ablutions (see B. Yt. II, 36). The construction of this paragraph is very obscure in many places, and its proper division into sentences is, therefore, uncertain.

care *he* is thus done; for in the periodic interval many secret[1] kinds of pollution are produced. 26. Of the celebrators of the Vendidad the good are *they* who shall again perform the Navashâ*d*ar rite[2]; for, on account of the same nicety (nâzûkîh) which is written above by me, *and* on account of much also *that is* secret, which has happened *and* mostly arises about it, *there* is no harm from performing *it*. 27. And *any one* of those who shall receive the water and bull's urine *it* is very important to wash beforehand (pavan pê*s*)[3]; because, if *there* be impurity *about* him[4], *and* he puts a hand to the cup (*g*âmak), the water, *and* the bull's urine, *they* are unclean (apâ*d*âvŏ)[5]; when *it is* so that *there* be some one, when so, *it* is better *that* they always wash his eyelids (môyak gâs), *and* to wash them by the clean is good.

28. The rule is this, that thou shouldst not consider even any one hopeless (anâîmê*d*) of heaven,

---

[1] Reading nihân, but we might perhaps read 'causes (vahân) of pollution of many kinds.' The meaning of the section is, that it is necessary for the purifying priest to maintain his own purity by frequently undergoing the Bareshnûm ceremony himself.

[2] Ya*s*t-i Navashâ*d*ar in all MSS., but the latter word is most probably a corruption of Av. navakhshapara, 'a period of nine nights,' for which length of time the Bareshnûm ceremony must be continued (see Vend. IX, 144, XIX, 80). The 'Navashâ*d*ar rite' is, therefore, 'the ceremony of the nine nights,' which should be frequently undergone by the priests who celebrate the Vendidad ceremonial.

[3] M6 has pavan pî*s*ak, 'with ceremony.'

[4] M6 has 'them.'

[5] M6 has '*one* knows it is unto the cup and bull's urine;' but as M6 was evidently copied from a MS. already nearly illegible in some places, it is generally safer to follow K20, except when M6 supplies words omitted by the more careless writer of K20.

and they should not set *their* minds steadfastly on hell; thereby much sinfulness for which *there* is a desire would be undesirable, because *there* is nothing which is a sin *in* my religion for which *there* is no retribution, as it says in the Gâthas[1] thus:—'Of those who are aware that thou art, O Aûharmazd! is even he who is infamous (raspakŏ); and they know the punishment of him even who is very sinful.' 29. And *as to* him even who is a very sinful person, through the desire[2] of good works which is entertained by him, *there* then comes more fully to him the joy of a soul newly worthy (nuk shâya*d*); as in the Spend *Nask*[3] *it* was shown to Zaratûst about one man, that all *his* limbs were in torment, and one foot was outside; *and* Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmazd about the reason *of it; and* Aûharmazd said that he was a man, Davâns[4] by name; he was ruler over thirty-three[5] districts, and he never practised

[1] The passage here quoted from the Gâthas will be found in Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 7.

[2] M6 has merely 'through the good works which are practised by him;' but K20 has 'ı hamak' inserted at this point, which seems to indicate the existence of the nearly identical Pahlavi letters kâmak, 'desire,' in the original from which it was copied.

[3] See Chap. X, 4. The passage here quoted was no doubt contained in that part of the Nask which treated of the exhibition of heaven and hell to Zaratûst, which must have been very similar to the Ard*â*-Vîrâf-nâmak, in which most of the details of this story about Davâns are given (see AV. XXXII).

[4] This is, no doubt, the Av. davãs of Yas. XXXI, 10, which may be translated 'hypocrite.' The Pahlavi translation of the line in which the word occurs is thus rendered in Haug's Essays (p. 351): 'Aûharmazd does not allot to him who is an idler, the infidel who is any hypocrite (davãs) in the sacred recitations. In the good religion it is asserted that even as much reward as they give to the hypocrite they do not give to the infidel.'

[5] K20 has 'thirty-four.'

any good work, except one time when fodder *was* conveyed by him to a sheep with that one foot.

30. The rule is this, that when a man has performed his *form of* worship (yasn), and his wife has not performed *it*, *it* is extremely necessary to perform the suitable *form of* worship, or to order a Gêtô-kharîd[1], so that they may become such as are dwelling more closely *together* in the spiritual *existence* than in the world; and in the Hâdôkht *Nask*[2] it says that a woman (nâîrîk) who shall be reverent (tarsak) is to be considered as much as she who is suitable (zîyâk).

31. The rule is this, that these five ceremonies (yazisn), when they shall perform *them*, are good works[3]; when *one* does not perform *them*, and the time is manifest to him, and when he shall set *them* aside to perform *them* out of the proper time, they shall go to the bridge[4] *as* sin; the ceremonies which go to the bridge are these, and in the Hûspâram *Nask*[5] it says that *they are* the non-celebration of the rites (lâ yastanŏ) of the season-festivals[6], the

---

[1] Here written gêtôk-kharîd, but see Chap. V, 6, and Bund. XXX, 28.

[2] See B. Yt. III, 25; but the passage here quoted is not clearly indicated in the accounts we have of the contents of this Nask.

[3] The distinction between these ceremonies and those whose values as good works are given in Chap. XVI, 6, appears to be that any omission in performing these five at their proper times amounts to an absolute sin, whereas the others are not so indispensable.

[4] That is, they will be taken into account at the judgment on the soul's actions at the *Kinvad* bridge (see Bund. XII, 7).

[5] See Chap. X, 21. The passage here quoted was probably in the section called Nîrangistân.

[6] The Gâsânbârs or Gâhanbârs (see Bund. XXV, 1–6).

Rapîtvîn[1], the three *nights*[2] *after a death*, the *days devoted* to the guardian spirits[3], and the sun and moon[4].

32. The rule is this, that at every one of these three things, *which* come through hungry living, that is, sneezing, yawning, and sighing, *one* is to speak out a Yathâ-ahû-vairyô and one Ashem-vohû[5]; and also when *one* hears the sneezing of any one, to speak *in* like manner is so considered as an action of the good[6]; *and* in the Stûdgar *Nask*[7] it says thus: '"What prepares sneezing? that is, through what process (kâr) does it come?" And Aûharmazd said thus: "Hungry living, O Zaratûst! because the remedy for its existence is the Ahunavar, O Zaratûst! *and* righteousness[8]."'

Chapter XIII.

0. The signification of the Gâthas[9].

1. These three Ashem-vohûs (Yas. XI, end) which

[1] The midday period (see Bund. II, 8, 9, XXV, 9–14).

[2] See Chap. VIII, 6. [3] See Chap. X, 2.

[4] See Chap. VII, 1–5. [5] See Bund. I, 21, XX, 2.

[6] That is, it is commendable, though not obligatory. The practice of uttering a blessing on hearing a sneeze is still common in many parts of Europe.

[7] See B. Yt. I, 1. The passage here quoted is not to be traced in any of the accounts of this Nask.

[8] 'The Ahunavar and praise of righteousness' would be a Pahlavi equivalent for 'the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô and Ashem-vohû.'

[9] That is, the mystical meaning or influence supposed to attach to various parts of the ancient hymns, or to the manner in which they are chanted. The term Gâtha or 'hymn' (Pahl. gâs) is applied, in this chapter, not only to the five Gâthas properly so called, but also to the Yasna of seven chapters, and apparently to

represent[1] the Fravarânê (Yas. XI, end) of the preliminary ritual (pêṣ nîrang) and the rotation of these three Hâs ('chapters'), the Fravarânê, Frastuyê, and Âstuyê—fravarânê *being* the beginning of the Fravarânê[2] *which extends* as far as frasastayaêka[3], frastuyê[4], the beginning of the Frastuyê (Yas. XII, 1–XIII, 26) *which extends* up to the Âstuyê, and âstuyê[5], the beginning of the Âstaothwanem[6] (Yas. XIII, 27–XIV, end) *which extends* as far as âstaothwanemkâ daênayau Mâzdayasnôis—*also represent* the Visâi-ve-ameshâ-spentâ (Yas. XV), *which is* the beginning of the Stôtân-yasnô ('the ritual of praisers')[7], and these three Hâs of the Baghăm (Yas. XIX–XXI).

2. In the exposition (kashîdak) and through the

other portions of the Yasna written in the Gâtha dialect of the Avesta.

[1] This appears to be the meaning, but the construction of this section is altogether very obscure, and the text is more or less corrupt in all MSS. In the celebration of the Yasna or Yazisn the officiating priest tastes the Hôm juice during the recitation of Yas. XI (see Haug's Essays, p. 404), and shortly afterwards he commences the preliminary prayers mentioned in the text.

[2] Both K20 and M6 have Frerân in Pâzand.

[3] Both K20 and M6 omit the initial f.

[4] M6 has âstuyê.

[5] M6 omits this word.

[6] This is the Avesta name of the Hâ or chapter consisting of Yas. XIII, 27–XIV, 19; as Fraoreti is the name of the preceding Hâ, consisting of Yas. XII, 1–XIII, 26.

[7] Probably consisting of the three Hâs, Yas. XV–XVII; in which case, the meaning seems to be that the three Ashem-vohûs, at the beginning of this preliminary ritual, are symbolical of each of the three triplets of chapters which follow them; first, of the Fravarânê, Fraoreti, and Âstaothwanem chapters; secondly, of the three chapters of the Stôtân-yasnô; and thirdly, of those of the Baghân Yast.

evidence of revelation (dînô) the wise of those of the primitive faith[1] *have* thus said, that a man of fifteen years[2], and a son and brother of Mazdayasnians—when he confesses *his* failings (mândak) to the high-priests (ra*d*ân), and they shall bring him the whip and scourge[3], and these five Gâthas[4] are chanted and the good waters consecrated by him, and the whole of the renewed-birth *ceremony* (navî*d*-zâ*d*îh)[5] is performed by him—*becomes* a mature youth and not a child, and a share of the prayers of initiation (nâpar) and of the fires is to be given over to him[6]; and when thus much is not performed by him, a share is not to be given. 3. These five[7] Gâthas are made up from the body of a righteous man.

[1] See Chap. I, 3.

[2] Referring to one about to become a priest.

[3] The Av. astra and sraoshô-*k*arana of Vend. IV, 38–114, &c., which were formerly used for the temporal punishment of sinners. Whether they are here brought to the neophyte as a token of his admission to the priesthood, or are administered to him as a punishment for his offences, is not quite clear.

[4] The five Gâthas are the Ahunavaiti (Yas. XXVIII–XXXIV), the Ustavaiti (Yas. XLII–XLV), the Spe*n*tâ-mainyû (Yas. XLVI–XLIX), the Vohû-khshathra (Yas. L), and the Vahistôisti (Yas. LII); these collections of hymns are thus named from the words with which each of them commences, excepting the first, which derives its name from the Ahunavar (see Bund. I, 21) which is written in the same metre.

[5] This is the Pahlavi form of the Parsi navazûdî, a term applied to the whole initiatory ceremonial of a nônâbar, or newly initiated priest; the term evidently implies that the ceremony is considered somewhat in the light of 'regeneration.'

[6] That is, he can take his part in the regular priestly duties, including the initiation of other neophytes.

[7] Both K20 and M6 have four in ciphers, which can hardly be right; the sentence is clear enough, but the idea of its writer is rather obscure.

4. Ahyâ-yâsâ (Yas. XXVIII), Khshmaibyâ (Yas. XXIX), and Ad-tâ-vakhshyâ (Yas. XXX) *have*, severally, eleven stanzas (vakêst), because eleven things move spiritually within the bodies of men, as life, consciousness, religion, soul, guardian spirit, thought, word, deed, seeing, smelling, and hearing; and the bodies of men and other creatures are formed of water, fire, and wind[1].

5. Ashem-Ahurem-mazdâm (Visp. XV) is *to be recited*[2] three times before the coming of Hûshêdar, Hûshêdar-mâh, and Sôshyans; and when they also recite the chapter (hâd) well, and by line (gâs) and stanza, those *apostles* are present[3], and the

[1] These first three chapters of the Ahunavaiti collection of hymns are here supposed to symbolize the three material elements, whose union distinguishes a man's body from inorganic substances; while the eleven stanzas, which each of these chapters contains, symbolize the eleven immaterial existences said to be contained in the same body.

[2] This is doubtful, as no verb is expressed, and the word bâr, 'time,' is struck out in M6, so it is possible to read 'the "three foremost" of the Ashem-Ahurem-mazdâm are the coming of Hûshêdar,' &c. The 'three foremost' (3 levînŏg) would be a possible Pahlavi translation of the Av. tisrô paoiryô and tisra paoirya of Visp. XV, 4–6, instead of the actual 'three first' (3-i fratûm), as may be seen from Pahl. Visp. VIII, 17, 20, where both pês (= levînŏ) and fratûm are used indifferently for Av. paoiryô. At any rate the idea embodied in the text is that these 'three first' have some reference to the three future apostles of the Parsi religion (see Bund. XXXII. 8, B. Yt. III, 13, 44, 52, 62). In fact, however, they seem to refer to the first three chapters of the Ahunavaiti Gâtha, immediately after which this chapter (Visp. XV) is recited in the full Parsi ritual; the phrase being rendered in the Pahlavi translation thus:—'I reverence the three first by not speaking out, that is, I do not say anything during them, and not wearing out, that is, I do not doze away during them.'

[3] K20 has 'arrive early.'

country becomes more flourishing and more dominant in the world.

6. The twenty-two stanzas of Tâ-*ve*-urvâtâ (Yas. XXXI) are the twenty-two judgments (dâ*d*istân) of which it speaks in the Hâ*d*ôkht *Nask*[1] thus:—'Anaomô mananghê daya vîspâi kva, kva parô?' ('where are *they* to be produced beyond every thought? *and* where before?') 'Lodging in the judge, that while *he has* twenty-two judgments *he may be* more just;'—so that when they pray the Tâ-v*e*-urvâtâ chapter well, and recite *it* by line and stanza, the judges possess those twenty-two judgments more correctly, and judiciousness is more lodging *in them*.

7. The sixteen stanzas of the *Hv*aêtumaithi *chapter* (Yas. XXXII)[2] are lodging in warriors, so that it becomes possible, during their good protection, to force the enemy *away* from those sixteen countries which the Vendidad[3] mentions in *its* first fargar*d*.

---

[1] See B. Yt. III, 25. Both the Avesta text here quoted and the translation suggested must be received with caution, as the MSS. do not agree in the three central words; K20 has manaNhê dya vîspâi kaua, and M6 has manaNhê kya vîsâi kaia. The former reading has been adopted, with very slight correction, as it seems the more intelligible; but the meaning of the preceding word, anaomô, is far from certain. The writer seems to have been quoting from a Pahlavi version of the Nask which contained this Avesta quotation.

[2] This Hâ, which begins with the words a*hv*yâ*k*â *hv*aêtu*s*, is not called by its initial words, as the preceding chapters are, but has this special name (see the prayers at the end of it) derived from its second word, and which is corrupted in Pahlavi into Khvêtmanŏ.

[3] Here written *G*avî*d*-*s*êdâ-dâ*d* as in Sls. Part I, and not Vadîkdâ*d* as in other parts of Sls. Part II (see § 19 and Chap. XII, 4, 6, 20, 23, 26). Vend. I contains an account of the sixteen

8. The fourteen stanzas of Yathâ-âis (Yas. XXXIII) are for this reason, because seven archangels are more diligent in activity *for* the spirit, and seven archangels[1] for the world, so that they may attain 'to heaven, the home (mêhônŏ) of Aûharmazd, the home of the archangels, the home of those righteous ones,' avi garô-nmânem, maêthanem Ahurahê mazd*a*u, maêthanem ameshanãm spe*n*tanãm, maêthanem anyaêshãm ashaonãm[2]. 9. The three repetitions (dânar) of Ye-sevistô (Yas. XXXIII, 11)[3], *and* the holding up of the holy-water (zôhar) at these *repetitions*, are for the four classes[4], and for this *reason* at Ahurâi mazdâi *and* ashemkâ frâdad[5] the holy-water is

'best of regions and countries' where the Iranian power and religion extended at an early date.

[1] The seven archangels besides their spiritual duties have severally charge of the seven worldly existences, man, animals, fire, metal, earth, water, and plants (see § 14 and Chap. XV). But perhaps we should read 'angels,' as they are often mentioned as 'the angels of the spiritual and worldly existences.'

[2] This quotation, of which the Pahlavi translation is first given, and then the Avesta text, is from Vend. XIX, 107.

[3] This stanza is recited thrice, and about the same time the officiating priest strains the Hôm juice, and prepares to pour holy-water into the mortar in which the Hôm twigs were pounded (see Haug's Essays, pp. 402, 406).

[4] Or 'professions' of the community, of which there were originally only three, the priest, warrior, and husbandman; but at a later date the artizan was added. Both K20 and M6 have 'four classes,' but this is inconsistent with the 'three repetitions' The Avesta generally knows only three classes, but four are mentioned in the Baghân Yast (Yas. XIX, 46).

[5] That is, probably, at the words Ahurô mazdauskâ in the first line, and ashemkâ frâdad in the second line of the stanza; but this is doubtful, as the MSS. give the words corruptly, in a mixture of Av. and Pahl., as follows: pavan Ahurâi mazdâi ahârayih-i dadŏîh.

to be held level with the heart of him who is the officiating priest (zôt), and at sraotâ[1] *it* is to be held level with the arm of him who is the officiating priest, so that while the warriors are in battle with foreigners (anâîrân) they may be fuller of breath (vayô-gîrtar), and the husbandmen stronger-armed in the tillage and cultivation of the world.

10. The fifteen stanzas of Yâ-*s*kyaothanâ (Yas. XXXIV) are for this reason, because it is given[2] for the destruction of those fifteen fiends who are disclosed in the medical part (bêshâ*z*) of the Hâ*d*ôkht *Nask*[3]. 11. The four repetitions (bâr) of Mazdâ-a*d*-môi (Yas. XXXIV, 15)[4] are for the right coming on of the share of these five chieftainships (ra*d*îh), the house-ruler, the village-ruler, the tribe-ruler, the province-ruler, and the supreme Zaratûst[5].

12. The two repetitions of Ahyâ-yâsâ (Yas. XXVIII, 1)[6] are for this reason, that the sovereign (dahyûpat) may not at once seize body, conscious-

[1] The first word in the third line of the stanza; but this, again, has to be guessed from a Pahlavi version in the MSS. which may be read va vâ-srôdâân.

[2] Or 'produced.'

[3] In the last division of that Nask (see B. Yt. III, 25, note).

[4] This last stanza of the Ahunavaiti Gâtha is recited four times.

[5] See Yas. XIX, 50–52. The last of these rulers must have been the supreme pontiff or patriarch of the province, and in the province of Ragha (Rages or Raî, near Teheran) he was both temporal and spiritual ruler.

[6] This first stanza of the Ahunavaiti Gâtha is recited twice, not only in its proper place (as the first stanza of each chapter is, in the Gâthas), but also at the end of every chapter of the Ahunavaiti Gâtha, while the officiating priest sprinkles the sacred twigs with the sacred milk or gâu*s* gîvya, 'living-cow *produce*' (see Haug's Essays, pp. 405, 406).

ness, and soul. 13. Those four Yathâ-ahû-vairyôs of the first *Gâtha*[1] are for this reason, that is, so that inferiors may become more tolerant of the commands of superiors, and good thoughts, good words, and good deeds be more domesticated (mâhmântar) in the world, and the fiend more powerless (apâdakhshâhtar).

14. In short (aê-mar)[2], Ahyâ-yâsâ is as (pavan)[3] Aûharmazd and the righteous man, Khshmaibyâ as Vohûman and cattle, Ad-tâ-vakhshyâ as Ardavahist and fire, Tâ-ve-urvâtâ as Shatvairô[4] and metal, the *Hv*aêtumaithi as the Gâtha of Spendarmad and the earth, Yathâ-âis as Horvadad and water, and Yâskyaothanâ as Amerôdad and plants.

15. The progress which is in[5] the Ahunavaiti Gâtha the house-rulers should carry on; that which is in the Ustavaiti Gâtha the village-rulers should carry on; that which is in the Spentâ-mainyû[6] Gâtha the tribe-rulers should carry on; that which is in the Vohû-khshathra Gâtha the province-rulers should carry on; that which is in the Vahistô-isti Gâtha the supreme Zaratûsts should carry on; and

[1] After the two Ahyâ-yâsâs, at the end of each chapter of the Ahunavaiti Gâtha, the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô formula (see Bund. I, 21) is recited four times.

[2] Or 'to sum up.'

[3] It is not quite clear how pavan, 'in, on, with, by, through, as, for,' &c., should be translated in each clause of this section; but the intention is evidently to compare the seven chapters of the Ahunavaiti Gâtha with the seven archangels and the seven earthly creations which they severally protect (see Chap. XV).

[4] Here written Shatrîvar.

[5] Meaning probably 'the prosperity which is *ocasioned* by;' but the exact signification of the word frâk-shâm or frehkashâm (or however it may be read) is uncertain.

[6] Spendômat or Spendamat in Pahlavi.

that which is in the Yasna, which is the place of righteous blessing[1], these four classes themselves should carry on.

16. Of the Yasna *of seven chapters* (Yas. XXXV–XLI, 17) the beginning section (kar*d*akŏ) *has* nine stanzas; and its beginning[2] is Humatanãm (Yas. XXXV, 4), and its end is Humatanãm (Yas. XLI, 17 supl.)

17. The six stanzas of Ahyâ-thwâ-âthrô (Yas. XXXVI) are owing to the six hot ordeals (var) which, in the Hûspâram *Nask*[3], are effected by *k*athrayâim âthraiãm[4].

18. The five stanzas of Ithâ-â*d*-yazamaidê (Yas. XXXVII) are thanksgiving and praise for the production of the good creations by Aûharmazd.

19. The five stanzas of Imãm-âa*d*-zãm (Yas. XXXVIII) are owing to those five comforts and five discomforts of the earth, which, it is declared in the third fargar*d* in the Vendidad[5], are accomplished

[1] That is, the Yasna of seven chapters (Yas. XXXV–XLI), which is called simply 'the Yasna' in this chapter. This last clause, which is omitted in M6, connects these later hymns with the four classes of the community (see § 9), just as the five older hymns are connected with the five chiefs of the community (see § 11) in the former clauses. This section may be a translation from the Avesta, as the verbs precede their nominatives.

[2] That is, the beginning of the Yasna of seven chapters.

[3] See Chap. X, 21; but the Sakâ*d*ûm Nask (see Chap. X, 25) is probably meant, as it contained a section on ordeals by heat and cold.

[4] These Avesta words are evidently corrupt, but perhaps 'a quadruple fire' is meant. K20 has *k*athrâyâim âthraiãm.

[5] Here written Vandîkdâ*d* (see § 7). The passage here cited is not a quotation, but only a brief summary of Vend. III, 1–37; and appears to have been derived direct from the Avesta, without the assistance of the Pahlavi version, as several words differ from that translation.

thus:—'The first comfort of the earth is from the land on which a righteous man walks forth; the second is when they shall make the dwelling of the good and fires upon it; the third is when they sow corn upon it, and shall take heed of dead matter; the fourth is when all beasts *of burden* are born upon it; the fifth is when every beast *of burden* is on it[1]; and its first discomfort is from the Arezûr ridge[2] and the gate of hell; the second is when they dig[3] it up *for* a dead *body*; the third is when *one* constructs a depository *for the dead* (khazân)[4] upon it; the fourth is from the holes of its noxious creatures; the fifth is when they shall forsake a man in affliction (vardakîh) upon it, who is righteous.'

20. The five stanzas of Ithâ (Yas. XXXIX) are just as those which *go* before.

21. The four stanzas of Âhû-*a*d-paiti (Yas. XL) are about the benefit (arg-hômandîh) which is on account of water, earth, plants, and animals.

22. The six stanzas of Stûtô-garô (Yas. XLI, 1–17), the two repetitions of Humatanâm (Yas. XXXV, 4–6), *and* the three repetitions of Hukhsh-athrôtemâi (Yas. XXXV, 13–15) are on account of the existence of the sons of Zaratûst[5].

---

[1] The verb is probably omitted by mistake, and we ought to read 'voids urine upon it,' in accordance with Vend. III, 20.

[2] See Bund. XII, 8.

[3] Reading kalêndend (Pers. kalandand), as Vend. III, 27 refers to burial of the dead, and the same idea might be obtained, more fancifully, by reading kilînênd, 'they turn to clay' (compare Pers. gil, 'clay'); but the most obvious reading is karînênd, 'they cut,' and as the sentence stands it would imply that 'they cut up its dead.'

[4] See Chap. II, 6.

[5] The three apostles expected in the future (see § 5 and Bund. XXXII, 8). It is doubtful whether these three passages in the

23. The two repetitions of Ashahyâ-âa*d*-sairî [1] (Yas. XXXV, 22, 23) are for the laudation of righteousness and the destruction of the fiend. 24. The two repetitions of Yênhê-hâtãm [2] are for the laudation of Aûharmazd and the archangels, and the destruction of the evil spirit and the miscreations (vishû*d*akân). 25. *The two repetitions of* [3] Thwôistaotaras*k*â (Yas. XLI, 12–14) are for the laudation of ceremonial worship (ya*z*is*n*ŏ) and the *sacred* feast (mâzd).

26. The two repetitions of Âtarem*k*a (Visp. XIX, 1–8) [4] are for the laudation of the Frôbâk fire and the fire Vâzis*t* [5].

27. Of the sixteen stanzas of the U*s*tavaiti *chapter* (Yas. XLII) [6] it is related just as about the *Hv*aêtumaithi *chapter* [7].

Yasna are here intended all to refer to the same subject, but no other subject is mentioned for the two former. Having completed the enumeration of the sections of the Yasna of seven chapters, the writer is now proceeding to notice those passages which are recited more than once in the performance of the ritual.

[1] M6 has gairî, 'in a song,' with the obsolete g, which is very like s, and is also used in the word garô in § 22; this is a variant well worth consideration by translators of the Avesta. K20 has only Ashahyâ.

[2] This formula (see B.Yt. II, 64) is recited after every chapter of the Gâthas, but does not appear to be anywhere recited twice; so the words 2 dânar, 'two repetitions,' may perhaps be inserted here in the wrong place, as they are wanting in § 25.

[3] These words are omitted in the Pahlavi text, evidently through mistake.

[4] Visp. XIX, XX follow Yas. XLI in the full Parsi ritual, and the first of them is recited twice.

[5] The Frôbâk is the oldest sacred fire on earth, and the Vâzis*t* is the lightning (see Bund. XVII, 1, 5, SZS. XI, 5, 8–10).

[6] The first chapter of the Ustavaiti Gâtha (see § 2, note 4), so called from its first word ustâ.

[7] See § 7.

28. The twenty stanzas of Ta*d*-thwâ-peresâ (Yas. XLIII) are the twenty judgments (dâ*d*istân) between the beneficent spirit and the evil spirit; and for this *reason* they should every time utter Ta*d*-thwâ-peresâ again[1], because they should utter the original judgment again, and the twentieth time the evil spirit becomes confounded.

29. The eleven stanzas of A*d*-fravakhshyâ (Yas. XLIV) are made up from the six chieftainships[2] and the five accomplishments (farhâng) owing to religion; one is thus, not to do unto others[3] all that which is not well for one's self; the second is to understand fully *what* is well-done and not well-done; the third is to turn from the vile and their conversation (andarag-gûftanŏ); the fourth is to confess *one's* failings to the high-priests, and let them bring the whip; the fifth is not to neglect the season-festivals at *their proper* hour (dên hâsar), *nor* the other things which go to the bridge[4]; and the six chieftainships are not his property who has not these

[1] That is, the first line (ta*d* thwâ peresâ ere*s* môi vao*k*â Ahurâ! 'that I shall ask thee, tell *it* me right, O Ahura!') is repeated at the beginning of each of the first nineteen stanzas, and the first stanza being recited twice (as in all chapters of the Gâthas) these words are recited twenty times before the last stanza is reached. The phrases 'and for this *reason*' and 'because they should utter the original judgment again' are omitted in M6.

[2] These cannot be the same 'chieftainships' (ra*d*îh) as those mentioned in § 11, of which there are only five; but perhaps they are the spiritual chieftainships, or primacies, of the six other regions of the earth (see Bund. XXIX, 1).

[3] Assuming that aîsan stands for aîsân.

[4] The *K*înva*d* bridge, or route of the soul to the other world (see Chap. XII, 31). Part of these fourth and fifth clauses is omitted in K20 by mistake.

five accomplishments, and he is not fit even for teaching.

30. The nineteen stanzas of Kãm-nemôi-zãm (Yas. XLV) are for this reason, that every one may so persevere in his own duty (khvêsakânîh)[1], that while those are our nineteen propitiations (aûsôfrîd)[2], which it says in the Sakâdûm *Nask*[3] should be my own, the strength and power of the angels shall become more considerable, and the destroyer more perishable.

31. The Ustavaiti Gâtha is a Gâtha (gâs) of four chapters[4], and each stanza of five lines (gâs), except Haêkad-aspâ-vakhshyâ (Yas. XLV, 15)[5]. 32. The two repetitions of Ustâ-ahmâi (Yas. XLII, 1)[6] are, one *as* a retention *and* embrace of Aûharmazd, and one *as* a destruction of the fiends; *and* Usta-Ahuremmazdãm (Visp. XXI, 1–5)[7] *in* like manner.

33. Spentâ-mainyû (Yas. XLVI) *has* six stanzas, Yêzî-adâis (Yas. XLVII) twelve stanzas, Ad-mâyavâ (Yas. XLVIII) twelve stanzas, *and* Kad-môi-urvâ (Yas. XLIX) eleven stanzas. 34. The Spentâ-mainyû Gâtha is a Gâtha of four chapters[8], and

[1] Or, it may be, 'through his own intellect (khvêsak hûsh),' or merely another mode of writing khvêskârîh, 'industry.'

[2] Considering each of the stanzas as an offering to, or propitiation of, (Av. usefriti) the angels.

[3] See Chap. X, 25.

[4] Those detailed in §§ 27–30.

[5] Which stanza has only four lines. Pahl. gâs means both the whole hymn and also each line of the hymn.

[6] The first stanza of the Ustavaiti Gâtha, which is recited twice, both in its proper place and at the end of each chapter of that Gâtha (see § 12, note).

[7] Visp. XXI follows Yas. XLV in the full Parsi ritual, and is recited twice.

[8] Those detailed in § 33.

each stanza of four lines; it is made up from the five chieftainships and four classes[1]. 35. The two repetitions of Spe*n*tâ-mainyû (Yas. XLVI, 1)[2] are, one *for* the laudation of the beneficent spirit (spendamat), and one for that of the earth[3].

36. One Spe*n*tem-Ahurem-mazdâm (Visp. XXII, 1–11)[4] is the laudation of the creatures of the beneficent spirit, and one is the destruction of the creatures of the evil spirit.

37. The twenty-two stanzas of the Vohû-khshathra Gâtha (Yas. L) are those twenty-two judgments which are lodging within judges, as written above[5]. 38. The two repetitions of Vohû-khshathrem (Yas. L, 1)[6] are, one the laudation of living (zîndakîh), and one of the supreme Zaratûst.

39. One Vohû-khshathrem yazamaidê (Visp. XXIII, 1–9)[7] is for the laudation of Shatvairô[8], and one of metal. 40. The two repetitions of Avi-

[1] See §§ 9, 11.

[2] The first stanza of the Spe*n*tâ-mainyû Gâtha, which is recited twice, both in its proper place and at the end of each chapter of that Gâtha (see § 12, note).

[3] It seems probable that the Pahlavi writer has here confounded Spendamat, 'the beneficent spirit,' with the archangel Spendarmad who has special charge of the earth; their names being even more alike in Pahlavi than in English, though corrupted from the distinct Avesta forms spe*n*ta mainyu and spe*n*ta ârmaiti, respectively.

[4] Visp. XXII follows Yas. XLIX in the full Parsi ritual, and is recited twice.

[5] See § 6.

[6] The first stanza of the Vohû-khshathra Gâtha, which is recited twice, both at the beginning and end of the chapter (see § 12, note).

[7] Visp. XXIII, 1–9 follows Yas. L in the full Parsi ritual, and is recited twice.

[8] The archangel who has special charge of metal (see § 14, Chap. XV, 5, 14–19, and Bund. I, 26, XXX, 19); the name is here written Shatrîvar.

apãm (Visp. XXIV, 1–12)[1] are, one for the laudation of waters, and one of plants.

41. The nine stanzas of the Vahistôisti (Yas. LII) are on account of those nine things which are[2] . . . the supreme Zaratûstship lodging in the supreme Zaratûsts, the source of fountains, the bridge *over* waters, and even the navigable river, the righteous man, and the righteous woman. 42. And *it is* a Gâtha of one chapter, *and* each stanza of four lines, except Ithâ-î-haithyâ-narô (Yas. LII, 6)[3], for *there* is always one lord and sovereign in the world. 43. And those four lines are for this *reason*, because *it* is declared: *k*athrus hamay*a*u khshapô dahmayâ*d* parô âfritôi*d*[4], 'four times every night is the "blessing of the holy" (Yas. LIX),' and three *times* Srôsh[5], twice Bûshâsp[6], and once Aêshm[7] will come

[1] After the two recitations of Visp. XXIII, 1–9 there follow Vend. XV, XVI, and Visp. XXIII, 10, and then Visp. XXIV, 1–12 is recited twice, in the full Parsi ritual, followed by Visp. XXV.

[2] Some words are evidently lost here; M6 has m followed by a blank space, and K20 has madam, 'on.' It is not quite certain whether the things mentioned are to be reckoned as four, five, or six; but assuming they are five, it is possible that the four things missing in the text are the four remaining chieftainships (see § 11), the rulerships of the house, village, tribe, and province lodged in the rulers of the same, respectively.

[3] Which stanza has five lines, and is, therefore, here considered symbolical of the ruling monarch, or pontiff.

[4] This Avesta passage does not appear to be extant elsewhere, and its Pahlavi translation, given in the text, is not quite correct; it would be better thus: 'through the "blessing of the holy" four times every night;' dahma âfriti (Pahl. dâhmân âfrînô, 'blessing of the holy') is the technical name of Yas. LIX.

[5] See Bund. XIX, 33, XXX, 29. This angel, invoked by the 'blessing' (Yas. LIX, 8), comes to defend mankind against the wiles of Bûshâsp and Aêshm.

[6] The demoness of sloth (see Bund. XXVIII, 26).

[7] The demon of wrath (see Bund. XXVIII, 15–17, 20).

to the material world. 44. And the five *lines* of that one *stanza* (Yas. LII, 6) are for this *reason*, because the assistants of the supreme Zaratûst are five, the house-ruler, the village-ruler, the tribe-ruler, the province-ruler, and she even who is his own wife (nârîk)[1]. 45. The two repetitions of Vahistâ-istis (Yas. LII, 1)[2] are, one *for* the laudation of sovereigns, and one for the laudation of peace (padmân).

46. The two repetitions of Vahistem-Ahuremmazdãm (Visp. XXVI)[3] are, one *for* the laudation of Aûharmazd and the archangels, and one for the destruction of the fiends. 47. The four repetitions of the Airyamana (Yas. LIII)[4] are for the existence of more submission (airmânîh) in the house, village, tribe, and province. 48. The four repetitions of Avad-mizdem (Visp. XXVII) are for the healing of those[5] *who* dwell in the house, village, tribe, and province.

49. The section (kardakŏ) whose beginning is Tad-sôidhis (Yas. LVII, 1–9)[6] is, for the completion

[1] Though bound to be strictly obedient to her husband or guardian, a Mazdayasnian woman occupied a more honourable position in the community than was sanctioned by any other oriental religion.

[2] The first stanza of the Vahistôisti Gâtha, which is recited twice, both at the beginning and end of the chapter (see § 12, note).

[3] Visp. XXVI follows Yas. LII in the full Parsi ritual, and is recited twice, followed by Vend. XIX, XX.

[4] So called from its first words â airyemâ; it is recited four times after Vend. XX, and shortly afterwards Visp. XXVII is also recited four times, as mentioned in § 48.

[5] M6 has 'of the soul,' which is, no doubt, a blunder due to the illegibility of the MS. from which it was copied.

[6] This is the Fshûshô-mãthra ('a spell or prayer for prosperity')

of the Gâthas, taught as *pertaining* to the Gâthas (gâsânîk *kâst*).

50. The beginning of the Gâthas is Ahyâ-yâsâ (Yas. XXVIII, 1), and their end is drigavê vahyô (Yas. LII, 9, end); and *there* are 278 stanzas, 1016 lines, 5567 words (vâ*k*ak), 9999 mârîk, and 16,554 khûr*d*ak[1]. 51. For the lines and stanzas of the Gâthas *were* collected by us, and were:—one hundred stanzas of the Ahunavaiti Gâtha (Yas. XXVIII–XXXIV), of which each stanza is three lines; forty stanzas of the Yasna *of seven chapters* (Yas. XXXV–

---

of Visp. I, 28, II, 30, Yas. LVI, ix, 6, LVIII, 13. Whether the remainder of Yas. LVII is to be considered as pertaining to the Gâthas is uncertain; it is recited in seven sections by the assistant priest, each section from a different position; these seven positions being the stations of the seven assistant priests who are supposed to be present spiritually, and to be arranged three on each side, and one at the south end, of the ceremonial area, while the chief officiating priest occupies the north end (see Haug's Essays, p. 332).

[1] The numbers of the stanzas and lines are correct, as may be seen from the details given in § 51. Regarding the words there is the uncertainty as to what constitutes a compound word, but, taking each compound in Westergaard's edition of the texts as a single word, the total number of words in the 1016 lines is about 6147; and this could be reduced to 5567 only by omitting the Yasna of seven chapters, and somewhat relaxing the rule as to compound words. The meaning of the last two terms, mârîk and khûr*d*ak, is doubtful, but they are certainly not syllables and letters, as the number of syllables exceeds 13,000. In other places (see Bund. I, 21) mârîk usually means 'a word,' but that meaning is expressed by the term vâ*k*ak here. If the number 9999 be correct, mârîk must signify some particular class of syllable which would include about three-fourths of the whole number of syllables. It may be noted, however, that Zâ*d*-sparam, in the particulars he gives about the Gâthas (see SZS. XI, 10, note 6), states the number of mârîk at 6666. The khûr*d*ak or 'small' things are probably the consonants.

XLI, 17), of which each stanza is three lines; sixty-six stanzas of the Ustavaiti Gâtha (Yas. XLII–XLV), of which each stanza is five lines, except Haêkad-aspâ (Yas. XLV, 15), for that one is four lines; forty-one stanzas of the Spentâ-mainyû Gâtha (Yas. XLVI–XLIX), of which each stanza is four lines; twenty-two stanzas of the Vohû-khshathra (Yas. L), of which each stanza is three[1] lines; *and* nine stanzas of the Vahistôisti (Yas. LII), of which each stanza is four lines, except Ithâ-î (Yas. LII, 6), for that one is a stanza of five;—the amount of the foregoing[2] is 278 stanzas[3].

Chapter XIV[4].

0. May it be in the name of God (yazdân) and the good creation!

1. When they consecrate a sacred cake (drônô), *and* it becomes demon worship[5], what and how many *things* are not proper?

[1] All MSS. have 'four,' and then add the exception about Ithâ-î to the account of this Gâtha, instead of mentioning it in the details of the Vahistôisti; which blunder is here corrected.

[2] Reading kadmon yehevûnisnŏ, but the latter word, with part of the ciphers which follow, is torn away in K20, and in M6 it is written so as to resemble the Avesta letters gnn gnn, which are unintelligible, though something like Pahl. yehevûnisnŏ; there can, however, be little doubt as to the general meaning of the phrase.

[3] The number of lines is easily computed from the same details, as follows:—300 + 120 + 329 + 164 + 66 + 37 = 1016 lines, as stated in § 50, and as they still exist in the Gâtha texts.

[4] This chapter is also found in L15, fols. 1–4, and a Pâzand version of §§ 1–3 exists in L22, fols. 126, 127, and L7, fols. 78, 79.

[5] That is, it becomes desecrated through some fault in the cere-

2. The decision is this:—Whoever knowingly consecrates a sacred cake with unpurified *sacred* twigs (baresôm-i apâ*d*iyâ*v*)[1], or with a twig-bundle the number of whose twigs (tâk) is *too* many or *too* few, or of another plant not proper *for sacred* twigs; or holds the end of the twig-bundle to the north[2] *and* utters the Avesta attentively; or whoever consecrates with efficacy unawares, *it* is not to be considered as uttered by him. 3. *Nor by him* who advertently or inadvertently takes a taste (*k*âshnîk), not from the sacred cake with the butter (gâû*s*-dâê)[3], *but* from the frasast; or takes the prayer (vâ*g*)[4] *inwardly* regarding that cake (drônê) before the officiating priest (zôt) takes a taste from the same cake; or shall utter the length of a stanza *in* excess, *and* does not again make a beginning of the *consecration of the* sacred cake; or takes *up* the

---

mony, for any ceremony, which is too imperfect for acceptance by the celestial beings, is supposed to be appropriated by the demons, as performed for their benefit (see Chap. IX, 5). Demon worship is a term also applied to many other evil actions which are supposed to give the demons special power over the perpetrator of them.

[1] See Chap. III, 32, note.

[2] The supposed direction of the demons (see Chaps. X, 7, XII, 18). When praying, a Parsi must face either the sun, or a fire or lamp; and when the direction of the sun is doubtful, or when it is nearly overhead, he must face to the south, even when he is in so low a latitude that the sun may be somewhat to the north of him.

[3] Which usually takes the place of the meat-offering mentioned in Chap. XI, 4–6, and is placed upon one of the cakes on the left side of the table during consecration, while the frasasts are the cakes on the right-hand side of the table (see Chap. III, 32, note).

[4] That is, prepares for eating by muttering the portion of the grace which is to be recited in a low murmur before eating (see Chap. III, 6, note). This clause is omitted in K20.

dedication *formula* (shnûmanŏ)[1] *too* soon or *too* late; or does not utter the Avesta for the fire when he sees the fire.

4. This is how it is when the period *of the day* (gâs)[2] is retained, and how it should be when *one* may relinquish *it;* that is, when even one of the stars created by Aûharmazd is apparent, *it* is retained, *and* when not *it* is relinquished. 5. It is Vand-Aûharmazd[3] *who* said that when, besides Tîstar, Vanand, *or* Satavês[4], one of the zodiacal *stars* (akhtarîk) is apparent, *it* is retained, and when not *it* is relinquished. 6. *There* have been *some* who said that when, besides one of those three, three zodiacal *stars* are apparent, *it* is retained, and when not *it* is relinquished[5].

[1] See Chaps. III, 35, VII, 8.

[2] See Bund. XXV, 9. The text appears to refer to the transition from the Ushahina to the Hâvani Gâh at daybreak; and as certain portions of the prayers are varied according to the period of the day, it is very necessary to know precisely when each period commences, so as to avoid vitiating the whole ceremonial by the use of a wrong prayer.

[3] See Chap. I, 4, note.

[4] Three of the leading stars, probably Sirius, Fomalhaut, and Antares (see Bund. II, 7).

[5] This chapter is followed (in both the old MSS. M6 and K20) by the Pahlavi text of the Patît-i Khûd, or renunciation of one's own *sin*, a translation of which will be found in Bleeck's English version of the Avesta, London, 1864, III, pp. 159–162, derived from Spiegel's German translation of the Pâzand text. This translation is fairly correct on the whole, although some passages might be improved, thus (p. 162), instead of 'all sins which may attack the character of man [or] have attacked my character, if I, on account of much death, have not recognised the death,' &c., we should read 'of all sins which may become the lot of men, and have become my lot, on account of whose excessive number I do not know the number,' &c.

PART III.—*Appendix*[1].

CHAPTER XV[2].

1. *It* is revealed by a passage of the Avesta that Zaratûst, seated before Aûharmazd, always wanted information (vâk) from him; and he spoke to Aûharmazd thus: 'Thy head, hands, feet, hair, face, and tongue are in my eyes just like those even which are my own, and you have the clothing men have; give me a hand, so that I may grasp thy hand.'

2. Aûharmazd said thus: 'I am an intangible spirit; *it* is not possible to grasp my hand.'

3. Zaratûst spoke thus: 'Thou art intangible, and Vohûman, Ardavahist, Shatvaîrô[3], Spendarmad, Horvadad, and Amerôdad are intangible, and when I depart from thy presence, and do not see thee *nor* even them—since of the person whom[4] I see and worship *there* is something—*should* thou and the seven archangels be worshipped by me, or not[5]?'

---

[1] This Appendix consists of a number of fragments found in the old MS. M6, and of somewhat the same character as the Shâyast lâ-shâyast, but they have no claim to be considered as a portion of that work. Excepting Chaps. XVIII, XIX, XXI, they are not found in the other old MS. K20, and beyond the fact that they must be more than five centuries old their age is quite uncertain, though some of them are probably older than others.

[2] This chapter follows the Patît-i Khûd in M6, and is also found in L15, fols. 16–28; for a Pâzand version of it, see L22, fols. 113–122, and L7, fols. 70–76.

[3] Written Shatrôîvar throughout this chapter; these six (see Bund. I, 26) with Aûharmazd himself, are the seven archangels.

[4] Reading mûn, 'whom,' instead of amat, 'when' (see Bund. I, 7, note).

[5] Zaratûst is doubtful whether he ought to worship beings of

4. Aûharmazd said thus: 'They *should* be; I tell thee, O Zaratûst the Spîtâmân! that each individual of us has produced his own one creation (dâyak) for the world, by means of which they may set going in its body, in the world, that activity which they would exercise in the spiritual existence. 5. *In* the world that which is mine, who am Aûharmazd, is the righteous man, of Vohûman are the cattle, of Ardavahist is the fire, of Shatvairô is the metal, of Spendarmad are the earth and virtuous woman, of Horvadad is the water, *and* of Amerôdad is the vegetation. 6. Whoever has learned[1] the care of all these seven, acts and pleases well, his soul never comes into the possession of Aharman and the demons; when he *has* exercised his care of them, he has exercised his care of the seven archangels, *and* ought to teach all mankind in the world.

7. 'Whoever wishes to propitiate Aûharmazd in the world, wishes to promote the things of Aûharmazd; *and* whoever he be, with whom Aûharmazd ever is in every place (gâs)[2], it is necessary *that* he should[3] propitiate the righteous man, in whatever

whose existence he had had no tangible evidence, when he no longer saw them; fearing, perhaps, that they might have been mere dreams or optical illusions. But he is told that each of these spiritual beings is the protector of one class of worldly existences, and that the proper treatment of these existences is a man's best means of reverencing the spiritual beings interested in their welfare.

[1] Or 'taught,' for the verb has both meanings.

[2] Or 'at all times;' it is always doubtful whether gâs means 'time' or 'place.'

[3] Throughout this chapter a conditional meaning is given to the verbs by prefixing hanâ, aê, or ı (all representing Pâz. aê or *e*) to the present tense, instead of affixing it.

has happened *and* whatever occurs to him, and should act for his happiness, and afford him protection from the vile. 8. Since the righteous man is a counterpart of Aûharmazd the lord, *and* when the righteous man acts it is caused by him who is Aûharmazd, whoever propitiates the righteous man, his fame and welfare exist a long time in the world, and the splendour of Aûharmazd and pleasure and joy become his own *in* heaven (vahist).

9. 'Whoever wishes to propitiate Vohûman in the world, *and* wishes to act for *his* happiness, is *he* who wishes to promote the things of Vohûman; and it is necessary for him, so that Vohûman may be ever with him, *that* he should propitiate, at every place (gâs) *and* time, the well-yielding (hûdhâk) cattle, in whatever has happened *and* whatever occurs, and should act for *their* happiness; and in the terrible days and the hurried times (gâs) which *befall* them, he should afford them protection from the oppressive and idle. 10. He should not give *them* as a bribe to a man who is a wicked tyrant, *but* should keep *them* in a pleasant and warm locality and place (gâs); and in summer he should provide them a store of straw and corn, so that it be not necessary to keep *them* on the pastures (*k*arak) in winter; and he should not deliver them *up* for this purpose, that is, "So that I may give them up to the vile," because it is necessary to give to the good; and he should not drive them apart from *their* young, and should not put the young apart from their milk. 11. Since they are counterparts of him (Vohûman) himself in the world, the well-yielding cattle, whoever propitiates those which are well-yielding cattle his fame subsists in the world, and

the splendour of Aûharmazd becomes his own *in* the best existence[1].

12. 'Whoever wishes to propitiate Ardavahist in the world is *he* who wishes to promote his things; and it is necessary for him, so that Ardavahist may be with *him* at every place (gâs) and time, *that* he should propitiate the fire of Aûharmazd, in whatever has happened and whatever occurs, *and* should act for *its* happiness; he should not put upon *it* wood, incense, and holy-water[2] which are stolen and extorted, and he should not cook at it a ration (bâhar) which is violently extorted from men. 13. For it is a counterpart of him (Ardavahist) himself in the world, the fire of Aûharmazd; and whoever propitiates those which are fires of Aûharmazd his fame subsists in the world, and the splendour of Aûharmazd becomes his own *in* heaven.

14. 'Whoever wishes to propitiate Shatvairô in the world, and wishes to act for *his* happiness, is *he* who wishes to promote the things of Shatvairô; *and* whoever he be, it is necessary, so that Shatvairô may be with him at every place and time, *that* he should propitiate melted metal[3] at every place and time. 15. And the propitiation of melted metal is this, that he shall practise habits (âîyînô) of the

[1] See Chap. VI, 3.

[2] Holy-water is not put upon the fire, for that would be sinful, but it is presented to the fire, and the outside of the fire-place is sprinkled or washed with it (see Haug's Essays, p. 403). The 'fire of Aûharmazd' means any fire, whether sacred or used for household purposes.

[3] The word may be read either aîyên or asîn (Av. ayangh, Pers. âyan, âhan, or âhîn), which is usually translated 'iron,' but also means 'metal' generally, as it certainly does here, and very probably likewise in B. Yt. I, 1, 5, II, 14, 22.

heart so unsullied and pure that, when they shall drop melted metal upon *it*, it does not burn. 16. And Âtarôpâ*d* son of Mâraspend[1] even acted in this priestly fashion (dastôbarîh), so that the melted metal, when they drop *it* upon the region (khânŏ) of *his* pure heart, becomes as pleasant to him as though[2] they were milking milk upon it. 17. When they drop *it* upon the region of the heart of the wicked and sinners, it burns, and they die. 18. And *one* should not commit sin with metal, and with its burning; and should not give gold and silver to the vile. 19. For it is a counterpart of Shatvaîrô himself in the world for him, *and* since he propitiates those which are melted metals, his fame subsists in the world, and the splendour of Aûharmazd becomes his own *in* heaven.

20. 'Whoever wishes to propitiate Spendarma*d* in the world, wishes to promote the things of Spendarma*d*; *and* whoever he be, it is necessary, so that Spendarma*d* may be with him, *that* he should propitiate, at every place and time, the earth and virtuous woman, in whatever has happened and in whatever occurs, *and* should act for *their* happiness. 21. For when he does not spread out (barâ lâ vêshê*d*) this earth, and it does not separate one *piece* from another, his body also *will* not be always

[1] The primate and prime minister of Shâpûr II (A.D. 309–379), who is said to have undergone the ordeal of having melted metal poured upon his chest, in order to prove the truth of the Mazdayasnian religion. The metal used is generally called rûî, 'brass,' but here it is aîyên, 'iron,' though a more fusible metal than either was, no doubt, used.

[2] Reading amat, 'though,' instead of mûn, 'which' (see Bund. I, 7, note).

living upon *it at* every place and time[1]. 22. On account of the lodgment of Spendarmad in the earth, when a robber, violent and worthy of death, and wives who are disrespectful to *their* husbands walk about in sinfulness in the world, and their husbands are active *and* virtuous, it becomes much distressed (zanŏîk). 23. This, too, is declared, that, whenever this *earth* becomes distressed (zanîk), it is most *so* at the time when sinners worthy of death are most; for *it* is declared, when sinners worthy of death walk upon *it*, *its* pain and uneasiness become as distressing (dûskhvâr) to it as the dead son on *her* bosom *to* a mother; *and* the lodgment of Spendarmad in the earth is little *in* that place whereon sinners worthy of death walk. 24. And her[2] happiness arises from that place when they shall perform tillage and cultivation on it, and a virtuous son is born upon it, and they rear cattle upon it; and it is so one's fame subsists in the world, and the splendour of Aûharmazd becomes one's own *in* heaven.

25. 'Whoever wishes to propitiate Horvadad and Amerôdad in the world, whereas that is necessary which promotes their things, whoever he be it is necessary *that* he should propitiate, at every place and time, the water and vegetation of Horvadad and Amerôdad, in whatever has happened and in

[1] Meaning that the earth must be tilled in order to support its inhabitants, but there is some doubt as to the exact wording of the translation.

[2] Spendarmad is a female archangel: perhaps, however, the earth is meant here, as it is said to be most pleased by the existence of fire-temples, dwellings of righteous people, cultivation, stables, and pastures (see Vend. III, 1–20).

whatever occurs, *and* should seize upon those who consume *and* steal water and vegetation[1]. 26. And he should not act oppressively, he should not walk the world in sinfulness, and should not bring bodily refuse (hîkhar), dead matter (nasâî)[2], *or* any other pollution to water; he should not destroy vegetation unlawfully, and should not give fruit to the idle and vile. 27. For when he commits sin against water and vegetation, even when it is committed against merely a single twig of it, and he has not atoned for it, when[3] he departs from the world the spirits of all the plants in the world stand up high in front of that man, and do not let him go to heaven. 28. And when he has committed sin against water, even when it is committed against a single drop of it, and he has not atoned for *it*, that also stands up as high as the plants stood, and does not let him go to heaven. 29. Since they are counterparts of Horvada*d* and Amerôda*d* themselves, the water and vegetation, whoever propitiates those which be water and vegetation, his fame subsists in the world, and a share of the splendour of Aûharmazd becomes his *in* heaven.'

30. Aûharmazd said this also to Zaratûst, namely:

[1] Reading mûn, 'who,' instead of amat, 'when,' and dûgend, 'they steal,' instead of dûgd (perhaps for dûgak, 'thievish'); and supposing the verb to be vakhdûnê*d*, 'takes, seizes,' and not vâdûnê*d*, 'makes, acts.' If the reverse be assumed, the translation would be thus: 'should act for their *happiness*. When they consume water and vegetation he should not act thievishly and oppressively.'

[2] For the meaning of hîkhar and nasâî, see note on Chap. II, 30.

[3] Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'who' (see Bund. I, 7, note).

'My will and pleasure is *that* the observance and propitiation of these seven archangels shall be *as I have* told thee; and do thou, too, speak thus unto men, so that they may commit no sin and may not become wicked, and the splendour of Aûharmazd may become their own *in* heaven.'

31. Completed in peace, pleasure, *and* joy[1].

Chapter XVI.

0. In the name of God (yazdân) I write a paragraph (babâ) where the sins which are as it were small are *mentioned* one *by* one.

1. The least sin is a Farmân; *and* a Farmân is three coins of five annas[2], some say three coins. 2. An Âgerept is, as regards whatever weapon (snêś) men strike with in the world, whenever the weapon is taken in hand; and taken up by *any* one four finger-*breadths* from the ground *it is* the root[3] of an

[1] This is the most usual concluding phrase of short Pahlavi texts, and indicates that this account of the best mode of propitiating the archangels is to be considered as a separate text. It is followed in M6 by the paragraphs which constitute the next two chapters.

[2] Reading 3 nûmâî-i 5 ânak, but this is uncertain, and if correct must have been written in India, as the anna is an Indian coin worth nearly three halfpence. The coin of five annas was probably a dirham, as the dirham being about fifty grains of silver (see note on *gûgan* in Chap. I, 2), and the rûpî having formerly been less than 180 grains in Gugarât, the former would be nearly five-sixteenths of the latter, that is, five annas. It may, therefore, be assumed that the amount of the Farmân is here taken at three dirhams, as in Chap. XI, 2; but in § 5 it appears to be $3\frac{1}{2}$ dirhams, and in Chap. I, 2 as much as sixteen dirhams.

[3] See Chap. II, 69, note.

Âgerept for him; *and* the retribution and punishment for an Âgerept should be fifty-three dirhams (*gûgan*)[1]. 3. When the weapon turns downwards *it is* the root of an Avôîrist for him, and his sentence (dînâ) is to be changed; his retribution *and* punishment should be seventy-three dirhams[2], which is when anything further occurs. 4. When he shall lay the weapon on *any* one *it is* the root of an Aredûs for *him*, and his retribution *and* punishment are thirty stîrs; if the wound thereby made by him be one-fifth of a span (dîst)[3] *it is* no root of an Aredûs *for* him, and his retribution *and* punishment are the same thirty stîrs.

5. I write the degrees of sin:—A Srôshô-*k*aranâm[4] is three coins and a half, a Farmân is a Srôshô-*k*aranâm, an Âgerept is sixteen stîrs, an Avôîrist is twenty-five stîrs, an Aredûs is thirty, a Khôr is sixty, a Bâzâî is ninety, a Yât is a hundred and eighty, *and* a Tanâpûhar is three hundred[5].

6. The good works which are in the *ceremonial*

---

[1] § 5 says sixteen stîrs, which, if equivalent to these fifty-three dirhams, would imply $3\frac{5}{16}$ dirhams to the stîr, instead of four as usually stated (see Chap. I, 2). The amounts mentioned in Chaps. I, 2, XI, 2 are very different.

[2] § 5 says twenty-five stîrs, which, at $3\frac{5}{16}$ dirhams to the stîr (as in the case of Âgerept), would be very nearly eighty-three dirhams, which is probably the number we ought to read in the text, and also, possibly, in Chap. XI, 2.

[3] The dîst is a span of ten finger-breadths (about $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches) between the thumb and middle finger (see Bund. XXVI, 3, note).

[4] See Chap. IV, 14, note. Comparing the amount here mentioned with that of the Farmân in § 1, the Srôshô-*k*aranâm, which is here made equal to the Farmân, appears to amount to $3\frac{1}{2}$ dirhams, which agrees very nearly with the statement in Chap. X, 24, but differs from that in Chap. XI, 2.

[5] For similar scales of degrees, see Chaps. I, 2, XI, 2.

worship of the sacred beings (yaẓisn-i yazdân):—*Consecrating* a sacred cake (drôn)[1] is a good work of one Tanâpûhar[2]; a *form of* worship (yaṡt)[3] is a hundred Tanâpûhars; a Visparaḍ[4] is a thousand Tanâpûhars; a Dô-hômâst[5] is ten thousand; a Dvâẓdah-hômâst is a hundred thousand, *and* the merit (kirfak) of every one which is *performed* with holy-water is said *to be* a hundred to one; a Hâḍôkht[6] is two thousand Tanâpûhars, *and* with holy-water it becomes a hundred to one[7].

---

[1] See Chap. III, 32. The Persian Rivâyats explain that this is when the proper ritual is merely recited, without using the sacred twigs and other ceremonial apparatus; when the twigs are used the merit is ten times as great.

[2] That is, sufficient to counterbalance a Tanâpûhar sin (see Chap. I, 1, 2).

[3] A Yaṡt is a formula of praise in honour of some particular angel; when recited with all the accessories of sacred twigs and other ceremonial apparatus, the merit is ten times as great as is mentioned in the text.

[4] The Visparaḍ service includes the Yasna, and when performed with the use of the sacred twigs, holy-water, and other ceremonial apparatus the merit is ten times as great as here stated; some authorities say it is a hundred times as great.

[5] This kind of Hômâst is not mentioned in Dastûr Jâmâspji's explanation of this species of religious service (see B. Yt. II, 59, note); it occurs, however, in the Nîrangistân as a distinct kind, though called merely Hômâst in the Persian Rivâyats.

[6] See B. Yt. III, 25.

[7] The merits of other prayers and ceremonies are detailed in the Persian Rivâyats; thus, that of the ordinary recital of a Vendidad (which includes both Yasna and Visparaḍ) is sixty thousand Tanâpûhars, and when with sacred twigs and holy-water it is a hundred thousand; that of the recital of any Nyâyiṡ (see Chap. VII, 4), or of taking and retaining a prayer (vâg, see Chap. III, 6) inwardly, is one Tanâpûhar.

Chapter XVII.

1. This, too, Zaratûst asked of Aûharmazd, that is: 'Which is the time when *one* must not eat meat?'

2. Aûharmazd gave a reply thus: 'In a house when a person shall die, until three nights are completed, nothing whatever of meat is to be placed on a sacred cake (drôn) therein and in *its* vicinity[1]; but these, such as milk, cheese, fruit, eggs, and preserves, are to be placed; *and* nothing whatever of meat is to be eaten *by* his relations[2]. 3. In all the three days it is necessary to perform the ceremonial (yazisn) of Srôsh for this *reason*, because Srôsh will be able to save his soul from the hands of the demons *for* the three days[3]; and when *one* con-

[1] Reading va hamgôshak, the latter word being apparently used in a parallel passage in Pahl. Vend. VIII, 64 in old MSS.; this reading is, however, somewhat doubtful here, and perhaps we ought to read 'on a sacred cake in that roofed place (pavan zak vâmkînîh);' the last word being a possible term for 'roofing' as it stands, though it may be a miswriting of vâmpôs (Pers. bâmpôs, 'roofing').

[2] The Parsis, nowadays (Dastûr Hoshangji says), do not cook for three days under a roof where a death has occurred, but obtain food from their neighbours and friends; but if the cookroom be under a separate roof, as often happens in India, they have no objection to cooking there.

[3] The soul is supposed to hover about the body for the first three nights after death, during which time it has to rely upon the angel Srôsh (see Bund. XXX, 29) for protection from the demons, which the angel, it is presumed, will afford more efficiently if properly propitiated by the surviving relatives. At the third dawn after death (that is, the dawn of the fourth day inclusive of the day of death) the soul is supposed to depart finally for the other world (see AV. IV, 8–36, XVII, 5–27).

stantly performs a ceremonial *at* every period (gâs)[1] in the three days *it* is *as* good as though they should celebrate the whole religious ritual (hamâk dînô) at one time. 4. And after the third night, *at* dawn, *one* is to consecrate three sacred cakes (drôn), one *for* Rashnû *and* Âstâd, the second *for* Vâê the good[2], *and* the third *for* the righteous guardian spirit (ardâî fravard); and clothing[3] is to be placed upon the sacred cake of the righteous guardian spirit. 5. For the fourth day it is allowable to slaughter a sheep[4], *and* the fourth day the ceremonial (yazisn) of the righteous guardian spirit is to be performed; and afterwards are the tenth-day, the monthly, and, then, the annual *ceremonies;* and the first monthly is exactly on the thirtieth day, and the annual on the particular day[5]. 6. When he

[1] These periods of the day are five in summer, and four in winter (see Bund. XXV, 9, 10).

[2] The usual name of the angel Râm (the Vayu of Râm Yt.) who, with the angels Rashnû and Âstâd, is supposed to be stationed at the Kinvad bridge, where the soul has to give an account of its actions during life shortly after the dawn following the third night after death (see AV. V, 3, CI, 21, note, Mkh. II, 115).

[3] This clothing must be new and good, and is supposed to be supplied to the spirit to prevent its appearing unclothed in the other world, where the clothing of the soul is said to be formed 'out of almsgivings' (Chap. XII, 4); to fulfil which condition the clothes provided are presented to the officiating priests (see Saddar Bundahis LXXXVII).

[4] Or 'goat.'

[5] That is, on the exact anniversary of the death; the sentence is rather obscure, but this appears to be the meaning. With regard to the ceremonies after a death, the Persian Rivâyats give more details, which may be summarized as follows:—On each of the first three days a Srôsh Yast is performed and a Srôsh Drôn consecrated (see Chap. III, 32, note). On the third night, in the middle of the Aiwisrûthrem Gâh (dusk to midnight), a renuncia-

shall die *at* a place distant *from that* where the information arrives, when the three *days' ceremonies* (satûîh) are celebrated *at* that place where he shall die *it* is well, when not, their celebration is *to be at* this place, *and* from the *time* when the information arrives, until three nights are completed, it is necessary to perform the ceremonial of Srôsh, *and* after three days and nights it is necessary to perform the ceremonial of the righteous guardian spirit.'

7. *In* one place *it* is declared, that of him whose begetting is owing to the demons, of him who commits sodomy, and of him who performs the religious rites (dînô) of apostasy, of none of the three do

---

tion of sin is performed in the house of the deceased; and in the Ushahin Gâh (midnight to dawn) four Drôns are consecrated, one dedicated to the good Vâê (Nâ-î veh), one to Rashn and Âstâd, one to Srôsh, and one to the righteous (ashôân), and in front of the last are placed new and clean clothes with fruit, but without an egg. On the fourth day, at sunrise, the Dahmân Âfrîngân (Yas. LIX) is recited, and then the Khûrshêd and Mihir Nyâyis, after which the people in the house can first eat fresh-cooked meat. During the fourth day also the Yast of the righteous is performed, and the Drôn of the righteous is consecrated; and the same again on the tenth day, together with the recitation of the Dahmân Âfrîngân. On the thirtieth day the Sîrôzah (praise of the thirty days) is to be celebrated, with the dedication to the thirty days; thirty-three beans (lûvak) and thirty-three eggs, with fruit, being placed in front of the Drôn, which is consecrated in the presence of fire; and, afterwards, the assistant priest consecrates a Drôn for Srôsh. The next day the chief priest consecrates a Drôn for the righteous; a suit of clothes and fruit being placed in front of the Drôn. And each day a Yast of the righteous is performed, a Drôn of the righteous is consecrated, and an Âfrîngân recited. On the same day every month the same Yast, Drôn, and Âfrîngân are celebrated; a priest also undergoes the Bareshnûm for the deceased, a Gêtî-kharîd (see Bund. XXX, 28) is performed, and three Vendidads dedicated to Srôsh. On each day at the end of a year the Sîrôzah Yast is performed, and a Drôn

they restore the dead[1], for this *reason*, because he whose begetting is owing to the demons is himself a demon[2], and the soul of him who commits sodomy will become a demon[3], and the soul of him *who* performs the religious rites of apostasy will become a darting snake[4].

8. This, too, is revealed by the Avesta[5], that Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Give ye up the persons of all men, with the submissiveness of worshippers, to that man *to* whom the whole Avesta and Zand is easy[6], so that he may make you acquainted with duties and good works; because men go to hell for this *reason*, when they do not submit *their* persons to priestly control (aêrpatistân), and do not become acquainted with duties and good works.'

9. Query:—There is an action which, according to the Avesta[7], is not good for a person to do, *and* the sentence of 'worthy of death' is set upon *it*; for *one's* better preservation is *one* not to do that action,

dedicated to the thirty days is consecrated, thirty-three beans being placed, with one Drôn, one Frasast (see Chap. III, 32, note), one pentagonal Drôn as the sun, one crescent-shaped as the moon, thirty-three eggs, and fruit, in front of the Drôn, which is consecrated in the presence of fire; afterwards, the assistant priest consecrates a Drôn for Srôsh, and recites the Dahmân Âfrîngân, and the next day the chief priest consecrates a Drôn for the righteous, a suit of clothes being placed before the Drôn, and recites the Dahmân Âfrîngân.

[1] That is, there is no resurrection for them.

[2] And, therefore, not immortal according to the Parsi faith.

[3] Compare Vend. VIII, 98–106.

[4] Which being a creature of the evil spirit is doomed to destruction.

[5] But it is doubtful if the passage be extant.

[6] That is, the man who knows the whole scripture and commentary by heart.

[7] Reading pavan Avistâk, instead of Avistâk pavan.

or to accomplish *and* urge *it* on, for the advance of religion in a state of uncertainty (var-hômandîh)? 10. The answer is this, that when they act well for *their* better preservation *there* is no fear, on account of acting well, but *one* is not to forsake that[1], too, though *it* be not goodness; a forsaken duty is very bad, for a contempt of it enters into one.

11. This, too, is declared, that Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmazd thus: 'From what place do these people rise again? from that place where they first went into *their* mothers, or from that place where the mothers have given *them* birth, or from that place where *their* bodies happen *to be* (aûftêd)?' 12. Aûharmazd gave a reply thus: 'Not from that place where they have gone into *their* mothers, nor from that place where they have been born from *their* mothers, nor from that place where *their* bodies and flesh happen *to be*, for they rise from that place where the life went out from their bodies.' 13. And this, too, he asked, that is: 'Whence do they raise[2] *him* again who is suspended from anything, *and* shall die in the air?' 14. The reply *was:* 'From that place where his bones and flesh first fall to the ground; hence, except when he shall die on a divan (gâs) or a bed (vistarg), before they carry him away, whatever *it*

[1] The religion in a position of difficulty appears to be the meaning, but the reply to this question of casuistry is by no means clear.

[2] Literally, 'they rise,' both here and in the next section, but the change to the plural number is perplexing, unless it refers to those who prepare the resurrection of the dead (Bund. XXX, 4, 7, 17), as here assumed by reading 'they raise.'

is, a fragment[1] is to be taken and to be laid across his limbs; for when the usage is not so, they raise him again from that place where his body arrives at the ground.'

15. Completed in peace, pleasure, *and* joy[2].

Chapter XVIII[3].

1. It is said in revelation that Aêshm[4] rushed into the presence of Aharman[5], and exclaimed thus: 'I *will* not go into the world, because Aûharmazd, the lord, has produced three things in the world, *to* which it is not possible *for* me to do anything whatever.'

2. Aharman exclaimed thus: 'Say which are those three things.'

3. Aêshm exclaimed thus: 'The season-festival

[1] Apparently a fragment of the place whereon the death took place is meant by ka*d*âm-ı pârak.

[2] The miscellaneous passages which follow Sls. in M6 terminate at this point, which is the end of the first volume of that MS. The next three chapters are taken from the latter end of the other volume of M6.

[3] Both this chapter and the next are also found in K20, the first being placed before the first part of Sls., and the second before the second part. Chap. XVIII also occurs in Dastûr Jâmâspji's MS. of the Bundahi*s*, just after Chap. XXXIV of that text (see Introduction, p. xxx), and a Pâzand version of it occupies the same position in L7 and L22, and is translated by Justi as the last chapter of the Bundahi*s*, in his German translation of that work (see Introduction, p. xxvi).

[4] The demon of wrath (see Bund. XXVIII, 15–17).

[5] See Bund. I, 3. Aêshm, as the chief agent of the evil spirit in his machinations against mankind, rushes into his master's presence in hell to complain of the difficulties he encounters.

(gâsânbâr)[1], the *sacred* feast (myazd), and next-of-kin marriage (khvêtûk-das).'

[1] See Bund. XXV, 1, 3, 6. The six Gâhanbârs or season-festivals are held, respectively, on the 45th, 105th, 180th, 210th, 290th, and 365th days of the Parsi year. An explanation of the cause of the inequality of these intervals has been proposed by Mr. Khurshedji Rustamji Cama, which is well worthy of attention, and appears to have been first published in 1867 in Nos. 7 and 8 of his Zartosti Abhyas. His view is that the mediæval Zoroastrians, beginning their year at the vernal equinox (Bund. XXV, 6, 13, 21), recognised originally only two seasons, a summer of seven months and a winter of five (Bund. XXV, 7), and they held a festival, not only at the end of each season, that is, on the 210th and 365th days of their year, but also in the middle of each season, that is, on the 105th and 290th days of their year. That these two latter were mid-season festivals is proved by their Avesta names, Maidhyô-shema and Maidhyâirya, beginning with the word maidhya, 'middle.' Later on, the Zoroastrians divided their year into four equal seasons, spring, summer, autumn, and winter (Bund. XXV, 20), and without interfering with their old festivals, they would, no doubt, have wished to celebrate the end and middle of each of their new seasons. The ends of these four seasons occur on the 90th, 180th, 270th, and 365th days of the year, and their mid-points are the 45th, 135th, 225th, and 320th days; but the Zoroastrians already held a festival on the 365th day, and celebrated midsummer and midwinter (the 135th and 320th days of their new calendar) on the 105th and 290th days of their year, and they would consider the 90th, 225th, and 270th days too close to their old festivals of the 105th, 210th, and 290th days to allow of the former being held as new festivals; so that they would have only the midspring festival, on the 45th day, and that of the end of summer, on the 180th day, to add to their old festivals. It may be objected that the end of summer was already celebrated on the 210th day, and, for this reason, it is more probable that the festivals were intended to celebrate the beginnings and mid-points of the seasons, rather than their ends and mid-points. According to this view, the six season-festivals were intended, respectively, to celebrate midspring, midsummer, the beginning of autumn, the beginning of winter, midwinter, and the beginning of spring. That they were also intended to commemorate, respectively, the

4. Aharman exclaimed thus: 'Enter into the season-festival! if one of those *present* shall steal a single thing the season-festival is violated, and the affair is *in accordance* with[1] thy wish; enter into the *sacred* feast[2]! if only one of those *present* shall chatter the *sacred* feast is violated, and the affair is *in accordance* with thy wish; *but* avoid next-of-kin marriage[3]! because I do not know a remedy for it; for whoever *has* gone four times near to *it will* not become parted from the possession of Aûharmazd and the archangels[4].'

---

creations of the sky, water, earth, vegetation, animals, and man, is a belief of later times, derived probably from a foreign source.

[1] Reading pavan, 'with,' instead of barâ, 'beyond,' as in the next clause of the sentence (see p. 176, note 5).

[2] By the sacred feast is meant the consecration of sacred cakes, with meat-offerings and the recital of the Âfrîngâns or blessings (see Chaps. III, 32, XI, 4).

[3] By next-of-kin marriage Parsis nowadays understand the marriage of first cousins, which they consider a specially righteous act; and the passages in Pahlavi texts, which appear to approve of marriages between brother and sister, father and daughter, and mother and son, they explain as referring to the practices of heretics (see Dastûr Pêshôtan's English translation of the Dînkard, p. 96, note). How far this explanation may be correct has not been ascertained, for the passages in question are rather obscure, and have not been thoroughly examined. But it is quite conceivable that the Parsi priesthood, about the time of the Muhammadan conquest (when the practice of next-of-kin marriage was most extolled), were anxious to prevent marriages with strangers, in order to hinder conversions to the foreign faith; and that they may, therefore, have extended the range of marriage among near relations beyond the limits now approved by their descendants.

[4] The object of this chapter is evidently to extol the religious merit of next-of-kin marriage. A Persian version of the passage, contained in M5, fols. 54, 55, adds the following details: 'Therefore it is necessary to understand, that the chief next-of-kin marriage is that of a sister's daughter and brother's son; a medium

Chapter XIX.

1. The Yathâ-ahû-vairyô [1] *formulas* that are necessary in each place, and how *they* are to be spoken in performing anything [2].

2. One *by him* who goes forth to an assembly, or before grandees *and* chieftains, or on any business; or when he goes to ask for what he wants (val khvahîsnŏ); also when he quits any business; in each of these situations *he* is to say only one *formula*, so that his business may proceed more promptly [3].

---

next-of-kin marriage is that of a brother's son and a younger (dîgar) brother's daughter, or of a sister's son and a younger sister's daughter; and inferior to a medium next-of-kin marriage is that of a sister's son and a younger brother's daughter. It is necessary to know that any person who contracts a next-of-kin marriage, if *his* soul be *fit* for hell, will arrive among the ever-stationary (see Chap. VI, 2), if it is one of the ever-stationary it will arrive at heaven. Another particular is to be added; if any one, in departing, settles and strives for the next-of-kin marriage betrothal (paîvand) of a next brother it is a good work of a thousand Tanâpûhars; if any one strives to break off a next-of-kin marriage betrothal he is worthy of death.'

[1] See Bund. I, 21.

[2] It appears from the ninth book of the Dînkard, that the contents of this chapter are derived from the first fargard of the Sûdkar Nask (see B. Yt. I, 1, note). The account given by the Dînkard contains fewer details, but, so far as it goes, it is in accordance with our text, except that it seems to transfer the object of § 10 to § 12, and removes the objects of §§ 12, 13 one step onwards; it also adds 'going on a bridge' to § 2. The Persian Rivâyat of Bahman Pûngyah gives further details, as will be mentioned in the notes below.

[3] The Persian Rivâyat adds to these occasions, when he goes on the water, or a river, or goes to borrow, or to ask repayment of a loan, or goes out from his house, or comes into it.

3. *That* a blessing (âfrînô) may be more benedictory, for this *reason one* utters two *formulas*; for *there* are two kinds of blessing, one is that which is in the thoughts [1], and one is that which is in words.

4. Four are for coming out more thankfully when at a season-festival [2].

5. Five *by him* who goes to atone for sin, in order to expel the fiend; because it is necessary to undergo punishment by the decision (dastôbarih) of these five persons, the house-ruler, the village-ruler, *the tribe-ruler* [3], the province-ruler, and the supreme Zaratûst; and five Ashem-vohûs [4] are to be uttered by him at the end.

6. Six *by him* who goes to seek power, and to battle, so that he may be more successful.

---

[1] The words pavan mînisn are guessed, for this first clause is omitted by mistake in M6, and these two words are illegible in K20, except part of the last letter.

[2] K20 substitutes for val, 'at,' the following mutilated phrase: [. . . . axhau khshapô kadârkâi pavan kadârkâi] madam vazlûnêd râdîh-i; the portion in brackets being evidently a fragment from the Hâdôkht Srôsh Yt. 5 with Pahlavi translation (a passage which treats of the efficacy of reciting the Yathâ ahûvairyô). If this fragment be not merely a marginal gloss, which has crept into the text by mistake, we must translate the whole section as follows: 'Four are for the more thankful coming out of the liberality of a season-festival, when the *passage*, "*on that day nor* on that night *comes there* anything whatever on any one," goes on.' The Dînkard has merely: 'Four by *him* who is at the invocation of the chiefs *of creation and* the celebration of a season-festival.' The Persian Rivâyats omit the section altogether.

[3] This person is omitted both in M6 and K20, but he is wanted to make up the five. This section is omitted by the Persian Rivâyats.

[4] See Bund. XX, 2. These are to be recited after the punishment is over.

7. Seven *by him* who goes to perform the worship of God (yazdân), *so that* the archangels may come more forward [1] at the worship.

8. Eight *by him* who goes to perform the ceremonial of the righteous guardian spirit.

9. Nine *by him* who goes to sow corn; these he utters for this *reason*, because the corn will ripen (rasêd) in nine months, *and* so that the corn may come forward he will make the mischief of the noxious creatures less [2].

10. Ten *by him* who goes to seek a wife, so that the presents may be favourable for the purpose.

11. Ten *by him* who wishes to allow the male *access* to beasts *of burden* and cattle, so that it may be more procreative [3].

12. Eleven *by him* who goes to the lofty mountains, so that the glory of mountains and hills may bless him *and* be friendly [4].

13. Twelve *by him* who goes to the low districts, so that the glory of that country and district may bless him and be friendly [5].

14. Thirteen *by him* who shall become pathless; *at* that same place he shall utter *them;* or *by him*

[1] Or 'may arrive earlier;' there being seven archangels has suggested the number seven. This section and the next are omitted by the Persian Rivâyats.

[2] The Persian Rivâyats add general cultivation, planting trees, and cohabitation with one's wife.

[3] Instead of §§ 10, 11 the Persian Rivâyats have buying quadrupeds, and driving pegs into the ground for picketing them.

[4] The Persian Rivâyats substitute conference with a maiden, seeking a wife, giving one's children in marriage, and obtaining anything from another.

[5] The Persian Rivâyats add going up hills, mounting anything lofty, going on a bridge, and losing one's way.

who shall pass over a bridge and a river, so that the spirit of that water may bless him[1]; because the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô is greater and more successful *than* everything in the Avesta as to all rivers, all wholesomeness, and all protection.

15. Religion is as connected with the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô as the hair is more connected with the glory of the face; any one, indeed, would dread (samâ*d*) to separate hairiness *and* the glory of the face.

Chapter XX[2].

1. *In* one place it is declared that it is said by revelation (dînô) that a man is to go as much as possible (*k*and vê*s*-ast) to the abode of fires[3], and the salutation (nîyâyi*s*nô) of fire[4] is to be performed *with* reverence; because three times every day the archangels form an assembly in the abode of fires, and shed good works and righteousness there; and then the good works and righteousness, which are shed there, become more lodged in the body of *him* who goes much thither, and performs many salutations of fire *with* reverence.

[1] The Persian Rivâyats substitute going to and entering a city or town; they also add twenty-one recitations on setting out on a journey, so that the angel Bahrâm may grant a safe arrival.

[2] The contents of this chapter conclude the MS. M6; a few lines even having been lost at the end of that MS., though preserved in some of its older copies. A more modern copy, in the MS. No. 121 of the Ouseley collection in the Bodleian Library at Oxford, contains §§ 4–17, appended to the Bundahis. Complete Pâzand versions, derived from M6, occur in L7 and L22, immediately following the Pâzand of Chap. XVIII.

[3] The fire-temple.

[4] That is, the Âtâ*s* Nyâyi*s* is to be recited.

2. This, too, that the nature of wisdom is just like fire; for, in this world, *there* is nothing which shall become so complete as that thing which is made with wisdom; and every fire, too, that they kindle and *one* sees from far, makes manifest *what is* safe and uninjured (aîrâkht); whatever is safe in fire is safe for ever, and whatever is uninjured in fire is uninjured for ever.

3. This, too, that a disposition in which is no wisdom is such-like as a clear, unsullied (anâhûk) fountain which is choked (bastŏ) and never goes into use; and the disposition with which *there* is wisdom is such-like as a clear, unsullied fountain, over which an industrious man stands *and* takes *it* into use; cultivation restrains *it*, and it gives crops (bar) to the world.

4. This, too, that these three things are to be done by men, to force the *demon of* corruption (nasûs)[1] far away from the body, to be steadfast in the religion, and to perform good works. 5. To force the *demon of* corruption far away from the body is this, that before the sun *has* come up *one* is to wash the hands[2] and face with bull's urine and water; to be steadfast in the religion is this, that *one* is to reverence the sun[3]; and to perform good works is this, that *one* is to destroy several noxious creatures.

6. This, too, that the three greatest concerns of men are these, to make him who is an enemy a friend, to make him who is wicked righteous, and to make him who is ignorant learned. 7. To make

[1] See Chap. II, 1. [2] See Chap. VII, 7.
[3] See Chap. VII, 1–6.

an enemy a friend is this, that out of the worldly wealth *one* has before him he keeps a friend in mind; to make a wicked *one* righteous is this, that from the sin, whereby he becomes wicked, *one* turns him away; and to make an ignorant *one* learned is this, that *one* is to manage himself so that he who is ignorant may learn of him.

8. This, too, *that* the walks of men are to be directed chiefly to these three places, to the abode of the well-informed, to the abode of the good, *and* to the abode of fires[1]. 9. To the abode of the well-informed, that so *one* may become wiser, and religion be more lodged in *one's* person; to the abode of the good for this *reason*, that so, among good and evil, he may thereby renounce the evil and carry home *the good*[2]; and to the abode of fires for this *reason*, that so the spiritual fiend may turn away from him.

10. This, too, that *he* whose actions are for the soul, the world is then his own, and the spiritual *existence* more his own; and *he* whose actions are for the body, the spiritual *existence* has *him* at pleasure, *and* they snatch the world from him compulsorily.

11. This, too, that Bakht-âfrîd[3] said, that every Gâtha (gâsân)[4] of Aûharmazd has been an opposi-

[1] The fire-temple.

[2] Assuming that the word *sapîrîh*, 'the good,' has been omitted by mistake; the sentence appearing to be unintelligible without it.

[3] See B. Yt. I, 7.

[4] The word gâsân being plural, Gâtha must be taken in its collective sense as an assemblage of hymns. The word can also be read dahîsn, 'creation,' but this meaning seems improbable here.

tion of the one adversary, and the renunciation *of sin* (patîtîk)[1] for the opposition of every fiend.

12. This, too, that, regarding the world, anxiety is not to be suffered, it is not to be considered as anything whatever, and is not to be let slip from the hand. 13. Anxiety is not to be suffered for this *reason*, because that which is ordained will happen; it is not to be considered as anything whatever for this *reason*, because should it be expedient it is necessary to abandon *it;* and it is not to be let slip from the hand for this *reason*, because it is proper, in the world, to provide a spiritual *existence* for oneself.

14. This, too, that the best thing is truth, and the worst thing is deceit; and *there* is *he* who speaks true *and* thereby becomes wicked, and *there* is *he* who speaks false *and* thereby becomes righteous.

15. This, too, that fire is not to be extinguished[2], for *this* is a sin; and *there* is *he* who extinguishes *it*, *and* is good.

16. This, too, is declared, that nothing is to be given to the vile; and *there* is *he by* whom the best and most pleasant ragout (khûrdîk) is to be given to the vile.

17. On these, too, is the attention of men *to be fixed*, because *there* is a remedy for everything but death, a hope for everything but wickedness, everything will lapse[3] except righteousness, it is possible

[1] That is, the Patit or formula of renunciation (see Chap. IV, 14).

[2] Literally, 'killed.'

[3] M6 ends at this point, the next folio being lost. The remainder of the chapter has been recovered from a copy in Bombay, checked by the Pâz. MSS. L7 and L22, all of which must have

to manage everything but temper (gôhar), and it is possible *for* everything to change but divine providence (bakô-bakhtô).

18. This, too, is declared, that Frêdûn[1] wished to slay Az-i Dahâk[2], *but* Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Do not slay *him* now, for the earth will become full of noxious creatures.'

Chapter XXI[3].

1. I write the indication of the midday shadow, may it be fortunate!

2. Should the sun come[4] into Cancer *the shadow* is one foot of the man, *at* the fifteenth *degree* of Cancer *it* is one foot; *when* the sun is at Leo *it* is

been derived from M6 before it lost its last folio; whereas the MS. No. 121 of the Ouseley collection at Oxford, which ends at the same point, must have been written after the folio was lost.

[1] See Bund. XXXI, 7.

[2] See Bund. XXIX, 9, XXXI, 6, B. Yt. III, 55–61.

[3] The contents of this chapter, regarding the lengths of midday and afternoon shadows, immediately follow a tale of Gôst-i Fryânô, which is appended to the book of Ardâ-Vîrâf's journey to the other world, both in M6 and K20. As will be seen from the notes, these details about shadows were probably compiled at Yazd in Persia, as they are suitable only for that latitude.

[4] Reading âyad-ae (a very rare form), or it may be intended for hômanâe, 'should it be,' but it is written in both MSS. exactly like the two ciphers for the numeral 5. Mullâ Fîrûz in his Avîgeh Dîn, p. 279 seq., takes 5 khadûk pâî as implying that the shadow is under the sole of the foot, or the sun overhead; but neither this reading, nor the more literal 'one-fifth of a foot,' can be reconciled with the other measures; though if we take 5 as standing for pangak, 'the five *toes* or sole,' we might translate as follows: '*When* the sun is at Cancer, *the shadow* is the sole of one foot of the man.'

one foot and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Leo *it* is two feet; *when* the sun is at Virgo *it* is two feet and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Virgo *it* is three feet and a half; *at* Libra *it* is four [1] feet and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Libra *it* is five feet and a half [2]; *at* Scorpio *it* is six feet and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Scorpio *it* is seven [3] feet and a half; *at* Sagittarius *it* is eight feet and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Sagittarius *it* is nine feet and a half; *at* Capricornus *it* is ten feet, *at* the fifteenth of Capricornus *it* is nine [4] feet and a half; *at* Aquarius *it* is eight [5] feet and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Aquarius *it* is seven feet and a half; *at* Pisces *it* is six feet and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Pisces *it* is five feet and a half; *at* Aries *it* is four feet and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Aries *it* is three feet and a half; *at* Taurus *it* is two feet and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Taurus *it* is two feet; *at* Gemini *it* is one foot and a half, *at* the fifteenth of Gemini *it* is one foot [6].

---

[1] K20 has 'three' by mistake.

[2] M6 omits 'and a half' by mistake.

[3] K20 has 'six' by mistake.

[4] Both MSS. omit one cipher, and have only 'six,' but the shadow must be the same here as at the fifteenth of Sagittarius.

[5] Both MSS. have 'seven,' which is clearly wrong.

[6] It is obvious that, as the length of a man's shadow depends upon the height of the sun, each of these observations of his noonday shadow determines the altitude of the sun at noon, and is, therefore, a rude observation for finding the latitude of the place, provided we know the ratio of a man's foot to his stature. According to Bund. XXVI, 3 a man's stature is eight spans (vitast), and according to Farh. Okh. p. 41 a vitast is twelve finger-breadths, and a foot is fourteen (see Bund. XXVI, 3, note), so that a man's stature of eight spans is equivalent to $6\frac{6}{7}$ feet. Assuming this to have been the ratio adopted by the observer, supposing the obliquity of the ecliptic to have been 23° 35′ (as it

3. The midday shadow is written[1], may *its* end be good!

4. I write the indication of the Aûzêrin (afternoon)[2] *period of the day;* may it be well *and* fortunate by the help of God (yazdân)!

5. When the day is at a maximum (pavan afzûnŏ), *and* the sun comes unto the head[3] of Cancer, *and one's* shadow becomes six feet and two parts[4], he makes *it* the Aûzêrin period (gâs). 6.

was about A. D. 1000), and calculating the latitude from each of the thirteen different lengths of shadow, the mean result is 32° 1′ north latitude, which is precisely the position assigned to Yazd (the head-quarters of the small remnant of Zoroastrians in Persia) on some English maps, though some foreign maps place it 15′ or 20′ farther south. With regard to the rough nature of this mode of observation it may be remarked that, as the lengths of the shadows are noted only to half a foot, there is a possible error of a quarter-foot in any of them; this would produce a possible error of 2° 4′ in the midsummer observation of latitude, and of 39′ in the midwinter one; or a mean possible error of 1° 22′ in any of the observations; so that the possible error in the mean of thirteen observations is probably not more than 6′, and the probable error is even less, provided the data have been assumed correctly.

[1] Reading nipist, but only the first and last letters are legible in M6, and the middle letter is omitted in K20.

[2] See Bund. XXV, 9.

[3] The word sar, 'head,' usually means 'the end,' but it must be here taken as 'the beginning;' perhaps, because the zodiacal signs are supposed to come head-foremost.

[4] What portion of a foot is meant by bâhar, 'part,' is doubtful. It can hardly be a quarter, because 'two quarters' would be too clumsy a term for 'a half.' But it appears from §§ 5–7 that the shadow, necessary to constitute the Aûzêrîn period, is taken as increasing uniformly from six feet and two parts to fourteen feet and two parts, an increase of eight feet in six months, or exactly one foot and one-third per month, as stated in the text. And, deducting this monthly increase of one foot and one-third from the seven and a half feet shadow at the end of the first month, we have six feet and one-sixth remaining for the shadow at the

Every thirty days it always increases one foot *and* one-third, therefore about every ten days the reckoning is always half a foot [1], *and when* the sun is at the head of Leo the shadow is seven [2] feet *and* a half. 7. In this series every *zodiacal* constellation is *treated* alike, and the months alike, until the sun comes unto the head of Capricornus, *and* the shadow becomes fourteen feet and two parts. 8. In Capricornus it diminishes again a foot *and* one-third [3]; *and* from there *where* it turns back, because of the decrease of the night and increase of the day, it always diminishes one foot *and* one-third every one of the months, *and* about every ten days the reckoning is always half a foot, until it comes back to six feet and two parts; every *zodiacal* constellation *being treated* alike, and the months alike [4].

---

beginning of the month. Hence we may conclude that the 'two parts' are equal to one-sixth, and each 'part' is one-twelfth of a foot.

[1] Meaning that the increase of shadow is to be taken into account as soon as it amounts to half a foot, that is, about every ten days. Practically, half a foot would be added on the tenth and twentieth days, and the remaining one-third of a foot at the end of the month.

[2] Both MSS. have 'eight,' but this would be inconsistent with the context, as it is impossible that 'six feet and two parts' can become 'eight feet and a half' by the addition of 'one foot and one-third,' whatever may be the value of the 'two parts' of a foot.

[3] Both MSS. have 3 yak-1 pâî, instead of pâî 3 yak-1.

[4] This mode of determining the beginning of the afternoon period is not so clumsy as it appears, as it keeps the length of that period exceedingly uniform for the six winter months with some increase in the summer time. In latitude 32° north, where the longest day is about 13 hours 56 minutes, and the shortest is 10 hours 4 minutes, these observations of a man's shadow make the afternoon period begin about $3\frac{3}{4}$ hours before sunset at mid-

CHAPTER XXII[1].

1. May Aûharmazd give *thee* the august rank and throne of a champion[2]!

2. May Vohûman give thee wisdom! may the benefit of knowing Vohûman[1] be good thought and mayest thou be acting well, that is, saving the soul!

3. May Ardavahist, the beautiful, give thee understanding and intellect!

4. May Shatvairô grant thee wealth from every generous one!

5. May Spendarmad grant thee praise through the seed of *thy* body! may she give thee *as* wife a woman from the race of the great!

6. May Horvadad grant thee plenty and prosperity!

7. May Amerôdad grant thee herds of four-footed *beasts!*

---

summer, diminishing to 2$\frac{3}{4}$ hours at the autumnal equinox, and then remaining very nearly constant till the vernal equinox.

[1] These last two chapters are found written upon some folios which have been added to the beginning of M6; but, though not belonging to that MS. originally, they are still very old. The first of these two chapters has not been found elsewhere; it is an elaborate benediction, in which the writer calls down, upon some one, a series of blessings from each of the thirty archangels and angels whose names are given to the days of the Parsi month in the order in which they here stand (compare the same names in Bund. XXVII, 24).

[2] The meaning of the word pâdrôg or pâdrang (which occurs also in §§ 12, 26, and appears to be a title) may be guessed from the following passage in the Yâdkâr-i Zarîrân, or Vistâsp-shâh-nâmak: Pavan har razm va pâdrazm-i lak pîrôg va vêh pâdhôsem yâityûnî-ae, 'in every attack and counter-attack of thine mayest thou bring *away* the title of conqueror and good champion!'

[3] The reading is uncertain.

8. May Dînô always secure[1] *thee* the support of the creator Aûharmazd!

9. May the light of the sublime Âtarô[2] hold thy throne in heaven!

10. May Âvân grant thee wealth from every generous one!

11. May Khûr hold thee without mystery *and* doubt among the great and *thy* compeers (hambudîkân)!

12. May Mâh give thee an assistant, who is the assistant of champions!

13. May Tîstar hold thee a traveller in the countries of the seven regions!

14. Gôsûrvan the archangel[3] is the protection *of* four-footed *beasts*.

15. May Dînô always remain *for thee as* the support of the creator Aûharmazd!

16. May Mitrô be thy judge, who shall wish thy existence *to be* vigorous!

17. May Srôsh the righteous, the smiter of demons, keep greed, wrath, and want[4] far from thee! may he destroy *them*, *and* may he not seize thee *as* unjust!

18. May Rashnû be thy conductor[5] to the resplendent heaven!

---

[1] This verb is doubtful; here and in § 23 it is netrûnâd, 'may she guard,' but in § 15 it is ketrûnâd, 'may she remain.'

[2] Bûrz âtarô, 'the sublime fire,' seems to be a personification of the fire Berezi-savang of Bund. XVII, 1, 3, the Supremely-benefiting of SZS. XI, 1, 6.

[3] She is usually called an angel. Either the verb is omitted in this section, or it is not a blessing; and the same may be said of §§ 20, 25.

[4] These are the three fiends, Âz, Aeshm, and Nîyâz (see Bund. XXVIII, 15–17, 26, 27).

[5] It is very possible that the verb should be yehabûnâd,

19. May Fravar*d*în give thee offspring, which may bear the name of *thy* race!

20. Vâhrâm the victorious is the stimulator of the warlike.

21. May Râm, applauding the life of a praiser of the persistent[1] lord, keep thee perfect (aspar), that is, living three hundred years[2], undying and undecaying unto the end of *thy* days!

22. May Vâ*d* bring thee peace[3] from the resplendent heaven!

23. May Dînô always secure *thee* the support of the creator Aûharmazd!

24. May Dînô become thy guest in thy home and dwelling!

25. Arshisang, the beautiful, is the resplendent glory of the Kayâns.

26. May Âstâ*d* be thy helper, who is the assistant of champions!

27. May Âsmân bless thee with all skill and wealth!

---

instead of yehevûnâ*d*, in which case we should have 'give thee a passport.'

[1] The meaning of khvâpar (Av. *hv*âpara) is by no means certain; it is an epithet of Aûharmazd, angels, and spirits, and is then often assumed to mean 'protecting;' but it is also a term applied to the earth and offspring; perhaps 'self-sustaining' would suit both its etymology and its various applications best, but the root par has many other meanings.

[2] That is, two great cycles. It is usual for the copyists of Pahlavi MSS. to wish, in their colophons, that the persons for whom the MSS. are written, whether themselves or others, may retain the MSS. for a hundred and fifty years before leaving them to their children; which period is mentioned because it is supposed to constitute a great cycle of the moon and planets.

[3] Written drûd instead of drû*d*.

28. May Zamyâd destroy for thee the demon and fiend out of thy dwelling!

29. May Mâraspend hold thee a throne in the resplendent heaven!

30. May Anîrân the immortal, with every kind of all wealth, become thy desire! the horses of God (yazdân)[1] who shall come that he may go, and thou mayest obtain a victory.

31. May destiny give thee a helper! he is the guardian of the *celestial* sphere for all these archangels whose names I have brought *forward*; may he be thy helper *at* all times, in every good work and duty!

32. Homage to Srît[2] the teacher! may he live long! may he be prosperous *in* the land! may *his* be every pleasure and joy, *and* every glory of the Kayâns, through the will of the persistent Aûharmazd!

Chapter XXIII.

0. In the name of God and the good creation be health[3]!

1. Aûharmazd is more creative, Vohûman is more

[1] Both nouns are in the plural, and both verbs in the singular. Anîrân is a personification of Av. anaghra raokau, 'the beginningless lights,' or fixed stars (which, however, are said to have been created by Aûharmazd in Bund. II, 1), and these stars appear to have been considered as horses of the angels (Bund. VI, 3, SZS. VI, 1). There are several uncertain phrases in §§ 30–32.

[2] This would appear to be the name of the person to whom the benediction is addressed, as it can hardly be meant for the ancient hero Thrita, the Athrat of Bund. XXXI, 27, and the Srîtô of SZS. XI, 10, note.

[3] Two versions of this chapter, detailing the qualities of the

embellished [1], Ardavahist is more brilliant [2], Shatvaîrô is more exalted [3], Spendarmad is more fruitful [4], Horvadad is moister [5], Amerôdad is fatter [6]. 2. Dîn-pa-Âtarô is just like Aûharmazd [7], Âtarô is hotter [8], Âvân is more golden [9], Khûr is more observant [10], Mâh is more protective [11], Tîr is more liberal, Gôs is swifter [12]. 3. Dîn [13]-pa-Mitrô is just like Aûharmazd, Mitrô is more judicial, Srôsh is more vigorous, Rashn is more just, Fravardîn is more powerful, Vâhrâm is more victorious, Râm is more pleasing, Vâd is more fragrant. 4. Dîn-*pa-Dînô* is just like Aûharmazd, Dînô is more valuable, Ard [14] is more beautiful, Âstâd is purer, Âsmân is more lofty, Zamyâd is more conclusive, Mâraspend is more

---

thirty angels and archangels, are extant; one in M6, which has lost §§ 3–5, and the other in a very old MS. in the library of the high-priest of the Parsis at Bombay. This latter, being complete, is here taken as the text, while the variations of M6, which occur in nearly every epithet, are given in the notes. Which version is the oldest can hardly be ascertained with certainty from the state of the MSS. M6 omits this opening benediction.

[1] M6 has 'more nimble.'

[2] M6 has 'more discriminative.'

[3] M6 has 'more active.'

[4] M6 has 'more complete.'

[5] M6 has 'fatter.'

[6] M6 has 'more fruitful.'

[7] M6 has 'Dînô is more desirous.'

[8] M6 has 'more heating.'

[9] Referring perhaps to the golden channels (Bund. XIII, 4, 5) through which the water of Arêdvîvsûr (a title of the angel Âpân, 'waters') is supposed to flow. M6 has 'more glittering.'

[10] M6 has 'more embellished.'

[11] M6 has varpântar, the meaning of which is uncertain.

[12] M6 has 'more listening.'

[13] The version in M6 ends here; the next folio being lost.

[14] The same as Arshisang (see Bund. XXII, 4).

conveying the religion, Anîrân is the extreme of exertion *and* listening [1].

5. May it be completed in peace and pleasure!

[1] The reading of both these nouns is uncertain. The days of the Parsi month, which bear the names of these thirty angels, are divided, it will be observed, into four nearly equal divisions, resembling weeks, which are here separated in §§ 1–4. The first weekly period begins with a day dedicated to Aûharmazd, and called by his own name; and each of the three other weekly periods also begins with a day dedicated to Aûharmazd, but called by the name of Dîn, 'religion,' with the name of the following day added as a cognomen. The first week, therefore, consists of the day Aûharmazd followed by six days named after the six archangels respectively (see Bund. I, 23, 26). The second week consists of the day Dîn-with-Âtarô followed by six days named after the angels of fire, waters, the sun, the moon, Mercury, and the primeval ox. The third week consists of the day Dîn-with-Mitrô followed by seven days named after the angels of solar light, obedience, and justice, the guardian spirits, and the angels of victory, pleasure, and wind. And the fourth week consists of the day Dîn-with-Dînô followed by seven days named after the angels of religion, righteousness, rectitude, the sky, the earth, the liturgy, and the fixed stars.

INDEX.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The references in this index are to the pages of the introduction, and to the chapters and sections of the translations; the chapters being denoted by the larger ciphers.

2. References to passages which contain special information are given in parentheses.

3. Though different forms of the same name may occur in the translations, only one form is usually given in the index, to which the references to all forms are attached; except when the forms differ so much as to require to be widely separated in the index.

4. Pahlavi forms are always given in preference to Pâzand and Persian, when only one is mentioned; but where only a Pâzand form occurs it is printed in italics, as Pâzand orthography is usually corrupt. In all such italicised names any letters, which would elsewhere be italic, are printed in roman type.

5. Abbreviations used are:—Av. for Avesta word; Bd. for Bundahiś; Byt. for Bahman Yaśt; ch. for chapter of Visparad; com. for commentator and commentary; Gug. for Gugarâti; Huz. for Huzvâriś; Int. for Introduction; lun. man. for lunar mansion; m. for mountain; meas. for measure; n for foot-note; Pahl. for Pahlavi; Pâz. for Pâzand; Pers. for Persian; r. for river; Sl. for Shâyast lâ-shâyast; trans. for translation; wt. for weight; zod. for zodiacal constellation; Zs. for Selections of Zâd-sparam.

INDEX.

Âbân, angel, Byt. **2**, 59 n. See Âzân.
Âb-istâdah lake, Bd. **22**, 5 n.
Ablution, Byt. **2**, 36; Sl. **2**, (52,) 108; **3**, 10, 12; **8**, 18, 22; **12**, 22, 24.
— seat, Byt. **2**, (36;) Sl. **10**, 5. — tank, Sl. **10**, 5. — vessel, Sl. **3**, 12.
Abode of fires, Sl. **9**, 5; **20**, 1, 8, 9.
Abtîn, man, Bd. **31**, 7 n.
Achæmenians, Byt. **2**, 17 n.
Âdar, angel, Byt. **2**, 59 n. See Âtarô.
Âdarbîgân, land, Bd. **20**, 13 n, 25 n; **22**, 2 n; **25**, 4 n; **29**, 12 n.
Ad-fravakhshyâ hâ, Sl. **13**, 29.
Ad-mâ-yavâ hâ, Sl. **13**, 33.
Adopted son, Sl. **12**, 14.
Ad-tâ-vakhshyâ hâ, Sl. **13**, 4, 14.
Aêshm, demon, Bd. **19**, 33 n; **28**, (15-17,) 20; **30**, 29; Byt. **1**, 5 n; **2**, 36 n; Sl. **13**, 43; **18**, 1, 3.
Afarg, com., Sl. **1**, (3;) **2**, 2, 64, 73, 88, 115, 123 n; **5**, 5, 6; **10**, 39 n.
Afghânistân, Bd. **12**, 22 n; **20**, 17 n.
Afrâsiyâb, king, Bd. **31**, 14 n, 17 n, 19 n.
Âfrîn, ritual, Sl. **13**, 43 n; **19**, 3.
Âfrîngân, rite, Sl. **10**, 34 n; **17**, 5 n; **18**, 4 n.
Afrôbag-vindâ*d*, man, Bd. **33**, 6, 8.
Agâimasvâk, man, Bd. **31**, 23.
Âgerept sin, Sl. **1**, 1, 2; **11**, 1, 2; **16**, 2, 5.
Aghrêra*d*, man, Bd. **29**, 5; **31**, 15, 20-22.
Aharman, origin of evil, Bd. **1**, 3, 7, 8, 20, 23, 27; **2**, 11; Zs. **1**, 2-4, 6, 8-11, 17, 20, 24, 25; worshipped by Dahâk, Bd. **20**, 23; nature of, Bd. **28**, 1-6, 46, 48; by whom served, Bd. **28**, 21; differs sometimes from the evil spirit, Bd. **28**, 40 n; **30**, 30; his attack on creation, Zs. **1**, 27; **2**, 1-6, 11; **4**, 1-5, 10; **5**, 1, 3, 5; **6**, 1, 23; **7**, 1, 12; **8**, 1, 6; **9**, 1, 24; **10**, 1; **11**, 1; defeated by religion, Byt. **2**, 16, 20; Sl. **15**, 6; his future evil-doings, Byt. **2**, 40, 62; **3**, 55, 56; his advice, Sl. **18**, 1, 2, 4. See Evil spirit.
Ahasuerus, Byt. **2**, 17 n.
Âhû-a*d*-paiti hâ, Sl. **13**, 21.
Ahunavaiti gâtha, Sl. **13**, 2 n, 4, 6-15, 51.
Ahunavar, Bd. **1**, 21, 22; Zs. **1**, 12; **11**, 10 n; Sl. **10**, 5 n, 25, 26; **12**, 19, 32 n; **13**, 2 n; text and trans., Bd. **1**, 21 n; com., Zs. **1**, 13-19.
Ahyâ-thwâ-âthrô hâ, Sl. **13**, 17.
Ahyâ-yâsâ hâ, Sl. **13**, 4, 12, 14, 50.
Aibisrûtêm gâh, Bd. **25**, 9.
Aighâsh, demon, Bd. **28**, 33; **31**, 5 n.
Aîrak, man, Bd. **31**, 14.
Aîra*k* m., Bd. **12**, 2, 12.
Aîrân-vêg, land, Bd. **12**, 25; **14**, 4; **20**, 13, 32; **25**, 11; **29**, (4, 5, 12;) **32**, 3; Zs. **9**, 8.
Aîri*k*, prince, Bd. **31**, (9, 10,) 12, 14; **32**, 1 n; **34**, 6; Sl. **10**, 28 n.
Aîrîz-râsp, chief, Bd. **29**, 1.
Airman, angel, Bd. **30**, 19 n.
Airya, tribe, Bd. **31**, 9 n.
Airyak, man, Bd. **32**, 1 n.
Airyamana hâ, Sl. **13**, 47.
Aitbritak, man, Bd. **32**, 1 n.
Aiwisrûthrema gâh, Bd. **25**, 9 n; Sl. **17**, 5 n.
Akandgar, king, Byt. **2**, 19.
Akâtâsh, demon, Bd. **28**, 20.
Akbôsbir r., Bd. **20**, 7, 18.
Akôman, demon, Bd. **1**, 24, 27; **28**, 7; **30**, 29; Zs. **9**, 6.
Albûrz m., Bd. **5**, 3-5; **7**, 15 n; **8**, 2, 5; **12**, (1-4,) 7 n, 8, 9; **13**, 1, 4; **19**, 15; **20**, 1, 4, 8; **24**, 28; Zs. **6**, 16, 20, 21; **7**, 1, 5-7.
Alexander the Great, Int. 9, 11, 12, 16; Bd. **34**, 8; Byt. **2**, 19 n; **3**, 34.

Almsgiving never excessive, Sl. 10, 23; 12, 16.
Alvand m., Bd. 19, 3.
Ambergris, origin of, Bd. 19, 12.
Amerdâd, angel, Byt. 2, 59 n.
Amerôdad, angel, Bd. 1, 26; 9, 2; 27, 24; 30, 29; Zs. 8, 1; Byt. 3, 29; Sl. 9, 8; 13, 14; 15, 3, 5, 25, 29; 22, 7; 23, 1; month, Bd. 25, 20.
Âmi r., Bd. 20, 8.
Âmû r., Bd. 20, 8 n, 28 n.
Amûl, town, Bd. 20, 27 n.
Anâhîd, planet, Bd. 5, 1; angel, Bd. 32, 8. See Âbân, Âvân.
Anâhita, angel, Bd. 19, 1 n; Sl. 11, 4 n.
Anangbad, man, Bd. 32, 1 n.
Anastokh, man, Bd. 31, 9.
Andar, demon, Bd. 1, 27; 28, (8,) 10; 30, 29. See Indar.
Anêr, land, Bd. 15, 29.
Angels, Bd. 15, 13; 30, 28; Zs. 1, 0; Byt. 3, 31; Sl. 7, 7; 8, 4; 12, 24; 13, 8 n, 30; fight with demons, Bd. 3, 26; 6, 1; their flowers, Bd. 27, 24; prayers and offerings to them, Sl. 9, 10-12; 11, 4; 12, 8-10; their gifts, Sl. 22, 8-30; their qualities, Sl. 23, 2-4.
Angra-mainyu, Bd. 1, 1 n, 3 n; 28, 1 n.
Animals, origin and classes, Bd. 10, 3; 14, 3-31; Zs. 9, 1, 7-24; chiefs of, Bd. 24, 2-13; eating dead matter, Sl. 2, 109-111; not to be killed, Sl. 10, 8, 9.
Anîrân, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Sl. 22, 30; 23, 4; day, Bd. 25, 7.
Anquetil Duperron, Int. 24, 25, 28.
Antares, star, Bd. 2, 7 n; Sl. 14, 5 n.
Aoiwra, Av., Bd. 31, 6 n.
Aoshnara, man, Bd. 31, 3 n.
Apâôsh, demon, Bd. 7, 8, 10, 12; 28, (39;) Zs. 6, 9, 11, 13.
Apârsên m., Bd. 12, 2, (9,) 12-14, 21, 22, 29, 30, 31 n; 20, 16, 17, 21, 22; 24, 28; Zs. 7, 7.
Ape, origin of, Bd. 23, 1; pollutes, Sl. 2, 61.
Apostasy, Sl. 17, 7.
Apostate, Byt. 3, 56, 57; Sl. 9, 3.
Aquarius, Bd. 2, 2; Byt. 3, 11 n; Sl. 21, 2.
Arabic, Int. 14.
Arabs, Bd. 15, 28; 23, 3; 29, 4; 34, 0 n, 9; Byt. 3, 9, 51.
Arag lake, Bd. 19, 15.
— r., Bd. 7, 15, 17; 20, (1, 3-8,) 9 n, 22 n, 28 n; 21, 3; 24, 26; Zs. 6, 20 n; Byt. 3, 17 n.
Arâîdâr, man, Bd. 32, 1 n.
Aral sea, Bd. 19, 15 n; 20, 20 n; 22, 4 n.
Arang r., Bd. 20, 8 n; Zs. 6, 20 n; Byt. 3, 5 n.
Arang-i Bîrâdân, man, Bd. 32, 7.
Arask, demon, Bd. 28, 14, 16.
Arâst, demon, Bd. 28, 32.
Ârâsti, man, Bd. 32, 2; 33, 1.
Arawisanasp, man, Bd. 31, 23.
Araxes r., Bd. 20, 8 n, 13 n, 22 n, 28 n; Zs. 6, 20 n; Byt. 3, 5 n.
Archangels, Bd. 1, (26 n;) 2, 9; 3, 2, 4; 30, 23; Byt. 1, 0; 2, 64; 3, 9, 31; Sl. 13, 8, 24, 46; 18, 4; 22, 31; their flowers, Bd. 27, 24; subdue demons, Bd. 30, 29; prayers and offerings to them, Byt. 3, 28, 37; Sl. 9, 10; 11, 4; 19, 7; 20, 1; means of serving them, Sl. 15, 1-30; their gifts, Sl. 22, 1-7; their qualities, Sl. 23, 1.
Arch-fiends, Bd. 3, 2; 28, 1-13; 30, 29; Sl. 10, 4 n; 12, 11 n.
Ard, angel, Bd. 22, 4 n; 27, 24; Sl. 23, 4. See Arshisang.
Ardâ-fravash, angel, Byt. 2, 59 n.
Ardâî-fravard, angel, Sl. 11, 4.
Ardakhshîr-i Kaî, king, Bd. 31, 29 n; Byt. 1, 5; 2, 17.
Ardakhshîr-i Pâpakân, Int. 11, 19; Bd. 31, 30 n; Byt. 2, 18.
Ardavahist, angel, Bd. 1, 26; 31, 38; Sl. 11, 4 n; 13, 14; 15, 3, 5, 12, 13; 22, 3; 23, 1; month, Bd. 25, 20. See Ashavahist.
Ardavân, king, Bd. 31, 30 n.
Ardâ-Vîrâf, man, Sl. 21, 0 n.
Ardibahist, angel, Byt. 2, 59 n. See Ardavahist.
Aredhô-manusha m., Bd. 12, 10 n.
Aredûs sin, Sl. 1, 1, 2; 7, 3 n; 11, 1, 2; 16, 4, 5.
Arêdvîvsûr, angel, Sl. 11, 4; 23, 2 n; water, Bd. 7, 15 n; 12, 5; 13, 1, 3, 10; 21, 4 n; 24, 17, 26; 27, 4; Zs. 6, 18.
Arezûr m., Bd. 3, 2 n; 12, 2, (8;)

Byt. 3, 22n; Sl. 10, 7n; 13, 19.
Arezûr-bûm m., Bd. 12, 2, 16.
Argâsp, king, Bd. 12, 32; Byt. 2, 49n; 3, 9.
Aries, Bd. 2, 2; 5, 6; 7, 2; 25, 21; Sl. 21, 2.
Aris, prince, Bd. 31, 25n.
Ariz, fish, Bd. 14, 26; 18, 5; 24, 13.
Ârmaiti, angel, Bd. 15, 6n. See Spendarmad.
Armenia, Bd. 20, 10n.
Armêst, Sl. 2, (98n;) 6, 1.
Armîn, prince, Bd. 31, 25n.
Arnig-baredâ, woman, Bd. 32, 7n.
Arsaces I, Byt. 2, 19n.
Arsacidans, Int. 11. See Askânians.
Arshisang, angel, Bd. 22, 4; 27, 24n; Sl. 22, 25; 23, 4n. See Ard.
Artakhshatar son of Pâpak, Bd. 31, 30; Byt. 2, 18n; — the Kayân, Bd. 31, 30; 34, 8n. See Ardakhshîr.
Artaxerxes Longimanus, Bd. 34, 8n; Byt. 2, 17n.
— Mnemon, Bd. 34, 8n; Byt. 2, 17n.
— Ochus, Bd. 34, 8n.
Arûm, land, Bd. 12, 16; 13, 15; 15, 29; 20, 10; Sl. 6, 7n.
Arvand r., Zs. 6, (20;) Byt. 3, 5, 21, 38.
Arzah, region, Bd. 5, 8, 9; 11, 3; 29, 1; Byt. 3, 47.
Asâm, man, Bd. 29, 5.
Ashârd r., Bd. 20, 20.
Ashâshagabad, man, Bd. 29, 1.
Ashavahist, angel, Bd. 27, 24; 30, 29; Sl. 11, 4. See Ardavahist.
Ashâvanghu, man, Bd. 29, 1n.
Ashavazd, man, Bd. 29, 6.
Ashem-Ahurem-mazdâm ch., Sl. 13, 5.
Ashem-vohû, Byt. 2, 59; Sl. 3, 35; 4, 14; 5, 2, 5, 7; 10, 5n, 24, 35; 12, 21, 32; 13, 1; 19, 5; text and trans., Bd. 20, 2.
Ashôvahist, man, Bd. 33, 11.
Ashôzust, bird, Bd. 19, 19.
Asia Minor, Bd. 13, 15n.
Ask, king, Byt. 2, 19n.
Askânians, Bd. 31, 30n; 34, 9; Byt. 2, 19. See Arsacidans.
Askârûm nask, Sl. 10, 25n. See Sakâdûm.
Âsmân, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Sl. 22, 27; 23, 4.
Asnavand m., Bd. 12, 2, (26;) 17, 7; Zs. 11, 9.
Asparôg m., Bd. 12, 29, 36.
Aspârûm nask, Sl. 10, 21n. See Hûspâram.
Aspengargâk, demon, Bd. 7, 12; 28, 39. See Spêngargâk.
Âspîkân, Bd. 32, 1n.
Âspiyân, Bd. 31, 4, 7, 8.
Assaults, Sl. 1, 1n, 2n.
Assyrians, Int. 12, 13; Byt. 3, 5.
Âstâd, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Byt. 2, 59n; 3, 32; Sl. 17, 4, 5n; 22, 26; 23, 4.
— yast, Byt. 1, 6.
Âstaothwanem hâ, Sl. 13, 1.
Astarâbâd, town, Bd. 12, 32n.
Astô-vîdâd, demon, Bd. 3, 21, 22; 28, 35; Zs. 4, 4.
Âstuyê hâ, Sl. 13, 1.
Asûrîk, man, Bd. 31, 19.
Asûristân, land, Bd. 31, 39; Byt. 3, 5.
Âsvast lake, Bd. 22, 1, 7.
Asvinî, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3n.
Âtaremča ch., Sl. 13, 26.
Âtarô, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Sl. 22, 9; 23, 2; day, Bd. 25, 11.
— Aûharmazd, com., Sl. 1, 3.
— bôndak, man, Bd. 33, 1.
— dâd, man, Bd. 33, 3.
— frôbâg, man, Byt. 1, 7; Sl. 1, 3n.
— — nôsâî, com., Sl. 1, 3.
— Mitrô, man, Byt. 1, 7.
— pâd, man, Byt. 1, 7.
— — i Dâd-farukh, com., Sl. 1, 4n.
— — i Mâraspendân, priest, Bd. 33, 3, 11; Byt. 1, 1n; 2, 18; Sl. 8, 23; 10, 28n, 40; 15, 16.
— — i Zaratûstân, priest, Zs. 1, 19n; Sl. 8, (10.)
— pâtakân, land, Bd. 12, 26; 20, 13n, 23, 25; 22, 2; 29, 12; Zs. 11, 9; Byt. 1, 7.
— tarsah, man, Bd. 31, 29.
Âtâs nyâyis, Sl. 7, 4n; 20, 1n.
— i Vâhrâm, see Vâhrâm fire.
Athrat, man, Bd. 31, 27; Sl. 22, 32n.
Âthwya, man, Bd. 31, 4n.
Atonement for sin, Sl. 8, 1n, 4n, 13, 15, 16, 19, 20, 23.
Atrat, man, Bd. 31, 27n.
Aûharmazd, Zs. 6, 10; Byt. 2, 64;

Sl. 8, 13, 21, 23; 10, 29; 12, 28; 13, 8; 18, 4; 20, 11, 18; 22, 32; the creator, Bd. 1, 0-3, 6-12, 23, 25, 28; 2, 1; 7, 15; 13, 5; 15, 3, 4, 6, 7, 23; 17, 1, 3; 18, 3, 5; 19, 9, 10, 36; 20, 1, 5, 6; 21, 3; 24, 25, 26; 28, 1-3, 17; Zs. 1, 0, 20, 23, 24; 2, 7, 8; 10, 4, 5; Byt. 1, 0; Sl. 10, 28n; 12, 2; 14, 4; 18, 1; 22, 8, 15, 23; contends with Aharman, Bd. 1, 13, 15-18, 20-22; 3, 2, 4, 6, 18, 19, 21; 4, 2-4; 6, 2, 4; 7, 9; Zs. 1, 2, 4, 7, 9, 11; 3, 1, 2; 4, 3, 10; 5, 1; instituted rites, Bd. 2, 9; chief of spirits, Bd. 24, 1n; Sl. 11, 4n; archangel, Bd. 27, 24; Sl. 13, 14; 15, 5, 7, 8; 22, 1; 23, 1; religion of, Bd. 28, 4, 5; talks with Zaratûśt, Bd. 30, 4, 5; Zs. 11, 10n; Byt. 1, 1-5; 2, 1-63; 3, 1-62; Sl. 9, 8, 14; 10, 26; 12, 29, 32; 15, 1-30; 17, 1-6, 8, 11-14; worshipped, Bd. 30, 23, 28; Zs. 10, 1; Byt. 2, 64; 3, 28, 37; Sl. 13, 18, 24, 32, 46; arranges the future existence, Bd. 30, 24, 27, 29, 30, 32; his nature, Zs. 1, 13-17; 5, 4; Sl. 23, 1-4; foretells future events, Byt. 1, 3-5; 2, 15-22, 24-63; 3, 1-62.

Aûharmazd day, Bd. 3, 12; 25, 7, 10, 13; Zs. 2, 1.

— king, Bd. 33, 2.

— planet, Bd. 5, 1; Zs. 4, 7.

Aurvadasp, man, Bd. 32, 1.

Aurvad-aspa, king, Bd. 31, 28n.

Aûrvakhsh, man, Bd. 31, 26.

Aûrvatad-nar, man, Bd. 32, 5, 6, 7n.

Aûrvâzîśt fire, Zs. 11, 1, 4. See Urvâzîśt.

Aûshahîn gâh, Bd. 25, 9.

Aûshbâm, man, Bd. 31, 33, 34.

Aûshdâśtâr m., Bd. 12, 2, 15.

Aûsîndôm m., Bd. 12, 2, 6; 13, 5; 18, 11n.

Aûsôfrîd, rite, Byt. 2, 45; Sl. 13, 30.

Aûspôsîn, man, Bd. 29, 1.

Aûśtûvat gâtha, Sl. 10, 6. See Uśtavaiti.

Aûstôfrîd, rite, Sl. 12, 10. See Yastôfrîd.

Aûzâv, man, Bd. 31, 28.

Aûzêrîn gâh, Bd. 25, 9, 10; Sl. 7, 1n; 21, 4, 5.

Aûzôbô, king, Bd. 31, 23, 24, 35; 34, 6n; Sl. 10, 28n.

Aûzvârak, man, Bd. 31, 41n.

Avad-mizdem ch., Sl. 13, 48.

Âvân, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Sl. 22, 10; 23, 2; day, Sl. 11, 4n; month, Bd. 25, 7, 10, 20; Byt. 3, 16; Sl. 11, 4n. See Âbân.

Avardâd, month, Bd. 25, 20n. See Horvadad.

Avarethrabau, man, Sl. 10, 28n.

Avarnak, man, Bd. 31, 37, 38.

Avar-shatrô, land, Bd. 31, 37, 38.

Avdem, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.

Avêsar, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.

Avesta, Int. 9, (10,) 54, 55, 58, 70-72; Bd. 14, 26; 19, 16, 19; Byt. 3, 45n; Sl. 13, 15n; — texts, Int. 10, 11, 22, 24, 43, 47, 52, 53, 67, 68; Sl. 6, 1n; — and Zand, Int. 10; Sl. 10, 25, 29; — letters, Int. 15, 16, 31, 66; — MSS., Int. 21, 27-29, 48, 57, 66; referred to, Bd. 14, 2; Sl. 1, 1; 2, 55, 97, 118; 9, 8; 15, 1; 17, 8, 9; words quoted, Sl. 5, 2, 5, 7; 7, 8; 9, 12; 10, 37; 13, 1, 4-14, 16-26, 28-36, 38-40, 42, 45-51; passages quoted, Sl. 8, 22; 11, 6; 13, 6, 8, 43; prayers, Sl. 9, 9, 10; 10, 5, 19, 26n; 14, 2, 3; 19, 14.

Avi-apăm ch., Sl. 13, 40.

Avôîrist sin, Sl. 1, 1, 2; 11, 1, 2; 16, 3, 5.

Avrak, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3; 7, 1; Zs. 6, 1.

Ayanghad, man, Bd. 32, 1n.

Ayazem, man, Bd. 32, 1.

Âz, demon, Bd. 28, 27, 28; 30, 30; Sl. 22, 17n.

Âzâd-mard, com., Sl. 1, 4n.

Azânŏ, man, Byt. 2, 3n.

Az-i Dahâk, king, Bd. 23, 2; 29, 8; 31, (6n,) 7n; Zs. 2, 10; Byt. 2, 62; 3, 52n, 56-58, 60; Sl. 20, 18. See Bêvarâsp and Dahâk.

Bactria, Bd. 15, 29n; 20, 9n.

Bactrian, Byt. 3, 17n.

Bâd, angel, Byt. 2, 59n. See Vâd.

Bâdghês, land, Bd. 12, 19n.

Bagh nask, Sl. 10, 26.
Baghân yast, Sl. 13, 1n, 9u. See Bagh.
Bâg-yasnô nask, Sl. 12, 17.
Bahak, man, Bd. 33, 1, 2, 6, 8.
Bâhak, man, Bd. 33, 3.
Bahman, angel, Byt. 2, 59n; king, Bd. 31, 29n; Byt. 2, 17n. See Vohûman.
— Pûngyah, Sl. 19, 1n.
— yast, Byt. 3, 11n; contents, Int. 50-52; age, Int. 53-56; MSS., Int. 56; Pâz. version, Int. 57; Pers. version, Int. 57-59; German trans., Int. 59.
Bahrâm, angel, Byt. 2, 59n; king, Byt. 3, 14n; — fire, Zs. 11, 6. See Vâhrâm.
— Kôpîn, man, Byt. 3, 14n.
Bakân yastô nask, Sl. 12, 17n. See Bâg-yasnô.
Bakht-âfrîd, com., Byt. 1, 7; Sl. 1, 4n; 20, 11.
Bakhtiyârî m., Bd. 12, 40n.
Bakht-tan m., Bd. 12, 40.
Bakô nask, Sl. 10, 26n. See Bagh.
Bakyîr m., Bd. 12, 2, 20.
Balkh, town, Bd. 24, 15n; Byt. 3, 17n; river, Bd. 12, 9n; 20, 7, 9n, 22.
Bambŏ, land, Byt. 3, 17.
Bâmdâd, man, Byt. 1, 6; 2, 21.
Bâmî, town, Byt. 3, 17n.
Bâmîkân, town, Bd. 20, 21.
Bâmiyân, Bd. 20, 22n; Byt. 3, 17n.
Bamm, town, Byt. 3, 17n.
Barcshnûm, rite, Byt. 2, 36; Sl. 2, (6,) 60n, 65n, 70; 3, 24; 10, 10n, 12n; 12, 22n, 24n, 25n, 26n; 17, 5n.
Baresôm, see Sacred twigs.
Baresômdân, see Sacred twig-stand.
Barmâyûn, man, Bd. 31, 8.
Barôshand Aûharmazd, com., Sl. 1, 4n.
Barzû Qiyâmu-d-dîn, Zs. 9, 1n.
Baungha, man, Bd. 33, 1n.
Bayak, demon, Bd. 31, 6.
Bâz, Sl. 3, 6n. See Inward prayer.
Bâzâî sin, Sl. 1, 1, 2; 11, 1, 2; 16, 5.
Bâzâyvâna sea, Bd. 24, 23.
Bear, origin of, Bd. 23, 1.
Beating the innocent, Sl. 10, 17.
Beh-âfrîn, woman, Bd. 31, 30n.
Beneficent spirit, Zs. 1, 0; Sl. 13, 28, 35, 36.
Berezi-savang fire, Bd. 17, 1, 3; Zs. 11, 1n.
Besn, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Best existence, Sl. 6, 3; 10, 26; 12, 2; 15, 11. See Garôdmân.
Bêvarâsp, Bd. 12, 31; 28, 9; Byt. 3, 3n, 55, 56n. See Az-i Dahâk.
Birds, classification, Bd. 10, 4; 14, 11, 23-25; Zs. 9, 9-15, 23; — of prey, Bd. 14, 30; chiefs of, Bd. 24, 11, 29; destroy Nasûs, Sl. 2, 5; not to be killed, Sl. 10, 9.
Bîs herb, Bd. 14, 22; 27, 1; Zs. 9, 22.
Bîsan, Bd. 12, 35.
Bîtak, man, Bd. 31, 14.
Bivandangha, man, Bd. 29, 1n.
Bodily refuse, Byt. 2, 36; Sl. 2, (30n;) 15, 26.
Bôdôzêd sin, Sl. 2, 39n.
Bombay, Byt. 3, 17n; Sl. 2, 6n.
Bôr-tôrâ, man, Bd. 31, 7.
Brâdarvakhsh, man, Byt. 2, 3n.
Brâdrôk-rêsh, man, Byt. 2, 3n.
Brâdrôyisnô, man, Byt. 2, 3n.
Brazen age, Byt. 2, 18.
Buddha, Bd. 28, 34n.
Buddhists, Bd. 20, 22n.
Bukhâr, land, Byt. 3, 17.
Bukhârans, Byt. 3, 17.
Bull's urine (gômêz), Sl. 2, 67, 92, 98, 105, 112, 113; 3, 13, 21, 22, 25; 10, 39; 12, 24, 27.
Bumyô m., Bd. 12, 16n.
Bunda, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Bundahis, Int. 22; contents, Int. 23, 24; MSS., Int. 24-41; Av. original, Int. 24, 43; Zs. 3, 1n, 16n; French trans., Int. 24, 25; German trans., Int. 25, 26; Guj. trans., Int. 43-45; Pâz. version, Int. 30, 31; longer text, Int. 32-41; contents of long text, Int. 35-37; extent of texts, Int. 34, 35, 41; age, Int. 41-43; Zs. 10, 5n. See also Sad-dar.
Bûrg, angel, Bd. 7, 3; 19, 15; Zs. 6, 3.
Burying the dead, Sl. 2, 9; 13, 19.
Bûrzîn-Mitrô fire, Bd. 12, 18, 34; 17, 7n, 8; Zs. 6, 22; 11, 8-10; Byt. 3, 30, 37, 40.
Bûshâsp, demoness, Bd. 23, 26; Sl. 13, 43.

Bût, demon, Bd. 28, 34.
Butter, see Sacred butter.

Cake, see Sacred cake.
Cancer, Bd. 2, 2; 5, 6; 7, 1, 2; 34, 2; Zs. 4, 8; 6, 1, 2; Sl. 21, 2, 5.
Capricornus, Bd. 2, 2; 5, 6; 34, 9 n; Zs. 4, 10; Byt. 3, 11 n; Sl. 21, 2, 7, 8.
Carriers of the dead, single, Sl. 2, 84, 106, 108; one with a dog, Sl. 2, 7; two, Sl. 2, 6-8, 84, 85; four, Sl. 2, 6 n; 10, 10.
Caspian sea, Bd. 13, 15 n; 15, 28 n, 29 n; 17, 5 n; 19, 15 n; 20, 8 n, 24 n, 27 n; 22, 4 n; 31, 21 n; Byt. 2, 63 n; 3, 19 n.
Ceremonial (yazisn), Byt. 2, 37; 3, 37; Sl. 3, 35 n; 5, 3; 8, 4; 9, 5, 11; 13, 25; 19, 8.
Ceremonies, Sl. 2, 38; 12, 31; — after a death, Sl. 6, 3, 4; 8, 6 n; 12, 5, 31; 17, 2-6; — of nine nights, Sl. 12, 26 n; see Bareshnûm.
Ch in Oriental words is printed *K*.
Chaldæo-Pahlavi, Int. 19-21.
Chaldee, Int. 14, 19.
Chapter (hâ), Sl. 10, 6 n; 13, 1, 5, 6, 31, 34.
Chiefs of creation, Bd. 24, 1-24, 28, 29; spiritual, Bd. 29, 1, 2, 5.
Chieftainships, spiritual, Bd. 29, 1; Sl. 13, 29; temporal, Sl. 13, 11, 15, 34, 41 n, 44; 19, 5.
Childbirth, Sl. 10, 15; 12, 7.
Children, advantage of, Sl. 10, 22; 12, 15; illegitimate, Sl. 10, 21; 12, 14.
China, Bd. 31, 3 n.
Christian, Byt. 2, 19 n; 3, 3 n; Sl. 6, 7.
Christianity, Byt. 2, 19 n; 3, 3 n.
Chronology of Iran, Bd. 34, 1-9.
Classes of people, Sl. 13, 9, 15, 34.
Clothing corpses, Sl. 2, 9, 95; 10, 40; 12, 4; — for spirits, Bd. 30, 28; Sl. 17, 4, 5 n; purifying, Sl. 2, 95, 97-99.
Commentary, see Zand.
Commentators, Sl. 1, 3, 4 n; quoted, Byt. 1, 7; 3, 3, 16; Sl. 2, 1, 2, 6, 11, 12, 39, 44, 56, 57, 64, 73, 74, 80-82, 86, 88, 89, 107, 115, 118, 119; 3, 13; 5, 5, 6; 6, 4-6; 8, 13, 17, 18, 23; 10, 40; 14, 5; 20, 11.
Confession of sin, Sl. 8, 2, 4 n, (8-10.)
Conflicts of evil, with the sky, Bd. 6, 1-4; Zs. 5, 1-5; with water, Bd. 7, 1-13; Zs. 6, 1-23; with the earth, Bd. 8, 1-5; Zs. 7, 1-12; with plants, Bd. 9, 1-6; Zs. 8, 1-6; with animals, Bd. 10, 1-4; Zs. 9, 1-24; with man, Zs. 10, 1-6; with fire, Zs. 11, 1-10.
Constantinople, Int. 12.
Consulting the good, Sl. 10, 28.
Contagion, Sl. 2, 59, (60.)
Copper age, Byt. 2, 19.
Corpse, carrying, Sl. 2, 6-11, 83-95; 10, 10, 33; lowering, Sl. 2, 23-29; moving, Sl. 2, 63, 65, 66, 68-71; thrown into water, Sl. 2, 76-78; 9, 7; bringing out of water, Sl. 2, 79-94; in rain, Sl. 2, 9, 10, 94; clothing for, Sl. 2, 9, 95; 10, 40; 12, 4. See also Pollution.
Corpse chamber, Byt. 2, 36.
Creation of prototypes, Bd. 1, 8; Zs. 1, 5; of archangels, Bd. 1, 23, 26; of the world, Bd. 1, 25, 28; Zs. 1, 20; of demons, Bd. 1, 10, 24, 27; of time, Zs. 1, 24.
Crowing of a hen, Sl. 10, 30.
Cyrus, Int. 9; Bd. 34, 8 n.

Dabistân, book, Byt. 1, 1 n.
Dâdak nask, Sl. 12, 4 n.
Dâdakîh-i Ashôvahistô, man, Bd. 33, 10.
Dâd-ardâ, man, Bd. 33, 3.
Dâd-Aûharmazd, com., Byt. 1, 7; 3, 16; Sl. 1, 4 n.
Dâd-farukh, com., Sl. 1, 4 n.
Dâdgun, man, Sl. 1, 4 n.
Dâdîrâd, man, Bd. 33, 3.
Dâdistân-i dînîk, book, Int. 32, 33, 46, 47; Bd. 15, 22 n; 29, 5 n, 6 n; author of, Bd. 33, 10 n, 11 n.
Dâd-i veh, com., Sl. 1, 4 n.
Dahâk, king, Bd. 17, 5; 20, 23; 29, 9; 30, 16; 31, 5-7; 34, 5; Byt. 3, 34; Sl. 10, 28 n. See Az-i Dahâk.
Dah-hômâst, rite, Byt. 2, 59 n.
Dahmân âfrîngân, Sl. 13, 43 n; 17, 5 n.

Dâî, land, Bd. **15**, 29.
Dâîtîk m., see *Kakâd*-i Dâîtîk.
— r., Bd. **20**, 7, 13, 23 n; **24**, 14; **29**, 5 n; Zs. **2**, 6.
Dakhma, Byt. **2**, 36 n; Sl. **2**, (6,) 9 n, 10 n, 11 n, 75 n. See Depository for the dead.
Dâmaghân, town, Bd. **20**, 18 n; **29**, 14 n.
Dâmdâd nask, Int. 24, 48; Zs. **9**, (1,) 16; Sl. **10**, 22; **12**, 5.
Damnak, man, Bd. **31**, 36, 39.
Dâraga r., Bd. **20**, 7, 32; **24**, 15.
Dârâî, king, Bd. **33**, 2; **34**, 8.
Dargâm r., Bd. **20**, 7, 14.
Darius Codomannus, Int. 24; Bd. **34**, 8 n.
— Hystaspes, Int. 9.
Dârspêt m., Bd. **12**, 2, 20 n.
Dashtânistân, Sl. **2**, 75; **3**, 4 n, (6 n,) 11 n.
Dastân, man, Bd. **31**, 37.
Dastûr, Bd. **19**, 36. See High-priest.
Dâvad m., Bd. **12**, 29, 30.
Davâns, man, Sl. **12**, 29.
Dayrid r., Bd. **20**, 26 n.
Days, lengths of, Bd. **25**, 3-6; names of angels applied to them, Bd. **27**, 24; Sl. **22**, 1-30; **23**, 1-4.
Dead matter, Byt. **2**, 36; Sl. **2**, (30 n,) 32, 35, 63, 73, 77, 78, 102, 104-107, 109-112; **10**, 12, 20; **12**, 13.
Deaf and dumb, Sl. **5**, 7; **6**, 1.
Deana m., Bd. **12**, 30 n.
Death, accidental, Sl. **10**, 32; on a bedstead, Sl. **2**, 13; **17**, 14; on a bridge, Sl. **2**, 20; on a carpet, Sl. **2**, 101; on a cloth, Sl. **2**, 12; on the ground, Sl. **2**, 14-16; in a hall, Sl. **2**, 45; in a house, Sl. **2**, 38-44; in a jar, Sl. **2**, 31; on a roof, Sl. **2**, 18, 21; in a room, Sl. **2**, 22; when seated, Sl. **2**, 24; by strangulation, Sl. **2**, 23; **17**, 13; on a tree, Sl. **2**, 25-29; in a vessel, Sl. **9**, 7; in a wilderness, Sl. **2**, 47.
Demonized men, Sl. **17**, 7.
Demons, Bd. **5**, 7; Zs. **2**, 4; Byt. **2**, 40, 62; **3**, 9, 21, 33; Sl. **9**, 5, 8; **12**, 12; **15**, 6; **17**, 3; origin, Bd. **1**, 10; end, Bd. **1**, 21, 22; **6**, 4; **30**, 29-32; names, Bd. **1**, 24, 27; **3**, 3, 6-9, 21; **7**, 8, 10, 12; **28**, 7-20, 23-36, 39, 40, 42; **30**, 29, 30; Zs. **4**, 4; **6**, 9, 11, 13; council, Bd. **3**, 1-9; **12**, 8; incursion, Bd. **3**, 10, 21, 25, 26; **7**, 8, 12; mislead men, Bd. **15**, 9, 12, 17, 18; use nail-parings as weapons, Bd. **19**, 19, 20; Sl. **12**, 6; opposed by cock, Bd. **19**, 33; Sl. **10**, 30 n; beget the ape, bear, and negro, Bd. **23**, 1, 2; described, Bd. **28**, 1-46; figures of, Byt. **1**, 4; **2**, 16; — with dishevelled hair, Byt. **1**, 5; **2**, 22, 24-29, 36; **3**, 1, 6, 13, 34; discomfited, Byt. **2**, 16, 17; **3**, 40, 41; reside in idol-temples, Byt. **3**, 30, 36, 37; attack Zaratûst, Sl. **10**, 4; **12**, 11; in the north, Sl. **10**, 7; **12**, 18; **14**, 2 n.
Demon worship, Sl. **8**, 4; **14**, 1.
— worshippers, Byt. **3**, 24.
Depository for the dead, Sl. **2**, 75; **13**, 19. See Dakhma and Receptacle.
Destroyer, Bd. **2**, 4, 8; **3**, 1, 23; **7**, 1; **20**, 6; **27**, 1; Zs. **7**, 3; Sl. **10**, 3; **13**, 30.
Development of animals, Bd. **10**, 2, 3; **14**, 3-7; Zs. **9**, 7-9; fire, Zs. **11**, 1-10; lakes, Zs. **6**, 7, 8, 22; land, Bd. **11**, 2; Zs. **7**, 8-11; man, Bd. **15**, 1-5; Zs. **10**, 3-6; minerals, Zs. **10**, 2; mountains, Bd. **8**, 1-5, **12**, 1, 2, 11, 28, 41; Zs. **7**, 1-7; plants, Bd. **9**, 2-6; **10**, 1; **14**, 1, 2; Zs. **8**, 1-5; **9**, 1-6; rivers, Bd. **7**, 15-17; Zs. **6**, 20, 21; seas, Bd. **7**, 6, 14; Zs. **6**, 6-8, 14-19.
Deyrid r., Bd. **20**, 7 n, 12 n.
Diglat r., Bd. **20**, 7, 10, 12, 26; Zs. **6**, 20 n.
Dîlmân town, Bd. **20**, 12 n.
Dimâvand m., Bd. **12**, 29, 31; **20**, 27; **29**, 9; Byt. **3**, 55.
Dîn, angel, Bd. **27**, 24; Byt. **2**, 59 n; month, Bd. **25**, 3, 11, 20. See Dînô.
Dînî-vagarkard, book, Zs. **9**, 1 n; Byt. **1**, 1 n; **3**, 25 n; Sl. **9**, 9 n; **10**, 3 n, 4 n, 13 n, 21 n, 25 n, 26 n, 28 n, 29 n; **12**, 4 n, 17 n.
Dînkard, book, Sl. **10**, 22 n, 23 n; last editor of, Int. 64; Bd. **33**, (11 n;) Sl. **8**, 23 n; quoted, Zs. **9**, 1 n; Byt. **1**, 1 n; **2**, 3 n,

19 n; **3**, 25 n, 43 n, 52 n, 61 n; Sl. **6**, 7 n; **9**, 9 n; **10**, 3 n, 4 n, 8 n, 13 n, 21 n, 25 n, 26 n, 28 n, 29 n; **12**, 4 n, 17 n; **19**, 1 n, 4 n.
Dînô, angel, Sl. **22**, 8, 15, 23, 24; **23**, 4. See Dîn.
Dîn-pavan-Âtarô, angel, Bd. **27**, 24; Sl. **23**, 2, 4 n.
Dîn-pavan-Dînô, angel, Bd. **27**, 24; Sl. **23**, 4.
Dîn-pavan-Mitrô, angel, Bd. **27**, 24; Sl. **23**, 3, 4 n.
Dirham, Sl. **1**, (2;) **8**, (3 n;) **10**, 24; **11**, 2; **16**, 1 n, 2, 3.
Dîst, span, Bd. **26**, 3 n; Sl. **16**, 4.
Dog's gaze, Sl. **2**, 1-3, 56, 65, 66, 71, 84, 85; **10**, 10, 12, 32, 33.
Dô-hômâst, rite, Sl. **16**, 6.
Dô-patkar, zod., Bd. **2**, 2.
Doubtful actions, Sl. **10**, 25, 27.
Drônô, see Sacred cake.
Drûgâskân, demon, Bd. **31**, 6.
Drvâsp, angel, Sl. **11**, 4.
Dualism, Int. 68-70.
Dûbâsrûgêd nask, Sl. **10**, 13.
Dughdâ or Dûkdâv, woman, Bd. **32**, 10; Sl. **10**, 4; **12**, 11.
Dûl, zod., Bd. **2**, 2.
Dûrâsrôb, man, Bd. **31**, 13, 31; **32**, 1; **33**, 3, 4.
Dûrnâmîk, man, Bd. **33**, 5.
Dûrôshasp, man, Bd. **31**, 14. 27.
Dvâsrûb or Dvâsrûgad nask, see Dûbâsrûgêd.
Dvâzdah-hômâst nask, Zs. **9**, 1 n; rite, Byt. **2**, (59;) **3**, 25, 27, 37; Sl. **16**, 6.

Eating in the dark, Sl. **9**, 8.
Egypt, Int. 21; Bd. **20**, 8 n; Zs. **6**, 20 n.
Erezishô m., Bd. **12**, 12 n.
Erezrâspa, man, Bd. **29**, 1 n.
Erezurô m., Bd. **12**, 16 n.
Esther, book, Byt. **2**, 17 n.
Etymander r., Bd. **20**, 17 n.
Euphrates r., Bd. **20**, 10 n, 11 n; Byt. **3**, 5 n.
Euxine, Bd. **13**, 15 n; **20**, 8 n.
Ever-stationary, Sl. **6**, 2; **18**, 4 n.
Evil eye, Bd. **28**, 2 n, 14, 36.
Evil spirit, Zs. **1**, 0; Sl. **8**, 23; **12**, 7; **13**, 28; like the devil, Int. 69, 70; origin of evil, Bd. **1**, 1, 9-22, 24; cast down, Bd. **3**, 1-5; **11**, 6; **30**, 29, 30, 32; Byt. **3**, 35, 40; Sl. **13**, 24, 36; comforted, Bd. **3**, 6-8; described, Bd. **3**, 9; **28**, 40, 41; attacks creation, Bd. **3**, 10-17, 21, 24-27; **6**, 1-4; **8**, 1; **11**, 5; **18**, 2, 5; **19**, 10; **28**, 1, 3; misleads men, Bd. **15**, 8, 9; **28**, 6; ancestor of Dahâk, Bd. **31**, 6; his future evil-doings, Byt. **2**, 54; **3**, 24, 33. See Aharman.
Extinguishing fire, Sl. **7**, 9; **20**, 15.
Extirpation of sin, Sl. **8**, 18.
Ezra, book, Byt. **2**, 17 n.

Farânak, woman, Bd. **31**, 31 n.
Farangîs, woman, Bd. **31**, 18 n.
Farghânah, land, Bd. **20**, 20 n.
Farhank, woman, Bd. **31**, 31-33.
Farmân sin, Sl. **1**, (1, 2;) **2**, 51; **3**, 27, 28; **4**, 10, 14 n; **5**, 3 n; **6**, 3 n; **8**, 9 n; **11**, 1, (2;) **16**, (1,) 5.
Farukhŏ, com., Sl. **1**, 4 n.
Fasâ, town, Bd. **29**, 14 n.
Fayûm, land, Int. 21.
Feast, Byt. **2**, 45. See Sacred feast.
Female things, Bd. **16**, 6.
Ferîdûn, king, Bd. **31**, 7 n, 31 n. See Frêdûn.
Fiends, Bd. **2**, 11; **30**, 30; Zs. **1**, 5; **4**, 2; Byt. **3**, 30, 37; Sl. **9**, 8; **13**, 10, 13; **19**, 5; **20**, 9, 11; origin, Bd. **1**, 10; destroyed, Bd. **2**, 10; **19**, 33, 34, 36; **20**, 6; Zs. **10**, 1; Sl. **13**, 23, 32, 46; described, Bd. **28**, 13, 14, 20, 33, 37; Christians, Byt. **3**, 3, 5; serpents, Byt. **3**, 52; of menstruation, Sl. **3**, 29; become pregnant, Sl. **10**, 7; **12**, 18. See Arch-fiends.
Finger-breadth, meas., Bd. **21**, 1; **26**, (3 n;) **27**, 25; Sl. **2**, 118; **4**, 2, 5; **10**, 1.
Fire, injured, Bd. **3**, 24; described, Bd. **17**, 1-9; Zs. **11**, 1-10; reverence, Sl. **7**, 4; **10**, 37; to be kept up, Sl. **12**, 3, 12. See Sacred fire.
Fire-temple, see Abode of fires.
Fish, classification, Bd. **10**, 4; **14**, 12, 26; Zs. **9**, 9-14; generation, Bd. **16**, 7; chief, Bd. **24**, 13.
Flowers, Bd. **27**, 11, 24.

Fomalhaut, star, Bd. 2, 7n; Sl. 11, 4n; 14, 5n.
Food not to be cast to the north at night, Sl. 10, 7; 12, 18.
Foot, meas., Bd. 26, 3n; Sl. 2, 18, 77, 78n; 3, 33; 21, 2, 5-8.
Forgiveness of trespasses, Sl. 10, 11.
Frâbâzu, meas., Bd. 26, 3n.
Fradadafsh, region, Bd. 5, 8, 9; 11, 3; 25, 10; 29, 1; Byt. 3, 47.
Fradhâkhsti, man, Bd. 29, 5n.
Fragûzak, woman, Bd. 31, 14.
Frahimravâ, man, Bd. 32, 10.
Frâh-vakhsh-vindâd, man, Bd. 33, 1.
Frangrasyan, king, Bd. 31, 14n.
Fraoreti hâ, Sl. 13, 1n.
Frârâst, meas., Bd. 26, 3n.
Frasast, cake, Sl. 3, (32n;) 14, 3; 17, 5n.
Frashâîtar, man, Bd. 33, 3.
Frashakard, see Renovation.
Frashâvakhsha, man, Bd. 33, 1n.
Frashôstar, man, Bd. 33, 3n.
Frâsîyâv, king, Bd. 12, 20; 20, 17, 34; 21, 6; 30, 16; 31, (14,) 15, 18, 21, 22, 35; Zs. 11, 10n; Byt. 2, 62; 3, 34; Sl. 10, 28n.
Frasizak, woman, Bd. 32, 1n.
Frasp-i Kûr, man, Bd. 31, 18, 19.
Frast, man, Bd. 33, 3. See next.
Frâst, man, Bd. 31, 31n.
Frastuyê hâ, Sl. 13, 1.
Frât r., Bd. 20, 7, 10, 11; Byt. 3, 5.
Fravâhar, see Guardian spirits.
Fravâk, man, Bd. 15, 25, 30, 31; 31, 1, 6; 32, 1n.
Fravâkaîn, woman, Bd. 15, 25.
Fravarânê hâ, Sl. 13, 1.
Fravardîkân, see Guardian spirits' days.
Fravardîn, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Sl. 22, 19; 23, 3; day, Sl. 11, 4n; month, Bd. 3, 12; 25, 7, 13, 20; Zs. 2, 1; Sl. 11, 4n.
Fravashis, Bd. 1, 8n; 2, 10n. See Guardian spirits.
Frazdân lake, Bd. 22, 1, 5; Byt. 3, 13.
Frazîsak, man, Bd. 32, 1n.
Frazûsak, man, Bd. 31, 14.
Frêdûn, king, Bd. 20, 12n; 23, 3; 29, 9; 31, (7-11,) 14, 27, 32; 32, 1n; 34, 6; Byt. 3, 55, 56, 58; Sl. 10, 28n; 20, 18; man, Bd. 33, 3.
Frêh-khûrd, man, Bd. 31, 19.
Freh-mâh, woman, Bd. 33, 7.
Freh-Srôsh, man, Bd. 33, 11.
Frên, woman, Bd. 32, 5, 7n.
Freni, woman, Bd. 31, 33n; 32, 5n.
Frîftâr, demon, Bd. 28, 30.
Fris, man, Bd. 31, 13.
Frôbak fire, Bd. 17, 5, 7n; Zs. 11, 8-10; Byt. 3, 29, 30, 37, 40; Sl. 13, 26.
Fruits, Bd. 27, 7, 23.
Fryânô, man, Bd. 33, 3.
Fshûshô-mathra, ritual, Sl. 13, 49n.
Future existence, Bd. 1, 1, 7, 21; 2, 11; 11, 6; 15, 9; 30, 1; Byt. 2, 55; 3, 62; Sl. 8, 7, 14; 9, 6; 10, 19.

Gadbwitbav, demon, Bd. 31, 6.
Gadman-hômand m., Bd. 17, 5; Zs. 11, 9; Byt. 3, 29.
Gaêvani, man, Bd. 29, 6n.
Gâh, Bd. 2, 8; 25, 9n; Sl. 7, 1n; 14, 4n. See Period.
Gâhanbârs, Bd. 25, 1; Sl. 12, 31n; 18, (3n.) See Season-festivals.
Gâk, man, Bd. 33, 3.
Gâm, meas., Bd. 26, 3n.
Ganâvad m., Bd. 12, 29, 34; 19, 8.
Ganrâk maînôk, Bd. 1, 1n, 3n. See Evil spirit.
Garafsa, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Garôdmân, Bd. 30, 12, 13, 27; Sl. 6, (3n,) 4; 11, 3. See Heaven.
Garsâsp, man, Bd. 29, 7n; 31, 26n, 27n.
Garsîvaz, man, Bd. 31, 15n.
Gâsânbâr, see Season-festivals.
Gâtha days, Bd. 5, 7; 25, 7n.
Gâthas, hymns, Bd. 12, 7n; Zs. 11, 10n; Byt. 2, 60; Sl. 9, 12n; 10, 6; quoted, Zs. 5, 4; Sl. 12, 28; mystic meaning, Sl. 13, 1-49; extent, Sl. 13, 50, 51.
Gau, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Gâus gîvya, Av., Sl. 2, 43n; 13, 12n.
— hudhau, Av., Sl. 2, 43n; 3, 32n; 11, 4n. See Sacred butter.
Gâyômard, man, Bd. 3, 1n, 14, 17, 19-23; 4, 1; 15, 1, 31; 24, 1; 30, 7, 9; 31, 1; 32, 1n; 34, 1, 2; Zs. 2, 6, 8; 3, 2; 4, 3, 5, 9, 10; 5, 4; 10, 1-3; 11, 10n; Sl. 10, 28n.
Gazdûm, zod., Bd. 2, 2.
Gefar-tôrâ, man, Bd. 31, 7; 32, 1n.
Gêhân-bûn sea, Zs. 6, 14.

Gêl, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Gemini, Bd. **2**, 2; Sl. **21**, 2.
Genealogies, Bd. **15**, 24-30; **31**, 1-41; **32**, 1-10; **33**, 1-11.
Generation, Bd. **16**, 1-7.
Georgia, Bd. **20**, 13n.
Gêsbakht m., Bd. **12**, 29.
Gêtî-kharî*d*, rite, Bd. **30**, (28;) Sl. **5**, 6; **12**, 30; **17**, 5n.
Ghaznî, town, Bd. **22**, 5n.
Gîklân sea, Bd. **20**, 24.
Gîlân, land, Bd. **12**, 17.
Gîw, man, Bd. **29**, 6.
Glory, royal, Bd. **31**, 32, 33; **34**, 4.
Glossary, Av.-Pahl., Sl. **10**, 39n.
— Huz.-Pâz., Int. 16, 17.
God ('celestial beings'), Bd. **17**, 8; Zs. **11**, 6; Sl. **1**, 0; **8**, 22, 23; **10**, 3, 5; **14**, 0; **19**, 7; **21**, 4; **22**, 30.
Gôgôsasp, com., Sl. **1**, 3; **2**, 74, 82, 119.
Goî, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Gôkar*d* tree, Bd. **9**, 6; **18**, 1; **24**, 27; **27**, 4.
Gôkihar, meteor, Bd. **5**, 1; **28**, 44; **30**, 18, 31.
Golden age, Byt. **1**, 1n, 4; **2**, 16.
Gômêz, see Bull's urine.
Good works, Zs. **1**, 14, 18; **4**, 6; **11**, 6; Byt. **2**, 33, 38, 64; Sl. **2**, 53, 93; **6**, 3, 4, 6; **7**, 4, 6, 7; **8**, 1, 5, 20, 22; **9**, 6; **10**, 25, 27, 29; **12**, 1, 2, 29; **17**, 8; **20**, 1, 4, 5; imputed, Sl. **4**, 14; **6**, 1, 2; **7**, 6; **8**, 4; **10**, 22-24; **12**, 15, 16, 31; **16**, 6.
Gôpatô, land, Bd. **29**, 5n.
Gôpatshah, chief, Bd. **29**, 5; **31**, 20, 22; Byt. **2**, 1.
Gôs, angel, Bd. **4**, 4n; **27**, 24; Byt. **2**, 59n; Sl. **11**, 4n; **23**, 2.
Gôsasp, com., Sl. **1**, 3n.
Gôst-i Fryânô, man, Byt. **2**, 1; tale of, Sl. **21**, on.
Gôsûrvan, angel, Bd. **4**, 2-5; Zs. **3**, 1, 3; Sl. **11**, 4n; **22**, 14.
Greek inscriptions, Int. 19.
Greeks, Byt. **3**, 5.
Griffon, Bd. **14**, 11, 23; **19**, 18; **24**, 11, 29; Zs. **8**, 4.
Guardian spirits, Bd. **1**, (8n;) **2**, 10, 11; **4**, 4; **6**, 3; **29**, 8; **32**, 9; Sl. **9**, 11; **11**, 4; **17**, 4, 6; **19**, 8; days devoted to, Byt. **2**, 45; Sl. **10**, 2; **12**, 31.
Gûdarz, man, Bd. **29**, 6.
Gûrgân, land, Bd. **20**, 24n.
Gurgistân, land, Bd. **20**, 13n.
Gûsasp fire, Bd. **17**, 7; Zs. **6**, 22n; Byt. **3**, 10n. See Visnâsp.
Gûsnasp fire, Zs. **6**, 22; **11**, 8-10; Byt. **3**, 10n, 37, 40.
Gûzak, princess, Bd. **31**, 9, 14.
—, woman, Bd. **15**, 28.

Gamagân, land, Bd. **29**, 14n.
Gâmâsp, priest, Sl. **11**, 4.
Garô-danghu, man, Bd. **29**, 1n.
Gasnŏ, Byt. **2**, 45. See Feast.
Gêh, fiend, Bd. **3**, 3, 6-9; Sl. **3**, 29n.
Girast nask, Sl. **10**, 28n. See *Kidrast*.
Gîvân, lun. man., Zs. **4**, 8.
Gumin, town, Bd. **12**, 34n.

Hadhayôs, ox, Bd. **19**, 13; **29**, 5n; **30**, 25.
Hâdôkht nask, Bd. **15**, 7n; Byt. **3**, (25,) 28; Sl. **12**, 19, 30; **13**, 6, 10; **16**, 6.
Hâêkadâsp, man, Bd. **32**, 1.
Hâgîâbâd inscriptions, Int. 20n.
Hamadân, town, Bd. **12**, 12; **19**, 3n; **22**, 6.
Hamêmâl, see Sin affecting accusers.
Hamêspamadâyêm, season, Bd. **25**, 6.
Hâmîd, man, Bd. **33**, 11.
Hamîstakân, Sl. **6**, 2. See Everstationary.
Hamrêd, see Contagion.
Hâmûn, lake, Bd. **13**, 16n.
Haptôk-ring, stars, Bd. **2**, 7; **5**, 1; **13**, 12; **14**, 28; Sl. **11**, 4.
Hardâr, man, Bd. **32**, 1.
Hardarsn, man, Bd. **32**, 1.
Harhaz r., Bd. **20**, 7, 27.
Haro r., Bd. **12**, 9n; **20**, 7, 15, 16.
Hâs, Sl. **10**, 6; **13**, 1. See Chapter.
Hâsar of distance, Bd. **14**, 4; **16**, 7; **26**, (1,) 2n; Sl. **9**, 1n; — of time, Bd. **25**, 5; Sl. **9**, (1.)
Hâthra, meas., Bd. **7**, 8n; **26**, 1n; Sl. **9**, 1n.
Haug, Professor, Int. 12, 25, 26, 29.
Hâvan gâh, Bd. **25**, 9, 10; Sl. **7**, 1n; **14**, 4n.
Heaven, grades in, Bd. **12**, 1; Sl. **6**, 3n; garôdmân, Bd. **30**, 12, 13, 27; Zs. **11**, 2; Sl. **6**, 3n, 4; **11**, 3; **13**, 8; vahist, Bd. **30**, 27; Zs. **1**, 14; Sl. **6**, 2, 3, 5; **12**, 28;

15, 8, 13, 19, 24, 29, 30; 18, 4n; 22, 9, 18, 22, 29 See also Best existence.
Heaven, not to be despaired of, Sl. 12, 28, 29.
Hebrew laws, Sl. 3, 14n, 15n, 18n, 26n.
Hedgehog, Bd. 14, 19; 19, 28; Sl. 2, 59; 10, 31; 12, 20.
Hell, Bd. 15, 9; 22, 10; Zs. 1, 14; Sl. 6, 2, 6; 8, 5, 7, 13; 12, 4, 28; 18, 4n; described, Bd. 3, 27; 28, 47, 48; abode of demons, Bd. 3, 26; Byt. 3, 30, 35; for the wicked, Bd. 30, 12, 13; gate of, Bd. 12, 8; 28, 18; Zs. 2, 4; Sl. 10, 7n; 13, 19; purified, Bd. 30, 31, 32; grades in, Sl. 6, 3n.
Hêlmand r., Bd. 20, 17n.
Hendvâ r., Bd. 20, 7, 9n.
Heri r., Bd. 20, 15n, 16n.
Hêtûmand r., Bd. 12, 9n; 20, 7, 17, 34; 21, 3n.
Hiddekel r., Bd. 20, 12n; Byt. 3, 21n.
High-priest, dastûr, Bd. 19, 36; 28, 20; Byt. 3, 52; Sl. 8, 10; 9, 2, 4; 10, 5, 20-23, 31; 12, 2, 14-16; *rad*, Bd. 29, 1n; Byt. 3, 52; Sl. 8, 1, 2, 5, 6, 14, 21; 13, 2, 29; supreme, Bd. 24, 1; Sl. 9, 3; see Supreme Zaratûst.
Hîkhar, Sl. 2, (30n,) 95. See Bodily refuse.
Hindûs, Bd. 28, 34; Byt. 3, 14, 17; Sl. 2, 58n.
Hindûstân, Bd. 20, 9; 25, 15; 29, 15.
Hindva m., Bd. 12, 6n.
Hirât, town, Bd. 20, 16n.
Hirâtîs, men, Byt. 3, 19.
Hiriyân, men, Byt. 3, 19n.
Hoazarôdathbri, chief, Bd. 29, 1.
Holy-water, Bd. 21, 3, 4; Byt. 2, 59; Sl. 2, (43;) 7, 9; 12, 5; 13, 9; 15, 12; 16, 6.
Hôm, angel, Bd. 7, 3; 27, 24; Zs. 6, 3; Sl. 11, 4, 6; — drôn, Sl. 10, 2; — juice, Sl. 10, 16; 13, 1n, 9n; — mortar, Sl. 9, 12n; 13, 9n; — tree, Bd. 9, 6n; 18, 2, 3; 24, 18; 27, 4, 24; 30, 25; Zs. 8, 5; — twigs, Sl. 9, 12n; 13, 9n.
Hômâst, rite, Byt. 2, (59n;) Sl. 9, 12n; 16, 6n.
Horvada*d*, angel, Bd. 1, (26;) 27, 24; 30, 29; Byt. 3, 29; Sl. 9, 8; 13, 14; 15, 3, 5, 25, 29; 23, 6; 23, 1; month, Bd. 25, 20.
— yast, Byt. 1, 6.
Hôshyang, king, Bd. 15, (28;) 31, 1, 2, 9n, 32n; 32, 1n; 34, 3, 4; Zs. 11, 10; Sl. 10, 28n.
House-ruler, Sl. 13, 11, 15, 41n, 44; 19, 5.
Hûbakht, man, Bd. 33, 1.
Hûdînô, man, Bd. 33, 3.
Hûgar m., Bd. 7, 15n; 12, 2, (3,) 6; 13, 4; 22, 11; 24, 17; Byt. 3, 31n.
Hûkaîryâ*d* m., Byt. 3, 31.
Hukhshathrôtemâi, prayer, Sl. 10, 5n; 13, 22.
Hûmâî, woman, Bd. 33, 7; queen, Bd. 34, 8.
Hûmân, man, Bd. 31, 17.
Human monstrosities, Bd. 15, 5, 31.
Humatanâm, prayer, Sl. 10, 5n; 13, 16, 22.
Hunting, Sl. 8, 3.
Hûsh, beverage, Bd. 19, 13; 30, 25.
Hûshêdar, apostle, Bd. 21, 6; 32, 7n, (8;) Byt. 3, 11n, 13, 34n, (43, 44,) 47, 48, 61n; Sl. 13, 5.
Hûshêdar-mâh, apostle, Bd. 30, 2; 32, 7n, (8;) Byt. 3, 52, 53; Sl. 13, 5.
Hûspâram nask, Byt. 2, 37n; Sl. 10, (21;) 12, 1, 7, 14, 31; 13, 17.
Husru, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3; lake, Bd. 22, 1, 8.
Huvâsp, chief, Bd. 29, 1.
Hûzavârak, man, Bd. 31, 41.
Huzvâris logograms, Int. 14-20.
*Hv*aêtumaithi hâ, Sl. 13, 7, 14, 27.
Hv*andkân*, man, Bd. 29, 1.
*Hv*ara, Av., Sl. 1, 1n.
Hvare-*k*ithra, man, Bd. 32, 5n.
Hv*embya*, man, Bd. 29, 5.
Hvôv, woman, Bd. 32, 7n, 8; Sl. 10, 21n.
*Hv*yaona, land, Byt. 2, 49n.
Hyrcania, Bd. 20, 24n.

Iaxartes r., Bd. 20, 20n.
Ibairaz, man, Bd. 29, 6.
Ibitak, man, Bd. 32, 1n.
Idolators, Int. 50, 51; Bd. 3, 20n; 15, 28n; Byt. 3, 11n.
Idolatry, Sl. 9, 2, 3.
Idols, Bd. 28, 34; Byt. 1, 4n.

Idol-temples, Bd. 17, 7; Byt. 3, 30, 36, 37.
Imâm-âa*d*-zãm hâ, Sl. 13, 19.
Immortal men, Bd. 29, 5-9; 30, 17.
Incursion of the evil spirit, Bd. 3, 10-26; Zs. 2, 1-11; 4, 1-6.
Indar, demon, Bd. 30, 29n. See Andar.
India, Bd. 15, 29n; 20, 9n; 29, 4; Byt. 3, 44n; Sl. 2, 6n, 22n, 32n; 4, 5n, 6n, 11n, 12n; 9, 9n; 16, 1n; 17, 2n.
Indian ocean, Bd. 20, 8n.
Indra, god, Bd. 1, 27n.
Indus r., Bd. 20, 8n, 9n, 22n, 28n; Byt. 3, 38n.
Infant, treatment, Sl. 10, 16; protected by fire, Sl. 12, 12.
Infection, Sl. 2, 55, 59, (60-)62. See Paîtrê*d*.
Infidel, Sl. 6, 6.
Invoking angels, Sl. 9, 11-13.
Inward prayer, Sl. 3, (6-)9, 21; 4, 3, 9n; 5, 4n; 10, 14, 26; 14, 3. See Bâ*z*, Vâ*g*.
Iran, Bd. 12, 9n; Zs. 6, 17; Byt. 2, 51, 63; 3, 37n, 44n; Sl. 10, 28n; countries of, Bd. 23, 3; Byt. 1, 1n; 2, 24, 26, 49; 3, 5-7, 10, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26, 36, 38, 39; kings of, Bd. 31, 32n; 32, 1n.
Iranian, countries, Bd. 19, 15; Byt. 2, 28, 29; kings, Bd. 34, 4n; Byt. 3, 51; logograms, Int. 14, 18, 19; rule, Bd. 29, 4n; Sl. 13, 7n.
Iranians, Bd. 12, 33; 15, 28; 31, 21; Byt. 2, 33n.
Iron age, Byt. 1, 1n, 5; 2, 22; 3, 12n.
Isa*d*vâstar, man, Bd. 30, 10n; 32, 5, 7.
Isfendiyâr, prince, Bd. 31, 29n; Byt. 2, 17n.
Ispahân, Bd. 12, 40n; 20, 15n, 26n; 31, 40n.
Istûdgar nask, Byt. 1, 1n. See Stû*d*-gar.
Ithâ hâ, Sl. 13, 20; prayer, Sl. 3, 35; 5, 2, 5, 7; see the next.
Ithâ-â*d*-yazamaidê hâ, Sl. 13, 18.
Izak, princess, Bd. 32, 1n.

J in Oriental words is printed *G*.
Jamshêd, Bd. 23, 1n; 31, 27n.
Jew, Sl. 6, 7.
Judge, unjust, Sl. 10, 18.
Jupiter, planet, Bd. 5, 1; Zs. 4, 7, 8, 10; Byt. 3, 4, 18.
Justi, Professor, Int. 26, 66n.

Kabed-*s*ikaft m., Bd. 12, 2, 21.
Kabîsah dispute, Bd. 25, 3n.
Kâbulistân, Byt. 3, 13n.
Kâ*d*, priest, Bd. 33, 1, 2.
Kadân, title, Bd. 31, 15.
Ka*d*-môi-urvâ hâ, Sl. 13, 33.
Kaf m., Bd. 12, 2, 14.
Kahrkâs, bird, Bd. 14, 23; 19, 25, 31.
Kaht, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Kahtsar, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Kâhûs, Byt. 3, 9n. See Kaî-Kâûs.
Kaî-Apîvêh, prince, Bd. 31, 25, 28, 31, 34.
— Arsh, prince, Bd. 31, 25.
— Kabâ*d*, king, Bd. 34, 7.
— Kâûs, king, Bd. 31, 25, 31n; 34, 7; Byt. 3, 9.
— Kavâ*d*, king, Bd. 31, 28; 34, 7n; Sl. 10, 28n. See Kavâ*d*.
— Khûsrôb, king, Bd. 17, 7; 31, 18, 25; 34, 7; Sl. 10, 28n.
— Lôharâsp, king, Bd. 31, 29; 34, 7; Sl. 10, 28n.
— Pisân (or Pîsîn), prince, Bd. 31, 25, 28.
— Qubâd, king, Bd. 31, 24n.
— Us, king, Zs. 11, 10n; Sl. 10, 28n.
— Vi*s*tâsp, king, Bd. 34, 7; Byt. 3, 11n; Sl. 10, 28n.
— Vyârsh, prince, Bd. 31, 25.
Kalâk, town, Bd. 12, 35.
Kala*k*ang, zod., Bd. 2, 2; 5, 6.
Kâmah Bahrah, Zs. 9, 1n; Sl. 2, 2n.
Kamîndân, land, Bd. 22, 10.
Kãm-nemôi-zãm hâ, Sl. 13, 30.
Kamrûd sea, Bd. 13, 7, 15; Zs. 6, 14.
Kanâbad, town, Bd. 12, 34n.
Kanak-i Barzi*s*t, man, Bd. 31, 23.
Kangdez, land, Bd. 12, 2; 20, 31; 29, 4, 5, 10; 32, 5; Byt. 3, 25, 26.
Kaoirisa m., Bd. 12, 25n.
Kar fish, Bd. 14, 12; 24, 1n, 17.
Karap, title, Byt. 2, 3.
Karapân, title, Zs. 11, 10n; Byt. 2, 3n.
Karm, tribe, Byt. 3, 7.
Karmak, tribe, Byt. 2, 49.

Karmân, tribe, Byt. 3, 20.
Karsâspô, king, Sl. 10, 28n.
Karsévaz, prince, Bd. 31, 15.
Karsipt, bird, Bd. 14, 23; 19, 16; 24, 1n, 11, 29n.
Kâsak or Kâsîk i., Bd. 20, 7, 9n, 30.
Kaski-zard, town, Bd. 12, 30n.
Kasmîr, land, Bd. 29, 4, 15.
Kasp r., Bd. 20, 30.
Katâyûn, man, Bd. 31, 8.
Kâûs Kâmân, Sl. 2, 2n.
Kavâd, king, Bd. 31, 24, 25; Byt. 1, 5n; 2, 21n. See Kaî-Kavâd.
Kavi Aipi-vanghu, prince, Bd. 31, 25n.
— Arshan, prince, Bd. 31, 25n.
— Byârshân, prince, Bd. 31, 25n.
— Husravangh, king, Bd. 31, 25n.
— Pisanangh, prince, Bd. 31, 25n.
— Syâvarshân, prince, Bd. 31, 25n.
— Usadhan, king, Bd. 31, 25n.
Kâvûl, town, Bd. 12, 22; 17, 6.
Kâvûlî, tribe, Byt. 2, 49.
Kâvulistân, land, Bd. 17, 6; 29, 11; Byt. 3, 13n, 29n.
Kayân, Bd. 21, 7; 28, 15, 17; 31, 0, 25n; Byt. 1, 5; 2, 17; 3, 14, 51.
Kayânians, Bd. 11, 6; Byt. 3, 14n; Sl. 10, 28n.
Kayâns, Byt. 3, 25, 26; Sl. 22, 32.
Keresâni, king, Byt. 2, 19n.
Keresâsp, man, Bd. 29, 7n; 31, 26, 27n, 36n; Byt. 3, 59, 60.
Kêshvars, regions, Bd. 5, 8, 9; 11, (2-6;) 15, 27; 17, 4; Zs. 7, (8-11;) Byt. 3, 47; Sl. 10, 28n.
Kêvâd, king, Byt. 1, 5; 2, 21.
Kêvân, planet, Bd. 5, 1; 28, 48; Zs. 4, 7.
Khashm, demon, Bd. 29, 5. See Aêshm.
Khast nask, Sl. 12, 4n. See Dâdak.
Khava, demon, Bd. 19, 27.
Khazar, land, Byt. 2, 49n.
Khôr sin, Sl. 1, 1, 2; 2, 70; 3, 25n; 11, 1, 2; 16, 5.
Khrûtâsp, man, Bd. 31, 6.
Khshmaibyâ hâ, Sl. 13, 4, 14.
Khshnûman, ritual, see Shnûman.
Khûdarak, tribe, Byt. 2, 49n.
Khugand, town, Bd. 20, 20n.
Khûgîstân, land, Bd. 12, 9, 30; 20, 12, 26; 24, 28; Zs. 7, 7n.
Khunbya, title, Bd. 29, 5n.
Khûr, angel, Sl. 22, 11; 23, 2; day, Bd. 25, 3. See Khûrshed.
Khûrâsân, land, Bd. 12, 18, 37; 20, 13n, 21n; 25, 16n; Byt. 2, 24n; 3, 19.
Khurdâd, angel, Byt. 2, 59n; month, Bd. 25, 20n. See Horvadad.
Khurdah Avesta, Sl. 8, 1n.
Khûrshêd, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Byt. 2, 59n. See Khûr.
— kîhar, man, Bd. 32, 5, 6, 7n.
— mâh, apostle, Byt. 3, 52n.
— nyâyis, ritual, Sl. 7, 1n; 17, 5n.
— yast, ritual, Sl. 7, 2n.
Khûrshêdar, apostle, Byt. 3, 13n.
Khûsak, zod., Bd. 2, 2.
Khûsrô, king, Byt. 1, 5, 7n, 8; 2, 21.
— Mâhdâdân, priest, Byt. 1, 7.
— Nôshirvân, king, Bd. 34, 9n; Zs. 6, 20n; Byt. 1, 5n, 7n; 2, 21n.
— Parvîz, king, Bd. 34, 9n; Zs. 6, 20n; Byt. 3, 11n.
Khûsrôv, man, Bd. 31, 36, 40.
Khûstô nask, Sl. 12, 4n. See Dâdak.
Khvanaidis r., Bd. 20, 7, 29n.
Khvanîras, region, Bd. 5, 9; 11, (2-6;) 15, 27; 17, 4; 24, 26, 27, 29; 29, 2, 3, 5n; 32, 1n; Zs. 6, 21; 7, (10;) Byt. 3, 47; Sl. 10, 28n.
Khvarae r., Bd. 20, 7, 26.
Khvârîh, Bd. 12, 2.
Khvârizem, land, Bd. 12, 12; 17, 5, 6; Zs. 11, 9; Byt. 3, 29n; lake, Bd. 22, 1, 4.
Khvâst-aîrikht, man, Bd. 31, 19.
Khvegand r., Bd. 20, 7, 19, 20.
Khvêtmanô hâ, Sl. 13, 7n.
Khvêtûk-das, see Next-of-kin marriage.
Khyôn, land, Byt. 2, 49n.
Kilisyâkîh (Christianity), Byt. 2, 19; 3, 3, 5, 8.
Kîrâtanô-bûgêd, com., Sl. 1, 4n.
Kirfak, see Good works.
Kirmân, land, Bd. 12, 35n; 33, 10n; Byt. 2, 24n; town, Zs. 1, 0n; Byt. 3, 17n.
Kôhistân, land, Bd. 20, 13n; Byt. 3, 19.
Koir r., Bd. 20, 7, 24.
Kokand, town, Bd. 20, 20n.
Kôndras m., Bd. 12, 2, 25.
Kôndrâsp m., Bd. 12, 2, 24; 22, 3n.
Krittikâ, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3n.

Kûmîs m., Bd. 12, 32; land, Bd. 20, 18.
Kûndak, demon, Bd. 28, 42.
Kûr r., Bd. 20, 8n, 24n.
Kuran r., Bd. 20, 26n.
Kurd, tribe, Byt. 3, 7n, 20.
Kûrisk sheep, Bd. 14, 15; Zs. 9, 19.
Kûshtanŏ-bûgêd, com., Sl. 1, 4n; 2, 57, 81, 118; 6, 6, 7n; 8, 17.
Kûstîk, Bd. 24, 22; 30, 30n. See Sacred thread-girdle.
Kyânsîh sea, Bd. 13, 16; 20, 34; 21, 6, 7.

Kakâd-i Dâîtîk m., Bd. 12, 2, 7; 30, 33n; Byt. 3, 26.
Kakhravâk, chief, Bd. 29, 1.
Kakhshnûs, man, Bd. 32, 1.
Kamrôs, bird, Bd. 19, 15; 24, 11n, 29; 27, 3n.
Kathwaraspa, man, Bd. 29, 1n.
Katru-mîyân r., Bd. 20, 7, 31.
Kêkast lake, Bd. 7, 14; 12, 36; 17, 7; 22, 1, 2, 8; Zs. 6, 22; Byt. 3, 10.
Kîdrast nask, Sl. 10, 28.
Khar-âzâd, queen, Bd. 34, 8.
Kîn or Kînŏ m., Bd. 12, 2, 13; 15, 29n; land, Bd. 12, 13n, 22; 15, 29n; 31, 3; Byt. 2, 49n.
Kînî, tribe, Byt. 2, 49; 3, 17.
Kînîstân, land, Bd. 12, 9n, 13n; 15, 29; 29, 13; Zs. 7, 7; Byt. 3, 14; Sl. 6, 7n.
Kînvad or Kînvar bridge, Bd. 12, 7; 28, 18n; 30, 33; Sl. 8, 1n; 12, 2n, 31n; 13, 29n; 17, 4n.
Kishmak, demon, Bd. 28, 24.
Kitrô-maînô, prince, Bd. 29, 5; Byt. 3, 25n.
Kitrô-mîyân, prince, Byt. 2, 1; 3, 25, 26.

Lakes, Bd. 13, 1-4; 22, 1-11; Zs. 6, 7, 8, 22.
Lârân, land, Bd. 12, 38.
Lâristân, land, Bd. 12, 38n.
Laughter at prayer, Sl. 10, 29.
Lâ-vahâk, man, Bd. 31, 19.
Leo, Bd. 2, 2; 34, 2; Sl. 21, 2, 6.
Leucorrhœa, Sl. 3, 19.
Libra, Bd. 2, 2; 5, 6; 34, 2; Zs. 4, 8-10; Sl. 21, 2.
Life, duration of, Sl. 9, 14.
Liquids, Bd. 21, 1.
Logograms, Int. 13-17, 20.
Lôharâsp, king, Bd. 28, 15n; 31, 28. See Kaî-Lôharâsp.
Luminaries, Bd. 2, 1-8.
Lunar mansions, Bd. 2, 3.

Madôfryâd m., Bd. 12, 32.
Magh (ablution-seat), Byt. 2, (36;) Sl. 10, 5n.
Mâh, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Byt. 2, 59n; Sl. 11, 4n; 12, 8; 22, 12; 23, 2.
— Aûharmazd, com., Sl. 1, 4n.
— ayâr, man, Bd. 33, 7.
— bôndak, man, Bd. 33, 7.
— bûkht, man, Bd. 33, 7.
— dad, man, Bd. 33, 1.
— gôspŏ, com., Sl. 1, 4n.
— nyâyis, ritual, Sl. 7, 4n.
— vasp, com., Sl. 1, 4n.
Mâhîk, zod., Bd. 2, 2.
Mâhvand-dâd, com., Byt. 3, 3; Sl. 1, 4n.
Maidhyâirya, season, Bd. 25, 3n; Sl. 18, (3n.)
Maidhyô-shema, season, Bd. 25, 3n; Sl. 18, (3n.)
Male things, Bd. 16, 6.
Mâm-sozak, title, Bd. 31, 14.
Manicheans, Sl. 6, 7n.
Mânih, heretic, Sl. 6, 7n.
Mânsarspend, angel, Sl. 11, 4. See Mâraspend.
Mânûs m., Bd. 12, 2, 10; king, Bd. 33, 4; man, Bd. 31, 28.
— i khûrshêd-vînîk, man, Bd. 31, 11, 12.
— khûrnâk, man, Bd. 31, 14; 32, 1n.
— khûrnar, man, Bd. 31, 12, 14; 32, 1n.
Manuscripts, oldest Pahl. and Pâz., Int. 21; of Bd., Int. 24-41; of Zs., Int. 48-50; of Byt., Int. 56-59; of Sl., Int. 65, 66.
Mânûskihar, king, Bd. 12, 10; 14, 15; 20, 11, 31, 12-14, 21, 23, 31; 32, 1, 4; 33, 3, 4n, 5, 9; 34, 6; Zs. 9, 19; 11, 10n; Byt. 2, 3n; Sl. 10, 28; man, Bd. 33, 3.
— son of Yûdân-Yim, priest, Int. 46, 47; Bd. 33, 10n.
Marak m., Bd. 12, 29, 38.
Mâraspend, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Sl. 11, 4n; 22, 29; 23, 4; man, Bd. 33, 3, 11; Byt. 2, 18n.
Mardân-vêh, man, Bd. 33, 6, 8.
Mard-bûd, com., Sl. 1, 4n; 2, 86.

Mârgandak, man, Bd. 31, 36, 40.
Marg-argân, see Worthy of death.
Marriage, refraining from, Sl. 10, 19. See also Next-of-kin.
Mars, planet, Bd. 5, 1.
Marûv or Marv, land, Byt. 3, 21.
Marv r., Bd. 12, 9 n; 20, 7, 21; 21, 3.
Mâshâba, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Mâshya, man, Bd. 15, 6, 11, 19, 20, 30; 30, 1, 7; 31, 1; 32, 1 n; 34, 3; Zs. 10, 4; Sl. 10, 28 n.
Mâshyôî, woman, Bd. 15, 6, 11, 20; 30, 1, 7; 32, 1 n; 34, 3; Zs. 10, 4; Sl. 10, 28 n.
Masvâk, man, Bd. 33, 5.
Matrô, man, Bd. 15, 2.
Matrôyâô, woman, Bd. 15, 2.
Mâzanân demons, Sl. 12, 6. See Mâzînîkân.
Mazdâ-a*d*-môi hâ, Sl. 13, 11.
Mazdayasnian literature, Zs. 9, 1 n; Byt. 3, 25 n; Sl. 9, 9 n; 10, 3 n, 4 n, 13 n, 21 n, 25 n, 26 n, 28 n, 29 n; 12, 17 n; — religion, Bd. 29, 7; 33, 11 n.
Mazdayasnians, Sl. 12, 4; 13, 2; religion of, Int. 9; Bd. 1, 2, 25; 11, 6; 12, 41; 33, 12; Byt. 1, 0; 2, 2, 26, 46, 61; 3, 1, 32, 41, 46, 49; Sl. 12, 23.
Mazdîk, heretic, Byt. 1, 6; 2, 21.
Mâzendarân, land, Bd. 3, 20 n; 13, 15 n; 15, 28; 19, 5.
Mâzînîkân demons, Bd. 3, 20. See Mâzanân.
Measures, linear, Bd. 26, 1-3.
Meat, unfit for rites, Sl. 10, 34; when not to be eaten, Sl. 17, 1, 2.
Meat-offerings, Sl. 10, 34; 11, 4-6; 12, 8-10; 18, 4 n.
Mediterranean sea, Bd. 13, 15 n; 20, 8 n.
Mê*d*îyârêm, season, Bd. 25, 3.
Mê*d*ôk-mâh, com., Sl. 1, 3; 2, 1, 11, 12, 89; 5, 5, 6,
— shêm, season, Bd. 25, 3.
Mê*d*yôk-mâh, man, Bd. 32, 2, 3; 33, 1; Zs. 11, 10 n; Sl. 1, 3 n.
Mehrâ or *Mehrvâ* r., Bd. 20, 7, 9.
Menstruation, see Woman.
Mercury, planet, Bd. 5, 1; Byt. 3, 4.
Merkhinah m., Bd. 12, 38 n.
Meshhed, town, Bd. 20, 15 n, 30 n; 22, 3 n.
Mesr, land, Bd. 20, 8.
Mesrkân r., Bd. 20, 7, 26.
Metal, melted, Bd. 30, 19, 20, 31, 32; origin of, Zs. 10, 2.
Mezinan, town, Bd. 12, 32 n.
Mîgîn m., Bd. 12, 29, 32 n.
Mihir, angel, Byt. 2, 59 n. See Mitrô.
— nyâyi*s*, ritual, Sl. 17, 5 n.
Mihrân r., Bd. 20, 9 n.
Milk, see Sacred milk.
Millennium, Int. 40; Bd. 30, 2; 34, 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 n, 9 n; Zs. 1, 10; Byt. 1, 5; 2, 22, 24, 41, 63; 3, 9, 11, 43, 44 n, 51-53, 61.
Minos, man, Bd. 31, 3 n.
Mîrak, man, Bd. 31, 4.
Mîtôkht, demon, Bd. 1, 24; 28, 14, 16.
Mitrô, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Byt. 3, 32-36, 47; Sl. 22, 16; 23, 3; month, Bd. 25, 7, 20. See Mihir.
— akâvî*d*, man, Bd. 33, 6.
— ayâr, man, Bd. 32, 7 n.
— tarsah, man, Bd. 31, 29.
— varâ*z*, man, Bd. 33, 4.
Miyân, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Mîyân-i da*s*t m., Bd. 12, 32.
Môbad of môbads, Bd. 32, 5; 33, 2.
Môbads (priests), Bd. 32, 4; 33, 0, 9-11.
Môbadship of môbads, Byt. 3, 39.
Mokarstân, land, Bd. 20, 7.
Monstrosities, human, Bd. 15, 5, 31.
Months, names of, Bd. 25, 20.
Moon reverence, Sl. 7, 4; 12, 31.
Mortal sin, see Worthy of death.
Mountains, Bd. 8, 1-5; 11, 4; 12, 1-41; 18, 10, 11; 24, 17, 28; Zs. 7, 1-7.
Mouth-veil, Sl. 10, 40; 12, 4.
Muhammadanism, Sl. 6, 7 n.
Muhammadans, Byt. 2, 24 n; 3, 11 n; Sl. 2, 58 n.
Mullâ Fîrûz, Sl. 21, 2 n.
Mumbaî (Bombay), Byt. 3, 17 n.
Murghâb r., Bd. 20, 21 n.
Muru, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Mûspar, comet, Bd. 5, 1, 2; 28, 44.
Mûsulmân, Byt. 3, 3 n.
Myazd, see Sacred feast.
Myths, how treated, Int. 71, 72.

Nahn, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3; Zs. 4, 8 n.
Nâhvtâk r., Bd. 20, 34 n; 21, 6.

Nâîkîyas, demon, Bd. **28**, 10; **30**, 29n.
Nail-parings to be prayed over, Sl. **12**, 6.
Nâîvtâk r., Bd. **29**, 4, 5.
Nâkahê*d*, demon, Bd. **1**, 27; **28**, 10n; **30**, 29n.
Nâmak or Nâmûn, man, Bd. **31**, 35.
Naotara, man, Bd. **29**, 6n.
Naqs-i Rustam, Int. 20n.
Narîmân, man, Bd. **31**, 36n.
— Hôshang, Zs. **9**, 1n.
Narsih, prince, Bd. **29**, 6; **31**, 3, 5.
Nas, demon, Bd. **28**, 29.
Nasâî, see Corpse and Dead matter.
Nasâk, woman, Bd. **15**, 25.
Nâsatyas, Bd. **1**, 27n.
Nasks, Zs. **11**, 10n; quoted in Sl., Int. 63, 64; described, Zs. **9**, 1; Byt. **1**, 1; **3**, 25; Sl. **9**, 9; **10**, 3, 4, 13, 21, 25, 26, 28, 29; **12**, 4n, 17n; referred to, Zs. **9**, 16; Sl. **10**, 22, 23; **12**, 1-3, 5, 7, 10-12, 14-16, 19, 29-32; **13**, 6, 10, 30.
Nasm, man, Byt. **2**, 3n.
Nasûs, demon, Sl. **2**, 1-5, 6n, 55n, 68n; **7**, 7; **10**, 12n, 32n; **20**, 4, 5.
Nâûnghas, demon, Bd. **30**, 29.
Nâvadâ r., Bd. **20**, 7, 34n; **21**, 6n.
Navashâ*d*ar rite, Sl. **12**, 26.
Navazûdî rite, Sl. **13**, 2n.
Nayâzem, man, Bd. **32**, 1n.
Negro, origin of, Bd. **23**, 2.
Nêryôsang, angel, Bd. **15**, 1; **32**, 8; Byt. **3**, 25, 26, 59, 60; com., Sl. **1**, 4n; **8**, 13; man, Bd. **32**, 1n; translator, Byt. **2**, 4n; Sl. **6**, 7n.
Nêsr-gyâvân, title, Bd. **31**, 5.
Nêvak-tôrâ, man, Bd. **32**, 1n.
Next-of-kin marriage, Byt. **2**, 57, 61; Sl. **8**, 18; **18**, 3, (4.)
Nîgâs-afzû*d*-dâk, man, Bd. **33**, 4.
Night, length of, Bd. **25**, 3-6.
Nihâ*d*ûm nask, Sl. **10**, (3,) 22, 23, 39n; **12**, 15, 16.
Nihâg, man, Bd. **29**, 7.
Nîkâ*d*ûm nask, Sl. **10**, 3n. See Nihâ*d*ûm.
Nikhshâpûhar, com., Sl. **1**, 4n.
Nile r., Bd. **20**, 8n; Zs. **6**, 20n.
Nîrâsp, zod., Bd. **2**, 2.
Nîrang, ritual, Sl. **12**, 23; **13**, 1.
Nîrangistân, book, Int. 32; Byt. **2**, 37; **3**, 29; Sl. **1**, 3n, 4n; **2**, 86n; **10**, 35n; **12**, 1n, 31n; **16**, 6n.
Nîsânak, place, Byt. **3**, 9, 21.
Nîshapûhar, com., Sl. **1**, 4n.
Nîshâpûr, town, Bd. **12**, 12n, 32n; Byt. **1**, 7.
Niv r., Bd. **20**, 8.
Nivar, man, Bd. **33**, 3.
Niyârum nask, Sl. **10**, 3n. See Nihâ*d*ûm.
Nîyâz, demon, Bd. **3**, 17; **28**, 26.
Nôdar, man, Bd. **29**, 6; **31**, 13, 23; **33**, 5; Sl. **10**, 28n.
Nôktargâ, man, Bd. **31**, 32, 33.
Nônâbar, rite, Sl. **10**, 2; **13**, 2n.
Non-Iranian, Bd. **19**, 15; **29**, 4n; Zs. **2**, 10; Byt. **2**, 51.
Non-Turanian, Byt. **2**, 49.
Nôsâî Bûrz-Mitrô, com., Sl. **1**, 3n, 4n; **8**, 18.
Noxious creatures, Bd. **3**, 15, 20; **7**, 5, 7, 13; **13**, 16; **19**, 7, 9, 17, 21, 27, 30; **20**, 13; Zs. **2**, 9; **6**, 4, 5, 9, 14; Sl. **3**, 21; **8**, 19; **13**, 19; **19**, 9; **20**, 5, 18.
Nur, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Nyâyis, ritual, Sl. **7**, 1n, 2n, 4n; **16**, 6n; **17**, 5n; **20**, 1n.

Ocean, Bd. **7**, (6,) 7, 16; **9**, 5; **11**, 4; **12**, 6; **13**, 1, 5, 8-10; **15**, 27; **18**, 1, 7, 9; **19**, 1, 8, 11; **20**, 4; **22**, 2, 5, 9; **27**, 2; **29**, 10; **31**, 32; Zs. **6**, 6, 7; **7**, 8, 11.
Ordeals, Sl. **10**, 25n; **13**, 17; **15**, 15-17.
Orthography, Pahl., Int. 74.
Owokhm, demon, Bd. **31**, 6.
Oxus r., Bd. **15**, 29n; **20**, 8n, 9n, 22n, 28n; **22**, 4n; Zs. **6**, 20n; Byt. **3**, 17n, 38n.

Padashkhvârgar m., Bd. **12**, 2, (17,) 31n, 32; **31**, 21, 40; Byt. **2**, 63; **3**, 19, 20.
Padêvar, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Pâdîyâvîh, see Ablution.
Pâgam nask, Sl. **9**, 9n. See Pâzôn.
Paha, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Pâhargar m., Bd. **12**, 29, 37.
Pahlavâs, tribe, Int. 12.
Pahlavi alphabets, Int. 16, 17, 20.
— language, Int. 11.
— literature, extent, Int. 22.
— manuscripts, Int. 21, 22.
— (meaning of), Int. 12.

Pahlavi papyri, Int. 21.
— texts, three kinds here translated, Int. 67, 68; proportion untranslated, Int. 68; value of, Int. 74.
— writings, Int. 9-22.
Pâî Kûlî, place, Int. 19, 20n.
Pairistîra, man, Bd. 29, 1 n.
Pairi-urvaêsm, demon, Bd. 31, 6.
Pâîtîrasp, man, Bd. 32, 1.
Paîtirâsp, man, Bd. 32, 1, 2; 33, 1. See Pîrtarâsp.
Paîtrêd, see Infection.
Pandnâmak-i Zaratûst, Bd. 15, 2 n.
Pangistân, land, Bd. 20, 13 n, 15.
Pâpak, man, Int. 19; Bd. 31, 30; 34, 9; Byt. 2, 18 n.
Parâhôm, see Hôm juice.
Parasang, meas., Bd. 7, 8; 13, 2; 14, 4; 16, 7; 22, 8; 28, 1, 2; Sl. 4, 12; 9, 1 n.
Parêstyarô, man, Bd. 29, 1.
Pargâna, land, Bd. 20, 20.
Parîk, com., Sl. 1, 4 n.
Pârs, land, Bd. 12, 2, 9, 21, 36; 20, 25, 29; 24, 28; 29, 14; 31, 30n; 32, 4; 33, 10n; Zs. 7, 7, 10; Byt. 3, 9, 10, 19, 21.
Parsadgâ, chief, Bd. 29, 5.
Parsi religion most detailed in Pahl. texts, Int. 9; not fully explained here, Int. 68.
Parstva, man, Bd. 33, 4.
Parthians, Int. 12.
Parthva, land, Int. 12.
Parviz, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Parysatis, queen, Bd. 34, 8 n.
Pashang, king, Bd. 29, 5; 31, 14, 16.
Pasîn, prince, Bd. 31, 25 n.
Pasus-haurva, dog, Bd. 14, 19 n; 19, 34.
Patît, see Renunciation of sin.
— i khûd, ritual, Sl. 14, 6 n.
Pâtsrôbô, king, Sl. 10, 28 n.
Pâzand, Int. (12,) 14, (15)-17; Byt. 2, 55.
— Bahman Yast, Int. 57.
— Bundahis, Int. 30, 31.
— Sl., in part, Int. 66.
Pâzôn or Pâzî nask, Sl. 9, 9.
Pêdâk-mîyân r., Bd. 20, 7, 31.
Penôm, see Mouth-veil.
Periods of day, Bd. 25, (9, 10;) Sl. 7, 1; 10, 32; 14, 4-6; 17, 3. See Gâh.
Persepolis, Int. 19, 20 n.
Persian, ancient, Int. 11; mediæval, Int. 11, 12; modern, Int. 11, 14; version of Byt., Int. 57-59. See also Rivâyats.
Persian Gulf, Bd. 13, 8 n, 13 n; 20, 25 n.
Pêsdâd, title, Bd. 32, 1 n.
Pêsdâdian, Bd. 15, (28 n;) 17, 4 n; Sl. 10, 28 n.
Pêsh-Parviz, lun. man., Bd. 2, 3.
Pêshyôtanû, priest, Bd. 20, 31 n; 29, 5; 31, 29; 32, 5; Byt. 2, 1; 3, 25-27, 29-32, 36-38, 39 n, 41, 42, 51, 52.
Pêsyânsaî, land, Bd. 29, 4, 5, 7, 11; Byt. 3, 60 n.
Pig, domesticated, Sl. 2, 58.
Pirân, man, Bd. 31, 17.
Pîrîk, com., Sl. 1, 4 n.
Pîrtarâsp, man, Bd. 32, 1 n; 33, 1 n.
Pisces, Bd. 2, 2; Sl. 21, 2.
Pisîn valley, Bd. 29, 5 n.
Planets, Bd. 3, 25; 5, (1,) 5; 28, 44; Zs. 2, 10; 4, 3, 7-10.
Plants, origin, Bd. 9, 1-6; 27, 1-3; Zs. 8, 1-6; 9, 1-6; chiefs of, Bd. 24, 18-21, 27; 27, 4; classification, Bd. 27, 5-23; devoted to angels, Bd. 27, 24; dried before burning, Bd. 27, 25.
Pleiades, stars, Bd. 2, 3 n.
Pollution from dead apes, Sl. 2, 61; dead bodies, Sl. 2, 12-16, 18-22, 30-32, 35-124; 10, 12; dead dogs, Sl. 2, 62; dead hedgehog, Sl. 2, 59; dead menstruous woman, Sl. 2, 61; dead priests, Sl. 2, 60 n; from menstruation, Sl. 2, 17, 96; 3, 1-3, 10-20, 22-34; from serpents, Sl. 2, 33-35.
— of animals, Sl. 2, 109-111; buildings, Sl. 2, 18-22, 45; 3, 2, 3; carpets, Sl. 2, 101; 3, 2, 3; clothing, Sl. 2, 42, 44, 83; 3, 1, 13; cushions, Sl. 2, 102-104; 3, 2, 3; doors, Sl. 2, 74; earth and masonry, Sl. 2, 36; fire, Sl. 2, 38-40, 46, 49; food, Sl. 2, 41, 47, 119-124; 3, 12, 30; ground, Sl. 2, 12-16; jars, Sl. 2, 30-35; powdered things, Sl. 2, 37; unborn child, Sl. 2, 58, 105, 106; water, Sl. 2, 77-94; wool, Sl. 2, 100.
— stopped by objects, Sl. 2, 57, 58.
Portuguese, Byt. 3, 17 n.

Pôruk*î*st, woman, Bd. **32**, 5, 7 n.
Pôrûshasp, man, Bd. **20**, 32, 34 n; **32**, 1, 2; **33**, 3.
Pôryô*d*kêshîh. See Primitive faith.
Pourudhâkhst, man, Bd. **29**, 6.
Pouru-g*a*u, man, Bd. **31**, 7 n.
Prayer before and after sleep, Sl. **10**, 24. See also Inward prayer.
Precautions where death occurs, Sl. **2**, 38-44.
Pregnant woman, carrying her corpse, Sl. **2**, 6; **10**, 10; eating dead matter, Sl. **2**, 105; protected by fire, Sl. **10**, 4; **12**, 11; stepping on toothpick, Sl. **10**, 20; **12**, 13.
Priests, Bd. **30**, 30 n; **32**, 4 n; **33**, 0, 2 n, 3 n, 10 n; Zs. **11**, 10 n; Byt. **1**, 7 n; **2**, 38, 40, 55; Sl. **2**, 56, 60 n, 62 n; **5**, 3 n; **8**, 4, 11; **9**, 2, 4, 12 n; **13**, 9, 49 n; **14**, 3; their five dispositions, Bd. **19**, 36 n. See Dastûr, High-priest, Môbads, Purifying, Râspî, Supreme, Zôta.
Primeval ox, Bd. **3**, 14, 17, 18; **4**, 1, 2; **10**, 0, 1; **14**, 1, 3; **27**, 2; **34**, 1; Zs. **2**, 6; **9**, 1-7.
Primitive faith, Sl. **1**, 3, 4; **6**, 7; **10**, 30; **12**, 1, 13, 19; **13**, 2.
Professions, see Classes.
Providence, Sl. **20**, 17.
Province-ruler, Sl. **13**, 11, 15, 41 n, 44; **19**, 5.
Purification, modes of, Sl. **2**, 6, 14-17, 19, 22, 41, 42, 44, 53, 65-68, 92, 95-99, 112-118, 120-123; **3**, 14, 16-18, 20, 21.
Purifying priest, Sl. **12**, 22-27.
Pûr-tôrâ, man, Bd. **31**, 7, 8; **32**, 1 n.
Pûs, demon, Bd. **28**, 28.
Pûtîk sea, Bd. **13**, 7-11; **22**, 9; Zs. **6**, 14-16.
Pûyis-shâ*d*, man, Bd. **33**, 8.

Qubâd, king, Byt. **1**, 5 n.

Rad r., Bd. **20**, 7, 24 n.
Ragai., man, Bd. **32**, 1; **33**, 3.
Ragha, town, Bd. **31**, 40 n; Sl. **13**, 11 n.
Râi, town, Bd. **31**, 40; Sl. **13**, 11 n.
Râk, man, Bd. **31**, 31; **32**, 1 n.
Rakhvad, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Râm, angel, Bd. **27**, 24; Byt. **2**, 59 n; Sl. **11**, 4 n; **17**, 4 n; **22**, 21; **23**, 3.
Ramak-tôrâ, man, Bd. **31**, 7.
Rangha r. or lake, Bd. **19**, 15 n; **20**, 8 n.
Raoidhitô m., Bd. **12**, 27 n.
Rapîtvîn gâh, Bd. **2**, 8, 9; **25**, 9, 10, 12, 14; Sl. **7**, 1 n; **12**, 31.
Rashnû, angel, Bd. **27**, 24; **31**, 3; Byt. **2**, 59 n; **3**, 32; Sl. **1**, 2 n; **17**, 4, 5 n; **22**, 18; **23**, 3.
Râsk, Professor, Int. 25, 27.
Râspî, priest, Bd. **30**, 30.
Rathwô berezatô, Av., Sl. **11**, 4 n.
Ratûstâîtîh nask, Sl. **10**, 29.
Râvak m., Bd. **12**, 29, 35.
Receptacle for the dead, Sl. **9**, 7. See Depository.
Regulus, star, Bd. **2**, 8 n.
Renovation of the universe, Bd. **1**, 25; **6**, 4; **13**, 17; **18**, 4; **19**, 13, 14; **22**, 7; **27**, 4; **29**, 6; **30**, 17, 32; Zs. **1**, 16, 19; **4**, 2; **5**, 3.
Renunciation of sin, Sl. **4**, 14; **8**, 1 n, 4, 5, (7-10,) 12-14, 16, 17, 21, (23;) **9**, 6; **20**, 11.
Resurrection, Bd. **1**, 21; **11**, 6; account of, Bd. **30**, 1-33; not for some, Sl. **17**, 7; where, Sl. **17**, 11-14.
Rêvand m., Bd. **12**, 2, 18, 23, 34 n; **17**, 8; Zs. **11**, 9.
Revolving of luminaries, Bd. **5**, 3-9.
Ridge of Vistâsp, m., Bd. **12**, 18 n, 34; **17**, 8; Zs. **11**, 9.
Ritual, Sl. **5**, 2, 3, 5, 6; **12**, 23.
Rîvâs-plant, Bd. **15**, 2; Zs. **10**, 4.
Rivâyats, Pahlavi, Int. 60; Persian, Int. 57, 67; Zs. **9**, 1 n; Byt. **1**, 1 n; **3**, 25 n, 43 n, 52 n, 61 n; Sl. **1**, 2 n; **2**, 2 n, 4 n, 5 n; **8**, 1 n; **9**, 9 n; **10**, 3 n, 4 n, 13 n, 21 n, 25 n, 26 n, 28 n, 29 n; **12**, 4 n, 17 n; **16**, 6 n; **17**, 5 n; **19**, 1 n, 2 n, 4 n, 5 n, 7 n, 9 n-14 n.
Rivers, Bd. **7**, 15-17; **20**, 1-34; **21**, 2-4, 6; **24**, 14, 15; Zs. **6**, 20, 21.
Romans, Byt. **2**, 19 n.
Rôshan, com., Byt. **3**, 3; Sl. **1**, 4 n; **2**, 39, 86, 107.
— m., Bd. **17**, 6.
Rôshanô-kerp, fire, Byt. **3**, 29.
Rôyis-hômand m., Bd. **12**, 2, 27.
Rûbânîk sin, see Sin affecting the soul.

Rûdastâm, man, Bd. 31, 41.
Rulers, the five, Sl. 13, 11, 15, 41n, 44; 19, 5.
Rûman, Bd. 34, 8; Byt. 2, 49; 3, 8, 9, 34, 51.
Rûmans, Byt. 2, 50.
Rustam, man, Bd. 29, 7n; 31, 36n, 41n.

Sacred butter, Sl. 2, (43;) 3, 32n; 10, 34; 11, 4n; 14, 3.
— cake, Byt. 2, 36, 57n; Sl. 2, 43n; 3, (32,) 35; 5, 5; 7, 4n; 8, 20; 9, 11, 12n; 10, 2, 34-36; 12, 1, 8, 9; 14, 1-3; 16, 6; 17, 2, 4, 5n; 18, 4n.
— feast, Sl. 12, 19; 13, 25; 18, 3, (4.)
— fire, Sl. 2, 46, 49; 7, 9. See Vâhrâm fire.
— milk, Sl. 2, (43;) 13, 12n.
— shirt, Bd. 28, 8, 10; Sl. 4, 2n, (5-8,) 13, 14.
— thread-girdle, Bd. 28, 8, 10; 30, 30n; Byt. 2, 36, 44, 57, 58; Sl. 3, 32n; 4, (1-4,) 6-8, 11, 13, 14; 10, 1, 13.
— twigs, Byt. 2, 36, 57, 58; 3, 29, 37; Sl. 2, 18; 3, 10, 11, 20, (32,) 33; 8, 18; 10, 35; 12, 1; 13, 12n; 14, 2.
— twig-stand, Sl. 3, 32; 10, 35.
Sadaro, Sl. 4, 5n. See Sacred shirt.
Sad-dar Bundahis, Int. 22n, 45, 59n; Sl. 10, 20n; 12, 5n; 17, 4n.
Sadis, Sl. 8, 6n. See Three nights.
Sadvâstarân, Bd. 30, 10.
Safêd kôh, m., Bd. 12, 22n.
Safêd rûd, r., Bd. 20, 13n, 23n.
Sagânsîh, land, Bd. 31, 37.
Sagastân, land, Bd. 12, 9, 15; 13, 16; 20, 17, 24n, 29; 22, 5; 24, 28; 31, 37n; Zs. 7, 7, 9; Byt. 3, 19.
Sag-dîd, see Dog's gaze.
Sagittarius, Bd. 2, 2; 34, 6; Sl. 21, 2.
Sâhm, man, Bd. 31, 27.
Sairima, land, Bd. 15, 29n; 31, 9n; Byt. 3, 3n.
Sakâdûm nask, Sl. 10, (25;) 12, 2, 10, 12; 13, 17n, 30.
Salm, prince, Bd. 15, 29; 20, 12n; 31, 9, 10, 12; Sl. 10, 28n.
Salmân, land, Bd. 20, 12; Byt. 3, 3; Sl. 10, 28n.
Sâm, man, Bd. 29, 7, 9; 31, 36; Byt. 3, 60, 61.
Sâmân, title, Byt. 3, 59.
Samarkand, land, Bd. 12, 13n; 15, 29n; 20, 20; Zs. 7, 7n; Byt. 2, 49n; 3, 14n.
Samarkandian, Byt. 3, 17n.
Sarak, land, Bd. 12, 35.
Sarsaok, ox, Bd. 15, 27; 17, 4; 19, 13; Zs. 11, 10n.
Sâsân, man, Int. 19n; Bd. 31, 30.
Sasanian inscriptions, Int. 19, 20; Byt. 2, 4n.
— Pahlavi, Int. 19-21.
Sasanians, Int. 11, 15, 19, 21; Bd. 31, 32n; 33, 2n; 34, 9; Byt. 2, 18n, 20n; 3, 11n.
Satan, Bd. 3, 9n.
Satavês, gulf or lake, Bd. 13, 9, 10, 12, 13; 22, 1, 9; Zs. 6, 16-18; star, Bd. 2, 7; 5, 1; 13, 9n, 12; 24, 17; Zs. 6, 16; Sl. 14, 5.
Satlig r., Bd. 20, 9n.
Satûih, Sl. 8, 6n. See Three nights.
Saturn, planet, Bd. 5, 1; 28, 48; Zs. 4, 7-10.
Saukavastân, land, Bd. 29, 4, 5, 13.
Savah, region, Bd. 5, 8, 9; 11, 3; 29, 1; Byt. 3, 47.
Sâvar, demon, Bd. 28, 9, 10; 30, 29. See Sôvar.
Scorpio, Bd. 2, 2; 34, 5; Sl. 21, 2.
Seas, Bd. 7, 6, 14; 11, 2, 4; 13, 1, 5-17; 24, 23; Zs. 6, 6, 7, 14-19.
Season-festivals, Bd. 25, 1, 3, 6; Byt. 2, 45; Sl. 10, 2; 12, 19, 31; 13, 29; 18, (3,) 4; 19, 4.
Seasons, Bd. 25, 3-17, 19, 20.
Sêg, demon, Bd. 28, 26.
Selections of Zâd-sparam, where found, Int. 46; age, Int. 47; contents, Int. 48; MSS., Int. 48-50.
Seleucus Callinicus, Byt. 2, 19n.
Semitic words in Pahlavi, Int. 13, 14, 17, 18; in modern Persian, Int. 14.
Sênî, land, Bd. 12, 13n; 15, 29; 20, 30n; Sl. 6, 7n.
Sênô bird, Bd. 14, 11n, 23n; 18, 9n; Zs. 8, 4. See Griffon.
Serosh, see Srôsh.
Serpent, Bd. 30, 31.
Sevan lake, Bd. 22, 8n; 24, 23n.
Sfend nask, Sl. 10, 4n. See Spend.

Shadows, midday, Sl. **21**, 1-3; — afternoon, Sl. **21**, 4-8.
Shâh 'Abbâs, Byt. **3**, 34n, 44n.
Shahpûhar, king, Int. 19; Bd. **33**, 2; Byt. **2**, 18n.
Shahpûr, king, Byt. **2**, 18; **3**, 14.
Shahrivar, angel, Byt. **2**, 59n. See Shatvaîrô.
Shapîk, see Sacred shirt.
Shâpûr II, Bd. **33**, 2n, 3n; Byt. **2**, 18n; Sl. **8**, 23n; **15**, 16n.
Shatrô-râm, man, Bd. **12**, 20n.
Shatvaîrô, angel, Bd. **1**, 26; **27**, 24; **30**, 19, 29; Sl. **13**, 14, 39; **15**, 3, 5, 14-19; **22**, 4; **23**, 1; month, Bd. **25**, 20.
Shâyast lâ-shâyast, why so called, Int. 59, 60; extent, Int. 60; contents, Int. 60-62; age, Int. 63-65; com. mentioned, Int. 63, 64; nasks mentioned, Int. 64; MSS., Int. 65, 66; Pâz. version, Int. 66; not hitherto translated, Int. 66, 67.
Shê*d*ak, man, Bd. **31**, 18.
Shê*d*âspîh, fiend, Byt. **3**, 3, 5, 8, 21.
Shîrâz, town, Bd. **29**, 14n.
Shirt, see Sacred shirt.
Shîrtashôsp, man, Bd. **33**, 4.
Shirvân r., Bd. **20**, 25n.
Shnûman, ritual, Sl. **3**, 35; **7**, (8;) **9**, 11n; **10**, 2; **14**, 3.
Shûstar, town, Bd. **20**, 26n.
Sighing, cause of, Sl. **12**, 32.
Sikandar, king, Bd. **34**, 8n; Byt. **2**, 19n.
Si*k*idâv m., Bd. **12**, 2.
Silver age, Byt. **1**, 1n, 5; **2**, 17.
Sîmurgh, bird, Bd. **14**, 11n; **18**, 9n; **24**, 11n.
Sin, Zs. **1**, 13, 18; Byt. **2**, 40; **3**, 57; Sl. **2**, 53, 91, 106; **5**, 6; **6**, 4, 6; **8**, 19; **10**, 3, 18, 25, 27; **12**, 31; **15**, 22, 26-28, 30; **20**, 15; affecting accusers, Sl. **8**, (1,) 14, 15, 17; affecting the soul, Sl. **8**, (1,) 16; degrees of, Sl. **1**, 1, 2; **11**, 1, 2; **16**, 1-5; harm, Bd. **5**, 2; **19**, 20; imputed, Sl. **5**, 1; **6**, 2; **8**, 13; making water on foot, Sl. **4**, 8n; **10**, 5; mortal, Sl. **8**, 7, 18, 21, 23; running about uncovered, Bd. **28**, 8, 10; Byt. **2**, 38; Sl. **4**, (8)-10; unseasonable chatter, Bd. **28**, 19; Sl. **4**, (9;) **5**, 1-7; walking with one boot, Bd. **28**, 13; Sl. **4**, 8n, (12.) See Aredûs, Farmân, Khôr, Renunciation, Tanâpûhar, Worthy of death, Yât.
Sînamrû, bird, Bd. **24**, 11n.
Sînd, land, Bd. **15**, 29; **20**, 9, 30.
Sînîk congregation, Sl. **6**, 7.
Sinners, Sl. **15**, 17; mortal, Sl. **8**, 5; put to death, Sl. **8**, 6, 7, 21, 22n.
Sirius, star, Bd. **2**, 7n; **7**, 1n; Sl. **14**, 5n.
Sîrkân, town, Bd. **33**, 11n; Zs. **1**, 0n.
Sîrôzah, ritual, Sl. **7**, 8n; **17**, 5n.
Sîstân, land, Bd. **12**, 9n. See Sagastân.
Siyâh kôh, m., Bd. **12**, 22n.
Sîyâk-hômand m., Bd. **12**, 22.
— mûî-mand m., Bd. **12**, 2.
— tôrâ, man, Bd. **31**, 7.
Sîyâkmak, man, Bd. **15**, 25, 30; **31**, 1, 6; **32**, 1n.
Sîyâvakhsh, prince, Bd. **28**, 15n; **31**, 25; Byt. **3**, 25, 26; Sl. **10**, 28n.
Snake-killer, Bd. **28**, 22.
Sneezing, cause of, Sl. **12**, 32.
Sôftî, tribe, Byt. **2**, 49.
Sogdiana, land, Bd. **20**, 8n.
Soghd, land, Bd. **20**, 19.
Sôk-tôrâ, man, Bd. **31**, 7; **32**, 1n.
Sôshyans, apostle, Bd. **11**, 6; **29**, 6; **30**, 3, 4, 7, 17, 25, 27; **32**, 7n, 8; Byt. **3**, 61n, 62; Sl. **13**, 5; com., Sl. **1**, 3; **2**, 2n, 56, 74, 80, 118, 119; **3**, 13; **6**, 4, 5.
Sôvar, demon, Bd. **1**, 27; **28**, 9n. See Sâvar.
— lake, Bd. **12**, 24n; Zs. **6**, 22. See next.
Sôvbar lake, Bd. **7**, 14; **12**, 24; **22**, 1, 3; Zs. **6**, 22n.
Spaênyasp, man, Bd. **31**, 14, 27.
Spâhân, land, Bd. **12**, 40; **20**, 26; **31**, 40.
Spans, Bd. **26**, 3; Sl. **16**, 4; **21**, 2n.
Sparnak, man, Bd. **31**, 40.
Spazg, demon, Bd. **28**, 31.
Spéd r., Bd. **20**, 7, 13n, 23.
Spê*d*-razûr, forest, Bd. **24**, 16n; Byt. **3**, 9, 21.
— tôrâ, man, Bd. **31**, 7.
Spênâk-maînôk, Bd. **1**, 1n. See Beneficent spirit.
Spend nask, Sl. **10**, (4;) **12**, 3, 11, 15, 29.
— r., Bd. **20**, 7n, 13n, 23n.

Spendarma*d*, angel, Bd. **1**, 26; **15**, 1; **27**, 24; **30**, 29; Zs. **10**, 3; Byt. **2**, 8, 16, 31, 48, 53, 59n; Sl. **10**, 28; **11**, 4; **13**, 14; **15**, 3, 5, 20-24; **22**, 5; **23**, 1; month, Bd. **25**, 6, 7, 11, 20.
Spend-dâ*d*, prince, Bd. **31**, 29, 30; **34**, 8; Byt. **2**, 17.
Spendyâ*d* m., Bd. **12**, 2, 23.
Spê*n*gargâk, demon, Bd. **17**, 1. See Aspengargâk.
Spêni*s*t fire, Bd. **17**, 1; Zs. **11**, 1n.
Spe*n*ta-mainyu, Av., Bd. **1**, 1n.
Spe*n*tâ-mainyû gâtha, Sl. **13**, 2n, 15, 33-35, 51.
— — hâ, Sl. **13**, 33.
Spe*n*tem-Ahurem-mazdām ch., Sl. **13**, 36.
Spêtos, land, Bd. **20**, 8.
Spiegel, Professor, Int. 25, 59, 71.
Spîtâmân, man, Bd. **32**, 1; title, see Zaratûst.
Spîtôî*d*, chief, Bd. **29**, 1.
Spîtûr, prince, Bd. **31**, 3, 5.
Spûr, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Srît, man, Sl. **22**, 32; woman, Bd. **32**, 5.
Srîtak, woman, Bd. **32**, 7n.
Srîtô, man, Zs. **11**, 10n.
Srob, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Srôsh, angel, Bd. **19**, (33;) **27**, 24; **30**, (29,) 30; **31**, 38; Zs. **11**, 7; Byt. **2**, 59n; **3**, 25, 26, 32, 59; Sl. **13**, 43; **17**, 3, 5n, 6; **22**, 17; **23**, 3.
Srôshô-*k*aranâm, wt., Sl. **4**, 10n, (14;) **5**, 3; **6**, 3; **8**, 9; **10**, 24; **11**, 1, 2; **16**, 5.
Sruvâ, place, Bd. **29**, 14.
Srûvô, ox, Zs. **11**, 10.
Steel age, Byt. **1**, 1n, 5; **2**, 21.
Step, meas., Bd. **26**, 3n.
Stîr, wt., Sl. **1**, (2;) **3**, 25, 26; **7**, 3; **11**, 2; **16**, 2n, 3n, 4, 5.
S'ôtân yasnô, ritual, Sl. **13**, 1.
Stû*d*gar nask, Byt. **1**, (1;) Sl. **10**, 8; **12**, 32.
Stûtô-garô hâ, Sl. **13**, 22.
Sûde, land, Bd. **20**, 14.
Sû*d*kar nask, Byt. **1**, 1n; Sl. **19**, 1n. See Stû*d*gar.
Sughdha, land, Bd. **15**, 29n.
Summer, Bd. **25**, 4, 5, 7-10, 13-17, 19, 20.
Sun reverence, Sl. **7**, 1-6; **12**, 31.
Supreme high-priest, Bd. **24**, 1; Sl. **9**, 3.
— Zaratûst, Sl. **13**, 11, 15, 38, 41, 44; **19**, 5.
Sûrâk, land, Bd. **15**, 29; **20**, 8; man, Bd. **31**, 19.
Sûristân, land, Bd. **15**, 29n; **20**, 10.
Syr-darya, r., Bd. **20**, 20n.
Syria, Bd. **15**, 29n; **20**, 10n.

*S*ahî-bûn sea, Bd. **13**, 7, 15.
*S*am, man, Bd. **31**, 27n.
*S*ân, man, Bd. **31**, 17, 18.
*S*arva, god, Bd. **1**, 27n.
*S*êd, r., Bd. **20**, 7.
*S*êr, zod., Bd. **2**, 2.
*S*îdasb, man, Bd. **31**, 27n.
*S*kinâs, man, Bd. **33**, 3n.
*S*ôk, bird, Bd. **19**, 19.

Ta*d*-sôidhi*s* hâ, Sl. **13**, 49.
Ta*d*-thwâ-peresâ hâ, Sl. **13**, 28.
Tâham, man, Bd. **33**, 4.
Tahmâsp, man, Bd. **31**, 23n.
Tâirêv, demon, Bd. **1**, 27; **28**, 11n; **30**, 29.
Takhmôrup, king, Bd. **17**, 4; **31**, 2, 3; **32**, 1n; **34**, 4; Zs. **11**, 10n; Sl. **10**, 28n.
Tambayak, demon, Bd. **31**, 6.
Tanâpûhar good work, Sl. **1**, (1n;) **2**, 79n, 93; **6**, 3, 4, 6; **7**, 4; **8**, 20; **16**, 6; **18**, 4n.
— sin, Sl. **1**, 1, (2;) **2**, 40, 50, 51, 53, 69, 70, 79n, 80, 82; **3**, 26-28; **4**, 10, 12; **5**, 3, 4; **8**, 20; **10**, 5, 17, 35n; **11**, 1, 2; **12**, 4; **16**, 5.
Tanuperetha, Av., Sl. **1**, 1n.
Taparistân, land, Bd. **12**, 17; **13**, 15; **20**, 27; Byt. **3**, 19.
Taprêv, demon, Bd. **28**, 11, 13. See Tâirêv.
Taraba, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Tarâzûk, zod., Bd. **2**, 2; **5**, 6.
Tarmaz, town, Bd. **20**, 28n.
Tarômat, demon, Bd. **28**, 14; **30**, 29.
Tashkand, town, Bd. **20**, 20n.
Taurus, zod., Bd. **2**, 2; Sl. **21**, 2.
Tâ-ve-urvâtâ hâ, Sl. **13**, 6, 14.
Tâz, man, Bd. **15**, 28; **31**, 6; Sl. **10**, 28n.
Tâzak, woman, Bd. **15**, 28.
Tegend r., Bd. **20**, 15n.
Teherân, town, Bd. **12**, 31n; **31**, 40n; Sl. **13**, 11n.

Têrak m., Bd. **5**, 3, 4; **12**, 2, 4.
Teremet r., Bd. **20**, 7, 9n, 28.
Thraêtaona, king, Bd. **31**, 4n, 7n.
Three-legged ass, Bd. **19**, 1-12.
Three-nights' ceremony, Sl. **8**, 6; **10**, 2; **12**, 5, 31.
— — punishment, Bd. **30**, 13, 16; Sl. **8**, 5, 7, 16.
Thrita, man, Bd. **31**, 26n, 27n; Zs. **11**, 10n; Byt. **3**, 14n; Sl. **22**, 32n.
Thritak, man, Bd. **31**, 14.
Thriti, woman, Bd. **32**, 5n.
Tides, Bd. **13**, 8, 11, 13, 14; Zs. **6**, 17.
Tigris r., Bd. **20**, 10n, 12n, 25n; Zs. **6**, 20n; Byt. **3**, 3n, 5n, 21n, 38n.
Time personified, Int. 70; Zs. **1**, 24-27; **4**, 5.
Tin age, Byt. **2**, 20.
Tîr, angel (for Tîstar), Bd. **27**, 24; Sl. **23**, 2; month, Bd. **7**, 2; **25**, 3, 20; Zs. **6**, 2; planet, Bd. **5**, 1.
Tîstar, angel, Bd. **7**, 2-4, 7-10; **9**, 2; **11**, 2; **19**, 11; **27**, 3; Zs. **6**, 1, 3, 9, 10, 13; **8**, 1; Byt. **2**, 59n; **3**, 14n; Sl. **22**, 13; see Tîr; star, Bd. **2**, 7; **5**, 1; **7**, 1; Sl. **14**, 5.
Toothpick, how to be cut, Sl. **10**, 20; **12**, 13.
Tôrâ, zod., Bd. **2**, 2.
Tort r., Bd. **20**, 7n, 24.
Translations of Bd., Int. 24-26, 43-45; of Byt., Int. 57, 59; of Sl., Int. 66, 67; plan of these, Int. 70-74.
Tree of all germs, Bd. **9**, 5, 6; **18**, 9; **27**, 2; **29**, 5; Zs. **8**, 3.
Tribe-ruler, Sl. **13**, 11, 15, 41n, 44; **19**, 5.
Tûg, prince, Bd. **31**, 9, 10, 12, 14, 27; Sl. **10**, 28n.
Tûhmâspîan, title, Bd. **31**, 23; **34**, 6; Sl. **10**, 28n.
Tûirya, tribe, Bd. **15**, 29n; **31**, 9n.
Tûr, land, Bd. **12**, 20; **15**, 29; **21**, 6; **30**, 16; **31**, 27n; Byt. **2**, 62; **3**, 34.
— Brâgrêsh, Byt. **2**, 3n.
— i Brâdarvash, Byt. **2**, 3.
Tûrak, man, Bd. **31**, 14, 27.
Tûrân, land, Sl. **10**, 28n.
Turanian syllabary, Int. 13.
Tûrk, tribe, Bd. **29**, 7; Byt. **2**, 49; **3**, 7-9, 51.
Tûrkîstân, land, Bd. **12**, 13, 39; **15**, 29n; **29**, 13; Byt. **2**, 24n, 49n; **3**, 21n; Sl. **6**, 7n.
Tûrks, Byt. **2**, 24n, 50n.
Tûs m., Bd. **22**, 3; land, Bd. **12**, 24; **20**, 30; man, Bd. **29**, 6.

Uda, demon, Bd. **28**, 19; **31**, 6n.
Udaî, demon, Bd. **31**, 6.
Ukhshyad-ereta, apostle, Bd. **32**, 8n.
— nemangh, apostle, Bd. **32**, 8n.
'Umân gulf, Bd. **13**, 9n.
Uncleanness, period of, Sl. **2**, 41, 42, 44, 62, 105-109; **3**, 14-18.
Unseasonable chatter, see Sin.
Ursa major, Bd. **2**, 7n; Sl. **11**, 4n.
Urumiyah lake, Bd. **22**, 2n, 8n.
Urupi dog, Sl. **2**, 59n.
Ururviga, man, Bd. **32**, 7.
Urvad-gâ, man, Bd. **31**, 31n; **33**, 4.
Urvad-gâi-frâst, man, Bd. **31**, 31.
Urvâkhshaya, man, Bd. **31**, 26n.
Urvandasp, man, Bd. **32**, 1n.
Urvarâm, twig, Sl. **3**, 32n.
Urvatad-nar, man, Bd. **29**, 5; **32**, 5n.
Urvâzist fire, Bd. **17**, 1. See Aûrvâzîst.
Urvig, woman, Bd. **32**, 7n.
Urvis lake, Bd. **13**, 4n; **22**, 1, 11.
Usefriti, Av., Sl. **13**, 30n.
Ushahina gâh, Bd. **19**, 15n; **25**, 9n; Byt. **2**, 59n; Sl. **14**, 4n; **17**, 5n.
Ushidarena m., Bd. **12**, 6n.
Ushidhau m., Bd. **12**, 6n.
Usinemangh, man, Bd. **31**, 33n.
Uspâsnu, title, Bd. **29**, 1n.
Usta-Ahurem-mazdâm ch., Sl. **13**, 32.
Ustavaiti gâtha, Sl. **13**, 2n, 15, 27-31, 51.
— hâ, Sl. **13**, 27.
Uzasti, span, Bd. **26**, 3n.
Uzava, king, Bd. **31**, 23n.

Vâd, angel, Bd. **27**, 24; Sl. **11**, 4; **22**, 22; **23**, 3; day, Byt. **3**, 16.
Vâdgês m., Bd. **12**, 2, 19.
Vâdgêsians, Bd. **12**, 19.
Vâê the bad, demon, Bd. **28**, 35.
— the good, angel, Sl. **11**, 4; **17**, 4, 5n.
Vâê-bûkht, man, Bd. **33**, 6, 8.
Vaêdist, man, Bd. **32**, 1n.

Vaêtand-i Râghinôid, woman, Bd. **31**, 23.
Vafar-hômand m., Bd. **12**, 2, 22.
Vâg, Sl. **3**, 6n; **16**, 6n. See Inward prayer.
Vagarkard-i Dînîk, quoted, Bd. **32**, 1n, 5n, 7n; its author, Sl. **1**, 3n.
Vahidhrôs, man, Bd. **33**, 3.
Vahîk, zod., Bd. **2**, 2; **5**, 6.
Vahist, see Heaven.
Vahistem-Ahurem-mazdâm ch., Sl. **13**, 46.
Vahistôisti gâtha, Sl. **13**, 2n, 15, 41-45, 51.
Vâhrâm, angel, Bd. **27**, 24; Byt. **3**, 32; Sl. **22**, 20; **23**, 3; day, Bd. **25**, 3; planet, Bd. **5**, 1.
— fire, Bd. **17**, 1, 2, 9; Byt. **2**, 26, 37; Sl. **2**, 46n, 49n. See Sacred fire.
— Gôr, king, Byt. **2**, 20.
— i Vargâvand, king, Byt. **3**, 14, 32n, 39, 44n, 49.
— shâd, man, Bd. **33**, 11.
Vaht, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Vakaêni r., Bd. **20**, 34.
Vakhsh, man, Bd. **33**, 3.
Vakht-âfrîd, com., Sl. **1**, 4n.
Valkhas, king, Byt. **2**, 19n.
Van lake, Bd. **22**, 8n; **24**, 23n.
Vanand, star, Bd. **2**, 7; **5**, 1; Sl. **11**, 4; **14**, 5.
Vand-Aûharmazd, com., Sl. **1**, 4n; **2**, 2, 6, 44; **14**, 5.
Vandîd-khîm, priest, Byt. **3**, 39.
Vanfraghesn, man, Bd. **31**, 7.
Vânîdâr, man, Bd. **31**, 9.
Vanô-i-fravisn, man, Bd. **32**, 1n.
Varak, zod., Bd. **2**, 2; **5**, 6, 7.
Varant, lun. man., Bd. **2**, 3.
Varenô, demon, Bd. **3**, 17; **28**, (25.)
Vâresha bird, Bd. **14**, 30.
Varzîd-dîn, man, Bd. **32**, 1n.
Vâs-i pankâsadvarân, fish, Bd. **18**, 5, 7.
Vayô, demon, Bd. **28**, 35n.
Vâzist fire, Bd. **7**, 12; **17**, 1, 2; Zs. **6**, 13; **11**, 1, 5; Sl. **13**, 26.
Vêh r., Bd. **7**, 15, 17; **20**, 1, 3, 5-7, 8n, 9, 22, 28, 30; **21**, 3; Zs. **6**, 20; Byt. **3**, 17, 38.
Vèh-âfrîd, woman, Bd. **31**, 30.
Vêh-dôst, com., Sl. **1**, 4n.
Vendeses r., Bd. **20**, 29.
Vendidad, ritual, Byt. **2**, 59n; Sl. **12**, 26; **16**, 6n; **17**, 5n; oldest MSS. of, Int. 21; referred to, Sl. **1**, 1; **2**, 1, 12, 55n, 118n; **10**, 5, 19, 31, 32; **12**, 6, 20; **13**, 7; quoted, Sl. **12**, 4, 23; **13**, 8, 19; Av. passage translated, Sl. **2**, 95n; Pahl. do. do., Sl. **1**, 1n; **2**, 18n, 31n, 123n, 124n; **3**, 1n, 11n, 12n; **4**, 10n.
Venus, planet, Bd. **5**, 1; Byt. **3**, 4n, 18.
Vergân sea, Bd. **20**, 24.
Vîbâzu, meas., Bd. **26**, 3n.
Vîdadafsh, region, Bd. **5**, 8, 9; **11**, 3; **25**, 10; **29**, 1; Byt. **3**, 47.
Vîdast, man, Bd. **32**, 1.
Village-ruler, Sl. **13**, 11, 15, 41n, 44; **19**, 5.
Vînâsp, man, Bd. **33**, 3.
Vindâd-i-pêdâk, man, Bd. **33**, 6, 8.
Virafsang, man, Bd. **31**, 6.
Vîrak, princess, Bd. **31**, 9n.
Virgo, Bd. **2**, 2; **34**, 2; Sl. **21**, 2.
Vîsak, man, Bd. **31**, 16, 17.
Vis-haurva dog, Bd. **14**, 19n; **19**, 34.
Visnâsp fire, Zs. **6**, 22n; Byt. **3**, 10. See Gûsasp.
Vispân-fryâ, woman, Bd. **31**, 18.
Visparad, ritual, Byt. **2**, 59n; Sl. **16**, 6; chapters cited, Sl. **13**, 5, 26, 32, 36, 39, 40, 46, 48.
Vistâsp, king, Bd. **12**, 32; **17**, 6, 8; **20**, 31n; **28**, 15n; **29**, 5; **31**, 29; **32**, 5; Zs. **11**, 10n; Byt. **1**, 1n, 4; **2**, 1, 16, 49n, 58-60; **3**, 9, 25, 26, 29n, 30, 51, 52; Sl. **10**, 21n; **11**, 4. See Kai-Vistâsp.
Vitast, span, Bd. **26**, 3n; Sl. **21**, 2n.
Vîvanghâû, man, Bd. **29**, 6; **31**, 2, 7; **32**, 1n.
Vîzak, man, Bd. **32**, 1n.
Vîzarêsh, demon, Bd. **28**, 18.
Vohu-fryân fire, Bd. **17**, 1; Zs. **11**, 1n.
Vohû-khshathra gâtha, Sl. **13**, 2n, 15, 37, 38n, 51.
Vohû-khshathrem-yazamaidê ch., Sl. **13**, 39.
Vohûman, angel, Bd. **1**, 23, 25, (26n;) **7**, 3; **27**, 24; **30**, 29; Zs. **6**, 3; **9**, 6; **11**, 10n; Sl. **13**, 14; **15**, 3, 5, 9-11; **22**, 2; **23**, 1; his bird, Sl. **10**, 9; king, Bd. **31**, 29, 30; **34**, 8; Byt. **2**, 17; month, Bd. **25**, 20.

Vohûman-*kîhar*, man, Bd. **33**, 3.
— *yast*, ritual, Byt. **1**, 1 n, 6; **2**, 1.
Vologeses I, Byt. **2**, 19 n.
Vôrûbarst, region, Bd. **5**, 8, 9; **11**, 3, 4; **25**, 10; **29**, 1; Byt. **3**, 47.
Vôrûgarst, region, Bd. **5**, 8, 9; **11**, 3, 4; **25**, 10; **29**, 1; Byt. **3**, 47.

Walking with one boot, Bd. **28**, 13; Sl. **4**, 8 n, (12.)
— without boots, Sl. **4**, 12 n; **10**, 12.
Washing the face, Sl. **12**, 21.
— the hands, Sl. **7**, 2, 7; before sleep, Sl. **10**, 38.
Weeks, Sl. **23**, 4 n.
Well-water unclean at night, Sl. **12**, 17.
Westergaard, Professor, Int. 20 n, 25, 28 n, 37-39, 41, 48, 71.
Wife to worship with her husband, Sl. **12**, 30.
Windischmann, Int. 25, 26.
Winter, Bd. **25**, .. 5, 7, 8, 10-13, 15-17, 19, 20; **28**, 1.
Wisdom, like fire, Sl. **20**, 2; effect on the mind, Sl. **20**, 3.
Wives, five kinds, Bd. **32**, 6 n.
Woman, after child-birth, Sl. **3**, 15; menstruous, Sl. **2**, 17, 96; **3**, 1-14, 16-22, 25-35; **8**, 12; **10**, 39; **12**, 4 n; miscarriage, Sl. **3**, 15, 22, 23; pregnant, Sl. **2**, 6, 105; **3**, 22; **10**, 4, 10, 20; **12**, 11, 13; priest, Sl. **10**, 35.
Worship, four kinds, Sl. **9**, 9, 10; of God, Sl. **8**, 22, 23; **10**, 3, 5; **19**, 7; form of, Sl. **12**, 1.
Worthy of death, Bd. **30**, 16; Sl. **2**, 9, (40,) 63, 64, 76, 81, 82, 85, 105, 107, 108; **8**, 2, 4, 5, 7, 9, 13, 18, 21, 23; **10**, 19; **15**, 22, 23; **18**, 4 n.
Wrath, race of, Byt. **2**, 22, 24, 25, 36; **3**, 1, 6, 10, 13, 21; — with infuriate spear, Byt. **2**, 36; **3**, 24, 30, 35. See Aêshm, Khashm.

Xerxes, Bd. **34**, 8 n.

Yâdkâr-i Zarîrân, book, Byt. **2**, 49 n.
Yamâhust, man, Bd. **29**, 5.
Yanghad, man, Bd. **31**, 2. See *Ayanghad*.
Yâ-skyaothanâ hâ, Sl. **13**, 10, 14.
Yasna, ritual, Byt. **2**, 59 n; Sl. **9**, 11 n, 12 n; **13**, 1 n; **16**, 6 n; oldest MSS. of, Int. 21; chapters cited, Sl. **13**, 1, 2 n, 4, 6-12, 16-23, 25, 27-33, 35, 37, 38, 41-45, 47, 49-51; of seven ch., Sl. **13**, 0 n, 15-25, 50 n, 51.
Yast, ritual, Sl. **12**, 1, 30; **16**, (6;) **17**, 5 n.
Yastôfrîd, rite, Sl. **5**, 2, 6. See Aûstôfrîd.
Yât sin, Sl. **1**, 1, 2; **2**, 51; **11**, 1, 2; **16**, 5.
Yathâ-ahû-vairyô formula, Bd. **1**, (21;) Zs. **1**, (19 n;) **2**, 8; Sl. **10**, 7; **12**, 18, 32; **13**, 13; recitations of, Sl. **19**, 1-15.
Yathâ-âis hâ, Sl. **13**, 8, 14.
Yawning, cause of, Sl. **12**, 32.
Yazd, town, Sl. **21**, 0 n, 2 n.
Yazdakard, king, Int. 42; Bd. **33**, 11 n; **34**, 9 n; Byt. **3**, 11 n.
Yazdân, see Angels, God.
— aîrikht, man, Bd. **31**, 19.
— sarâd, man, Bd. **31**, 19.
Yazisn, rite, Bd. **2**, 9; **30**, 25; Sl. **3**, 35 n; **13**, 1 n; **17**, 3, 5. See also Ceremonial.
Year, solar, Bd. **25**, 1, 21; lunar, Bd. **25**, 18, 19.
Yênhê-hâtâm formula, Byt. **2**, (64 n;) Sl. **10**, 5 n; **13**, 24.
Yêzî-adâis hâ, Sl. **13**, 33.
Yim, king, Bd. **12**, 20; **17**, 5; **23**, 1; **31**, 3-5, 6 n, 7, 8; **32**, 1 n; **34**, 4; Sl. **10**, 28 n; his enclosure, Bd. **19**, 16; **24**, 11; **29**, 4, 5, 14; **32**, 5; Byt. **3**, 55.
Yimak, queen, Bd. **23**, 1; **31**, 4.
Yimakân m., Bd. **29**, 14.
Yôgêst, meas., Bd. **14**, 28; **26**, (1 n.)
Yûdân-Yim, man, Int. 42, 46, 47, 64; Bd. **33**, 10 n, 11; Zs. **1**, 0.
Yûnân, see Greeks.

Zâb, king, Bd. **31**, 23 n.
— r., Bd. **20**, 25 n.
Zâdsam, man, Bd. **31**, 14 n.
Zâd-sparam, priest, Int. 38, 42, 46-49; Bd. **33**, 10 n, 11; Zs. **1**, 0, 19 n; **2**, 6 n; **4**, 1 n; **5**, 4 n, 5 n; **6**, 20 n; **9**, 1 n, 22 n; **10**, 5 n; **11**, 10 n; Byt. **2**, 3 n; Sl. **13**, 50 n.

Zaêsm, man, Bd. 31, 14.
Zâgh, man, Bd. 33, 5.
Zagros m., Bd. 12, 36 n.
Zahâvayi r., Bd. 20, 25.
Zâînîgâv, man, Bd. 31, 6.
Zâîrîk, demon, Bd. 1, 27; 28, 11; 30, 29.
Zairivairi, prince, Bd. 31, 29.
Zâl, man, Bd. 31, 37 n.
Zamyâd, angel, Bd. 27, 24; Sl. 22, 28; 23, 4.
Zand (com.), Int. (10,) 21; Byt. 1, 6, 7; 2, 1, 55.
Zand-âkâs, book, Int. 23; Bd. 1, 1; Zs. 9, 1 n.
Zandîk, sect, Sl. 6, 7.
Zaothra, Av., Sl. 2, 43 n. See Holy-water.
Zara'sân r., Bd. 20, 19 n.
Zarah sea, Bd. 13, 16 n.
Zaratûst, apostle, Bd. 4, 2 n; 17, 8; 21, 3; 24, 1, 15; Zs. 11, 10 n; Byt. 1, 7 n; 2, 4-7, 9; Sl. 1, 3 n; 6, 1; 10, 25, 28 n; chief, Bd. 29, 2; his family, Bd. 20, 32; 29, 5; 32, 1-10; Byt. 3, 13, 47, 48; Sl. 10, 4, 21 n; 13, 22; his guardian spirit, Bd. 4, 4; Sl. 11, 4; his millennium, Bd. 34, 9 n; Byt. 1, 5; 2, 22, 24, 31, 41; 3, 11, 43 n, 44 n; attacked by demons, Sl. 10, 4; 12, 3 n, 11; addresses Aûharmazd, Bd. 30, 4; Byt. 1, 1, 2; 2, 1, 12, 23, 57; 3, 1, 12; Sl. 12, 29; 15, 1, 3; 17, 1, 11; addressed by Aûharmazd, Byt. 2, 58; 3, 11; Sl. 9, 8; 10, 26; 12, 32; 15, 30; called righteous, Byt. 2, 11, 24, 41, 62; called the Spîtâmân, Byt. 1, 3, 5; 2, 3, 4, 15, 22, 25, 28, 30, 31, 36, 44, 54-56, 63; 3, 3, 4, 8-10, 13, 14, 23, 24, 43, 50; Sl. 9, 14; 11, 4; 12, 23; 15, 4.
Zaratûst, man, Bd. 33, 11.
Zaratûstrôtûm, Bd. 24, 1. See also Supreme high-priest or Zaratûst.
Zardâhim, title, Bd. 31, 4.
Zarid m., Bd. 12, 2, 10 n.
Zarîn m., Bd. 12, 29, 39.
Zarînmand lake, Bd. 22, 1, 6; spring, Bd. 20, 34.
Zarîr, man, Bd. 31, 30; 33, 4; prince, Bd. 31, 29.
Zarmân, demon, Bd. 28, 23.
Zav, king, Bd. 31, 23 n.
Zavârah, man, Bd. 31, 41 n.
Zâvulistân, land, Byt. 3, 13 n.
Zend r., Bd. 20, 15.
Zendah r., Bd. 20, 15 n.
Zisak, man, Bd. 32, 1 n.
Zismand r., Bd. 20, 7, 19.
Ziyânak, woman, Bd. 31, 4.
Zôb, king, Bd. 34, 6. See Aûzôbô.
Zobara-vahman, bird, Bd. 19, 19.
Zodiacal signs, Bd. 2, 2; Sl. 21, 2. 7.
Zohab, land, Bd. 20, 25 n.
Zôhar, see Holy-water.
Zôndak r., Bd. 20, 7, 15 n.
Zôta (priest), Bd. 30, 30.
Zravad, place, Bd. 12, 35.
Zrâvakad, place, Bd. 12, 35.
Zrvâna, Av., Zs. 1, 24 n.
Zûsak, man, Bd. 31, 14.

TRANSLITERATION OF ORIENTAL ALPHABETS ADOPTED FOR THE TRANSLATIONS OF THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST.

CONSONANTS.	MISSIONARY ALPHABET. I Class.	II Class.	III Class.	Sanskrit.	Zend.	Pehlevi.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew.	Chinese.
Gutturales.										
1 Tenuis	k	...	....	क	𐬐	𐭪	ك	ك	ק	k
2 „ aspirata	kh	...	....	ख	𐬑	𐭫	...	...	כ	kh
3 Media	g	...	....	ग	𐬒	𐭬	گ	...	ג	...
4 „ aspirata	gh	...	....	घ	𐬓	𐭭	...	...	ג	...
5 Gutturo-labialis	q	...	....	...	....	...	ق	ق	ק	...
6 Nasalis	ṅ (ng)	...	....	ङ	𐬔 (ng) 𐬕 (x)	...	...	...	...	...
7 Spiritus asper	h	...	....	ह	𐬀𐬵 (hv)	𐭤	ه	ه	ה	h, hs
8 „ lenis	'	...	....	...	....	...	ا	ا	א	...
9 „ asper faucalis	'h	...	....	...	....	...	ا ه	ا ه	ה	...
10 „ lenis faucalis	'h	...	....	...	....	...	ا ه	ا ه	א ה	...
11 „ asper fricatus	...	'h	....	...	....	...	ا ه	ا ه	ה	...
12 „ lenis fricatus	...	'h	....	...	....	...	...	...	...	...
Gutturales modificatae (palatales, &c.)										
13 Tenuis	...	*k*	....	च	𐬍	𐭩	...	...	...	*k*
14 „ aspirata	...	*kh*	....	छ	....	...	...	...	...	*kh*
15 Media	...	*g*	....	ज	𐬎	𐭨	...	...	...	...
16 „ aspirata	...	*gh*	....	झ	....	...	...	...	...	...
17 „ Nasalis	ñ	...	....	ञ	....	...	...	...	...	...

CONSONANTS (*continued*)	MISSIONARY ALPHABET. I Class.	II Class.	III Class.	Sanskrit.	Zend.	Pehlevi.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew.	Chinese.
18 Semivocalis	y	. . .	. . . .	य	𐬌 init.	𐭩	ي	ي	י	y
19 Spiritus asper	. . .	(ʾ)	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
20 „ lenis	. . .	(ʾ)	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
21 „ asper assibilatus . .	. . .	*s*	. . . .	श	𐬰	𐭮	ش	ش	. . .	. . .
22 „ lenis assibilatus . .	. . .	*z*	. . . .	. . .	𐬶	𐭦	ژ	. .	. . .	*z*
Dentales.										
23 Tenuis	t	. . .	. . . .	त	𐬠	𐭬	ت	ت	ת	t
24 „ aspirata	th	. . .	. . . .	थ	𐬡	. . .	. . .	. . .	ת	th
25 „ assibilata	. . .	. . .	TH	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ث	ث	. . .	. . .
26 Media	d	. . .	. . . .	द	𐬛	𐭣	د	د	ד	. . .
27 „ aspirata	dh	. . .	. . . .	ध	𐬜	. . .	. . .	. . .	ד	. . .
28 „ assibilata	. . .	. . .	DH	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ذ	ذ	. . .	. . .
29 Nasalis	n	. . .	. . . .	न	𐬦	𐭭	ن	ن	נ	n
30 Semivocalis	l	. . .	. . . .	ल	. . . .	𐭤,𐭥	ل	ل	ל	l
31 „ mollis 1	. . .	*l*	. . . .	ळ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
32 „ mollis 2	. . .	. . .	L	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
33 Spiritus asper 1	s	. . .	. . . .	स	𐬱	𐭮	س (ث)	س	ס	s
34 „ asper 2	. . .	. . .	s (ʃ)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	ס	. . .
35 „ lenis	z	. . .	. . . .	. . .	𐬵	𐭧	ز (ذ)	ز	ז	z
36 „ asperrimus 1	. . .	. . .	z (ʒ)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ض	ض	צ	ʒ, ʒh

Dentales modificatae (linguales, &c.)											
38 Tenuis	. . .	*t*	. . . .	ट	. . . .	. . .	ط	ط	ט	. . .
39 „ aspirata	. . .	*th*	. . . .	ठ	. . . .	. . .	ظ	ظ	. . .	. . .
40 Media	. . .	*d*	. . . .	ड	ڕ	ڈ	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
41 „ aspirata	. . .	*dh*	. . . .	ढ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	ض	. . .	. . .
42 Nasalis	. . .	*n*	. . . .	ण	ڼ	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
43 Semivocalis	r	. . .	. . . .	र	ړ	ړ ڑ	ر	ر	ר	. . .
44 „ fricata	. . .	*r*	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	*r*
45 „ diacritica	. . .	. . .	R	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
46 Spiritus asper	sh	. . .	. . . .	ष	ښ	ښ	. . .	. . .	. . .	sh
47 „ lenis	zh	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
Labiales.											
48 Tenuis	p	. . .	. . . .	प	ې	ې	پ	. . .	פ פּ	p
49 „ aspirata	ph	. . .	. . . .	फ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	פ פּ	ph
50 Media	b	. . .	. . . .	ब	ب	ـب	ب	ب	ב בּ	. . .
51 „ aspirata	bh	. . .	. . . .	भ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	ב בּ	. . .
52 Tenuissima	. . .	*p*	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
53 Nasalis	m	. . .	. . . .	म	۾	۾	۾	۾	מ	m
54 Semivocalis	w	. . .	. . . .	. . .	۽	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	w
55 „ aspirata	hw	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
56 Spiritus asper	f	. . .	. . . .	. . .	ف	ڧ	ف	ف	. . .	f
57 „ lenis	v	. . .	. . . .	व	»	۷ ۾	و	و	ו	. . .
58 Anusvâra	. . .	*m*	. . . .	◌ं	◌ں	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
59 Visarga	. . .	*h*	. . . .	◌ः	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .

VOWELS.	MISSIONARY ALPHABET. I Class.	II Class.	III Class.	Sanskrit.	Zend.	Pehlevi.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew.	Chinese.
1 Neutralis	0	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	◌ֲ	ă
2 Laryngo-palatalis	ĕ	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
3 „ labialis	ŏ	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	ا fin.	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
4 Gutturalis brevis	a	. . .	. . . .	अ	ا	ا init.	◌َ	◌َ	◌ַ	a
5 „ longa	â	(*a*)	. . . .	आ	ا	ا	◌َا	◌َا	◌ָ	â
6 Palatalis brevis	i	. . .	. . . .	इ	ى	. . .	◌ِ	◌ِ	◌ִ	i
7 „ longa	î	(*i*)	. . . .	ई	ى	ى	◌ِي	◌ِي	◌ִי	î
8 Dentalis brevis	*li*	. . .	. . . .	ऌ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
9 „ longa	*lî*	. . .	. . . .	ॡ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
10 Lingualis brevis	*ri*	. . .	. . . .	ऋ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
11 „ longa	*rî*	. . .	. . . .	ॠ	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
12 Labialis brevis	u	. . .	. . . .	उ	◌ُ	. . .	◌ُ	◌ُ	◌ֻ	u
13 „ longa	û	(*u*)	. . . .	ऊ	◌ُ	ا	◌ُو	◌ُو	◌ֻו	û
14 Gutturo-palatalis brevis . . .	e	. . .	. . . .	. . .	◌ (*e*) ◌ (*e*)	. . .	. . .	. . .	◌ֶ	e
15 „ longa . . .	ê (ai)	(*e*)	. . . .	ए	◌, ◌	ى	. . .	. . .	◌ֵ	ê
16 Diphthongus gutturo-palatalis	âi	(*ai*)	. . . .	ऐ	. . . .	. . .	◌َى	◌َى	. . .	âi
17 „ „	ei (ĕi)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	ei, êi
18 „ „	oi (ŏu)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
19 Gutturo-labialis brevis	o	. . .	. . . .	. . .	◌	. . .	. . .	. . .	◌ֹ	o
20 „ longa	ô (au)	(*o*)	. . . .	ओ	◌	ا	. . .	. . .	◌ֹו	. . .
21 Diphthongus gutturo-labialis	âu	(*au*)	. . . .	औ	◌ (*au*)	. . .	◌َو	◌َو	. . .	âu
22 „ „	eu (ĕu)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
23 „ „	ou (ŏu)	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
24 Gutturalis fracta	ä	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
25 Palatalis fracta	ï	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .
26 Labialis fracta	ü	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	ü

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS
www.motilalbanarsidass.com info@mlbd.co.in
motilalbanarsidass @mlbdpublishers

Reference Work

₹ 750